350ci
400ci

Operation Guide

Preface

Thank you for purchasing the 350ci/400ci.

This Operation Guide is intended to help you operate the machine correctly, perform routine maintenance, and take simple troubleshooting measures as needed so that the machine can always be used in the optimum condition.

Please read this Operation Guide before using the machine.

We recommend the use of our own brand supplies.

Please use our genuine toner containers, which have passed rigorous quality control testing.

The use of non-genuine toner containers may cause failure.

We will not be liable for any damages caused by the use of third party supplies in this machine.

Checking the Equipment's Serial Number

The equipment's serial number is printed in the location shown in the figure.

You'll need the equipment's serial number when contacting your Service Representative. Please check the number before contacting your Service Representative.

Contents

Overview

This machine provides standard copy and print functions, and a scanned image can be sent to an E-mail recipient as an attachment or to a computer on the same network. On products with a FAX function, it is also possible to use the fax function.

Input Data

Original	Electronic data	USB memory	Fax data

Operations from your PC

Embedded Web Server RX

You can check the status and change the settings of the machine from a Web browser on your computer.

➔ Embedded Web Server RX (page 2-49)
Embedded Web Server RX User Guide

Document Box functions

This function serves a variety of purposes, including saving data in the machine and on a USB memory stick.

➔ Printing Data Saved in the Printer (page 4-15)
Creating a New Custom Box (page 5-51)

Security

You can apply the various machine security levels to your specific needs.

➔ Strengthen security (page xiv)

Application

You can expand the machine functions according to your needs.

➔ Application (page 5-12)

Output Data

Copy functions	Printer functions	Send functions	USB memory	Fax functions

➔ Copying (page 5-17)
Printing from PC (page 4-1)

➔ Frequently-Used Sending Method (page 5-21)

➔ Saving Documents to USB Memory (Scan to USB) (page 5-65)

➔ **FAX Operation Guide**

> **NOTE**
>
> - Before using the machine, be sure to read the following:
>
> ➔ Legal and Safety Information (page 1-1)
>
> - To prepare the device for use, including setting up cable connections and installing software.
>
> ➔ Installing and Setting up the Machine (page 2-1)
>
> - To learn how to load paper, set up shared folders, and add addresses to the address book, refer to the following:
>
> ➔ Preparation before Use (page 3-1)
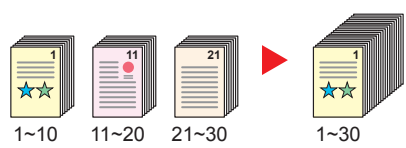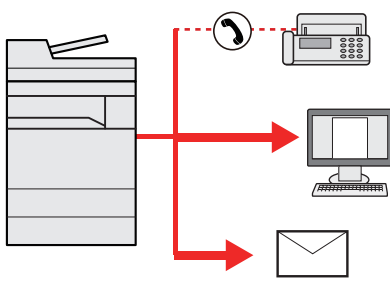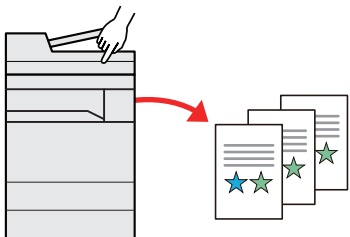
Machine Features
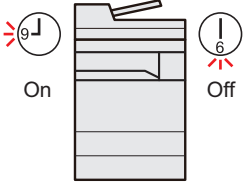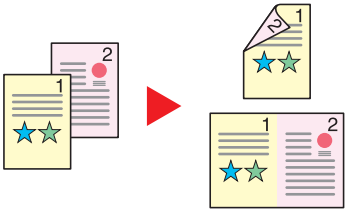
The machine is equipped with many useful functions.
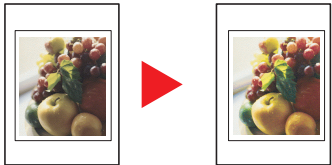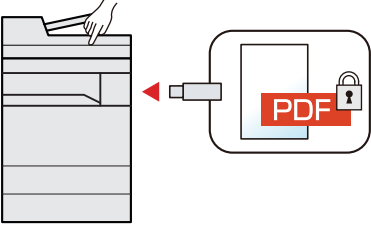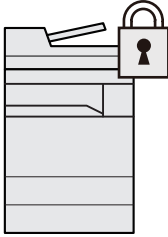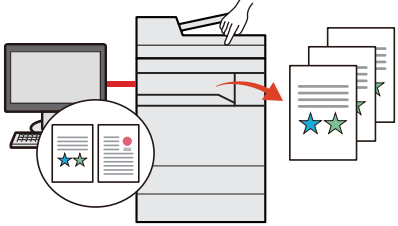
Here are some examples.
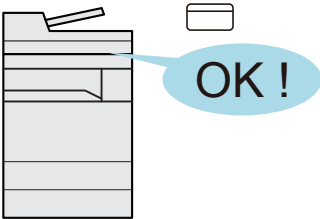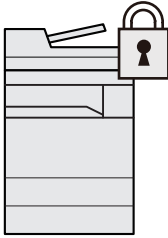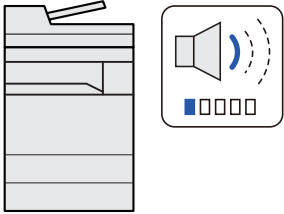
Optimize your office workflow		
Access to frequently used functions with just one touch (Favorites)	**Interrupt other running jobs and execute your copy job immediately (Interrupt Copy)**	**Scan originals of different sizes at a time (Mixed Size Originals)**
You can preset frequently used functions. Once you register frequently used settings as favorite, you can call up the settings easily. Using this favorite brings the same results even if operated by another person.	You can interrupt other running jobs and execute your copy job immediately. When other users are copying a large number of sheets, this function allows you to interrupt those jobs and make your copies immediately. When the interruption copy ends, the machine resumes the paused print jobs.	It is useful when preparing conference materials. You can set the different sized originals at one time so you don't need to reset the originals regardless of size.
➜ Program (page 5-9)	➜ Interrupt Copy (page 5-19)	➜ Mixed Size Originals (page 6-16)
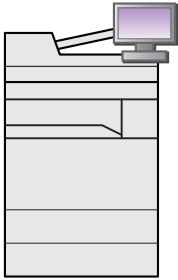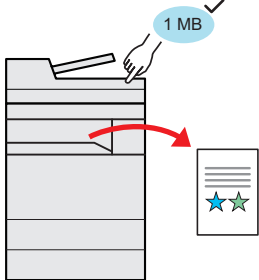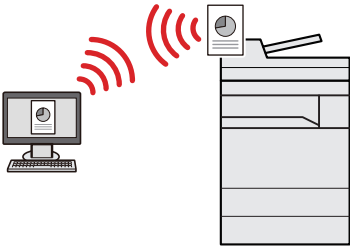
Optimize your office workflow		
Scan a large number of originals in separate batches and produce as one job (Continuous Scan)	**Send one time with multiple sending options (Multi Sending)**	**Save frequently used documents in the machine (Custom Box)**
1~10 11~20 21~30 ▶ 1~30		
It is useful when preparing many-page handouts. When a large number of originals cannot be placed in the document processor at one time, the originals can be scanned in separate batches and then copied or sent as one job.	You can send a same document to the multiple destinations using a different method. You can specify multiple destinations of different send methods such as E-mail, SMB, and Fax. You can reduce your workflow by sending a job at once.	You can save the frequently used document in the machine and print it when needed.
➜ Continuous Scan (page 6-52)	➜ Sending to Different Types of Destinations (Multi Sending) (page 5-36)	➜ Creating a New Custom Box (page 5-51)
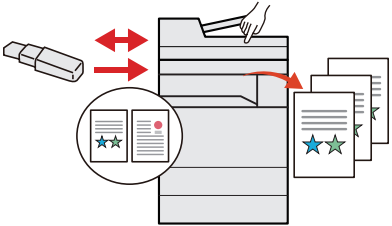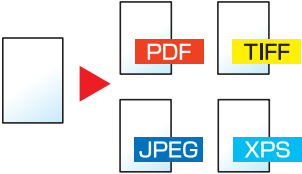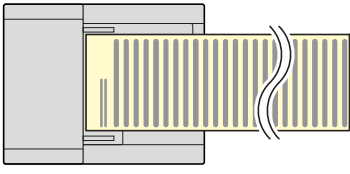
Save energy and cost

Save energy as needed
(Energy Saver function)

The machine is equipped with Energy Saver function that automatically switched into Low Power Mode or Sleep Mode. You can set appropriate Energy Saver Recovery Level depending on the operation.

In addition, the machine can automatically be switched into Sleep and recovered at a specified time for each day of the week.

➡ Energy Saver function (page 2-29)

Reduce paper use
(Paper Saving Printing)

You can print originals on both sides of the paper. You can also print multiple originals onto one sheet.

➡ Program (page 5-9)

Skip blank pages when printing
(Skip Blank Page)

When there are blank pages in a scanned document, this function skips the blank pages and prints only pages that are not blank.

➡ Skip Blank Page (page 6-56)

Create attractive documents

Prevent image bleed-through
(Prevent Bleed-through)

You can prevent image bleed-through from the reverse side when scanning thin originals.

➡ Prevent Bleed-thru (page 6-32)

Print a stamp on copies
(Text Stamp / Bates Stamp)

It is useful when adding text or date that is not included in originals.

You can add desired text and date as a stamp.

➡ Text Stamp (page 6-48)
 Bates Stamp (page 6-50)

Change appearance of image easily
(One touch image adjust)

Change the appearance of image by using the preset settings.

You can change the appearance of image by simple operation without making fine adjustment.

➡ One-touch Image Adjust (page 6-28)

Strengthen security

Password-protect a PDF file
(PDF Encryption Functions)

Use the PDF format's password security options to restrict document viewing, printing and editing.

➡ Encrypted PDF Password (page 6-68)

Protect data on the hard disk/SSD
(Encryption / Overwrite)

You can overwrite the unnecessary data that remains on the hard disk/SSD automatically.

To prevent an external leakage, the machine is able to encrypt data before writing it to the hard disk/SSD.

➡ Data Security (page 8-50)

Prevent loss of finished documents
(Private Print)

Temporarily saving print jobs in the main unit document box and outputting them when in front of the device can prevent documents from being taken by others.

➡ Printing Data Saved in the Printer (page 4-15)

Strengthen security / Use functions more efficiently

Log in by ID card
(Card Authentication)

You can log in simply by touching an ID card. You don't need to enter your user name and password.

➡ Card Authentication Kit(B) "Card Authentication Kit" (page 11-6)

Strengthen security
(Settings for Administrator)

Various functions are available for administrators to strengthen security.

➡ Strengthening the Security (page 2-47)

Make the machine quiet
(Quiet Mode)

You can make the machine quiet by reducing its running noise. You can configure this mode by job.

➡ Quiet Mode (page 6-56)

Use functions more efficiently

Expand functions as necessary (Application)

The functionality of the machine can be expanded by installing applications.

Applications that help you perform your daily more efficiently such as a scan feature and an authentication feature are available.

➡ Application (page 5-12)

Display file size before sending / storing a job (File Size Confirmation)

1 MB

You can check the file size before sending/storing the document.

If your server specifies an e-mail size limit, you can check the size in advance.

➡ File Size Confirmation (page 6-66)

Install the machine without concerning the network cables (Wireless Network)

If there is a wireless LAN environment, it is possible to install the unit without worrying about the network wiring.

➡ Setup (page 8-48)

Use functions more efficiently

Use USB memory (USB Memory)

It is useful when you need to print documents outside your office or you cannot print documents from your PC.

You can print the document from the USB memory by plugging it directly into the machine.

Original scanned at the machine can be saved in the USB memory also.

➡ Printing Documents Stored in Removable USB Memory (page 5-63)
Saving Documents to USB Memory (Scan to USB) (page 5-65)

Specify image file format (File Format)

PDF TIFF

JPEG XPS

You can select the various file formats when sending/storing images.

➡ File Format (page 6-59)

Scan the long originals (Long Original)

You can scan the long originals such as Contract and Data log.

➡ Banner printing (page 4-9)

xv

Use functions more efficiently	
Skip the error job (Job Skip Functions)	**Perform remote operation (Embedded Web Server RX)**
When paper empty error occurs at the cassette by specifying the special paper size or type, the machine skips the error job and perform the next job.	You can access to the machine remotely to print, send or download data.
	Administrators can configure the machine behavior or management settings.
➡ Error Job Skip (page 8-54)	➡ Embedded Web Server RX (page 2-49)
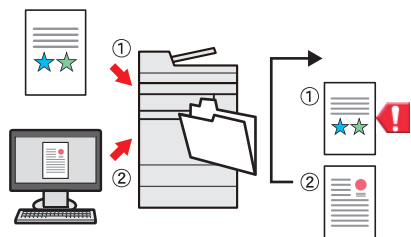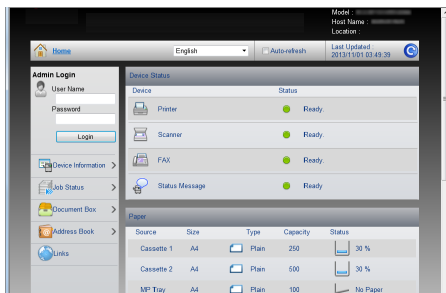
Color and Image Quality Functions

The machine is equipped with various color and image quality functions. You can adjust the scanned image as desired.

Basic Color Modes

The basic color modes are as follows.

Color mode	Description	Reference image		Reference page
		Before	**After**	
Auto Color	Automatically recognizes whether a document being scanned is color or black & white.			page 6-25
Full Color	Scans a document in full color.			page 6-25
Grayscale	Scans a document in grayscale.			page 6-26
Single Color	Prints in any desired color.			page 6-25
Black & White	Scans a document in black & white.			page 6-25

For details, refer to the following:

➧ Color Selection (page 6-25)

Adjusting Image Quality and Color

To adjust the image quality or color of an image, use the following functions.

I want to...	Sample image		Function	Page
	Before	**After**		
Adjust the color precisely.				
Adjust the density.			Density	page 6-24
Adjust the color by strengthening blue or red tones. **Example: Strengthening red**			Color Balance	page 6-26
Change the image by individually adjusting each of the six colors: red, blue, green, cyan, magenta, and yellow. **Example: Changing red tones close to yellow to yellow, and cyan tones close to blue to blue**			Hue adjustment	page 6-27
Adjust the saturation.			Saturation	page 6-31
Adjust the image quality precisely				
Emphasize or blur the image outline. **Example: Emphasize the image outlines**			Sharpness	page 6-30
Adjust the difference between dark and light parts of the image.			Contrast	page 6-30
Darken or lighten the background (the area with no texts or images) of a document. **Example: Lightening the background**			Background Density	page 6-31
Prevent bleed-through in 2-sided originals.			Prevent Bleed-through	page 6-32
Adjust the scanned image				
Decrease the file size and produce the characters clearly.			File format [**High Comp. PDF**]	page 6-59
Convert a paper document to PDF with searchable text.			File format [**PDF**] or [**High Comp. PDF**] with [**OCR**]	page 6-59

Guides Provided with the Machine

The following guides are provided with the machine. Refer to each guide as needed.

The contents of the guides are subject to change without notice for the purpose of improvement of machine performance.

Printed guides

Start using the machine quickly	**Quick Guide** Explains how to use basic functions of the machine, how to use convenient features, how to perform routine maintenance, and what to do when problems occur.
For safe use of the machine	**Safety Guide** Provides safety and cautionary information for installation environment and use of the machine. Be sure to read this guide before using the machine. **Safety Guide (350ci/400ci)** Indicates the space required for machine installation, and describes the cautionary labels and other safety information. Be sure to read this guide before using the machine.

Guides (PDF) on the DVD (Product Library)

Use the machine thoughtfully	▶	**Operation Guide (This Guide)** Explains how to load paper and perform copy, print and scan operations, and indicates default settings and other information.
Use the fax functions	▶	**FAX Operation Guide** Explains how to use the fax function.
Use the ID card	▶	**Card Authentication Kit (B) Operation Guide** Explains how to perform authentication using the ID card.
Strengthen security	▶	**Data Security Kit (E) Operation Guide** Explains how to introduce and use the Data Security kit (E), and how to overwrite and encrypt data.
Easily register machine information and configure settings	▶	**Embedded Web Server RX User Guide** Explains how to access the machine from a Web browser on your computer to check and change settings.
Print data from a computer	▶	**Printing System Driver User Guide** Explains how to install the printer driver and use the printer function.
Directly print a PDF file	▶	**Network Tool for Direct Printing Operation Guide** Explains how to print PDF files without launching Adobe Acrobat or Reader.
Monitor the machine and printers on the network	▶	**NETWORK PRINT MONITOR User Guide** Explains how to monitor your network printing system (the machine) with NETWORK PRINT MONITOR.
Scan images and save with information	▶	**File Management Utility User Guide** Explains how to use File Management Utility to set various parameters and send and save scanned documents.
Print without using the printer driver	▶	**PRESCRIBE Commands Command Reference** Describes the native printer language (PRESCRIBE commands). **PRESCRIBE Commands Technical Reference** Describes the PRESCRIBE command functions and control for each type of emulation.
Adjust the print or scan position	▶	**Maintenance Menu User Guide** Maintenance Menu provides the explanation on how to configure the print, scan, and other settings.

Install the following versions of Adobe Reader to view the manuals on the DVD.
Version 8.0 or later

About the Operation Guide (this Guide)

Structure of the guide

The Operation Guide contains the following chapters.

	Chapter	Contents
1	**Legal and Safety Information**	Provides precautions regarding use of the machine and trademark information.
2	**Installing and Setting up the Machine**	Explains part names, cable connections, installation of the software, login, logout, and other matters related to administration of the machine.
3	**Preparation before Use**	Explains preparations and settings that are required in order to use the machine, such as how to load paper and create an address book.
4	**Printing from PC**	Explains functions that are available when the machine is used as a printer.
5	**Operation on the Machine**	Explains the basic procedures for using the machine, such as placing originals, making copies, sending documents, and using document boxes.
6	**Using Various Functions**	Explains convenient functions that are available on the machine.
7	**Status/Job Cancel**	Explains how to check the status of a job and the job history, and how to cancel jobs being printed or waiting to print. Also explains how to check paper and toner levels, how to check the device status, and how to cancel fax transmission.
8	**Setup and Registration (System Menu)**	Explains System Menu and how it relates to the operation of the machine.
9	**User Authentication and Accounting (User Login, Job Accounting)**	Explains user login and job accounting.
10	**Troubleshooting**	Explains what to do when toner runs out, an error is displayed, or a paper jam or other problem occurs.
11	**Appendix**	Describes convenient options that are available for the machine. Provides information on media types and paper sizes, and gives a glossary of terms. Explains how to enter characters, and lists the specifications of the machine.

Conventions Used in This Guide

Adobe Reader XI is used as an example in the explanations below.

Click an item in the Table of Contents to jump to the corresponding page.

Click to move from the current page to the previously displayed page. This is convenient when you want to return to the page from which you jumped to the current page.
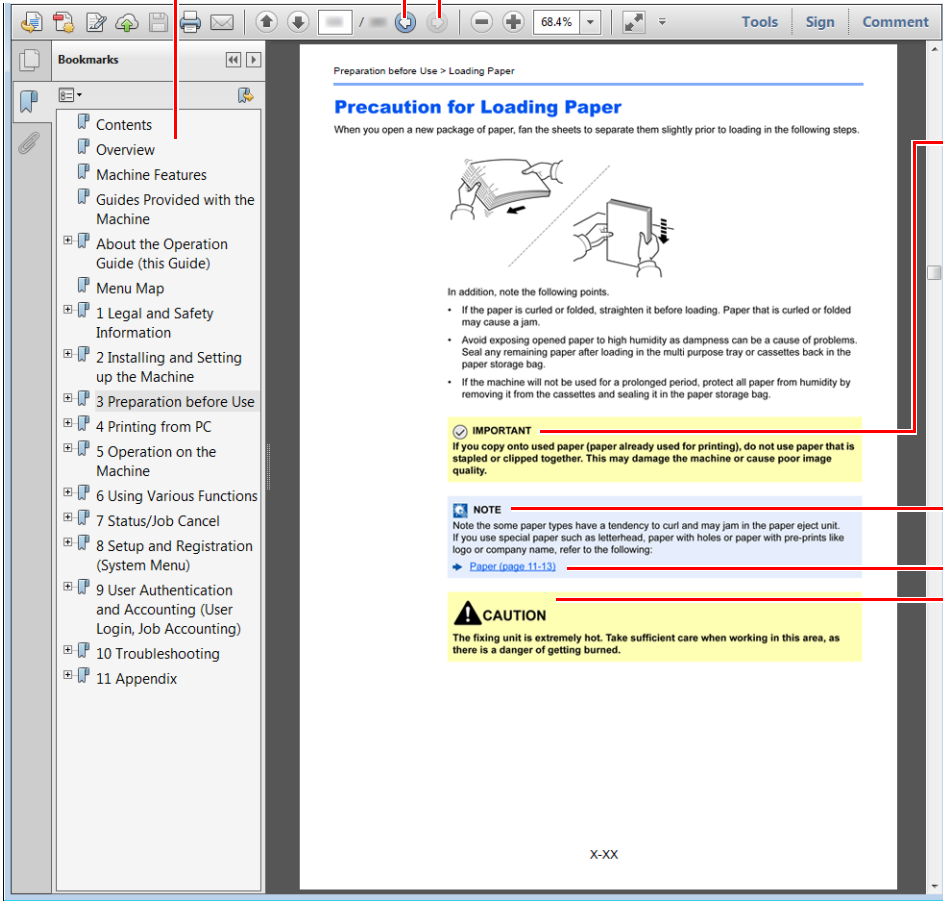
IMPORTANT

Indicates operational requirements and restrictions to operate the machine correctly, and avoid damage to the machine or property.

NOTE

Indicates supplemental explanations and reference information for operations.

Refer to

Click the underlined text to jump to the corresponding page.

CAUTION

Indicates that personal injury or mechanical damage may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with the related points.

NOTE
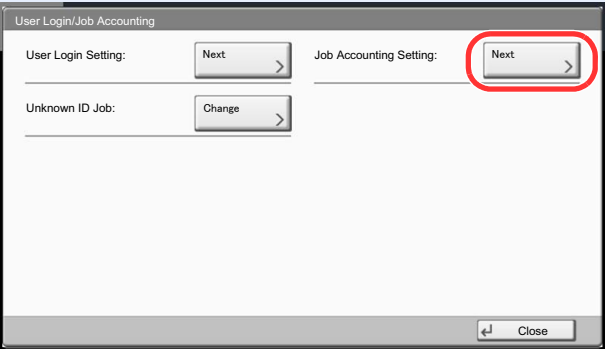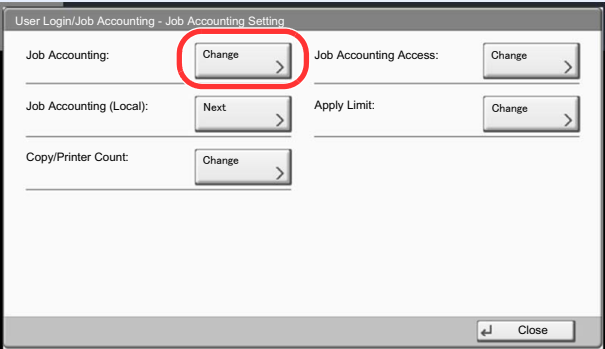
The items that appear in Adobe Reader vary depending on how it is used. If the Table of Contents or tools do not appear, refer to Adobe Reader Help.

Certain items are indicated in this guide by the conventions described below.

Convention	Description
[**Bold**]	Indicates keys and buttons.
"Regular"	Indicates a message or setting.

Conventions used in procedures for operating the machine

In this Operation Guide, continuous operation of the keys on the touch panel is as follows:

Actual procedure	Procedure indicated in this guide
Select the [**System Menu**] key. ▼ Select [∨]. ▼ Select [**Common Settings**]. ▼ Select [**Sound**].	[**System Menu**] key > [**Common Settings**] > [**Sound**]
Select [**Next**] of "Job Accounting Settings". ![User Login/Job Accounting screen] ▼ Select [**Change**] of "Job Accounting ". ![User Login/Job Accounting - Job Accounting Setting screen]	"Job Accounting Settings" [**Next**] > "Job Accounting" [**Change**]

Menu Map

This is a list of menus displayed on the touch panel. Depending on the settings, some menus may not be displayed. Some menu names may differ from their reference titles.

Copy or [Copy image]
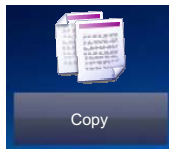
Org./Paper/Finishing	Original Size (page 6-14)	
	Paper Selection (page 6-15)	
	Mixed Size Originals (page 6-16)	
	Original Orientation (page 6-18)	
	Collate/Offset (page 6-19)	
	Staple/Punch	Staple (page 6-20)
		Punch (page 6-21)
	Paper Output (page 6-23)	
Color/Image Quality	Density (page 6-24)	
	Original Image (page 6-24)	
	EcoPrint (page 6-25)	
	Color Selection (page 6-25)	
	Color Balance (page 6-26)	
	Hue Adjustment (page 6-27)	
	One-touch Image Adjust (page 6-28)	
	Sharpness (page 6-30)	
	Background Density Adj. (page 6-31)	
	Saturation (page 6-31)	
	Prevent Bleed-thru (page 6-32)	
	Contrast (page 6-30)	
Layout/Edit	Zoom (page 6-32)	
	Combine (page 6-34)	
	Margin/Centering (page 6-34)	
	Border Erase (page 6-37)	
	Duplex (page 6-39)	
	Cover (page 6-41)	
	Form Overlay (page 6-42)	

Send or

Send

Destination	Address Book (page 5-39)
	E-mail Addr Entry (page 5-22)
	Folder Path Entry (page 5-23, page 5-26)
	FAX No. Entry (refer to **FAX Operation Guide**)
	i-FAX Address Entry (refer to **FAX Operation Guide**)
	WSD Scan (page 5-31) / DSM Scan (page 5-33)
Org./Sending Data Format	Original Size (page 6-14)
	Mixed Size Originals (page 6-16)
	2-sided/Book Original, Book Original (page 6-57)
	Original Orientation (page 6-18)
	Sending Size (page 6-58)
	File Format (page 6-59)
	File Separation (page 6-63)
	Long Original (page 6-67)
Color/Image Quality	Density (page 6-24)
	Original Image (page 6-24)
	Scan Resolution (page 6-63)
	FAX TX Resolution (refer to **FAX Operation Guide**)
	Color Selection (page 6-25)
	Sharpness (page 6-30)
	Background Density Adj. (page 6-31)
	Prevent Bleed-thru (page 6-32)
	Contrast (page 6-30)

Advanced Setup	Zoom (page 6-32)
	Centering (page 6-34)
	Border Erase (page 6-37)
	FAX Delayed Transmission (refer to **FAX Operation Guide**)
	Continuous Scan (page 6-52)
	Job Finish Notice (page 6-53)
	File Name Entry (page 6-53)
	E-mail Subject/Body (page 6-64)
	i-FAX Subject/Body (refer to **FAX Operation Guide**)
	FAX Direct Transmission (refer to **FAX Operation Guide**)
	FAX Polling RX (refer to **FAX Operation Guide**)
	Send and Print (page 6-64)
	Send and Store (page 6-65)
	FTP Encrypted TX (page 6-65)
	Text Stamp (page 6-48)
	Bates Stamp (page 6-50)
	File Size Confirmation (page 6-66)
	FAX TX Report (refer to **FAX Operation Guide**)
	Skip Blank Page (page 6-56)
	Quiet Mode (page 6-56)
Program (page 5-9)	
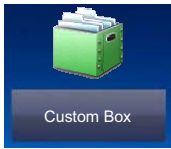
Custom Box	Store File	Functions	Original Size (page 6-14)
			Mixed Size Originals (page 6-16)
			2-sided/Book Original, Book Original (page 6-57)
			Original Orientation (page 6-18)
			Storing Size (page 6-67)
			Prevent Bleed-thru (page 6-32)
			Density (page 6-24)
			Original Image (page 6-24)
			Scan Resolution (page 6-63)
			Color Selection (page 6-25)
			Sharpness (page 6-30)
			Background Density Adj. (page 6-31)
			Zoom (page 6-32)
			Centering (page 6-34)
			Border Erase (page 6-37)
			Continuous Scan (page 6-52)
			Job Finish Notice (page 6-53)
			File Name Entry (page 6-53)
			Skip Blank Page (page 6-56)
			Quiet Mode (page 6-56)
			Contrast (page 6-30)
		Program (page 5-9)	
	Detail (page 5-46)		

xxviii

Custom Box	Open	Print	Functions	Paper Selection (page 6-15)	
				Collate/Offset (page 6-19)	
				Staple/Punch (page 6-20)	Staple (page 6-20)
					Punch (page 6-21)
				Paper Output (page 6-23)	
				Combine (page 6-34)	
				Margin/Centering (page 6-36)	
				Duplex (page 6-39)	
				Cover (page 6-41)	
				Form Overlay (page 6-42)	
				Page # (page 6-43)	
				Job Finish Notice (page 6-53)	
				File Name Entry (page 6-53)	
				Delete after Printed (page 6-66)	
				Priority Override (page 6-54)	
				EcoPrint (page 6-25)	
				Zoom (page 6-32)	
				Text Stamp (page 6-48)	
				Bates Stamp (page 6-50)	
				Color Balance (page 6-26)	
				Hue Adjustment (page 6-27)	
				One-touch Image Adjust (page 6-28)	
				Saturation (page 6-31)	
				Quiet Mode (page 6-56)	
			Color/Image Quality	Density (page 6-24)	
				Original Image (page 6-24)	
				Color Selection (page 6-25)	
				Sharpness (page 6-30)	
				Background Density Adj. (page 6-31)	
				Prevent Bleed-thru (page 6-32)	
				Contrast (page 6-30)	
			Program (page 5-9)		

Custom Box	Open	Send	Destination (page 5-39)		
			Functions	Sending Size (page 6-58)	
				File Format (page 6-59)	
				FAX TX Resolution (refer to **FAX Operation Guide**)	
				Centering (page 6-34)	
				FAX Delayed Transmission (refer to **FAX Operation Guide**)	
				Job Finish Notice (page 6-53)	
				File Name Entry (page 6-53)	
				E-mail Subject/Body (page 6-64)	
				i-FAX Subject/Body (refer to **FAX Operation Guide**)	
				FTP Encrypted TX (page 6-65)	
				Delete after Transmitted (page 6-66)	
				Zoom (page 6-32)	
				File Separation (page 6-63)	
				Text Stamp (page 6-48)	
				Bates Stamp (page 6-50)	
				File Size Confirmation (page 6-66)	
				FAX TX Report (refer to **FAX Operation Guide**)	
			Color/Image Quality	Density (page 6-24)	
				Original Image (page 6-24)	
				Resolution (page 6-63)	
				Color Selection (page 6-25)	
				Sharpness (page 6-30)	
				Background Density Adj. (page 6-31)	
				Prevent Bleed-thru (page 6-32)	
				Contrast (page 6-30)	
			Program (page 5-9)		
		Join (page 5-62)			
		Move/Copy (page 5-57)			
		Delete (page 5-60)			
		Store File (page 5-53)			
		Search(Name) (page 5-46)			
		Page Selection (page 5-46)			
		Detail (page 5-46)			
		Preview (page 5-49)			

xxx

Custom Box	Search(Name) ([page 5-46](#))		
	Search(No.) ([page 5-46](#))		
	Add/Edit Box ([page 5-51](#))		
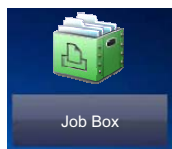
Job Box

▼

Job Box	Private Print/Stored Job ([page 4-16](#), [page 4-17](#))		
	Quick Copy/Proof and Hold ([page 4-18](#), [page 4-19](#))		
	Repeat Copy ([page 6-54](#))		
	Form for Form Overlay ([page 5-62](#))		
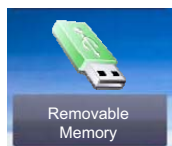
Removable Memory

▼

Removable Memory	Print	Functions	Paper Selection ([page 6-15](#))	
			Collate/Offset ([page 6-19](#))	
			Staple/Punch ([page 6-20](#)	Staple ([page 6-20](#))
				Punch ([page 6-21](#))
			Paper Output ([page 6-23](#))	
			Margin ([page 6-36](#))	
			Duplex ([page 6-39](#))	
			Job Finish Notice ([page 6-53](#))	
			Priority Override ([page 6-54](#))	
			EcoPrint ([page 6-25](#))	
			Text Stamp ([page 6-48](#))	
			Bates Stamp ([page 6-50](#))	
			Encrypted PDF Password ([page 6-68](#))	
			JPEG/TIFF Print ([page 6-68](#))	
			XPS Fit to Page ([page 6-68](#))	
			Quiet Mode ([page 6-56](#))	
		Color/Image Quality	Color Selection ([page 6-25](#))	

xxxi

Removable Memory	Store File	Functions	Original Size (page 6-14)
			Mixed Size Originals (page 6-16)
			2-sided/Book Original, Book Original (page 6-57)
			Original Orientation (page 6-18)
			Storing Size (page 6-67)
			Prevent Bleed-thru (page 6-32)
			Density (page 6-24)
			Original Image (page 6-24)
			Scan Resolution (page 6-63)
			Color Selection (page 6-25)
			Sharpness (page 6-30)
			Background Density Adj. (page 6-31)
			Zoom (page 6-32)
			Centering (page 6-34)
			Border Erase (page 6-37)
			Continuous Scan (page 6-52)
			Job Finish Notice (page 6-53)
			File Name Entry (page 6-53)
			Skip Blank Page (page 6-56)
			Quiet Mode (page 6-56)
			Contrast (page 6-30)
			Text Stamp (page 6-48)
			Bates Stamp (page 6-50)
			File Format (page 6-59)
			File Separation (page 6-63)
			Long Original (page 6-67)
	Delete (page 5-47)		
	Detail (page 5-47)		
	Memory Information (page 5-66)		
	Remove Memory (page 5-66)		
FAX Box (refer to FAX Operation Guide)			

xxxii

Status/
Job Cancel

or

Status/
Job Cancel
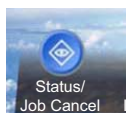
Printing Jobs (page 7-3)
Sending Jobs (page 7-5)
Storing Jobs (page 7-6)
Device/Communication (page 7-13)
Paper/Supplies (page 7-14)

System Menu

or

System
Menu
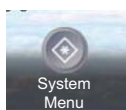
Quick Setup Wizard	FAX Setup (page 2-31)	
	Energy Saver Setup (page 2-31)	
	Network Setup (page 2-31)	
Cassette/MP Tray Settings	Cassette 1 (page 8-7)	
	Cassette 2 (page 8-7)	
	Cassette 3 (page 8-7)	
	Cassette 4 (page 8-7)	
	MP Tray Setting (page 8-8)	
Common Settings	Language (page 8-9)	
	Default Screen (page 8-9)	
	Sound	Buzzer (page 8-9)
		FAX Speaker Volume (refer to **FAX Operation Guide**)
		FAX Monitor Volume (refer to **FAX Operation Guide**)
	Keyboard Layout (page 8-20)	

xxxiii

Common Settings	Original/Paper Settings	Custom Original Size (page 8-10)
		Custom Paper Size (page 8-11)
		Default Original Size (Platen) (page 8-10)
		Media Type Setting (page 8-11)
		Default Paper Source (page 8-11)
		Auto Detect Original Size (page 8-11)
		Media for Auto (Color) (page 8-11)
		Media for Auto (B&W) (page 8-11)
		Paper Source for Cover (page 8-12)
		Special Paper Action (page 8-12)
	Measurement (page 8-13)	
	Error Handling	Duplexing Error (page 8-14)
		Finishing Error (page 8-14)
		No Staple Error (page 8-14)
		Finished Pages Exceeded (page 8-14)
		Punch Waste Full Error (page 8-14)
		Paper Mismatch Error (page 8-14)
		Inserted Paper Mismatch (page 8-15)
		Paper Jam before Staple (page 8-15)
	Paper Output (page 8-15)	
	Orientation Confirmation (page 8-XX)	
	Color Toner Empty Action (page 8-16)	

xxxiv

Common Settings	Function Defaults	Orig. Orientation (Copy) (page 8-17)
		Orig. Orient.(Send/Store) (page 8-17)
		Original Image (Copy) (page 8-17)
		Org. Image (Send/Store) (page 8-17)
		FAX TX Resolution (refer to **FAX Operation Guide**)
		Scan Resolution (page 8-17)
		Color Selection (Copy) (page 8-17)
		Color Select.(Send/Store) (page 8-17)
		File Format (page 8-17)
		Backgrnd Density (Copy) (page 8-17)
		BackgrndDens.(Send/Store) (page 8-17)
		Prevent Bleed-thru (Copy) (page 8-17)
		Prevent Bleed(Send/Store) (page 8-17)
		Zoom (page 8-17)
		Border Erase Default (page 8-17)
		Border Erase to Back Page (page 8-17)
		Margin Default (page 8-18)
		EcoPrint (page 8-18)
		Toner Save Level (EcoPrint) (page 8-18)
		High Comp. PDF Image (page 8-18)
		Color TIFF Compression (page 8-18)
		Image Quality (File Format) (page 8-18)
		Collate/Offset (page 8-18)
		JPEG/TIFF Print (page 8-18)
		XPS Fit to Page (page 8-18)
		PDF/A (page 8-18)
		Continuous Scan (Except FAX) (page 8-18)
		Continuous Scan (FAX) (refer to **FAX Operation Guide**)
		File Name Entry (page 8-18)
		E-mail Subject/Body (page 8-18)
		i-FAX Subject/Body (page 8-19)
		DP Read Action (page 8-19)
		OCR Text Recognition (page 8-19)
		Primary OCR Language (page 8-19)
		Repeat Copy (page 8-19)
		Skip Blank Page (Copy) (page 8-19)
		Skip Blank Page (Send/Store) (page 8-19)
		File Separation (page 8-19)

Common Settings	USB Keyboard Type (page 8-20)
	System Stamp (page 8-20)
	Manual Staple (page 8-24)
	Offset Documents by Job (page 8-24)
	Low Toner Alert Level (page 8-24)
	Offset One Page Documents (page 8-24)
	Display Status/Log (page 8-25)
	Message Banner Print (page 8-25)
	Customize Status Display (page 8-25)
	Function Key Usage (page 8-25)
	Message Board Settings (page 8-26)
	Remote Printing (page 8-26)
	Show Power Off Message (page 8-27)
Home	Customize Desktop (page 2-13)
	Customize Taskbar (page 2-13)
	Wallpaper (page 2-13)
Copy	Paper Selection (page 8-27)
	Auto Paper Selection (page 8-27)
	Auto % Priority (page 8-27)
	Preset Limit (page 8-27)
	Reserve Next Priority (page 8-27)
	Quick Setup Registration (page 8-27)
Send	Quick Setup Registration (page 8-28)
	Dest. Check before Send (page 8-28)
	Color Type (page 8-28)
	Entry Check for New Dest. (page 8-28)
	Default Screen (page 8-28)
	Send and Forward (page 8-29)
	New Destination Entry (page 8-29)
	Recall Destination (page 8-29)
	OCR Text Recognition Act. (page 8-29)
	HighCompressionPDF Mode (page 8-29)

Document Box/Removable Memory	Custom Box (page 5-45)	
	FAX Box (refer to **FAX Operation Guide**)	
	Job Box	Quick Copy Job Retention (page 8-33)
		Repeat Copy Job Retention (page 8-33)
		Deletion of Job Retention (page 8-33)
	Polling Box (refer to **FAX Operation Guide**)	
	Quick Setup Registration (page 8-33)	
FAX (refer to FAX Operation Guide)		
Printer	Emulation (page 8-34)	
	Color Setting (page 8-34)	
	Gloss Mode (page 8-34)	
	EcoPrint (page 8-34)	
	Toner Save Level (EcoPrint) (page 8-34)	
	Override A4/Letter (page 8-35)	
	Duplex (page 8-35)	
	Copies (page 8-35)	
	Orientation (page 8-35)	
	Form Feed Timeout (page 8-35)	
	LF Action (page 8-35)	
	CR Action (page 8-35)	
	Job Name (page 8-35)	
	User Name (page 8-35)	
	Paper Feed Mode (page 8-35)	
	MP Tray Priority (page 8-35)	
	Auto Cassette Change (page 8-36)	
	Wide A4 (page 8-36)	
	Resolution (page 8-36)	

Report	Print Report	Status Page ([page 8-37](#))
		Font List ([page 8-37](#))
		Network Status ([page 8-37](#))
		Service Status ([page 8-37](#))
		Optional Network Status ([page 8-37](#))
	Admin Report Settings	Outgoing FAX Report (refer to **FAX Operation Guide**)
		Incoming FAX Report (refer to **FAX Operation Guide**)
	Result Report Settings	Send Result Report ([page 8-38](#))
		FAX RX Result Report (refer to **FAX Operation Guide**
		Job Finish Notice Setting (refer to **FAX Operation Guide**)
		RX Result Report Type (refer to **FAX Operation Guide**)
	Sending Log History	Auto Sending ([page 8-38](#))
		Sending Log History ([page 8-38](#))
		Destination ([page 8-38](#))
		Job Log Subject ([page 8-38](#))
		Personal Information ([page 8-38](#))
	Login History Settings	Login History ([page 8-39](#))
		Auto Sending ([page 8-39](#))
		Destination ([page 8-39](#))
		Subject ([page 8-39](#))
		Log Reset ([page 8-39](#))
	Device Log History Settings	Device Log History ([page 8-40](#))
		Auto Sending ([page 8-40](#))
		Destination ([page 8-40](#))
		Subject ([page 8-40](#))
	Secure Comm. Error Log	Secure Comm. Error Log ([page 8-41](#))
		Auto Sending ([page 8-41](#))
		Destination ([page 8-41](#))
		Subject ([page 8-41](#))

System/Network	Network	Host Name (page 8-42)	
		TCP/IP Setting	TCP/IP (page 8-42)
			IPv4 (page 8-42)
			IPv6 (page 8-43)
			Bonjour (page 8-43)
			IPSec (page 8-43)
		Protocol Settings	SMTP (E-mail TX) (page 8-44)
			POP3 (E-mail RX) (page 8-44)
			FTP Client (Transmission) (page 8-44)
			FTP Server (Reception) (page 8-44)
			SMB Client (Transmission): (page 8-44)
			NetBEUI (page 8-44)
			WSD Scan (page 8-44)
			WSD Print (page 8-44)
			i-FAX (page 8-44)
			DSM Scan (page 8-44)
			ThinPrint (page 8-44)
			LPD (page 8-44)
			Raw (page 8-44)
			IPP (page 8-44)
			IPP over SSL (page 8-45)
			HTTP (page 8-45)
			HTTPS (page 8-45)
			LDAP (page 8-45)
			SNMPv1/v2c (page 8-45)
			SNMPv3 (page 8-45)
			Enhanced WSD (page 8-45)
			Enhanced WSD over SSL (page 8-45)
			eSCL (page 8-45)
			eSCL over SSL (page 8-45)
		Security Settings (page 8-45)	
		LAN Interface (page 8-45)	
		Restart Network (page 8-46)	
		Proxy (page 8-46)	
		Ping (page 8-46)	

System/Network	Optional Network	Basic ([page 8-47](#))
		Wireless Network ([page 8-48](#))
	Network Interface (Send) ([page 8-49](#))	
	Security Level ([page 8-49](#))	
	Interface Block Setting	USB Host ([page 8-49](#))
		USB Device ([page 8-49](#))
		USB Storage ([page 8-49](#))
		Optional Interface 1 ([page 8-49](#))
		Optional Interface 2 ([page 8-49](#))
	Data Security	Hard Disk Initialization ([page 8-50](#)) Hard Disk/SSD Initialization ([page 8-50](#)) SSD Initialization ([page 8-50](#))
		Data Sanitization ([page 8-50](#))
		Software Verification ([page 8-50](#))
	Optional Function ([page 8-51](#))	
	Restart Entire Device ([page 8-51](#))	
Edit Destination	Address Book ([page 3-22](#))	
	One Touch Key ([page 3-29](#))	
	Print List (refer to **FAX Operation Guide**)	
	Address Book Defaults	Sort ([page 8-52](#))
		Narrow Down ([page 8-52](#))
		Address Book Type ([page 8-52](#))

User Login/Job Accounting	User Login Setting	User Login (page 9-3)	
		Authentication Security	User Account Lockout Set. (page 9-5)
			Password Policy Settings (page 9-6)
		Local User List (page 9-8)	
		Local Authorization (page 9-20)	
		Group Authorization Set.	Group Authorization (page 9-21)
			Group List (page 9-22)
		Guest Authorization Set.	Guest Authorization (page 9-24)
			Guest Property (page 9-25)
		Obtain NW User Property (page 9-27)	
		Simple Login Settings	Simple Login (page 9-29)
			Simple Login Key (page 9-29)
		ID Card Settings	Keyboard Login (page 9-32)
			Additional Authentication (page 9-33)
		PIN Code Authorization (page 9-32)	
	Job Accounting Setting	Job Accounting (page 9-36)	
		Job Accounting Access (page 9-37)	
		Job Accounting (Local)	Print Accounting Report (page 9-51)
			Total Job Accounting (page 9-50)
			Each Job Accounting (page 9-50)
			Accounting List (page 9-38)
			Default Setting (page 9-46)
		Apply Limit (page 9-53)	
		Copier/Printer Count (page 9-54)	
	Unknown ID Job (page 9-55)		
User Property (page 9-12)			

Date/Timer/Energy Saver	Date/Time ([page 8-53](#))	
	Date Format ([page 8-53](#))	
	Time Zone ([page 8-53](#))	
	Auto Panel Reset ([page 8-53](#))	
	Auto Error Clear ([page 8-53](#))	
	Low Power Timer ([page 8-53](#))	
	Panel Reset Timer ([page 8-53](#))	
	Sleep Timer ([page 8-53](#))	
	Interrupt Clear Timer ([page 8-53](#))	
	Error Job Skip ([page 8-54](#))	
	Error Clear Timer ([page 8-54](#))	
	Unusable Time (refer to **FAX Operation Guide**)	
	Sleep Rules (models for Europe) ([page 8-54](#))	
	Sleep Level (models except for Europe) ([page 8-54](#))	
	EnergySaver RecoveryLevel ([page 8-55](#))	
	Weekly Timer Settings ([page 8-55](#))	
	Ping Timeout ([page 8-55](#))	
Adjustment/Maintenance	**Density Adjustment**	Copy ([page 8-56](#))
		Send/Box ([page 8-56](#))
		FAX (refer to **FAX Operation Guide**)
	Background Density Adj.	Copy (Auto) ([page 8-56](#))
		Send/Box (Auto) ([page 8-56](#))
	Sharpness Adjustment	Copy ([page 8-56](#))
		Send/Box ([page 8-56](#))
	Drum Refresh ([page 8-56](#))	
	Correcting Black Lines ([page 8-56](#))	
	System Initialization ([page 8-56](#))	
	Display Brightness ([page 8-57](#))	
	Quiet Mode	Quiet Mode ([page 8-57](#))
		Specify for Each Job ([page 8-57](#))
	Memory Diagnostics ([page 8-57](#))	
	Auto Color Correction ([page 8-57](#))	
	Color Registration ([page 8-57](#))	
	Calibration Cycle ([page 8-57](#))	
	Tone Curve Adjustment ([page 8-57](#))	
	Calibration ([page 8-57](#))	
	Developer Refresh ([page 8-57](#))	
	Laser Scanner Cleaning ([page 8-57](#))	

Adjustment/Maintenance	First Print Position ([page 8-58](#))	
	Contrast	Copy([page 8-58](#))
		Send/Box ([page 8-58](#)))
	Altitude Adjustment ([page 8-58](#))	
	Advanced Punch Precision ([page 8-58](#))	
Internet ([page 8-58](#))		
Application ([page 8-58](#))		

1 Legal and Safety Information

Please read this information before using your machine. This chapter provides information on the following topics.

Notice

Safety Conventions in This Guide

The sections of this guide and parts of the machine marked with symbols are safety warnings meant to protect the user, other individuals and surrounding objects, and ensure correct and safe usage of the machine. The symbols and their meanings are indicated below.

⚠ **WARNING**: Indicates that serious injury or even death may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with the related points.

⚠ **CAUTION**: Indicates that personal injury or mechanical damage may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with the related points.

Symbols

The △ symbol indicates that the related section includes safety warnings. Specific points of attention are indicated inside the symbol.

⚠ ... [General warning]

⚠ ... [Warning of high temperature]

The ◇ symbol indicates that the related section includes information on prohibited actions. Specifics of the prohibited action are indicated inside the symbol.

🚫 ... [Warning of prohibited action]

🚫 ... [Disassembly prohibited]

The ● symbol indicates that the related section includes information on actions which must be performed. Specifics of the required action are indicated inside the symbol.

❗ ... [Alert of required action]

⏚ ... [Remove the power plug from the outlet]

⏚ ... [Always connect the machine to an outlet with a ground connection]

Please contact your service representative to order a replacement if the safety warnings in this Operation Guide are illegible or if the guide itself is missing (fee required).

> 📎 **NOTE**
> An original which resembles a bank note closely may not be copied properly in some rare cases because this machine is equipped with a counterfeiting prevention function.

Environment

The service environmental conditions are as follows:

Temperature	50 to 90.5 °F (10 to 32.5 °C) (But humidity should be 70% or less when temperature is 90.5 °F (32.5 °C).)
Humidity	10 to 80% (But temperature should be 86 °F (30 °C) or less when humidity is 80%.)

Avoid the following locations when selecting a site for the machine.

*   Avoid locations near a window or with exposure to direct sunlight.

*   Avoid locations with vibrations.

*   Avoid locations with drastic temperature fluctuations.

*   Avoid locations with direct exposure to hot or cold air.

*   Avoid poorly ventilated locations.

If the floor is delicate against casters, when this machine is moved after installation, the floor material may be damaged.

During copying, some ozone is released, but the amount does not cause any ill effect to one's health. If, however, the machine is used over a long period of time in a poorly ventilated room or when making an extremely large number of copies, the smell may become unpleasant. To maintain the appropriate environment for copy work, it is suggested that the room be properly ventilated.

Precautions for Use

Cautions when handling consumables

⚠ CAUTION

Do not attempt to incinerate parts which contain toner. Dangerous sparks may cause burns.

Keep parts which contain toner out of the reach of children.

If toner happens to spill from parts which contain toner, avoid inhalation and ingestion, as well as contact with your eyes and skin.

- If you do happen to inhale toner, move to a place with fresh air and gargle thoroughly with a large amount of water. If coughing develops, contact a physician.
- If you do happen to ingest toner, rinse your mouth with water and drink 1 or 2 cups of water to dilute the contents of your stomach. If necessary, contact a physician.
- If you do happen to get toner in your eyes, flush them thoroughly with water. If there is any remaining tenderness, contact a physician.
- If toner does happen to get on your skin, wash with soap and water.

Do not attempt to force open or destroy parts which contain toner.

Other precautions

Return the exhausted toner container and waste toner box to your dealer or service representative. The collected toner container and waste toner box will be recycled or disposed in accordance with the relevant regulations.

Store the machine while avoiding exposure to direct sunlight.

Store the machine in a place where the temperature stays below 40 °C while avoiding sharp changes of temperature and humidity.

If the machine will not be used for an extended period of time, remove the paper from the cassette and the Multi Purpose (MP) Tray, return it to its original package and reseal it.

Laser Safety (Europe)

Laser radiation could be hazardous to the human body. For this reason, laser radiation emitted inside this machine is hermetically sealed within the protective housing and external cover. In the normal operation of the product by user, no radiation can leak from the machine.

This machine is classified as Class 1 laser product under IEC/EN 60825-1:2007.

Caution: Performance of procedures other than those specified in this manual may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

These labels are attached to the laser scanner unit inside the machine and are not in a user access area.
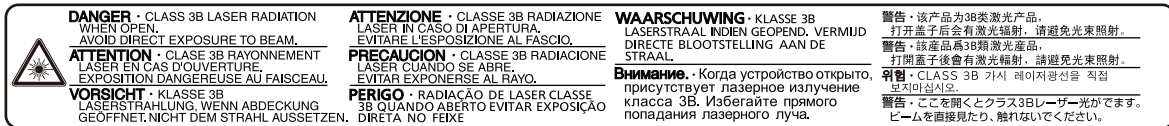
Regarding CLASS 1 laser products, information is provided on the rating label.

Legal Restriction on Copying/Scanning

It may be prohibited to copy/scan copyrighted material without permission of the copyright owner.

Copying/Scanning the following items is prohibited and may be penalized by low. It may not be limited to these items. Do not knowingly copy/scan the items that are not to be copied/scanned.

- Paper money
- Bank note
- Securities
- Stamp
- Passport
- Certificate

Local laws and regulations may prohibit or restrict copying/scanning of other items not mentioned above.

EN ISO 7779

Maschinenlärminformations-Verordnung 3. GPSGV, 06.01.2004: Der höchste Schalldruckpegel beträgt 70 dB (A) oder weniger gemäß EN ISO 7779.

EK1-ITB 2000

Das Gerät ist nicht für die Benutzung im unmittelbaren Gesichtsfeld am Bildschirmarbeitsplatz vorgesehen. Um störende Reflexionen am Bildschirmarbeitsplatz zu vermeiden, darf dieses Produkt nicht im unmittelbaren Gesichtsfeld platziert werden.

Legal Information

Copying or other reproduction of all or part of this guide without the prior written consent of Copyright owner is prohibited.

Regarding Trade Names

- PRESCRIBE is registered trademark of Kyocera Corporation.

- KPDL is a trademark of Kyocera Corporation.

- Microsoft, Windows, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008, Windows 7, Windows Server 2012, Windows 8, Windows 8.1 and Internet Explorer are registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. and/or other countries.

- PCL is a trademark of Hewlett-Packard Company.

- Adobe Acrobat, Adobe Reader and PostScript are trademarks of Adobe Systems, Incorporated.

- Ethernet is a registered trademark of Xerox Corporation.

- IBM and IBM PC/AT are trademarks of International Business Machines Corporation.

- AppleTalk, Bonjour, Macintosh, and Mac OS are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

- All European language fonts installed in this machine are used under licensing agreement with Monotype Imaging Inc.

- Helvetica, Palatino and Times are registered trademarks of Linotype GmbH.

- ITC Avant Garde Gothic, ITC Bookman, ITC ZapfChancery and ITC ZapfDingbats are registered trademarks of International Typeface Corporation.

- ThinPrint is a trademark of Cortado AG in Germany and other countries.

- UFST™ MicroType® fonts by Monotype Imaging Inc. are installed in this machine.

- This machine contains the software having modules developed by Independent JPEG Group.

- This product contains NetFront Browser of ACCESS CO., LTD.

- ACCESS, ACCESS logo and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in the United States, Japan and other countries.

- © 2011 ACCESS CO., LTD. All rights reserved.

- Java is a registered trademark of Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- iPad, iPhone and iPod touch are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

- AirPrint and the AirPrint logo are trademarks of Apple Inc.

- iOS is a trademark or registered trademark of Cisco in the U.S. and other countries and is used under license by Apple Inc.

- Google and Google Cloud Print™ are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of Google Inc.

- Mopria™ is registered trademarks of Mopria™ Alliance.

All other brands and product names are registered trademarks or trademarks of their respective companies. The designations ™ and ® will not be used in this Operation Guide.

GPL/LGPL

This product contains GPL (http://www.gnu.org/licenses/gpl.html) and/or LGPL (http://www.gnu.org/licenses/lgpl.html) software as part of its firmware. You can get the source code, and you are permitted to copy, redistribute and modify it under the terms of GPL/LGPL.

OpenSSL License

Copyright (c) 1998-2006 The OpenSSL Project. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgment: "This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit. (http://www.openssl.org/)"

4. The names "OpenSSL Toolkit" and "OpenSSL Project" must not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without prior written permission.
For written permission, please contact openssl-core@openssl.org.

5. Products derived from this software may not be called "OpenSSL" nor may "OpenSSL" appear in their names without prior written permission of the OpenSSL Project.

6. Redistributions of any form whatsoever must retain the following acknowledgment: "This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit (http://www.openssl.org/)"

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE OpenSSL PROJECT "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE OpenSSL PROJECT OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Original SSLeay License

Copyright (C) 1995-1998 Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com) All rights reserved.

This package is an SSL implementation written by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com). The implementation was written so as to conform with Netscapes SSL.

This library is free for commercial and non-commercial use as long as the following conditions are adhered to. The following conditions apply to all code found in this distribution, be it the RC4, RSA, lhash, DES, etc., code; not just the SSL code. The SSL documentation included with this distribution is covered by the same copyright terms except that the holder is Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com).

Copyright remains Eric Young's, and as such any Copyright notices in the code are not to be removed.

If this package is used in a product, Eric Young should be given attribution as the author of the parts of the library used.

This can be in the form of a textual message at program startup or in documentation (online or textual) provided with the package.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement: "This product includes cryptographic software written by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com)" The word 'cryptographic' can be left out if the routines from the library being used are not cryptographic related :-).

4. If you include any Windows specific code (or a derivative thereof) from the apps directory (application code) you must include an acknowledgement: "This product includes software written by Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com)"

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY ERIC YOUNG "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

The licence and distribution terms for any publically available version or derivative of this code cannot be changed. i.e. this code cannot simply be copied and put under another distribution licence [including the GNU Public Licence.]

Monotype Imaging License Agreement

1 *Software* shall mean the digitally encoded, machine readable, scalable outline data as encoded in a special format as well as the UFST Software.

2 You agree to accept a non-exclusive license to use the Software to reproduce and display weights, styles and versions of letters, numerals, characters and symbols (*Typefaces*) solely for your own customary business or personal purposes at the address stated on the registration card you return to Monotype Imaging. Under the terms of this License Agreement, you have the right to use the Fonts on up to three printers. If you need to have access to the fonts on more than three printers, you need to acquire a multiuser license agreement which can be obtained from Monotype Imaging. Monotype Imaging retains all rights, title and interest to the Software and Typefaces and no rights are granted to you other than a License to use the Software on the terms expressly set forth in this Agreement.

3 To protect proprietary rights of Monotype Imaging, you agree to maintain the Software and other proprietary information concerning the Typefaces in strict confidence and to establish reasonable procedures regulating access to and use of the Software and Typefaces.

4 You agree not to duplicate or copy the Software or Typefaces, except that you may make one backup copy. You agree that any such copy shall contain the same proprietary notices as those appearing on the original.

5 This License shall continue until the last use of the Software and Typefaces, unless sooner terminated. This License may be terminated by Monotype Imaging if you fail to comply with the terms of this License and such failure is not remedied within thirty (30) days after notice from Monotype Imaging. When this License expires or is terminated, you shall either return to Monotype Imaging or destroy all copies of the Software and Typefaces and documentation as requested.

6 You agree that you will not modify, alter, disassemble, decrypt, reverse engineer or decompile the Software.

7 Monotype Imaging warrants that for ninety (90) days after delivery, the Software will perform in accordance with Monotype Imaging-published specifications, and the diskette will be free from defects in material and workmanship. Monotype Imaging does not warrant that the Software is free from all bugs, errors and omissions.

The parties agree that all other warranties, expressed or implied, including warranties of fitness for a particular purpose and merchantability, are excluded.

8 Your exclusive remedy and the sole liability of Monotype Imaging in connection with the Software and Typefaces is repair or replacement of defective parts, upon their return to Monotype Imaging.

In no event will Monotype Imaging be liable for lost profits, lost data, or any other incidental or consequential damages, or any damages caused by abuse or misapplication of the Software and Typefaces.

9 Massachusetts U.S.A. law governs this Agreement.

10 You shall not sublicense, sell, lease, or otherwise transfer the Software and/or Typefaces without the prior written consent of Monotype Imaging.

11 Use, duplication or disclosure by the Government is subject to restrictions as set forth in the Rights in Technical Data and Computer Software clause at FAR 252-227-7013, subdivision (b)(3)(ii) or subparagraph (c)(1)(ii), as appropriate. Further use, duplication or disclosure is subject to restrictions applicable to restricted rights software as set forth in FAR 52.227-19 (c)(2).

12 You acknowledge that you have read this Agreement, understand it, and agree to be bound by its terms and conditions. Neither party shall be bound by any statement or representation not contained in this Agreement. No change in this Agreement is effective unless written and signed by properly authorized representatives of each party. By opening this diskette package, you agree to accept the terms and conditions of this Agreement.

Knopflerfish License

This product includes software developed by the Knopflerfish Project.
http://www.knopflerfish.org

Copyright 2003-2010 The Knopflerfish Project. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

- Neither the name of the KNOPFLERFISH project nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Apache License (Version 2.0)

Apache License
Version 2.0, January 2004
http://www.apache.org/licenses/

TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR USE, REPRODUCTION, AND DISTRIBUTION

1. Definitions.

"License" shall mean the terms and conditions for use, reproduction, and distribution as defined by Sections 1 through 9 of this document.

"Licensor" shall mean the copyright owner or entity authorized by the copyright owner that is granting the License.

"Legal Entity" shall mean the union of the acting entity and all other entities that control, are controlled by, or are under common control with that entity. For the purposes of this definition, "control" means (i) the power, direct or indirect, to cause the direction or management of such entity, whether by contract or otherwise, or (ii) ownership of fifty percent (50%) or more of the outstanding shares, or (iii) beneficial ownership of such entity.

"You" (or "Your") shall mean an individual or Legal Entity exercising permissions granted by this License.

"Source" form shall mean the preferred form for making modifications, including but not limited to software source code, documentation source, and configuration files.

"Object" form shall mean any form resulting from mechanical transformation or translation of a Source form, including but not limited to compiled object code, generated documentation, and conversions to other media types.

"Work" shall mean the work of authorship, whether in Source or Object form, made available under the License, as indicated by a copyright notice that is included in or attached to the work (an example is provided in the Appendix below).

"Derivative Works" shall mean any work, whether in Source or Object form, that is based on (or derived from) the Work and for which the editorial revisions, annotations, elaborations, or other modifications represent, as a whole, an original work of authorship. For the purposes of this License, Derivative Works shall not include works that remain separable from, or merely link (or bind by name) to the interfaces of, the Work and Derivative Works thereof.

"Contribution" shall mean any work of authorship, including the original version of the Work and any modifications or additions to that Work or Derivative Works thereof, that is intentionally submitted to Licensor for inclusion in the Work by the copyright owner or by an individual or Legal Entity authorized to submit on behalf of the copyright owner. For the purposes of this definition, "submitted" means any form of electronic, verbal, or written communication sent to the Licensor or its representatives, including but not limited to communication on electronic mailing lists, source code control systems, and issue tracking systems that are managed by, or on behalf of, the Licensor for the purpose of discussing and improving the Work, but excluding communication that is conspicuously marked or otherwise designated in writing by the copyright owner as "Not a Contribution."

"Contributor" shall mean Licensor and any individual or Legal Entity on behalf of whom a Contribution has been received by Licensor and subsequently incorporated within the Work.

2. Grant of Copyright License. Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, each Contributor hereby grants to You a perpetual, worldwide, non-exclusive, no-charge, royalty-free, irrevocable copyright license to reproduce, prepare Derivative Works of, publicly display, publicly perform, sublicense, and distribute the Work and such Derivative Works in Source or Object form.

3. Grant of Patent License. Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, each Contributor hereby grants to You a perpetual, worldwide, non-exclusive, no-charge, royalty-free, irrevocable (except as stated in this section) patent license to make, have made, use, offer to sell, sell, import, and otherwise transfer the Work, where such license applies only to those patent claims licensable by such Contributor that are necessarily infringed by their Contribution(s) alone or by combination of their Contribution(s) with the Work to which such Contribution(s) was submitted. If You institute patent litigation against any entity (including a cross-claim or counterclaim in a lawsuit) alleging that the Work or a Contribution incorporated within the Work constitutes direct or contributory patent infringement, then any patent licenses granted to You under this License for that Work shall terminate as of the date such litigation is filed.

4. Redistribution. You may reproduce and distribute copies of the Work or Derivative Works thereof in any medium, with or without modifications, and in Source or Object form, provided that You meet the following conditions:

(a)You must give any other recipients of the Work or Derivative Works a copy of this License; and

(b)You must cause any modified files to carry prominent notices stating that You changed the files; and

(c)You must retain, in the Source form of any Derivative Works that You distribute, all copyright, patent, trademark, and attribution notices from the Source form of the Work, excluding those notices that do not pertain to any part of the Derivative Works; and

(d)If the Work includes a "NOTICE" text file as part of its distribution, then any Derivative Works that You distribute must include a readable copy of the attribution notices contained within such NOTICE file, excluding those notices that do not pertain to any part of the Derivative Works, in at least one of the following places: within a NOTICE text file distributed as part of the Derivative Works; within the Source form or documentation, if provided along with the Derivative Works; or, within a display generated by the Derivative Works, if and wherever such third-party notices normally appear. The contents of the NOTICE file are for informational purposes only and do not modify the License. You may add Your own attribution notices within Derivative Works that You distribute, alongside or as an addendum to the NOTICE text from the Work, provided that such additional attribution notices cannot be construed as modifying the License.

You may add Your own copyright statement to Your modifications and may provide additional or different license terms and conditions for use, reproduction, or distribution of Your modifications, or for any such Derivative Works as a whole, provided Your use, reproduction, and distribution of the Work otherwise complies with the conditions stated in this License.

5. Submission of Contributions. Unless You explicitly state otherwise, any Contribution intentionally submitted for inclusion in the Work by You to the Licensor shall be under the terms and conditions of this License, without any additional terms or conditions. Notwithstanding the above, nothing herein shall supersede or modify the terms of any separate license agreement you may have executed with Licensor regarding such Contributions.

6. Trademarks. This License does not grant permission to use the trade names, trademarks, service marks, or product names of the Licensor, except as required for reasonable and customary use in describing the origin of the Work and reproducing the content of the NOTICE file.

7. Disclaimer of Warranty. Unless required by applicable law or agreed to in writing, Licensor provides the Work (and each Contributor provides its Contributions) on an "AS IS" BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF ANY KIND, either express or implied, including, without limitation, any warranties or conditions of TITLE, NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY, or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. You are solely responsible for determining the appropriateness of using or redistributing the Work and assume any risks associated with Your exercise of permissions under this License.

8. Limitation of Liability. In no event and under no legal theory, whether in tort (including negligence), contract, or otherwise, unless required by applicable law (such as deliberate and grossly negligent acts) or agreed to in writing, shall any Contributor be liable to You for damages, including any direct, indirect, special, incidental, or consequential damages of any character arising as a result of this License or out of the use or inability to use the Work (including but not limited to damages for loss of goodwill, work stoppage, computer failure or malfunction, or any and all other commercial damages or losses), even if such Contributor has been advised of the possibility of such damages.

9. Accepting Warranty or Additional Liability. While redistributing the Work or Derivative Works thereof, You may choose to offer, and charge a fee for, acceptance of support, warranty, indemnity, or other liability obligations and/or rights consistent with this License. However, in accepting such obligations, You may act only on Your own behalf and on Your sole responsibility, not on behalf of any other Contributor, and only if You agree to indemnify, defend, and hold each Contributor harmless for any liability incurred by, or claims asserted against, such Contributor by reason of your accepting any such warranty or additional liability.

END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

APPENDIX: How to apply the Apache License to your work.

To apply the Apache License to your work, attach the following boilerplate notice, with the fields enclosed by brackets "[]" replaced with your own identifying information. (Don't include the brackets!) The text should be enclosed in the appropriate comment syntax for the file format. We also recommend that a file or class name and description of purpose be included on the same "printed page" as the copyright notice for easier identification within third-party archives.

Copyright [yyyy] [name of copyright owner]

Licensed under the Apache License, Version 2.0 (the "License"); you may not use this file except in compliance with the License. You may obtain a copy of the License at

http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0

Unless required by applicable law or agreed to in writing, software distributed under the License is distributed on an "AS IS" BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF ANY KIND, either express or implied. See the License for the specific language governing permissions and limitations under the License.

Energy Saving Control Function

The device comes equipped with a Low Power Mode where energy consumption is reduced after a certain amount of time elapses since the device was last used, as well as a Sleep where printer and fax functions remain in a waiting state but power consumption is still reduced to a minimum when there is no activity with the device within a set amount of time.

Low Power Mode

The device automatically enters Low Power Mode when 3 minutes have passed since the device was last used. The amount of time of no activity that must pass before Low Power Mode is activated may be lengthened.

➡

Sleep

The device automatically enters Sleep when 20 minutes (models for Europe), or 45 minutes (models except for Europe) have passed since the device was last used. The amount of time of no activity that must pass before Sleep is activated may be lengthened.

➡

Auto Power Off (models for Europe)

The device automatically turns its power off after the preset time has passed since the device was last used, when the device is not connected to any computers.

Automatic 2-Sided Print Function

This device includes 2-sided printing as a standard function. For example, by printing two 1-sided originals onto a single sheet of paper as a 2-sided print, it is possible to lower the amount of paper used.

➡

Printing in duplex mode reduces paper consumption and contributes to the conservation of forest resources. Duplex mode also reduces the amount of paper that must be purchased, and thereby reduces cost. It is recommended that machines capable of duplex printing be set to use duplex mode by default.

Resource Saving - Paper

For the preservation and sustainable use of forest resources, it is recommended that recycled as well as virgin paper certified under environmental stewardship initiatives or carrying recognised ecolabels, which meet EN 12281:2002[*] or an equivalent quality standard, be used.

This machine also supports printing on 64 g/m^2 paper. Using such paper containing less raw materials can lead to further saving of forest resources.

* : EN12281:2002 "Printing and business paper - Requirements for copy paper for dry toner imaging processes"

Your sales or service representative can provide information about recommended paper types.

Environmental benefits of "Power Management"

To reduce power consumption when idle, this machine is equipped with a power management function that automatically activates energy-saving mode when the machine is idle for a certain period of time.
Although it takes the machine a slight amount of time to return to READY mode when in energy-saving mode, a significant reduction in energy consumption is possible. It is recommended that the machine be used with the activation time for energy-saving mode set to the default setting.

Energy Star (ENERGY STAR®) Program

We have determined as a participating company in the International Energy Star Program that this product is compliant with the standards laid out in the International Energy Star Program.

ENERGY STAR® is a voluntary energy efficiency program with the goal of developing and promoting the use of products with high energy efficiency in order to help prevent global warming. By purchasing ENERGY STAR® qualified products, customers can help reduce emissions of greenhouse gases during product use and cut energy-related costs.

2 Installing and Setting up the Machine

This chapter provides information for the administrator of this machine, such as part names, cable connection, and software installation.

Part Names (Machine Exterior)

1	Document Processor	9	Original Table
2	Operation Panel	10	Original Width Guides
3	Power Switch	11	Slit Glass
4	Cassette 1	12	Inner Tray
5	Multi Purpose Tray	13	Handles
6	USB Memory Slot	14	Front Cover
7	Original Eject Table	15	Platen
8	Original Stopper	16	Original Size Indicator Plates
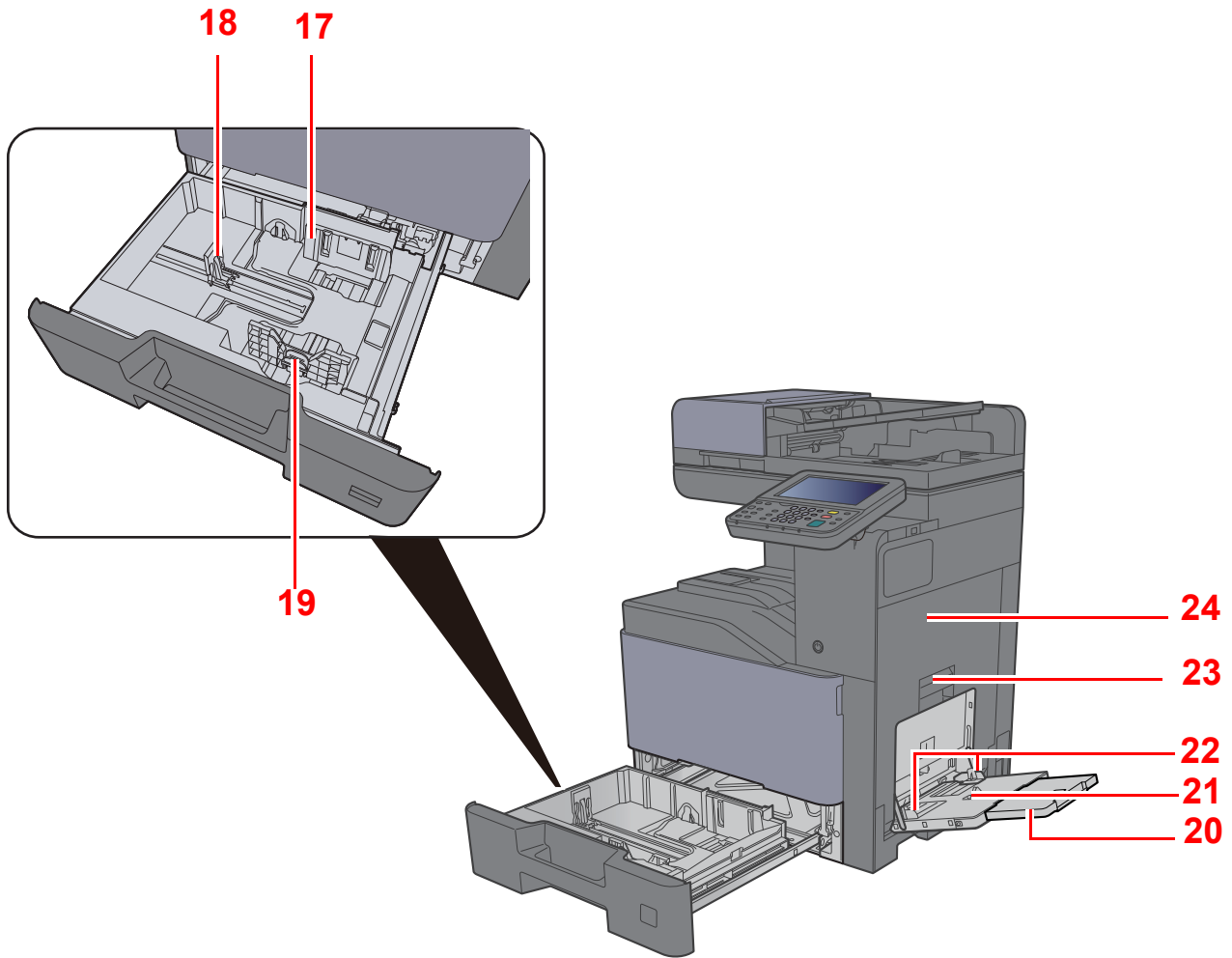
17 Paper Width Guide

18 Paper Length Guide

19 Paper Width Adjusting Tab

20 Support Tray Section of the Multi Purpose Tray

21 Multi Purpose Tray

22 Paper Width Guide

23 Right Cover 1 Lever

24 Right Cover 1

Part Names (Connectors/Interior)
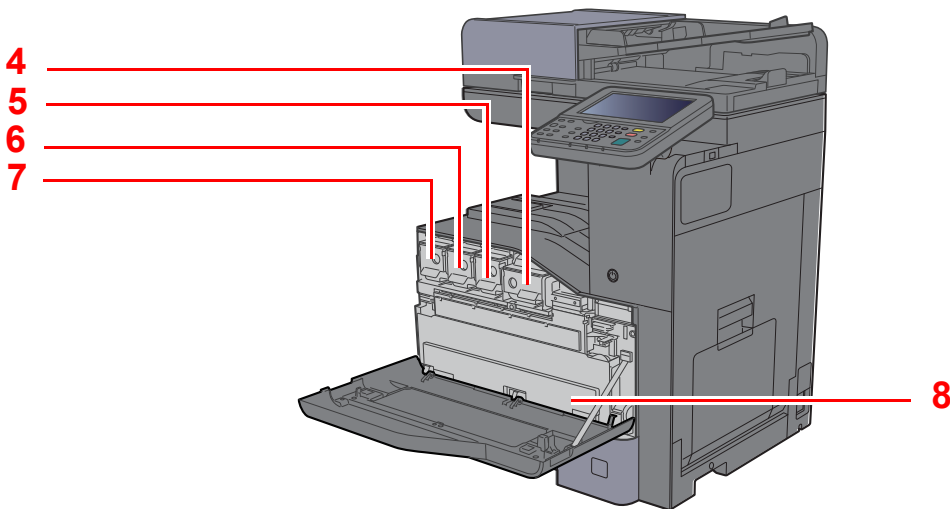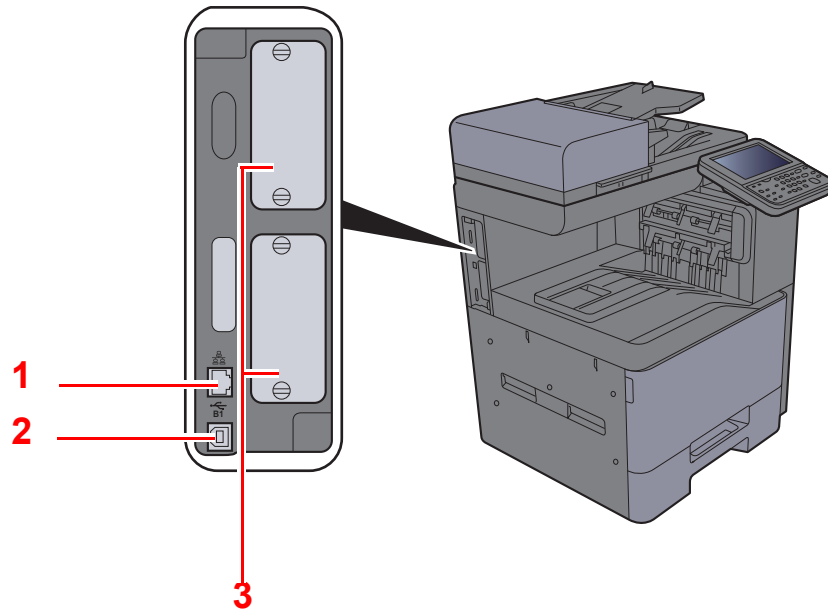
1 Network Interface Connector	5 Toner Container (Magenta)
2 USB Interface Connector (Option in Europe)	6 Toner Container (Cyan)
3 Option Interface Slot	7 Toner Container (Yellow)
4 Toner Container (Black)	8 Waste Toner Box

Part Names (With Optional Equipments Attached)
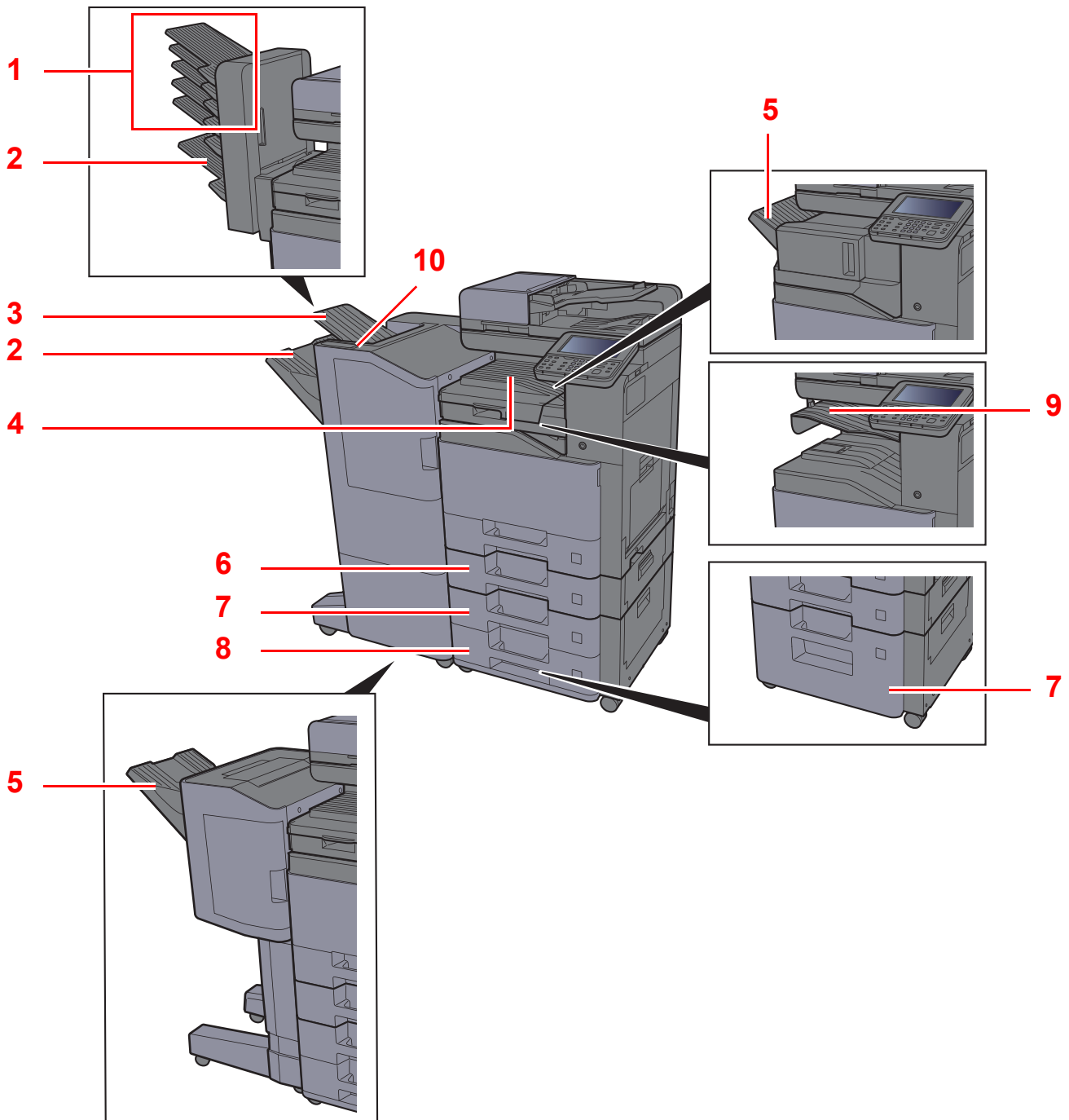
1	Tray 1 to 5 (tray 1 is the top tray)	6	Cassette 2
2	Tray A	7	Cassette 3
3	Tray B	8	Cassette 4
4	Inner Tray	9	Job Separator Tray
5	Finisher Tray	10	Control Section of the Finisher

➡ Optional Equipment (page 11-2)

➡ Manual Staple (page 5-69)

Connecting the Machine and Other Devices

Prepare the cables necessary to suit the environment and purpose of the machine use.

When Connecting the Machine to the PC via USB

USB interface connector is an option for European models.
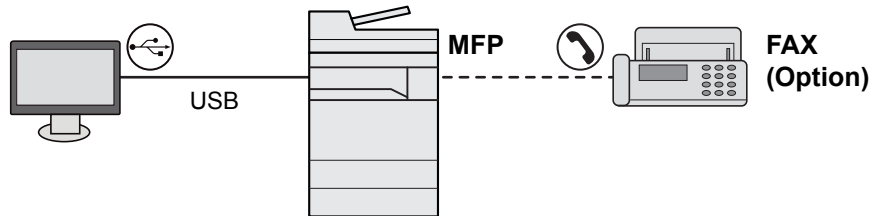
When Connecting the Machine to the PC on the Network
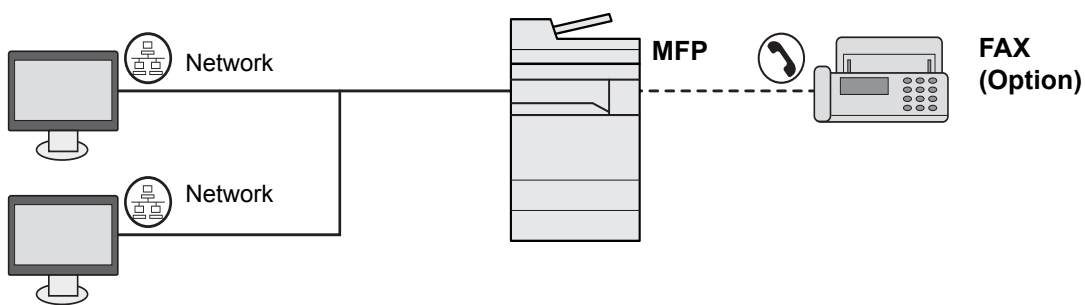
> **NOTE**
>
> If you are using the machine with the optional wireless interface kit attached, you do not need to connect the LAN cable. To use a wireless LAN, it is necessary to change the default settings for the machine using the System Menu.
>
> ➜ Optional Network (page 8-47)

Cables that Can Be Used

Connection Environment	Function	Necessary Cable
Connect a LAN cable to the machine.	Printer/Scanner/Network FAX[*1]	LAN cable (10BASE-T, 100BASE-TX, 1000BASE-T)
Connect a USB cable to the machine.	Printer/Scanner (TWAIN/WIA)	USB2.0 compatible cable (Hi-Speed USB compliant, Max. 5.0 m)

*1   Only on products with the fax function installed.

Connecting Cables

Connecting LAN Cable

> **✓ IMPORTANT**
>
> **If the power is on, turn the power switch off.**
>
> ➡ Power Off (page 2-9)

1 Connect the cable to the machine.

1 Connect the LAN cable to the network interface connector.
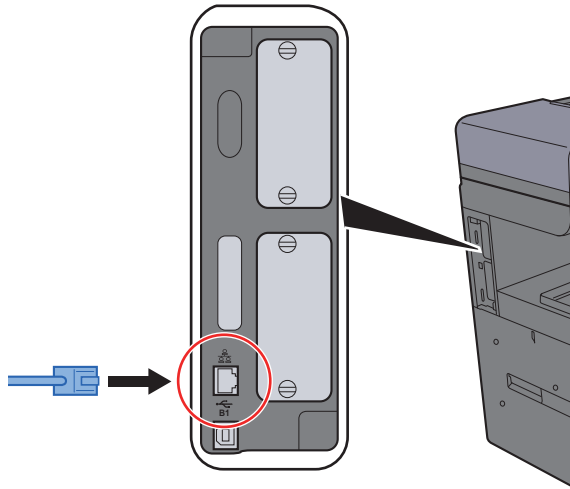
2 Connect the other end of the cable to the hub.

2 Power on the machine and configure the network.

➡ Network Setup (LAN Cable Connection) (page 2-27)

Connecting USB Cable

> ✅ **IMPORTANT**
>
> **If the power is on, turn the power switch off.**
>
> ➡ Power Off (page 2-9)

1 Connect the cable to the machine.

1 Connect the USB cable to the USB interface connector located on the left side of the body.

The USB interface connector is an option for Europe.
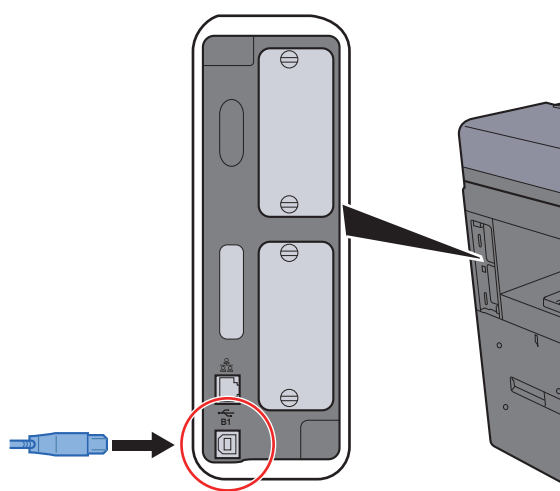
2 Connect the other end of the cable to the PC.

2 Power on the machine.

Connecting the Power Cable

1 Connect the cable to the machine.

Connect one end of the supplied power cable to the machine and the other end to a power outlet.

> ✅ **IMPORTANT**
>
> **Only use the power cable that comes with the machine.**

Power On/Off

Power On

1 **Turn the power switch on.**
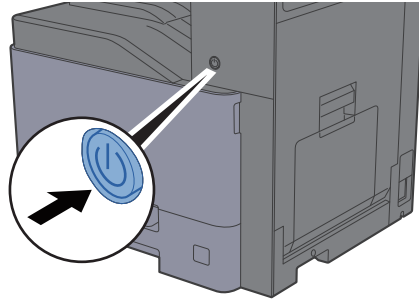
> ✅ **IMPORTANT**
>
> **When turning off the power switch, do not turn on the power switch again immediately. Wait more than 5 seconds, and then turn on the power switch.**

Power Off

> ✅ **IMPORTANT**
>
> **When the [Processing] indicator or [Memory] indicator is lit up or blinked, the machine is operating. Turning off the power switch while the machine is operating may cause it to malfunction.**

1 **Turn the power switch off.**
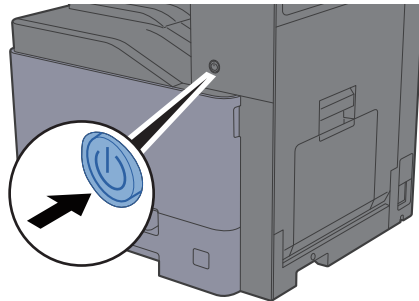
2 **Select [Yes] in the confirmation screen.**

It takes a few minutes for power off.

In case of not using the machine for an extended period of time...

> ⚠️ **CAUTION**
>
> If this machine will be left unused for an extended period (e.g. overnight), turn it off at the power switch. If the machine will not be used for an even longer period of time (e.g. vacation), remove the power plug from the outlet as a safety precaution.

> ✅ **IMPORTANT**
>
> If using the products equipped with the fax function, note that turning the machine off at the power switch disables fax transmission and reception. Remove paper from the cassettes and seal it in the paper storage bag to protect it from humidity.

Using the Operation Panel

Operation Panel Keys

Home	Displays the Home screen.		
System Menu	Displays the System Menu screen.	**Counter**	Displays the Counter screen.
Status/Job Cancel	Displays the Status/Job Cancel screen.	**Copy**	Displays the Copy screen.
Help	Displays the help guidance.	**Send**	Displays the screen for sending. You can change it to display the Address Book screen.
Accessibility Display	Switches the touch panel display on the Copy screen and the Send screen to a magnified view.	**FAX**	Displays the FAX screen.

Auto Color / Full Color / Black & White	Select the color mode. Auto Color: Automatically recognizes whether a document is color or black & white and then scans the document. Full Color: Scans all documents in full color. Black & White: Scans all documents in black & white.

Energy Saver	Puts the machine into Sleep Mode. Recovers from Sleep if in Sleep Mode.
Authentication/ Logout	Authenticates user switching, and exits the operation for the current user (i.e. log out).
Interrupt	Displays the Interrupt Copy screen.

Touch panel.
Displays buttons for configuring machine settings.
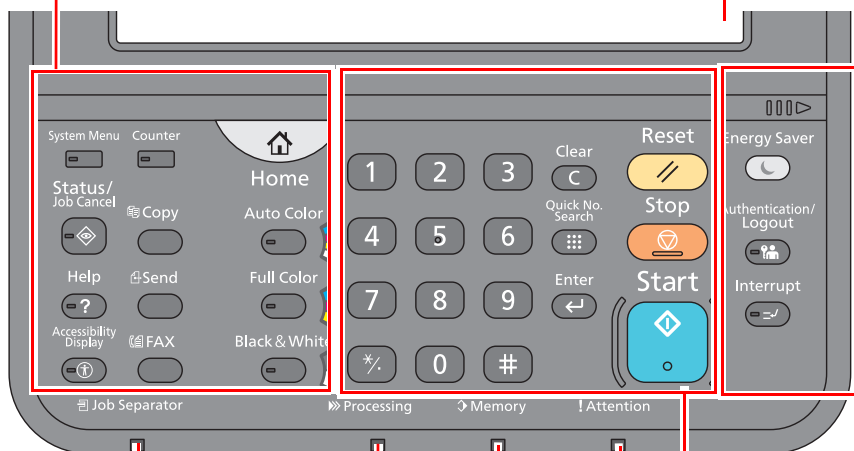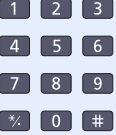
Lights when there is paper in the job separator tray.

Lights or blinks when an error occurs and a job is stopped.

Blinks while printing or sending/receiving.

Blinks while the machine is accessing the hard disk, fax memory or USB memory (general purpose item).

Numeric keys.	Enter numbers and symbols.	**Clear**	Clears entered numbers and characters.	**Reset**	Returns settings to their default states.
		Quick No. Search	Specifies registered information such as address numbers, user IDs and program numbers by number.	**Stop**	Cancels or pauses the job in progress.
		Enter	Finalizes numeric key entry, and finalizes details during setting of functions. Operates linked with the on-screen [**OK**].	**Start**	Starts copying and scanning operations and processing for setting operations.

Adjusting the Operation Panel Angle

The angle of the operation panel can be adjusted.
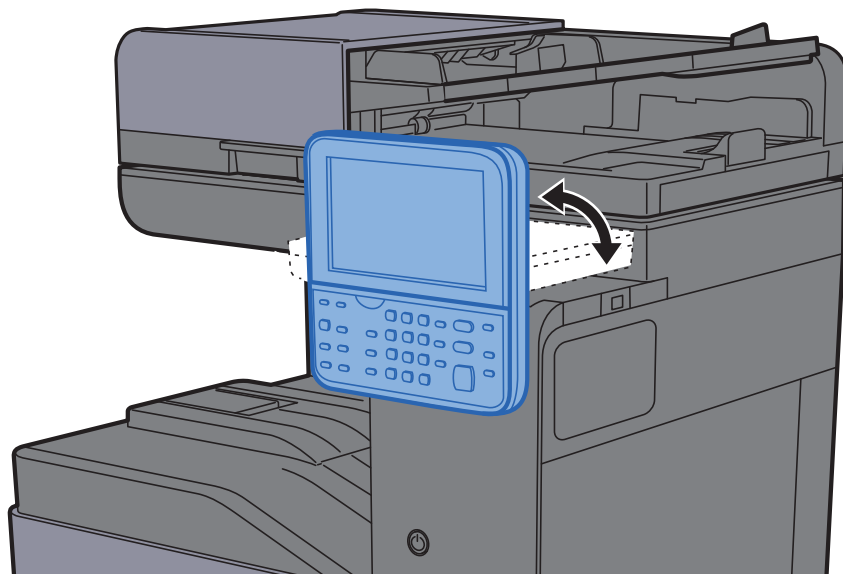
Touch Panel

Home Screen

This screen is displayed by selecting the [**Home**] key on the operation panel. Touching an icon will display the corresponding screen.

You can change the icons to display on the Home screen as well as its background.

➜ Editing the Home Screen (page 2-13)
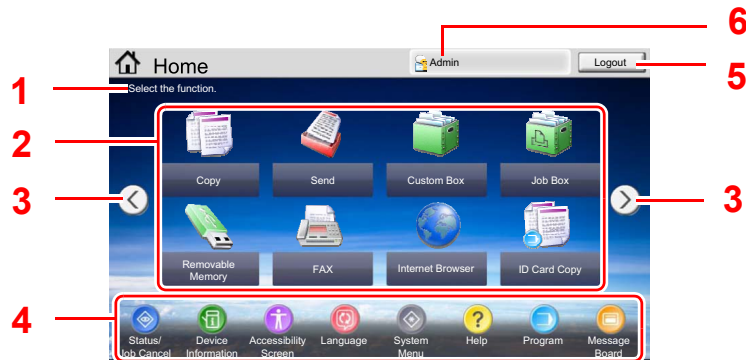
* The appearance may differ from your actual screen, depending on your configuration and option settings.

No.	Item	Description
1	Message	Displays the message depending on the status.
2	Desktop	Displays function. Icons that are not displayed on the first page will appear by changing the page.
3	Screen-switching keys	Use these buttons to switch between desktop pages. **NOTE** You can also switch views by touching the screen and moving the finger sideways (i.e. swiping).
4	Taskbar	Displays task icons.
5	[**Logout**]	Logs out the current user. This is displayed when user login administration is enabled.
6	Login User Name	Displays the logged-in user name. This is displayed when user login administration is enabled. Selecting "Login User Name" will display the information of the logged-in user.

Editing the Home Screen

You can change the background of the Home screen as well as which icons are displayed.

1 Display the screen.

1 [**System Menu**] key > [**Home**]

> **NOTE**
>
> If the user authentication screen appears, enter your login user name and login password and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login with administrator privileges. The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.
>
> | Model Name | Login User Name | Login Password |
> |---|---|---|
> | **350ci** | 3500 | 3500 |
> | **400ci** | 4000 | 4000 |

2 Configure the settings.

The available settings are shown below.

Item	Description
Customize Desktop	Specify the function icons to display on the desktop.[*1]
	Select [**Add**] to display the screen for selecting the function to display. Select the function to display and [**OK**].
	Select an icon and [**Previous**] or [**After**] to change the display position of the selected icon on the Desktop.
	To delete an icon from desktop, select the desired one and select [**Delete**].
Customize Taskbar	Specify the task icons to display on the taskbar.[*2]
Wallpaper	Configure the wallpaper of the Home screen.
	Value: Images 1 to 8

*1 Displays a maximum of 58 function icons including the installed applications and the functions that can be used when options are installed.

*2 8 task icons can be displayed.

Available Functions to Display on Desktop

Function	Icon	Description	Reference page
Copy[*1]		Displays the Copy screen.	page 5-17
Send[*1]		Displays the Send screen.	page 5-21
FAX[*2]		Displays the FAX screen.	Refer to the **FAX Operation Guide**.
Custom Box[*3]		Displays the Custom Box screen.	page 5-51
Job Box[*1]		Displays the Job Box screen.	page 4-15
Removable Memory[*1]		Displays the Removable Memory screen.	page 5-63
FAX Box[*2]		Displays the FAX Box screen.	Refer to the **FAX Operation Guide**.
Internet Browser		Displays the Internet Browser screen.	page 5-67
Send to Me (E-mail)[*4]		Displays the Send screen. The E-mail address of the logged-in user is set as the destination.	page 5-37
Send to Me from Box (E-mail)		Displays the Custom Box screen. The E-mail address of the logged-in user is set as the destination.	page 5-56
Program		Calls up the registered program. The icon will change according to the function of the program.	page 5-9
Application Name[*5]		Displays the selected applications.	page 5-12

*1 Selected at the time of shipment from factory.
*2 Displayed only on products with the fax function installed.
*3 Displayed when the hard disk is installed.
*4 Displayed when user login administration is enabled.
*5 The icon of the application appears.

2-14

Available Functions to Display on Taskbar

Function	Icon	Description	Reference page
Status/Job Cancel	/	Displays the Status screen. If an error occurs, the icon will show "!". Once the error clears, the display will return to normal.	-
Device Information		Displays the Device Information screen. Check the system and network information. You can also check information on the options that are used.	page 2-16
Accessibility/ Standard	/	Magnifies the text and icons on the screen. Pressing the Accessibility icon switches the icon to the Standard icon. Press the Standard icon to return to the previous view.	page 2-23
Language		Displays the Language setting screen in System Menu.	page 8-9
System Menu		Displays the System Menu screen.	page 8-2
Help		Displays the Help screen.	page 2-22
Program		Displays the program list screen.	page 5-9
Message Board		Displays the Message Board screen. **NOTE** To use this function, set "Message Board" to [**ON**] in System Menu.	page 8-26

Display for Device Information

Shows device information. Allows you to check system and network information, as well as options that are used.

1 [**Home**] key > [**Device Information**]

2 Check the device information.

Tab	Description
Identification/Network	You can check ID information such as the model name, serial number, host name and location, and the IP address.
FAX[*1]	You can check the local fax number, local fax name, local fax ID and other fax information.
Software Ver./Capability	You can check the software version and performance.
Option	You can check information on the options that are used.

*1   Displayed only on products with the fax function installed.

Display Setting Screen

The following procedure is an example of the Copy screen.
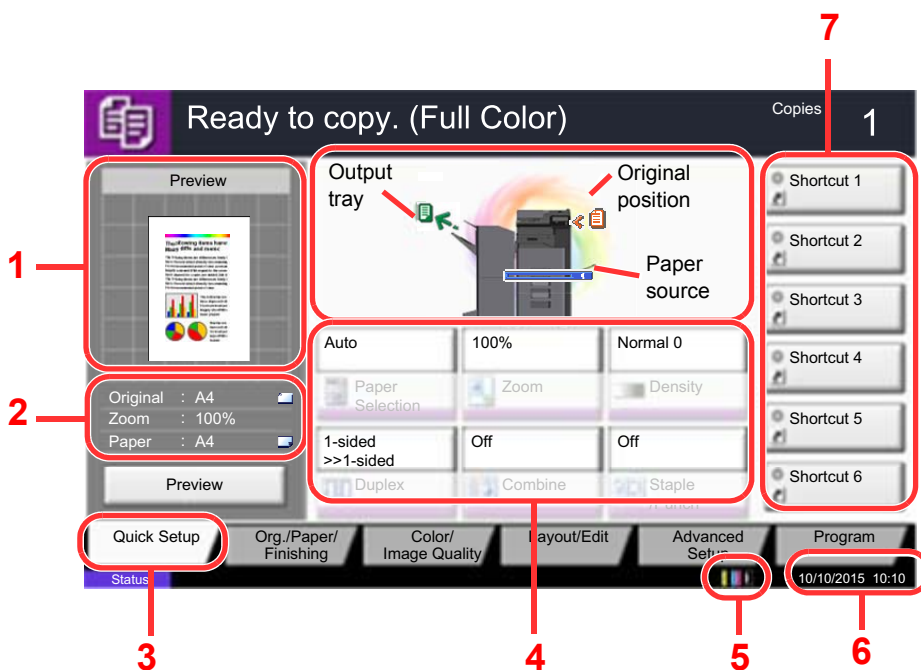
1   Shows an image of the output paper.

2   Original : Shows the original size when the original is placed.
   Zoom :   Shows the magnification of the document to be printed.
   Paper :   Shows the size of the output paper.

3   Displays the Quick Setup screen.

4   Set the copy functions.

5   Remaining amount of toner.

6   Displays the time.

7   Displays registered shortcuts.

2-16

Functions key

To configure the settings for functions, select the tab and press the function key.

Function key

Tab

Ready to copy. (Full Color)

Copies 1

Preview

Original Size

Paper Selection

Mixed Size Originals

Original Orientation

Collate/ Offset

Staple /Punch

Paper Output

Original : A4
Zoom : 100%
Paper : A4

Preview

Org./Paper/ Finishing

Color/ Image Quality

Layout/Edit

Advanced Setup

Program
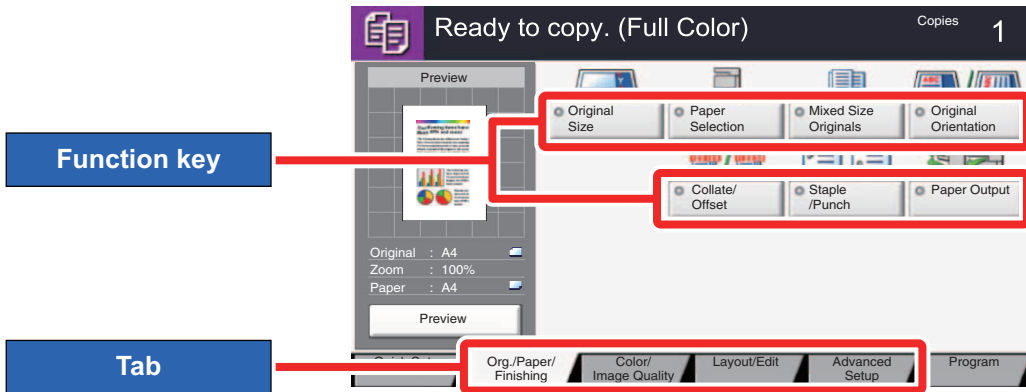
Using the Screen
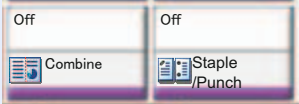
Touch panel keys that are pressed are outlined in red.

System Menu

Quick Setup Wizard

Cassette/MP Tray Settings

Common Settings

Home

Copy

Send

Document Box/Removable Memory

FAX

Printer

Report

System/Network

1/2

Close
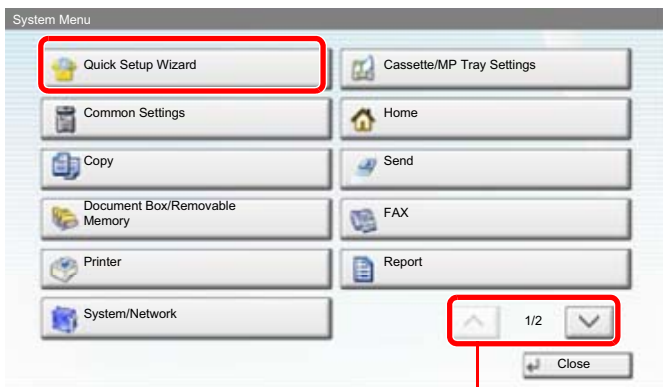
Select [∧] or [∨] to scroll up and down.

Display of Keys That Cannot Be Set

Keys of features that cannot be used due to feature combination restrictions or non-installation of options are in a non-selectable state.

Normal	Grayed out	Hidden
	In the following cases, the key is grayed out and cannot be selected. • Cannot be used in combination with a feature that is already selected. • Use prohibited by user control. • [**Preview**] has been selected.	Cannot be used because an option is not installed. Example: When a 1,000-Sheet Finisher is not installed, [Staple/Punch] does not appear.

NOTE

If a key that you wish to use is grayed out, the settings of the previous user may still be in effect. In this case, select the [**Reset**] key and try again.

If the key is still grayed out after the [**Reset**] key is selected, it is possible that you are prohibited from using the function by user control. Check with the administrator of the machine.

Original Preview

You can display a preview image of the scanned document on the panel.

> **NOTE**
>
> To view a preview of an image stored in a Custom Box, refer to the following:
>
> → Previewing Documents/Checking Document Details (page 5-49)
>
> The procedure described here is for copying a single-page original.

1 Display the screen.

[**Home**] key > [**Copy**] key or [**Send**] key

2 Place the originals.

3 Display a preview image.

1 Select [**Preview**].

The machine starts scanning the original. When scanning is completed, the preview image appears on the panel.
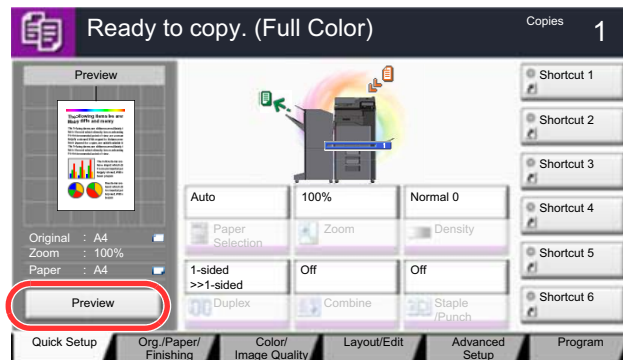
2   Select [**Detail**].

You can check the finished image in greater detail.
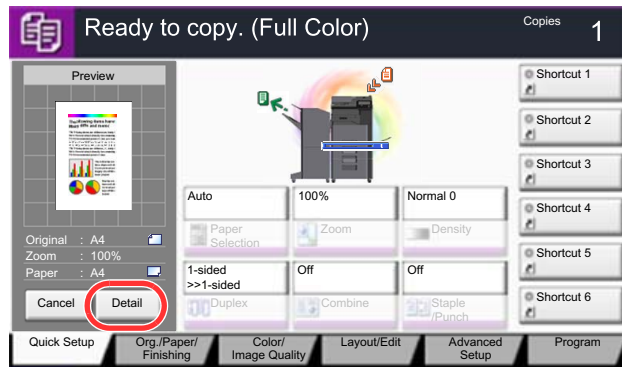
In magnified view, you can move the range of display.

Zoom out.   Zoom in.

In multiple-page documents, you can change pages by entering the desired page number.

In multiple-page documents, you can use these buttons to change pages.

Close the Preview screen.
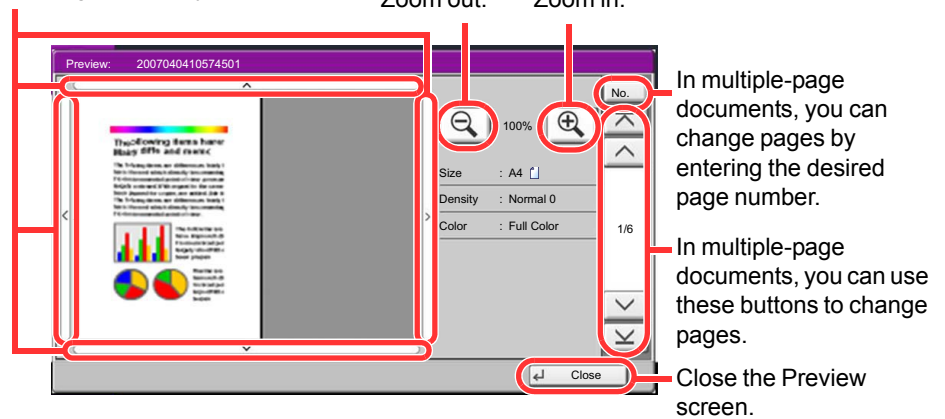
NOTE

To change the quality or the layout, select [**Cancel**] or the [**Stop**] key.
Change the settings and select [**Preview**] again to see a preview image with the new settings.

Depending on the function you are using, even if you scan a multi-page original, only the first page can be previewed.

3   If there is no problem with the preview image, press the [**Start**] key.

Copying starts.

Using the Preview Screen

When the Preview screen is displayed, you can do the following by moving the finger that is touching the touch panel.

Function	Description
Drag	With the finger touching the touch panel, slide the finger to move the position of the displayed preview.
Pinch in Pinch out	With two fingers touching the touch panel, widen or tighten the space between the two fingers to zoom in and out on the view.

Enter key and Quick No. Search key

This section explains how to use the [**Enter**] key and [**Quick No. Search**] key on the operation panel.

Using the [Enter] key (↵)

The [**Enter**] key has the same function as the key with the Enter mark (↵), such as the [**OK** ↵] key and the [**Close** ↵].

Using the [Quick No. Search] key (⠿)

The [**Quick No. Search**] key performs the same action as the [**No.**] displayed on the touch panel. Use the Quick No. Search keys to perform an action by simply entering a number directly using the numeric keys. For example, you can specify the speed dial for a transmission destination or recall a stored program by its program number.

For more information on speed dialing, refer to the following:

→ Specifying Destination (page 5-39)

Quick No.
Search

⠿

Ready to send.
Place original.

Destination
3

Destination	Detail

Address Book

E-mail Addr Entry

Enter One Touch key number using # keys.

(0001 - 1000)

0011

Folder Path Entry

FAX No. Entry

Cancel   ↵ OK

i-FAX Addr Entry

WSD Scan /DSM Scan

A OFFICE

B OFFICE

C OFFICE

On Hook   Direct

0001   AAA   BBB

0006   FFF   GGG   HHH   III   JJJ

Destination   Quick Setup   Org./Sending Data Format   Color/Image Quality   Advanced Setup   Program

2-21

Help Screen

If you have difficulty operating the machine, you can check how to operate it using the touch panel.

To show the Help screen for a function, select the [**Help**] key on the operation panel of the setting screen of that function. The Help screen shows explanations of functions and how to use them.

> **NOTE**
>
> To show the Help list, select [**Help**] on Home Screen.

Example: Checking the paper selection Help screen

1 **Display the Paper Selection screen.**

➡ Paper Selection (page 6-15)

2

Help

Help titles

Displays information about functions and machine operation.

Show the screen of the tab that includes the function explained in Help. (In the case of this screen, the screen that appears after step 1 of Setting Procedure is performed will appear.)

Scrolls up and down when the help text cannot be displayed in its entirety on a single screen.

Closes the Help screen and returns to the original screen.

Displays the Help list.

Selecting Paper Source

Select paper source by choosing a Cassette or MP Tray.

Setting Procedure
1. Press [Org./Paper/Finishing].
2. Press [Paper Selection].

1/2

Try It   Other Help   End

To show the Help list, select the [**Help**] key on the Home screen.

Accessibility Functions (Magnifying the View)

You can magnify the text and keys displayed on the touch panel. You can also select items and move to the next screen using the numeric keys.

> **NOTE**
>
> This function can be used on the Home screen and on the functions that were registered via Copy/Send Quick Setup.
>
> To configure any functions that are not displayed on the Accessibility screen, you need to return to the original view. Select the [**Accessibility Display**] key again.

While using the Copy or Send functions, select the [**Accessibility Display**] key.

Large keys and text appear on the touch panel.
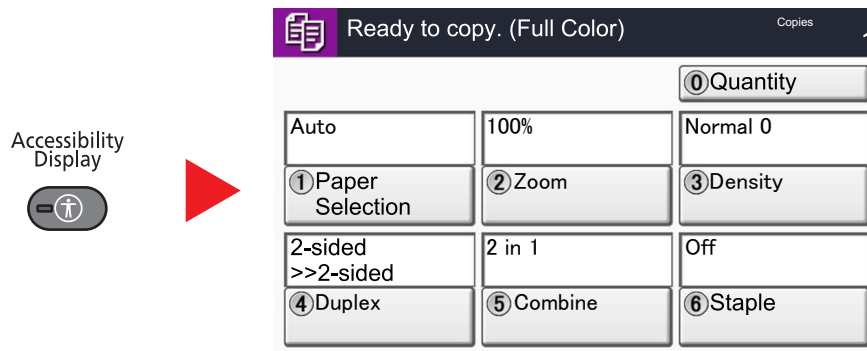
You can also control the screen using the numeric key corresponding to the number in circle. (Example: Press the [2] key on the numeric key pad to zoom.)

Control the functions according to the display on the screen.

Login/Logout

If you are setting a function that requires administrator rights, or if user login administration is enabled, you must enter your login user name and login password.

> 🔍 **NOTE**
>
> The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.
>
> | Model Name | Login User Name | Login Password |
> |---|---|---|
> | **350ci** | 3500 | 3500 |
> | **400ci** | 4000 | 4000 |
>
> You will be unable to login if you forget your login user name or login password. In this event, login with administrator privileges and change your login user name or login password.

Login

Normal login

1 Enter the login user name and login password to login.

1 If this screen is displayed during operations, select [**Login User Name**] to enter the login user name.

→ Character Entry Method (page 11-10)

2 [**Login Password**] > Enter the login password > [**OK**]

> 🔍 **NOTE**
>
> [**# Keys**] can be selected to enter the number with the numeric keys on the operation panel.
>
> If [**Network Authentication**] is selected as the user authentication method, authentication destinations are displayed and either [**Local**] or [**Network**] can be selected as the authentication destination.
>
> To authenticate by ID card, select [**ID Card Login**].

2 Select [Login].

2-24
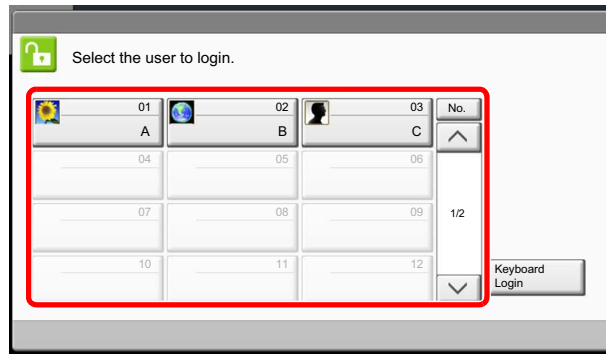
Simple Login

If this screen is displayed during operations, select a user and log in.

> **NOTE**
>
> If a user password is required, an input screen will be displayed.

→ Simple Login Settings (page 9-29)

Logout
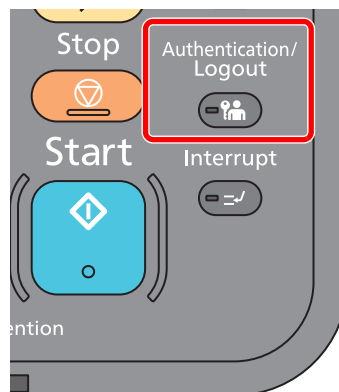
To logout from the machine, select the [**Authentication/Logout**] key to return to the login user name/login password entry screen.

Users are automatically logged out in the following circumstances:

- When the machine enters the sleep state.

- When the auto panel reset function is activated.

2-25

Default Settings of the Machine

Before using this machine, configure such settings as date and time, network configuration, and energy saving functions as needed. The Machine Setup Wizard is launched when the equipment is turned on for the first time after being installed. Also, configure the following settings if necessary.

> **NOTE**
> The default settings of the machine can be changed in System Menu.
> For settings that are configurable from System Menu, refer to the following:
>
> ➡ Setup and Registration (System Menu) (page 8-1)

Setting Date and Time

Follow the steps below to set the local date and time at the place of installation.

When you send an E-mail using the transmission function, the date and time as set here will be printed in the header of the E-mail message. Set the date, time and time difference from GMT of the region where the machine is used.

> **NOTE**
> • To make changes after this initial configuration, refer to the following:
>
> ➡ Date/Timer/Energy Saver (page 8-53)
>
> • The correct time can be periodically set by obtaining the time from the network time server.
>
> ➡ **Embedded Web Server RX User Guide**

1 **Display the screen.**

[**System Menu**] key > [**Date/Timer/Energy Saver**]

2 **Configure the settings.**

[**Time Zone**] > [**Date/Time**] > [**Date Format**]

Item	Description
Time Zone	Set the time difference from GMT. Choose the nearest listed location from the list. If you select a region that utilizes summer time, configure settings for summer time.
Date/Time	Set the date and time for the location where you use the machine. If you perform Send as E-mail, the date and time set here will be displayed on the header. **Value**: Year (2000 to 2037), Month (1 to 12), Day (1 to 31), Hour (00 to 23), Minute (00 to 59), Second (00 to 59)
Date Format	Select the display format of year, month, and date. The year is displayed in Western notation. **Value**: Month/Day/Year, Day/Month/Year, Year/Month/Day

Network Setup (LAN Cable Connection)

The machine is equipped with network interface, which is compatible with network protocols such as TCP/IP (IPv4), TCP/IP (IPv6), NetBEUI, and IPSec. It enables network printing on the Windows, Macintosh, UNIX and other platforms.

Set up TCP/IP (IPv4) to connect to the Windows network.

For other network settings, refer to the following:

➡ Network (page 8-42)

> **NOTE**
>
> If user login administration is enabled, you can only change the settings by logging in with administrator privileges. If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears. Enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**].
>
> The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Model Name	Login User Name	Login Password
350ci	3500	3500
400ci	4000	4000

TCP/IP Settings

IPv4 setting

Set up TCP/IP (IPv4) to connect to the Windows network.

The default settings are as follows.

- TCP/IP: On
- DHCP: On
- Auto-IP: On
- IP Address: 0.0.0.0
- Subnet Mask: 0.0.0.0
- Default Gateway: 0.0.0.0

> **NOTE**
>
> Ask your network administrator for the IP address in advance, and have it ready when you configure this setting. In the following cases, set the IP address of DNS server on the Embedded Web Server RX.
>
> • When using the host name with "DHCP" setting set to "Off"
>
> • When using the DNS server with IP address that is not assigned by DHCP automatically.
>
> Setting the IP Address of the DNS Server, refer to the following:
>
> ➡ **Embedded Web Server RX User Guide**

1 **Display the screen.**

[**System Menu**] key > [**System/Network**] > "Network" [**Next**] > "TCP/IP Setting" [**Next**] > "IPv4" [**Change**]

2 Configure the settings.

When using DHCP server

[**DHCP**]: Set to [**On**].

When setting the static IP address

[**DHCP**]: Set to [**Off**].

[**IP Address**]: Enter the address.

[**Subnet Mask**]: Enter the subnet mask in decimal representation (0 to 255).

[**Default Gateway**]: Enter the address.

When using the Auto-IP, enter "0.0.0.0" in [**IP Address**].

> ⊘ **IMPORTANT**
> **After changing the setting, restart the network from System Menu, or turn the machine OFF and then ON.**
>
> ➡ Restart Network (page 8-46)

Wireless Network Settings

When the optional Wireless Network Interface Kit is installed on the machine and the connection settings are configured, it is possible to print in a wireless network (wireless LAN) environment. The following is an introduction to the settings for connecting using the Quick Setup.

To connect to a wireless access point, Quick Setup has the following four methods. Select a desired method.

➡ Setup (page 8-48)

Available Network

Displays access points to which the machine can connect. Select a desired access point from the list.

Push Button

If the access point supports the push button method, wireless settings can be configured using the push button. This setting executes push button, and the connection is started by pressing the push button on the access point.

> 🔍 **NOTE**
> The push button method supports only the WPS.

PIN Code Method (Device)

Starts connection at both sides using the PIN code which has been generated at the machine. In addition, the same PIN code should be entered into the access point previously.

PIN Code Method (Terminal)

Starts connection at both sides using the PIN code which has been generated at the access point. In addition, the same PIN code should be entered into the machine previously.

Energy Saver function

If a certain period of time elapses after the machine is last used, the machine automatically enters Low Power Mode to reduce power consumption. If a further period of time elapses without the machine being used, the machine automatically enters sleep mode, which minimizes power consumption. If the machine is not used while in sleep mode, the power automatically turns off.

Low Power Mode

If the machine is not operated for a certain period of time, the energy saver indicator will light up and the screen will become dark to reduce power consumption. This status is referred to as Low Power Mode. "Low power." will be displayed on the screen.

The default preset time is 3 minute.

If print data is received during Low Power Mode, the machine automatically wakes up and starts printing. Also when fax data arrives while the machine is in Low Power Mode, the machine automatically wakes up and starts printing.

To resume, perform one of the following actions.

- Press the touch panel or any key on the operation panel.
- Place originals in the document processor.

The machine will be ready to operate within 10 seconds.

Note that ambient environmental conditions, such as ventilation, may cause the machine to respond more slowly.

> **NOTE**
>
> If the Low Power Timer is equal to the Sleep Timer, a Sleep mode is preceded.

Sleep

To enter Sleep, select the [**Energy Saver**] key. Touch panel and all indicators on the operation panel will go out to save a maximum amount of power except the Energy Saver indicator. This status is referred to as Sleep.

Energy Saver indicator
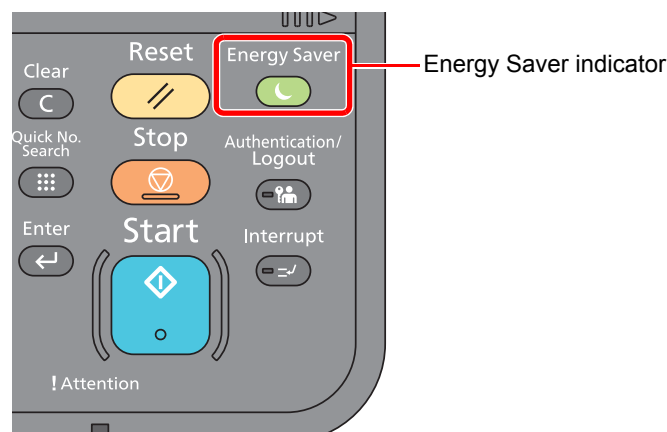
If print data is received during Sleep, the machine automatically wakes up and starts printing.

Also when fax data arrives while the machine is in Sleep, the machine automatically wakes up and starts printing.

To resume, perform the following actions.

- Press the touch panel or any key on the operation panel.

The machine will be ready to operate within 19.7 seconds (350ci) or 21.8 seconds (400ci).

Note that ambient environmental conditions, such as ventilation, may cause the machine to respond more slowly.

Auto Sleep

Auto Sleep automatically switches the machine into Sleep if left idle for a preset time.

The default preset time is 20 minutes (models for Europe) or 45 minutes (models except for Europe).

To change the preset sleep time, refer to the following:

➡ Quick Setup Wizard (page 2-31)

> **NOTE**
> If the Low Power Timer is equal to the Sleep Timer, a Sleep mode is preceded.

Sleep Rules (models for Europe)

You can set whether sleep mode operates for each function. When the machine enters sleep mode, the ID card cannot be recognized.

For more information on Sleep Rules settings, refer to the following:

➡ Sleep Rules (models for Europe) (page 8-54)

Sleep Level (Energy Saver) (models except for Europe)

This mode reduces power consumption even more than normal Sleep mode, and allows Sleep Mode to be set separately for each function. Printing from a computer connected with a USB cable is not available while the machine is asleep. The time required for the machine to wake up from power save mode and resume normal operation will be longer than for normal Sleep Mode.

> **NOTE**
> If the optional network interface kit is installed, Energy Saver cannot be specified.

For more information on Sleep Level (Energy Saver) Mode settings, refer to the following:

➡ Quick Setup Wizard (page 2-31)

Energy Saver Recovery Level

This machine can reduce power consumption when recovering from Energy Saver Mode.

For EnergySaver RecoveryLevel, "Full Recovery", "Normal Recovery" or "Power Saving Recovery" can be selected.

The factory default is "Normal Recovery".

For more information on Energy Saver Mode settings, refer to the following:

➡ Quick Setup Wizard (page 2-31)

Weekly Timer Settings

Set the machine to automatically sleep and wake up at the times specified for each day.

For more information on Weekly Timer Settings, refer to the following:

➡ Quick Setup Wizard (page 2-31)

Quick Setup Wizard

For FAX functions, paper settings, Energy Saver functions and network settings, the following settings can be configured in a wizard-style screen.

FAX Setup[*1]		Configures basic fax settings.	
		1. Dialing/RX Mode	Dialing Mode[*2]
			Reception Mode
			Auto (DRD)[*3]
		2. Local FAX Info.	Local FAX Name
			Local FAX Number
			Local FAX ID
			TTI
		3. Sound	Speaker Volume
			Monitor Volume
			Job Finish Buzzer
		4. Rings	Normal[*4]
			Answering Machine[*4]
			FAX/TEL Switch[*4]
		5. Output	Paper Output[*5]
		6. Redial	Retry Times
	Power Off Setup	Show Power Off Message	—
Energy Saver Setup		Configures sleep mode and low power mode.	
		1. Sleep Mode	For Europe
			Sleep Timer
			Sleep Rules
			Except for Europe
			Sleep Timer
			Sleep Level
		2. Low Power Mode	Low Power Timer
		3.Recovery Mode	Energy Saver Recovery Level
		4.Weekly Timer Settings	Weekly Timer
			Schedule[*6]
			Retry Times[*6]
			Retry Interval[*6]
Network Setup		Configures network settings.	
		1. Network	DHCP
			IP Address[*7]
			Subnet Mask[*7]
			Default Gateway[*7]

*1   FAX functions are available only on products with the fax function installed.
*2   Inch version only.
*3   DRD reception mode is available for some countries.
*4   This setting does not appear in some regions.
*5   This function is displayed when the optional Job Separator, Mailbox or Sheet Finisher is installed.
*6   This function is displayed when [**Weekly Timer**] is set to [**On**].
*7   This function is displayed when [**DHCP**] is set to [**Off**].

> **NOTE**
>
> If the user authentication screen appears, enter your login user name and login password and select [**Login**].
>
> The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.
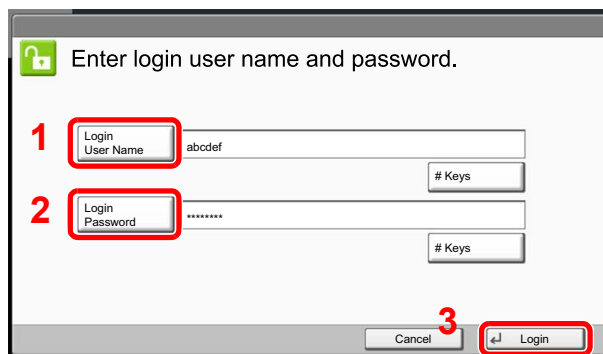
Model Name	Login User Name	Login Password
350ci	3500	3500
400ci	4000	4000

1 Display the screen.

[**System Menu**] key > [**Quick Setup Wizard**]

2 Select a function.

3 Configure the settings.

Start the wizard. Follow the instructions on the screen to configure settings.

> **NOTE**
>
> If you experience difficulty configuring the settings, refer to the following:
>
> ➡ Help Screen (page 2-22)

Control	Description
End	Exits the wizard. Settings configured so far are applied.
Previous	Returns to the previous item.
Skip	Advances to the next item without setting the current item.
Next	Advances to the next screen.
Back	Returns to the previous screen.
Complete	Register the settings and exit the wizard.

Installing Software

Install appropriate software on your PC from the included DVD (Product Library) if you want to use the printer function of this machine or perform TWAIN / WIA transmission or Network FAX transmission from your PC.

Software on DVD (Windows)

You can use either [**Express Install**] or [**Custom Install**] can be selected for the installation method. [**Express Install**] is the standard installation method. To install components that cannot be installed by [**Express Install**], use [**Custom Install**].

For details on Custom Installation, refer to the following:

Software	Description	Express Install
Printing System Driver	This driver enables files on a computer to be printed by the machine. Multiple page description languages (PCL XL, KPDL, etc.) are supported by a single driver. This printer driver allows you to take full advantage of the features of the machine. Use this driver to create PDF files.	○
Printing System (XPS) Driver	This printer driver supports the XPS (XML Paper Specification) format developed by Microsoft Corporation.	-
KPDL mini-driver/PCL mini-driver	This is a Microsoft MiniDriver that supports PCL and KPDL. There are some restrictions on the machine features and option features that can be used with this driver.	-
FAX Driver	This makes it possible to send a document created in a computer software application as a fax via the machine.	-
TWAIN Driver	This driver enables scanning on the machine using a TWAIN-compliant software application.	○
WIA Driver	WIA (Windows Imaging Acquisition) is a function of Windows that enables reciprocal communication between an imaging device such as a scanner and an image processing software application. An image can be acquired using a WIA-compliant software application, which is convenient when a TWAIN-compliant software application is not installed in the computer.	-
NETWORK PRINT MONITOR	This is a utility that enables monitoring of the machine on the network.	-
Status Monitor	This is a utility that monitors the printer status and provides an ongoing reporting function.	○
File Management Utility	This makes it possible to send and save a scanned document to a specified network folder.	-
Network Tool for Direct Printing	This makes it possible to print a PDF file without starting Adobe Acrobat/Reader.	-
FONTS	These are display fonts that enable the machine's built-in fonts to be used in a software application.	○

NOTE

• Installation on Windows must be done by a user logged on with administrator privileges.

• The optional FAX Kit is required in order to make use of fax functionality.

• WIA Driver and Printing System (XPS) Driver cannot be installed on Windows XP.

Installing Software in Windows

Express Install

The following procedure is an example for installing the software in Windows 7 using [**Express Install**].

For details on Custom Installation, refer to the following:

1 Insert the DVD.

> **NOTE**
> - Installation on Windows must be done by a user logged on with administrator privileges.
> - If the "**Welcome to the Found New Hardware Wizard**" dialog box displays, select [**Cancel**].
> - If the autorun screen is displayed, click [**Run setup.exe**].
> - If the user account management window appears, click [**Yes**] ([**Allow**]).

2 Display the screen.

1 Click [**View License Agreement**] and read the License Agreement.

2 Click [**Accept**].

2-34

3 ## Install using [Express Install].
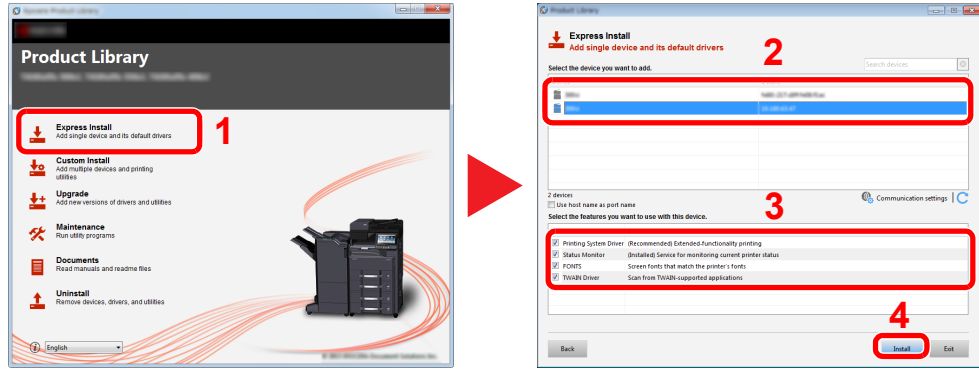
You can also select [**Use host name for port name**] and set to use the host name of the standard TCP/IP port. (A USB connection cannot be used.)

> ### NOTE
>
> • The machine cannot be detected unless it is on. If the computer fails to detect the machine, verify that it is connected to the computer via a network or USB cable and that it is turned on and click ⟳ (Refresh).
>
> • If the Windows security window appears, click [**Install this driver software anyway**].
>
> • To install Status Monitor, it is necessary to install Microsoft .NET Framework 4.0 beforehand.
>
>

4 **Finish the installation.**

When "**Your software is ready to use**" appears, you can use the software. To print a test page, click the "**Print a test page**" checkbox and select the machine.

Click [**Finish**] to exit the wizard.

> **NOTE**
>
> When you have selected [**Device settings**] in Windows XP, the dialog box for device setting will appear after [**Finish**] is clicked. Configure the settings for options installed on the machine. Device settings can be configured after the installation is completed.
>
> ➡ **Printing System Driver User Guide**

If a system restart message appears, restart the computer by following the screen prompts. This completes the printer driver installation procedure.

If you are installing the TWAIN driver, continue by configuring the following:

➡

Custom Install

The following procedure is an example for installing the software in Windows 7 using [**Custom Install**].

1 Insert the DVD.
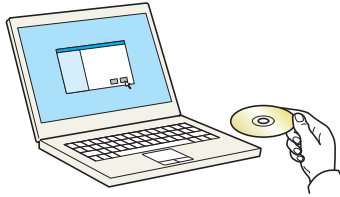
> ### NOTE
>
> - Installation on Windows must be done by a user logged on with administrator privileges.
>
> - If the "**Welcome to the Found New Hardware Wizard**" dialog box displays, select [**Cancel**].
>
> - If the autorun screen is displayed, click [**Run setup.exe**].
>
> - If the user account management window appears, click [**Yes**] ([**Allow**]).

2 Display the screen.
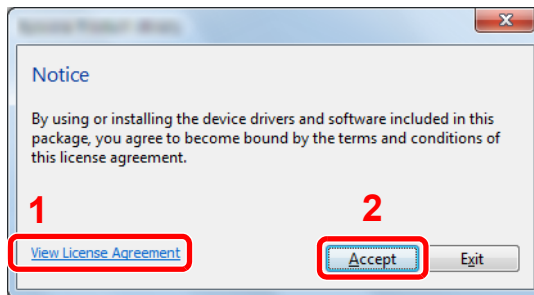
1 Click [**View License Agreement**] and read the License Agreement.

2 Click [**Accept**].

3 Install using [Custom Install].

1 Select the device to be installed.

2-37
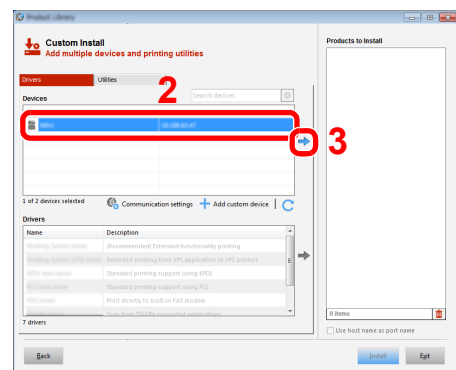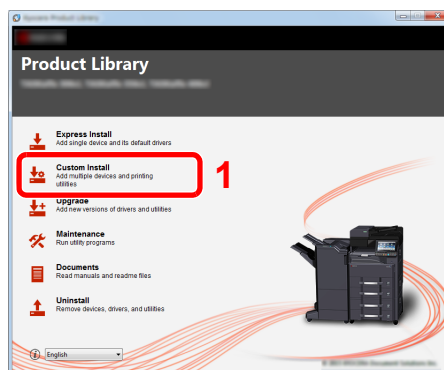
2 Select the driver to be installed.
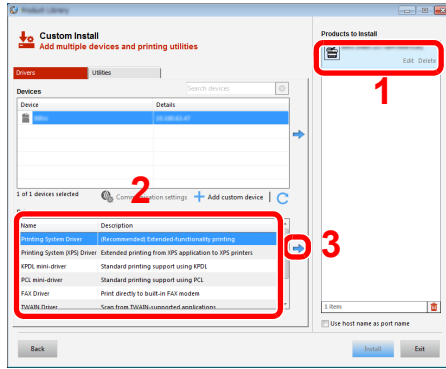
3 Select the utility to be installed.
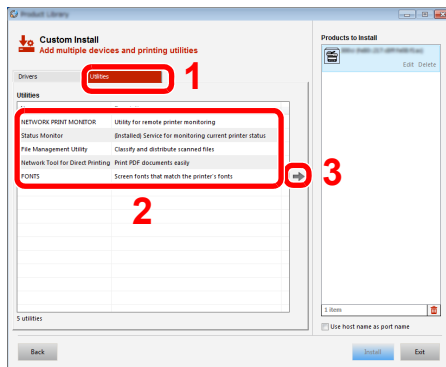
4 Click [**Install**].

> **NOTE**
> • To install Status Monitor, it is necessary to install Microsoft .NET Framework 4.0 beforehand.

4 Finish the installation.

When "**Your software is ready to use**" appears, you can use the software. To print a test page, click the "**Print a test page**" checkbox and select the machine.

Click [**Finish**] to exit the wizard.

> **NOTE**
> When you have selected [**Device settings**] in Windows XP, the dialog box for device setting will appear after [**Finish**] is clicked. Configure the settings for options installed on the machine. Device settings can be configured after the installation is completed.
> ➡ **Printing System Driver User Guide**

If a system restart message appears, restart the computer by following the screen prompts. This completes the printer driver installation procedure.

If you are installing the TWAIN driver, continue by configuring the following:

➡ Setting TWAIN Driver (page 2-43)

Uninstalling the Software

Perform the following procedure to delete the Software from your computer.

> **NOTE**
>
> Uninstallation on Windows must be done by a user logged on with administrator privileges.

1 Display the screen.

Click [**Start**] button on the Windows and then select [**All Programs**], [**(name of offer company)**], and [**Uninstall Product Library**] to display the Uninstall Wizard.

> **NOTE**
>
> In Windows 8, click [**Search**] in charms, and enter "Uninstall Product Library" in the search box. Select [**Uninstall Product Library**] in the search list.

2 Uninstall the software.

Place a check in the check box of the software to be deleted.
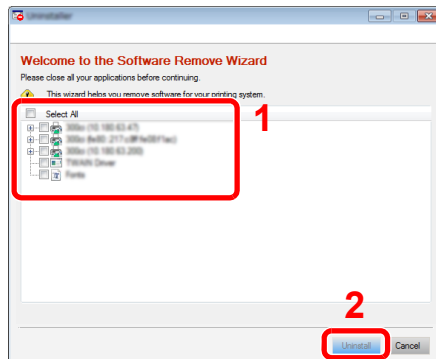
3 Finish uninstalling.

If a system restart message appears, restart the computer by following the screen prompts. This completes the software uninstallation procedure.

> **NOTE**
>
> • The software can also be uninstalled using the Product Library.
>
> • In the Product Library screen, click [**Uninstall**], and follow the on-screen instructions to uninstall the software.

Installing Software in Mac Computer

The machine's printer functionality can be used by a Mac computer.

> **NOTE**
> • Installation on Mac OS must be done by a user logged on with administrator privileges.
> • When printing from a Macintosh computer, set the machine's emulation to [**KPDL**] or [**KPDL(Auto)**].
> ➡ Printer (page 8-34)
> • If connecting by Bonjour, enable Bonjour in the machine's network settings.
> ➡ Bonjour (page 8-43)
> • In the Authenticate screen, enter the name and password used to log in to the operating system.

1 **Insert the DVD.**
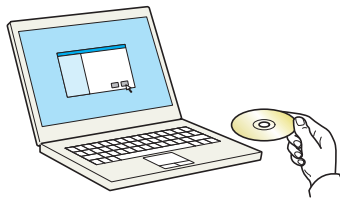
Double-click the [**GEN_LIB**] icon.

2 **Display the screen.**
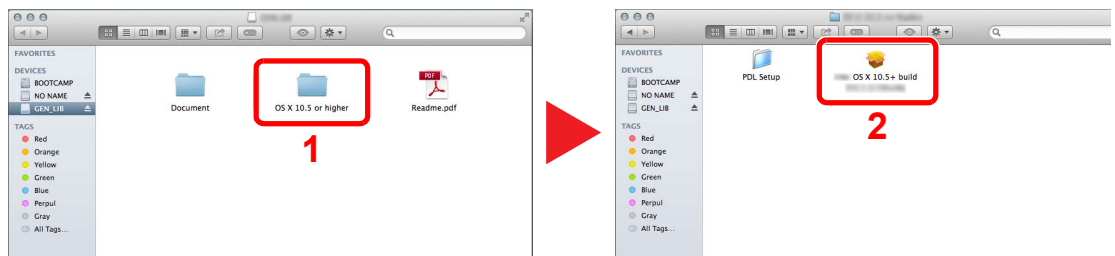
Double-click [**(Brand Name) OS X x.x**] depending on your Mac OS version.

3 **Install the Printer Driver.**

Install the printer driver as directed by the instructions in the installation software.

This completes the printer driver installation.

If a USB connection is used, the machine is automatically recognized and connected.
If an IP connection is used, the settings below are required.

4 Configure the printer.

1 Open System Preferences and add the printer.
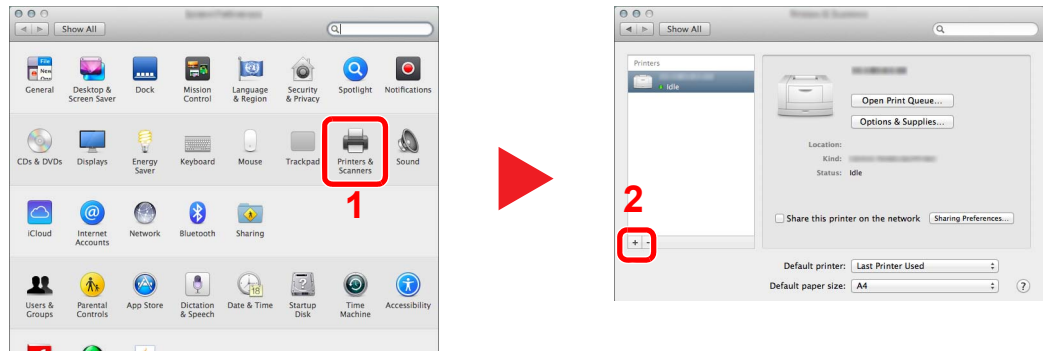
2 Select [**Default**] and click the item that appears in "Name".
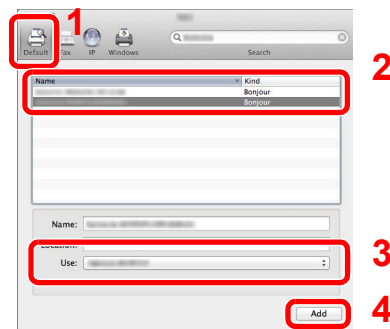
3 Select the driver in "Use".

> **NOTE**
>
> When using an IP connection, click the IP icon for an IP connection and then enter the host name or IP address. The number entered in "Address" will automatically appear in "Name". Change if needed.

3 Select the options available for the machine.
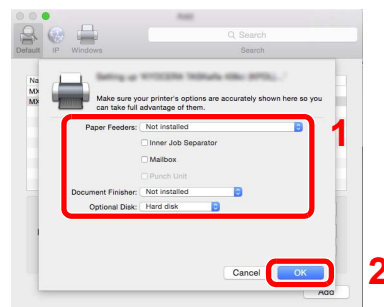
4 The selected machine is added.
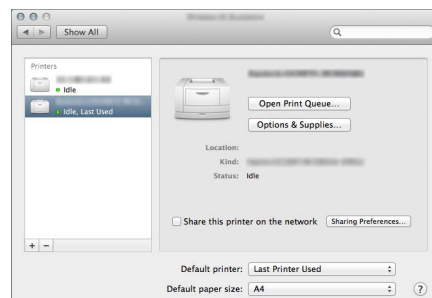
Setting TWAIN Driver

Register this machine to the TWAIN Driver. Instructions are based on interface elements as they appear in Windows 7.

1 Display the screen.

1 Select [**Start**] button on the Windows, [**All Programs**], [**(Brand Name)**] and then [**TWAIN Driver Setting**]. TWAIN Driver screen appears.

> **NOTE**
> In Windows 8, click [**Search**] in charms, and enter "TWAIN Driver Setting" in the search box. Select [**TWAIN Driver Setting**] in the search list.

2 Click [**Add**].
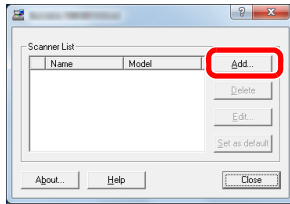
2 Configure TWAIN Driver.

(Network)
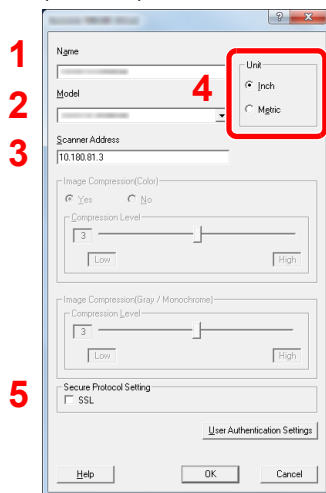
1   Enter the machine name.

2   Select this machine from the list.

3   Enter the machine's IP address or host name.

4   Set units of measurement.

5   When using SSL, select the checkbox beside SSL.

(USB)
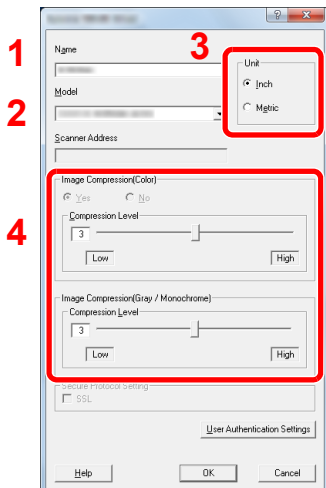
1   Enter the machine name.

2   Select this machine from the list.

3   Set units of measurement.

4   Set the Compression Level.

> **NOTE**
> When the machine's IP address or host name is unknown, contact Administrator.

3 **Finish registering.**
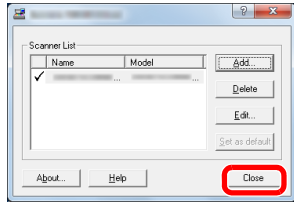
> **NOTE**
> Click [**Delete**] to delete the added machine. Click [**Edit**] to change names.

Setting WIA Driver

Register this machine to the WIA Driver. Instructions are based on interface elements as they appear in Windows 7.

1 Display the screen.

1. Click [**Start**] button on the Windows and enter [**Scanner**] in [**Program and File Search**]. Click [**View scanners and cameras**] in the search list then the Scanners and Cameras screen appears.

   NOTE

   In Windows 8, click [**Search**] in charms, and enter "View scanners and cameras" in the search box. Select [**View scanners and cameras**] in the search list then the Scanners and Cameras screen appears.

2. Select the same name as this machine from WIA Drivers, and click [**Properties**].
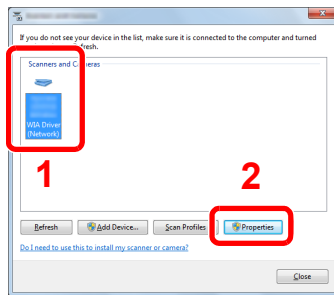
2 Configure WIA Driver.

(Network)
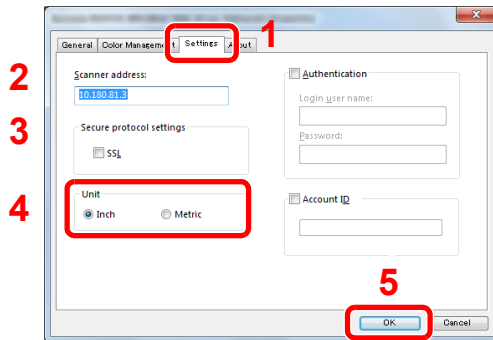
1. Click the [**Settings**] tab.
2. Enter the machine IP addresses or host name.
3. When using SSL, select the checkbox beside SSL.
4. Set units of measurement.
5. Click [**OK**].

(USB)
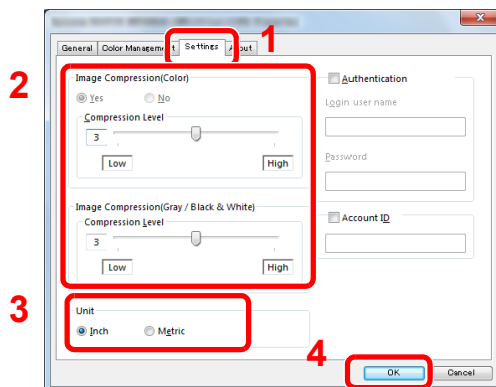
1. Click the [**Settings**] tab.
2. Set the Compression Level.
3. Set units of measurement.
4. Click [**OK**].

Checking the Counter

Check the number of sheets printed and scanned.

1 **Display the screen.**

[**System Menu**] key > [**Counter**]

2 **Check the counter.**

Additional Preparations for the Administrator

In addition to the information provided in this chapter, the administrator of this machine should check the following, and configure the settings as needed.

Sending Documents to a PC

To Send to a Shared Folder (Send to Folder (SMB))

To send a document that has been loaded, you need to create a shared folder to receive the document on your computer.

➡ Preparation for Sending a Document to a Shared Folder in a PC (page 3-12)

To E-mail Scanned Images (Send as E-mail)

You can send a scanned original image as an E-mail attachment.

➡ E-mail Settings (page 2-55)

Strengthening the Security

This machine is shipped with two default users registered one with Machine Administrator rights, and another with Administrator rights.Logging in as this user will allow you to configure all settings; therefore, please change the login user name and password.

In addition, this machine is equipped with user authentication function, which can be configured to limit the access to this machine to only those who have a registered login name and password.

➡ User Authentication and Accounting (User Login, Job Accounting) (page 9-1)

I want to...	Function	Reference page
Restrict the users of the machine.	User Login	page 9-2
	Authentication Security	page 9-5
	Auto Panel Reset	page 8-53
	ID Card Settings[1]	page 9-32
Restrict the basic functions that can be used.	Local Authorization	page 9-20
	Group Authorization Set.	page 9-21
	Guest Authorization Set.	page 9-24
Prevent another user from handling the documents stored in the machine.	Custom Box[2]	page 5-45
Output the document stored in the machine at the time when user operates the device via operation panel.	Remote Printing	page 8-26
Prevent the data stored in the machine from being leaked.	Data Overwrite[3]	Refer to the **Data Security Kit (E) Operation Guide**.
	Encryption[3]	
	PDF Encryption Functions	page 6-61
Completely delete the data on the machine before disposing of the machine.	Data Sanitization	page 8-50

*1 The optional Card Authentication Kit is required.
*2 A hard disk is required.
*3 The optional Data Security Kit is required.

I want to...	Function	Reference page
Record the operation history of users.	Login History Settings	page 8-39
	Device Log History Settings	page 8-40
	Secure Comm. Error Log	page 8-41
Protect the transmission from interception and wiretapping.	IPP over SSL	page 8-45
	HTTPS	page 8-45
	LDAP Security	Refer to the **Embedded Web Server RX User Guide**.
	SMTP Security	page 8-44
	POP3 Security	page 8-44
	FTP Encrypted TX	page 6-65
	Enhanced WSD (SSL)	page 8-45
	IPSec	page 8-43
	SNMPv3	page 8-45
Verify the software in the machine.	Software Verification	page 8-50

Embedded Web Server RX

If the machine is connected to the network, you can configure various settings using Embedded Web Server RX.

This section explains how to access Embedded Web Server RX, and how to change security settings and the host name.

➡ **Embedded Web Server RX User Guide**

ⓘ NOTE

To fully access the features of the Embedded Web Server RX pages, enter the User Name and Password and click [**Login**]. Entering the predefined administrator password allows the user to access all pages, including Document Box, Address Book, and Settings on the navigation menu. The factory default setting for the default user with administrator privileges is shown below. (Upper case and lower case letters are distinguished (case sensitive).)

Login User Name: **Admin**
Login Password: **Admin**

Settings that the administrator and general users can configure in Embedded Web Server RX are as follows.

Setting	Description	Administ-rator	General User
Device Information	The machine's structure can be checked.	◯	◯
Job Status	Displays all device information, including print and scan jobs, storing jobs, scheduled jobs, and job log history.	◯	◯
Document Box	Add or delete document boxes, or delete documents within a document box.	◯	◯*1
Address Book	Create, edit, or delete addresses and address groups.	◯	◯*1
Device Settings	Configure the advanced settings of the machine.	◯	-
Function Settings	Configure the advanced function settings.	◯	-
Network Settings	Configure the network advanced settings.	◯	-
Security Settings	Configure the security advanced settings.	◯	-
Management Settings	Configure the advanced management settings.	◯	-

*1 The logged in user may not be able to configure some settings, depending on the permissions of the user.

ⓘ NOTE

The optional FAX Kit is required in order to make use of fax functionality.

Here, information on the FAX settings has been omitted.

➡ **FAX Operation Guide**

Accessing Embedded Web Server RX

1 Display the screen.

1 Launch your Web browser.

2 In the address or location bar, enter the machine's IP address or the host name.

Click in the following order to check the machine's IP address and the host name.

[**Device Information**] in the home screen > [**Identification/Network**]

Examples: https://192.168.48.21/ (for IP address)
https://MFP001 (if the host name is "MFP001")
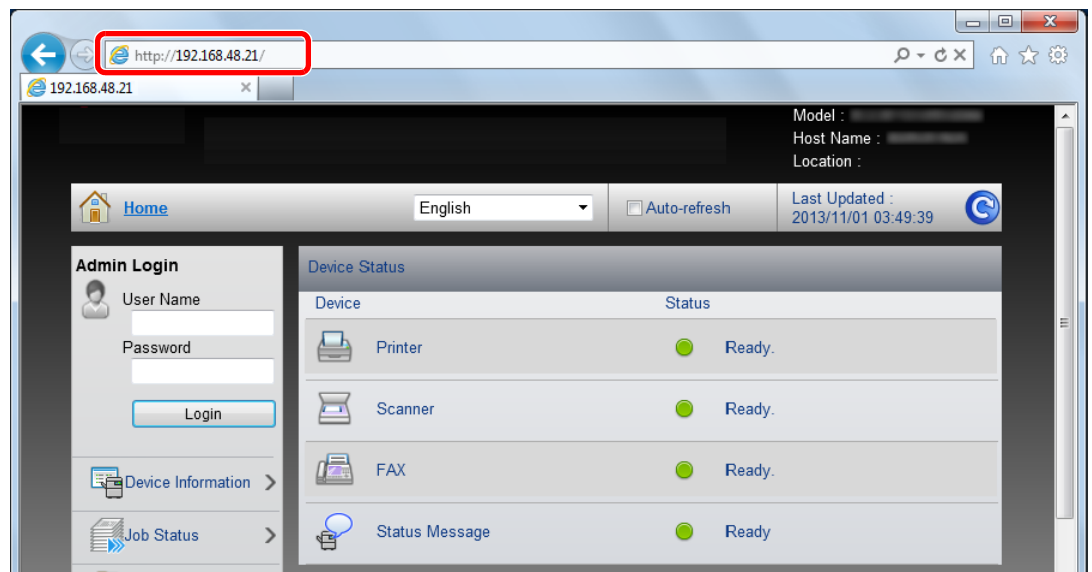
The web page displays basic information about the machine and Embedded Web Server RX as well as their current status.

> **NOTE**
>
> If the screen "There is a problem with this website's security certificate." is displayed, configure the certificate.
>
> ➡ **Embedded Web Server RX User Guide**
>
> You can also continue the operation without configuring the certificate.

2 Configure the function.

Select a category from the navigation bar on the left of the screen.

> **NOTE**
>
> To fully access the features of the Embedded Web Server RX pages, enter the User Name and Password and click [**Login**]. Entering the predefined administrator password allows the user to access all pages, including Document Box, Address Book, and Settings on the navigation menu. The factory default setting for the default user with administrator privileges is shown below. (Upper case and lower case letters are distinguished (case sensitive).)
>
> **Login User Name:**   **Admin**
> **Login Password:**   **Admin**

Changing Security Settings

This section explains how to change the security settings.

1 Display the screen.

1 Launch your Web browser.

2 In the address or location bar, enter the machine's IP address or the host name.

Click in the following order to check the machine's IP address and the host name.

[**Device Information**] in the home screen > [**Identification/Network**]

3 Log in with administrator privileges.
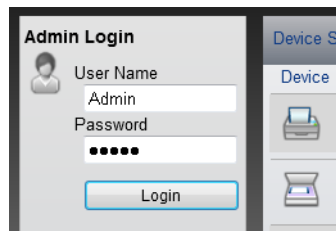
The factory default setting for the default user with administrator privileges is shown below. (Upper case and lower case letters are distinguished (case sensitive).)

Login User Name: Admin
Login Password: Admin

4 Click [**Security Settings**].

2 **Configure the Security Settings.**

From the [**Security Settings**] menu, select the setting you want to configure.
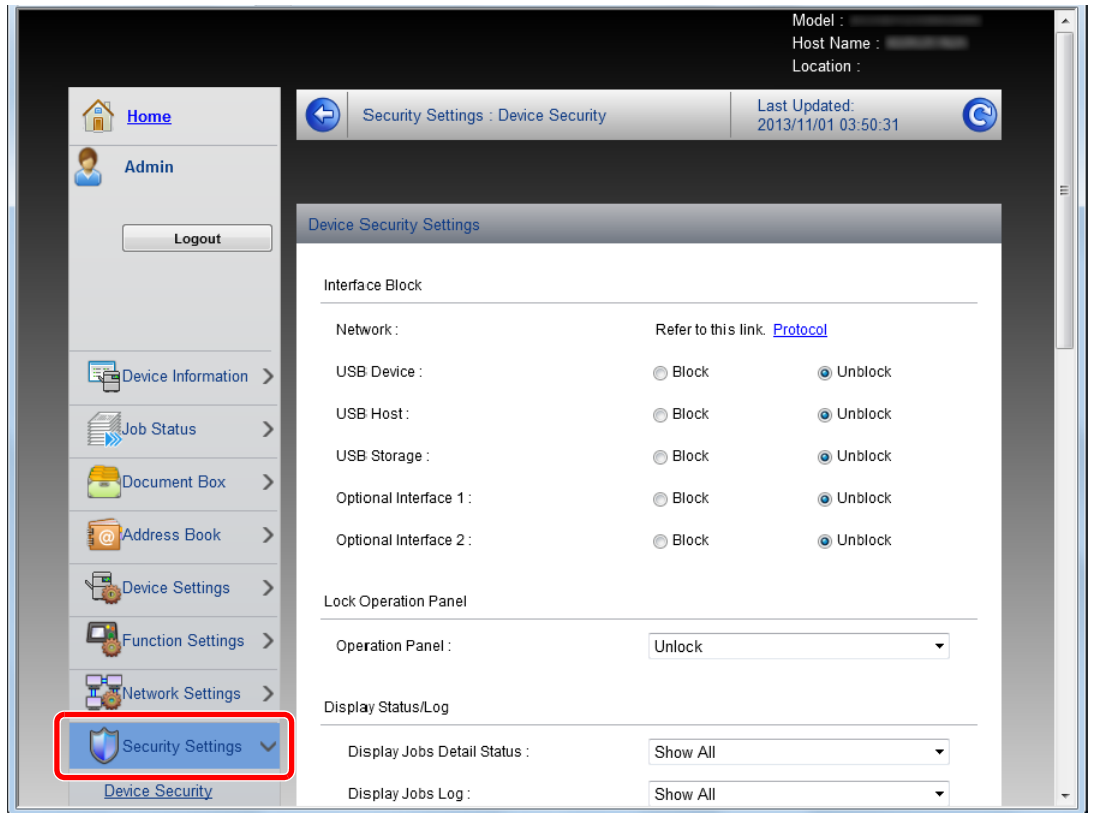
> **NOTE**
> For details on settings related to certificates, refer to the following:
>
> ➡ **Embedded Web Server RX User Guide**

2-52

Changing Device Information

Change the device information of the machine.

1 ## Display the screen.

1 Launch your Web browser.

2 In the address or location bar, enter the machine's IP address or the host name.

Click in the following order to check the machine's IP address and the host name.

[**Device Information**] in the home screen > [**Identification/Network**]

3 Log in with administrator privileges.
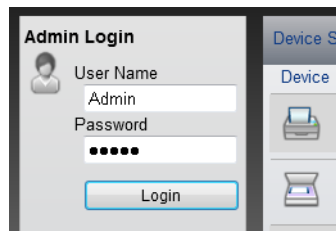
The factory default setting for the default user with administrator privileges is shown below. (Upper case and lower case letters are distinguished (case sensitive).)

Login User Name: Admin
Login Password: Admin

4 From the [**Device Settings**] menu, click [**System**].

2-53
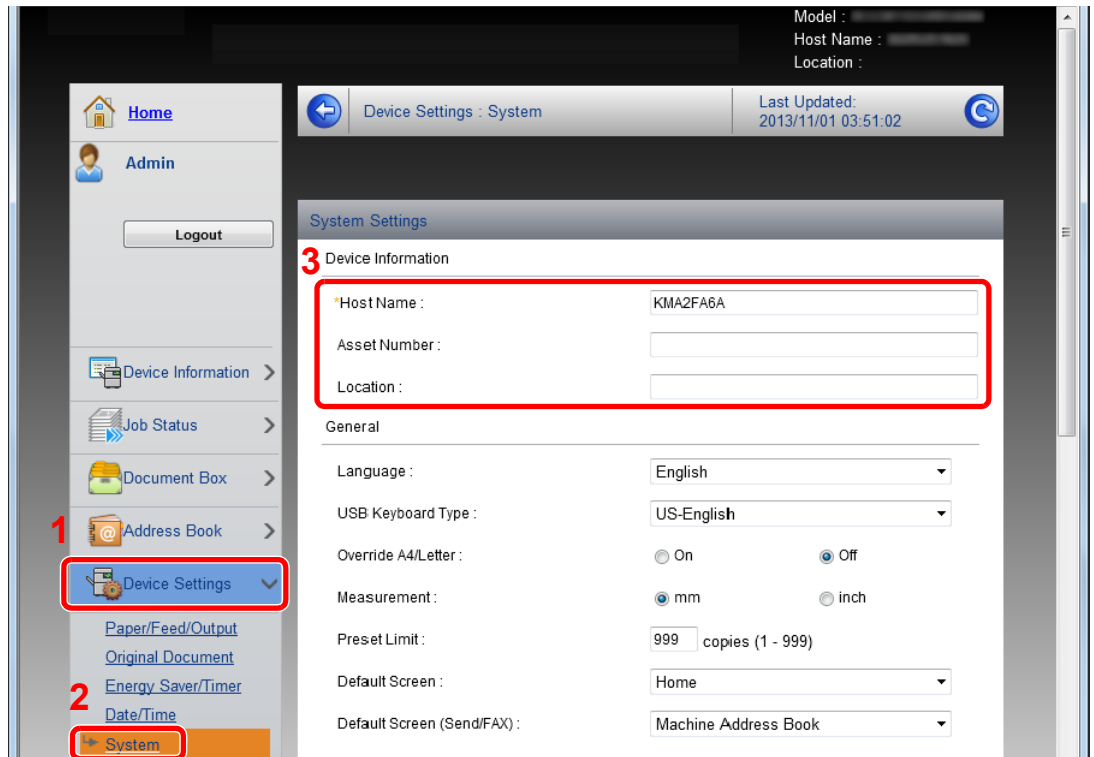
2 Specify the host name.

Enter the device information, and then click [**Submit**].

> ⊘ **IMPORTANT**
>
> **After changing the setting, restart the network or turn the machine OFF and then ON.**
>
> **To restart the network interface card, click [Reset] in the [Management Settings] menu, and then click [Restart Network] in "Restart".**

E-mail Settings

By configuring the SMTP settings, it is possible to send the images scanned by the machine as E-mail attachments and to send E-mail notices when jobs have been completed.

To use this function, this machine must be connected to a mail server using the SMTP protocol.

In addition, configure the following.

- SMTP settings
  Item: "SMTP Protocol" and "SMTP Server Name" in "SMTP"

- The sender address when the machine sends E-mails
  Item: "Sender Address" in "E-mail Send Settings"

- The setting to limit the size of E-mails
  Item: "E-mail Size Limit" in "E-mail Send Settings"

The procedure for specifying the SMTP settings is explained below.

1 Display the screen.

Display the SMTP Protocol screen.

1 Launch your Web browser.

2 In the address or location bar, enter the machine's IP address or the host name.

Click in the following order to check the machine's IP address and the host name.

[**Device Information**] in the home screen > [**Identification/Network**]

3 Log in with administrator privileges.
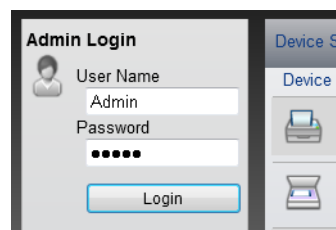
The factory default setting for the default user with administrator privileges is shown below. (Upper case and lower case letters are distinguished (case sensitive).)

Login User Name: Admin
Login Password: Admin

4 From the [**Network Settings**] menu, click [**Protocol**].
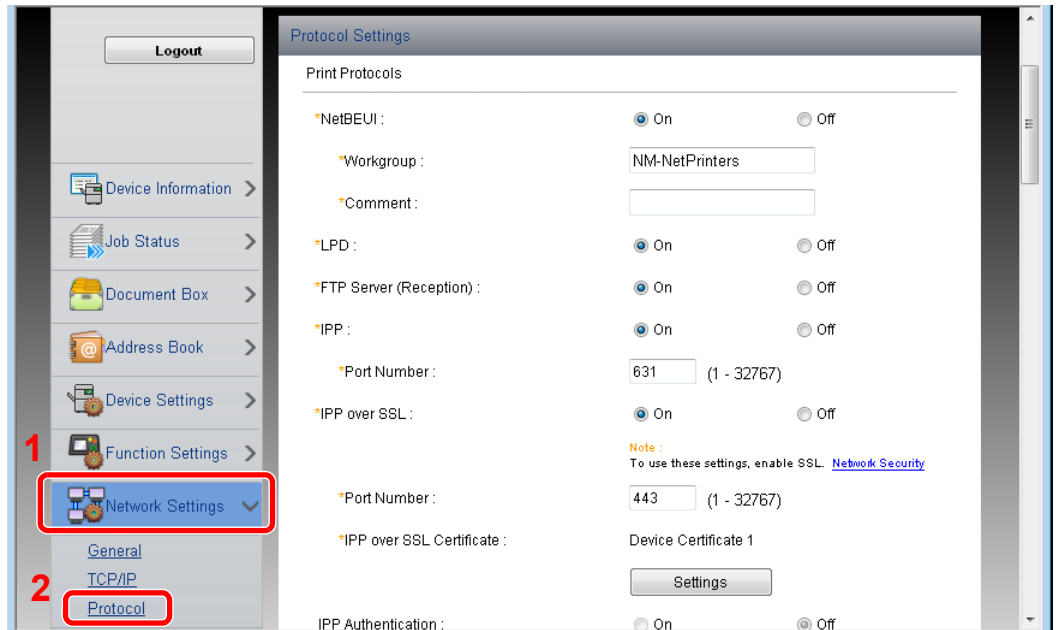
2 **Configure the settings.**

Set "SMTP (E-mail TX)" to [**On**] in the "Send Protocols".
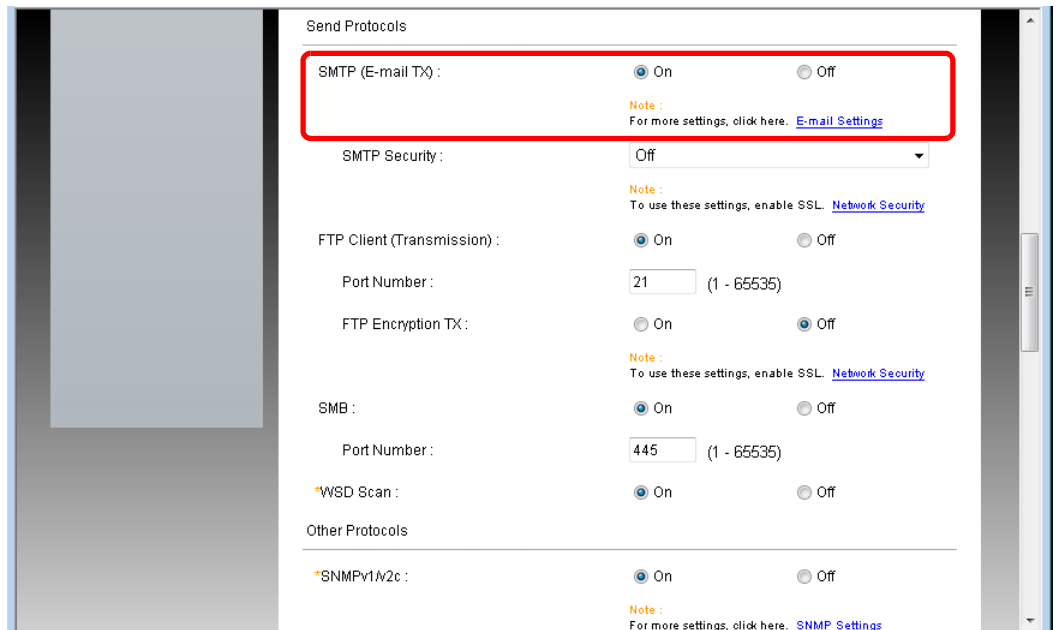
3 **Display the screen.**

Display the E-mail Settings screen.

From the [**Function Settings**] menu, click [**E-mail**].
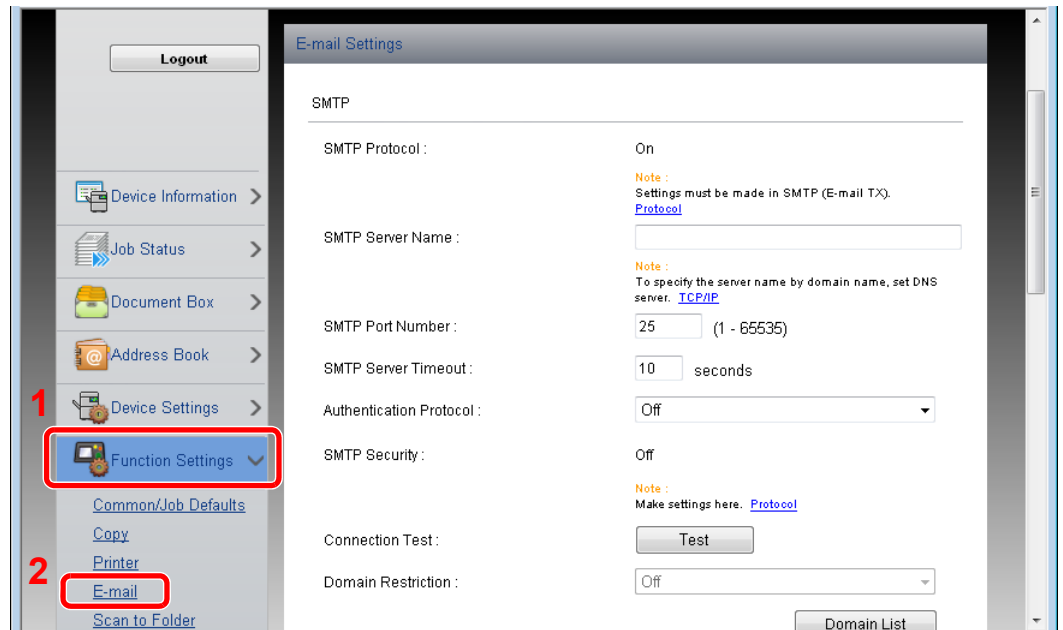
4 **Configure the settings.**

Enter "SMTP" and "E-mail Send Settings" items.

Setting		Description
SMTP		Set to send e-mail from the machine.
	SMTP Protocol	Displays the SMTP protocol settings. Check that "SMTP Protocol" is set to [**On**]. If [**Off**] is set, click [**Protocol**] and set the SMTP protocol to [**On**].
	SMTP Server Name[*1]	Enter the host name or IP address of the SMTP server.
	SMTP Port Number	Specify the port number to be used for SMTP. The default port number is 25.
	SMTP Server Timeout	Set the amount of time to wait before time-out in seconds.
	Authentication Protocol	To use SMTP authentication, enter the user information for authentication.
	SMTP Security	Set SMTP security. Turn on "SMTP Security" in "SMTP (E-mail TX)" on the [**Protocol Settings**] page.
	Connection Test	Tests to confirm that the settings are correct.
	Domain Restriction	To restrict the domains, click the [**Domain List**] and enter the domain names of addresses to be allowed or rejected. Restriction can also be specified by e-mail address.
POP3	**POP3 Protocol**	You don't need to set the following items when you only enable the function of sending e-mail from the machine. Set the following items if you want to enable the function of receiving e-mail on the machine. ➡ **Embedded Web Server RX User Guide**
	Check Interval	
	Run once now	
	Domain Restriction	
	POP3 User Settings	
E-mail Send Settings	**E-mail Size Limit**	Enter the maximum size of E-mail that can be sent in kilobytes. When E-mail size is greater than this value, an error message appears and E-mail sending is cancelled. Use this setting if you have set E-mail Size Limit for SMTP server. If not, enter a value of 0 (zero) to enable E-mail sending regardless of the size limit.
	Sender Address[*1]	Specify the sender address for when the machine sends E-mails, such as the machine administrator, so that a reply or non-delivery report will go to a person rather than to the machine. The sender address must be entered correctly for SMTP authentication. The maximum length of the sender address is 128 characters.
	Signature	Enter the signature. The signature is free form text that will appear at the end of the E-mail body. It is often used for further identification of the machine. The maximum length of the signature is 512 characters.
	Function Defaults	Change the function default settings in [**Common/Job Default Settings**] page.

*1   Be sure to enter the items.

5 **Click [Submit].**

Registering Destinations

You can register destinations to the machine's Address Book, from Embedded Web Server RX.

1 Display the screen.

1 Launch your Web browser.

2 In the address or location bar, enter the machine's IP address or the host name.

Click in the following order to check the machine's IP address and the host name.

[**Device Information**] in the home screen > [**Identification/Network**]

3 Log in with administrator privileges.

The factory default setting for the default user with administrator privileges is shown below. (Upper case and lower case letters are distinguished (case sensitive).)
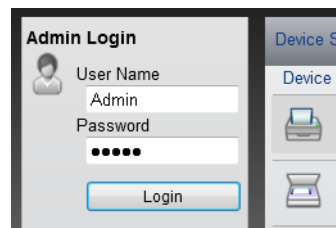
Login User Name: Admin
Login Password: Admin

4 From the [**Address Book**] menu, click [**Machine Address Book**].

5 Click [**Add**].

2 Populate the fields.

1 Enter the destination information.

Enter the information for the destination you want to register. The fields to populate are the same as when registering via operation panel.

➡ Registering Destinations in the Address Book (page 3-22)

2 Click [**Submit**].

Creating a New Custom Box

You can register a custom box from Embedded Web Server RX.

> **NOTE**
>
> To use Custom Box, an optional SSD must be installed in the machine.

1 **Display the screen.**

1 Launch your Web browser.

2 In the address or location bar, enter the machine's IP address or the host name.

Click in the following order to check the machine's IP address and the host name.

[**Device Information**] in the home screen > [**Identification/Network**]

3 From the [**Document Box**] menu, click [**Custom Box**].
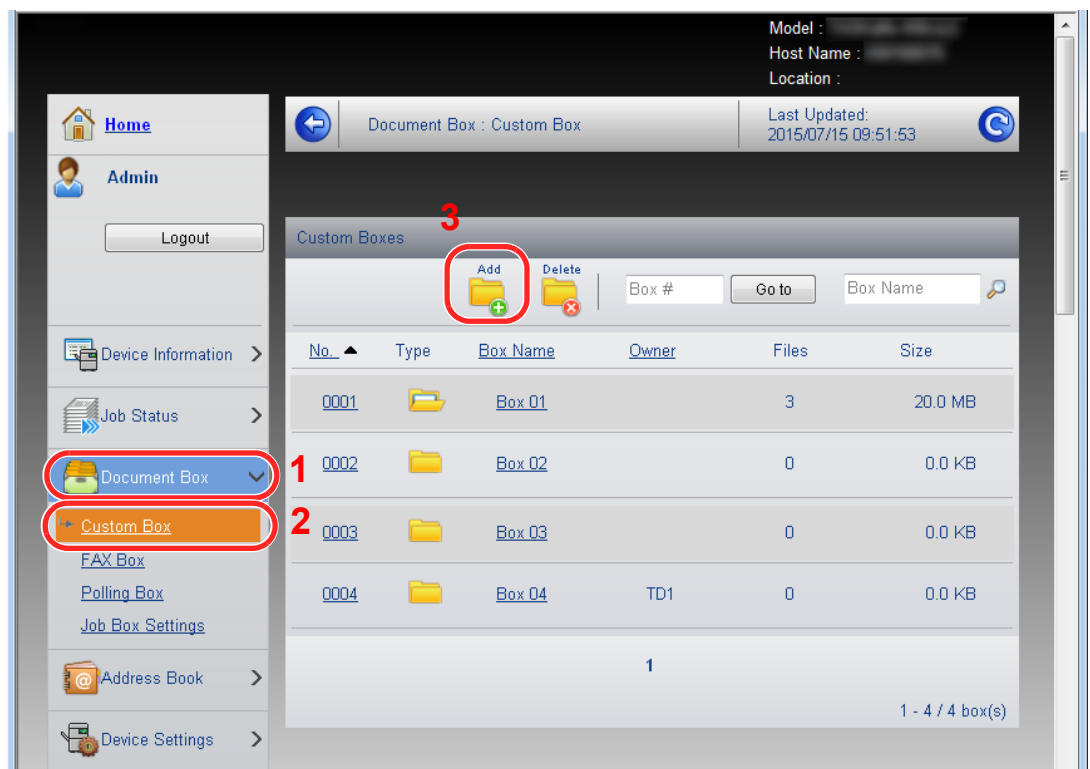
4 Click [**Add**].

2 **Configure the Custom Box.**

1 Enter the box details.

Enter the information for the custom box you want to register. For details on the fields to populate, refer to the following:

➡ **Embedded Web Server RX User Guide**

2 Click [**Submit**].

Printing a document stored in a Custom Box

A document stored in a Custom Box can be printed from Embedded Web Server RX.

1 Display the screen.

1 Launch your Web browser.

2 In the address or location bar, enter the machine's IP address or the host name.

Click in the following order to check the machine's IP address and the host name.

[**Device Information**] in the home screen > [**Identification/Network**]

3 From the [**Document Box**] menu, click [**Custom Box**].
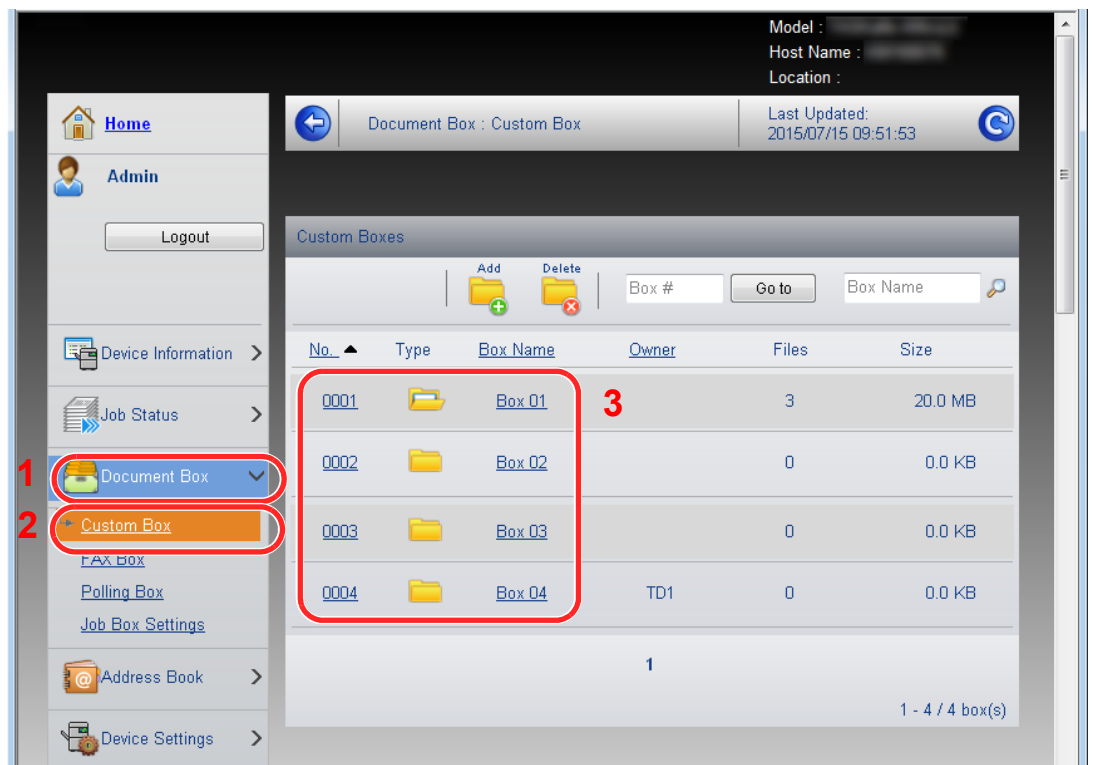
4 Click the number or name of the Custom Box in which the document is stored.

2 **Print the document.**
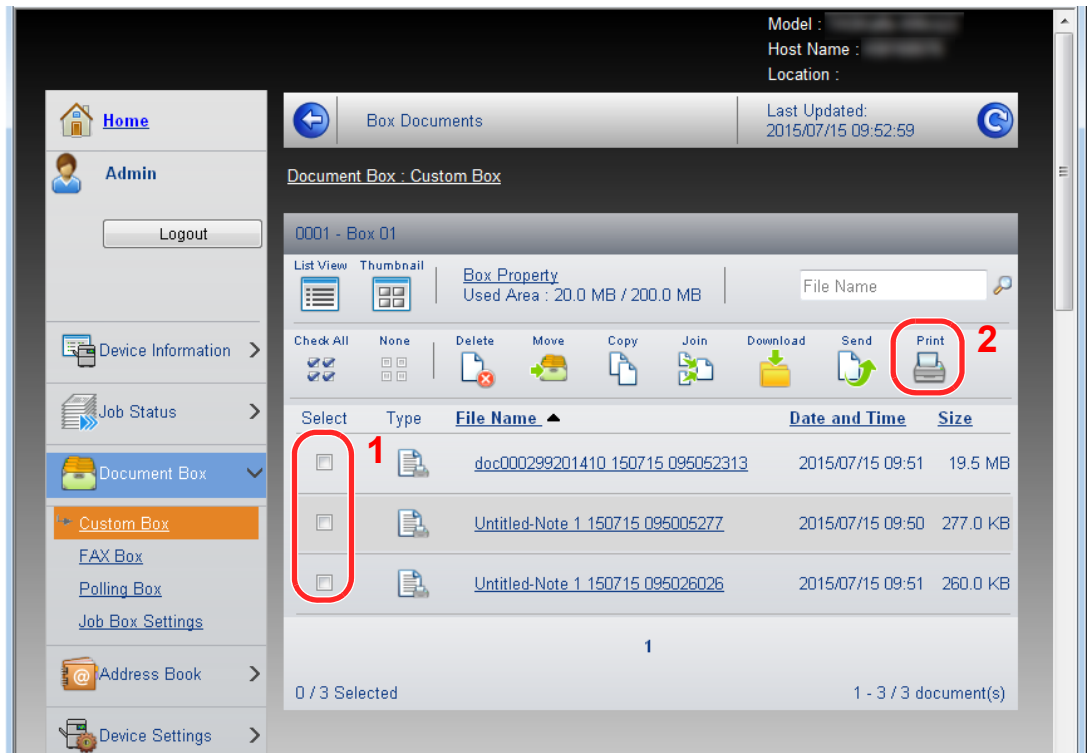
1 Select the document you wish to print.

Select the checkbox of the document to be printed.

2 Click [**Print**].

3 Configure settings for printing, click [**Print**].

Transferring Data from Our Other Products

By using the machine's utility, you can smoothly migrate address books when the machine is to be replaced.

This section explains how to transfer data between our products.

Migrating the Address Book

The Address Book registered on the machine can be backed up or migrated using the NETWORK PRINT MONITOR on the included DVD.

For details on operating the NETWORK PRINT MONITOR, refer to the following:

➡ **NETWORK PRINT MONITOR User Guide**

Backing Up Address Book Data to PC

1 Launch the NETWORK PRINT MONITOR.

2 Create a backup.

   1 Right-click on the model name from which you want to back up the Address Book, and select [**Advanced**] - [**Set multiple devices**].
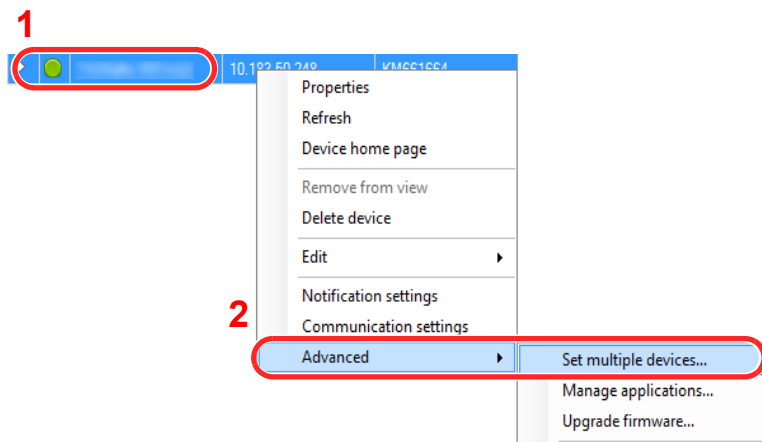
   2 Click [**Next**].

   3 Select [**Device Address Book**] and click [**Next**].
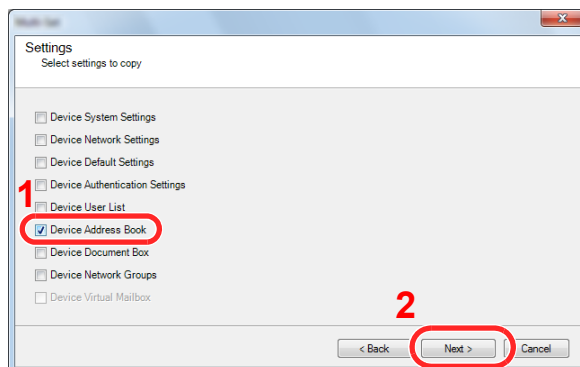
4 Select [**Create from device**] and remove the checkmark from [**Overwrite settings on target device**], and then click [**Next**].
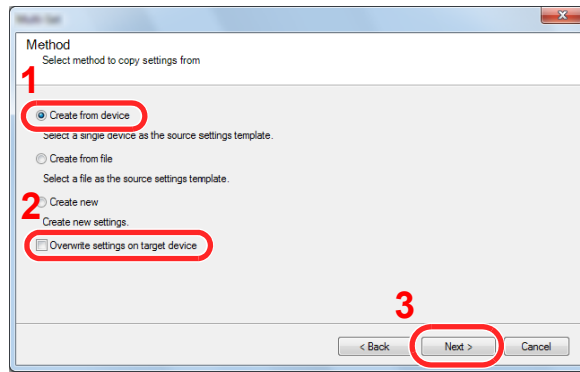
5 Select the model you want to back up, and click [**Next**].
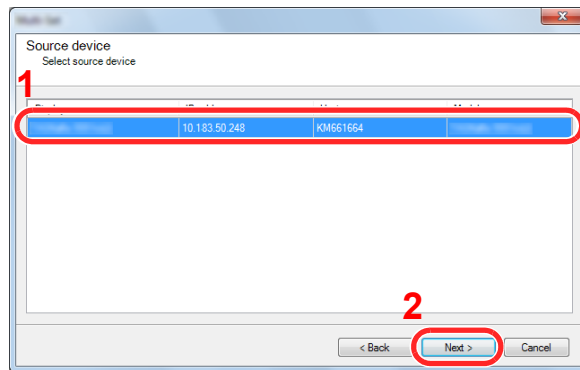
> **NOTE**
>
> If the "Admin Login" screen appears, enter the "Admin Login" and "Login Password", and then click [**OK**]. The default settings are as follows (Upper case and lower case letters are distinguished (case sensitive)).
>
> **Login User Name:**   Admin
> **Login Password:**   Admin

6 Click on [**Save to file**].
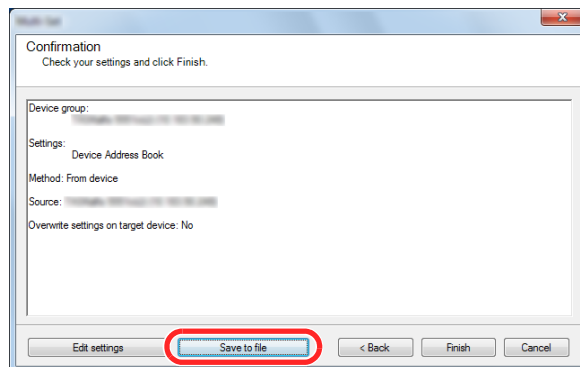
7 Specify the location to save the file, enter the file name, and then click [**Save**].

For "Save as type", make sure to select "XML File".

8 After saving the file, always click [**Cancel**] to close the screen.
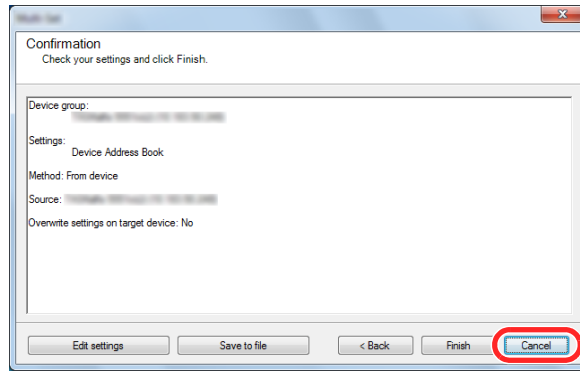
Please note that selecting [**Finish**] will write the data to the machine's Address Book.

Writing Address Book Data to the Machine

1 Launch the NETWORK PRINT MONITOR.

2 Load the Address Book data.

1 Right-click on the model name to which you want to transfer the Address Book, and select [**Advanced**] - [**Set multiple devices**].

2 Click [**Next**].

3 Select [**Device Address Book**] and click [**Next**].

2-65
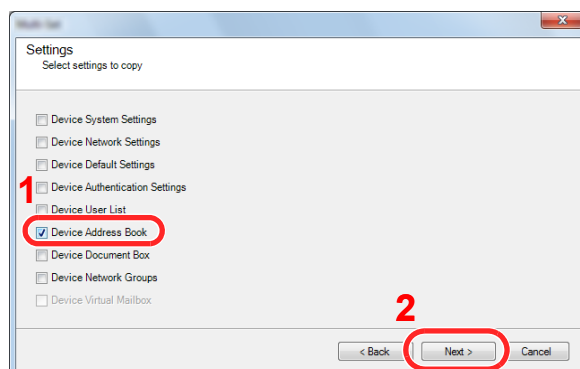
4 Select [**Create from file**] and remove the checkmark from [**Overwrite settings on target device**], and then click [**Next**].
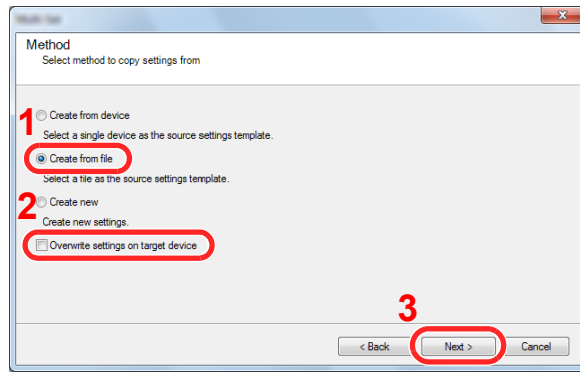
Selecting the [**Overwrite settings on target device**] checkbox will overwrite the machine's Address Book from entry No.1.

5 Click [**Browse**] and select the backup Address Book file, and then click [**Next**].
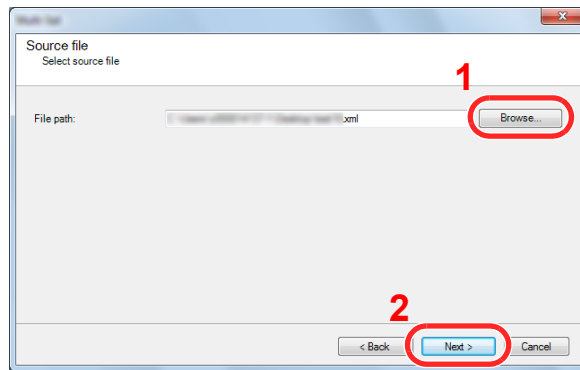
6 Click [**Finish**].
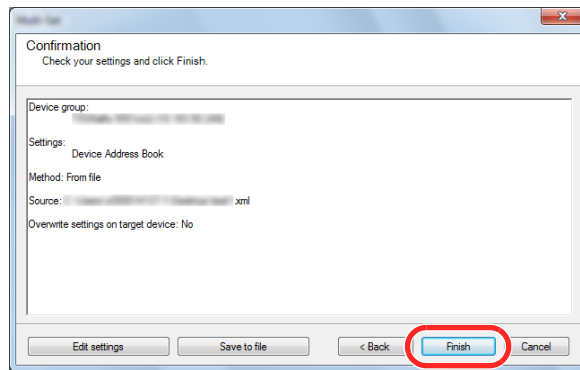
The write process of the Address Book data starts.

7 Once the write process is complete, click [**Close**].

2-66

3 Preparation before Use

This chapter explains the following operations.

Loading Paper

Load paper in the cassettes.

Precaution for Loading Paper

When you open a new package of paper, fan the sheets to separate them slightly prior to loading in the following steps.
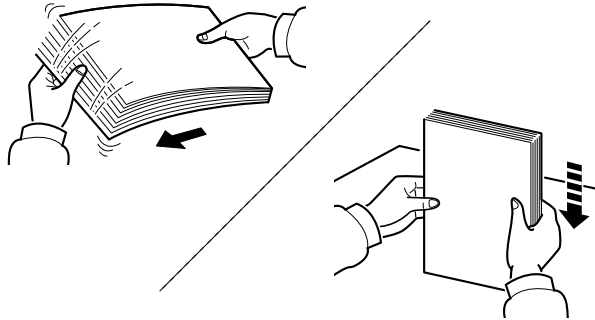
Fan the paper, then tap it on a level surface.

In addition, note the following points.

- If the paper is curled or folded, straighten it before loading. Paper that is curled or folded may cause a jam.

- Avoid exposing opened paper to high humidity as dampness can be a cause of problems. Seal any remaining paper after loading in the multi purpose tray or cassettes back in the paper storage bag.

- Leaving paper in the cassette for a long time may cause a discoloration of paper by heat from the cassette heater.

- If the machine will not be used for a prolonged period, protect all paper from humidity by removing it from the cassettes and sealing it in the paper storage bag.

> **✓ IMPORTANT**
>
> **If you copy onto used paper (paper already used for printing), do not use paper that is stapled or clipped together. This may damage the machine or cause poor image quality.**

> **🔍 NOTE**
>
> If you use special paper such as letterhead, paper with holes or paper with pre-prints like logo or company name, refer to the following:
>
> ➡ Paper (page 11-13)

3-2

Selecting the Paper Feeder Units

Select the paper feeder units according to the size and type of paper.
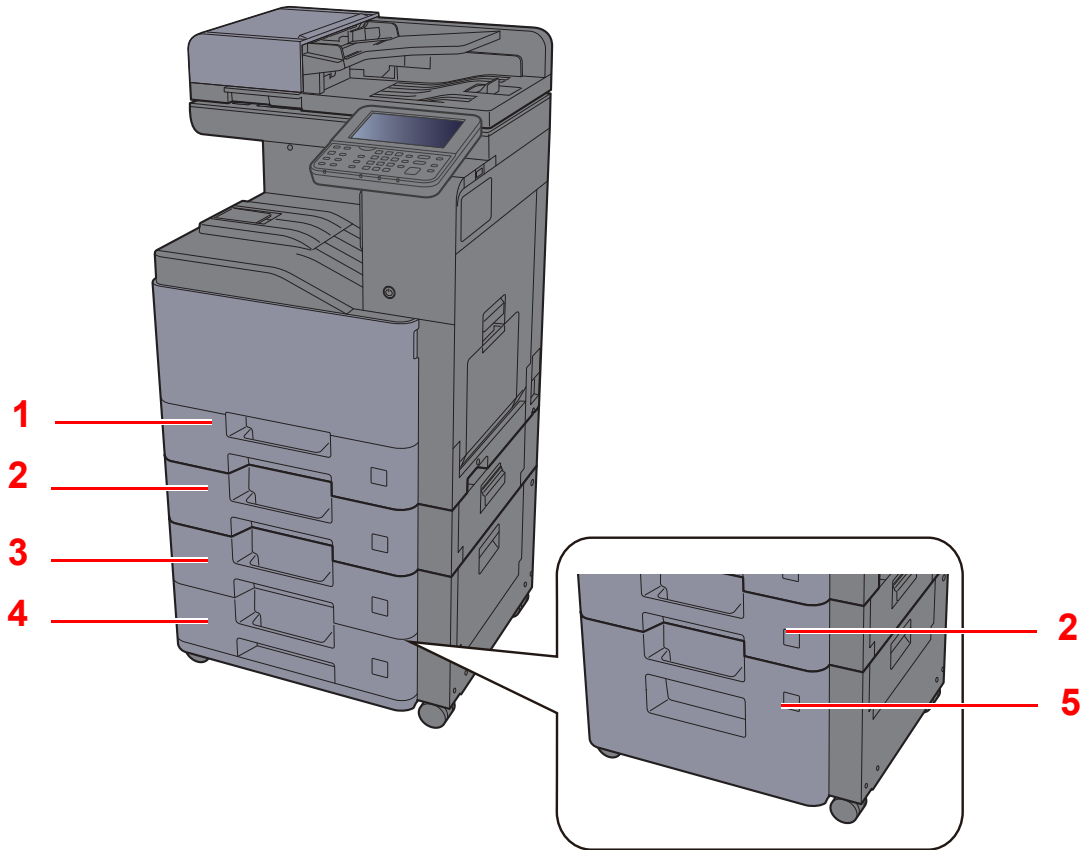
No.	Name	Paper Size	Paper Type	Capacity	Page
1	Cassette 1	A4, B5, A5, A6, B6, Legal, Oficio II, Letter, Executive, Statement, Folio, 16K, 216×340mm, Envelope Monarch, Envelope #10, Envelope DL, Envelope C5, Envelope #9, Envelope #6-3/4, B5(ISO), YOUKEI2, YOUKEI4, Custom	Plain, Preprinted, Bond, Recycled, Vellum, Rough, Letterhead, Color, Prepunched, Thick, High Quality, Envelope[*1], Custom 1 to 8	500 sheets (80 g/m^2)	Loading in the Cassettes (page 3-4)
2	Cassette 2				
3	Cassette 3				
4	Cassette 4				
5	Cassette 3	A4, Letter		2,000 sheets (80 g/m^2)	Loading in the Large Capacity Feeder (page 3-8)

*1 Cannot be used for the optional Large Capacity Feeder (2,000-sheet).

NOTE

• The number of sheets that can be held varies depending on your environment and paper type.

• You should not use inkjet printer paper or any paper with a special surface coating. (Such paper may cause paper jams or other faults.)

• For higher quality color printing, use special color paper.

3-3

Loading in the Cassettes

Load paper in the cassettes. The procedures here represent the cassette 1.

1 Pull the cassette completely out of the machine.
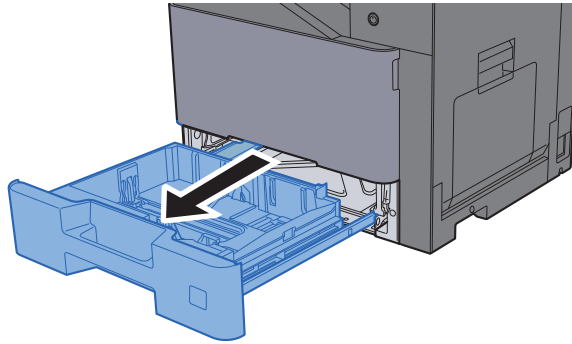
> 📝 **NOTE**
>
> Do not pull out more than one cassette at a time.

2 Adjust the paper length guide to the paper size required.
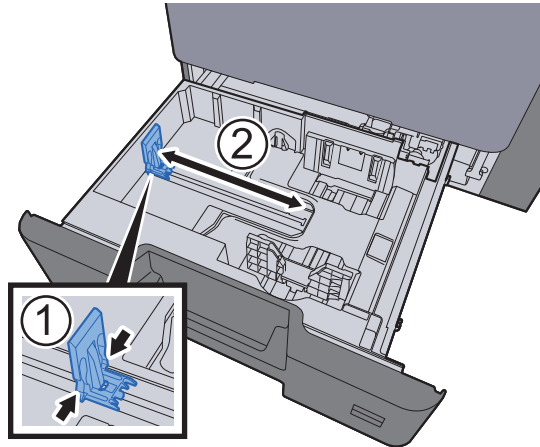
3 Adjust the position of the paper width guides located on the left and right sides of the cassette.
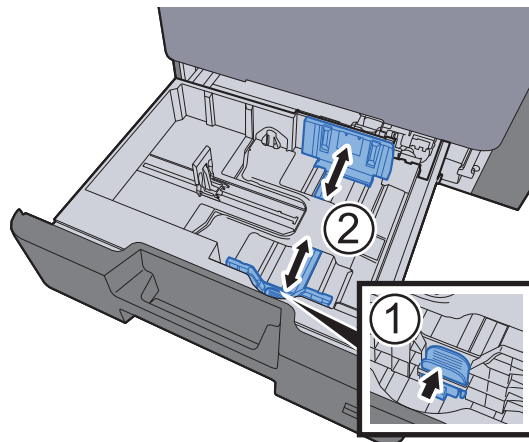
4 **Load paper.**
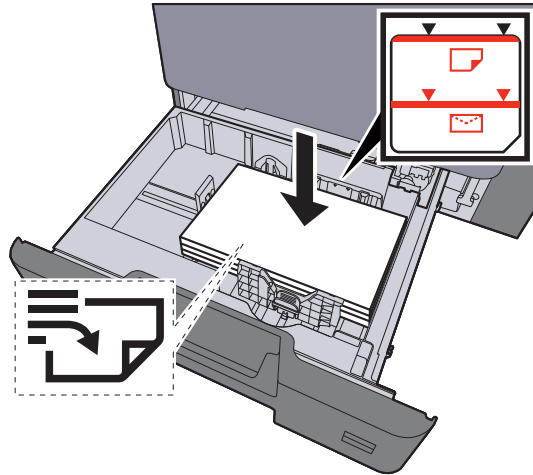
> ✅ **IMPORTANT**
>
> • **Load the paper with the print side facing up.**
>
> • **After removing new paper from its packaging, fan the paper before loading it in the cassettes.**
>
> ➡ Loading in the Cassettes (page 3-4)
>
> • **Before loading the paper, be sure that it is not curled or folded. Paper that is curled or folded may cause paper jams.**
>
> • **Ensure that the loaded paper does not exceed the level indicator (see illustration above).**
>
> • **If paper is loaded without adjusting the paper length guide and paper width guide, the paper may skew or become jammed.**

5 **Be sure that the paper length and width guides rest securely against the paper. If there is a gap, readjust the guides to fit the paper.**
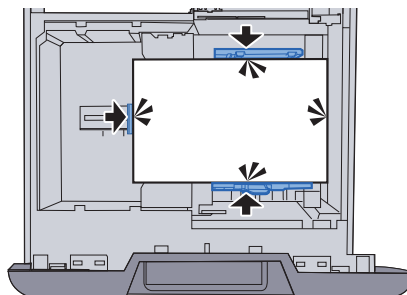
6 **Gently push the cassette back in.**
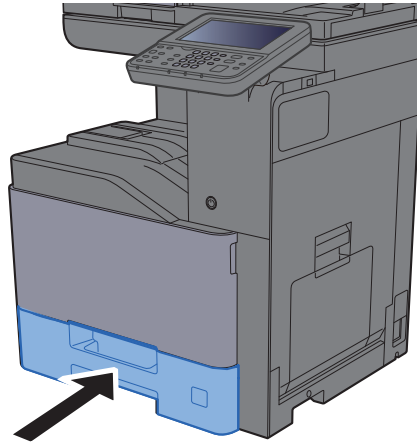
7 **Display the screen.**

[**System Menu**] key > [**Cassette/MP Tray Settings**]

8 **Configure the function.**

Select the paper size and paper type

➡ Cassette 1 (to 4) (page 8-7)

> **NOTE**
> • If the size label is required, please contact your dealer or our sales and service representative.
> • Paper size can be automatically detected and selected,refer to the following.
>
> ➡ Paper Selection (page 6-15)
> Cassette 1 (to 4) (page 8-7)

When you load envelopes in the Cassettes

Load envelope in the cassettes. Here, we'll explain the procedures for cassette 1, as an example.

1 Load the envelope with the print side facing up.

Example: When printing the address.
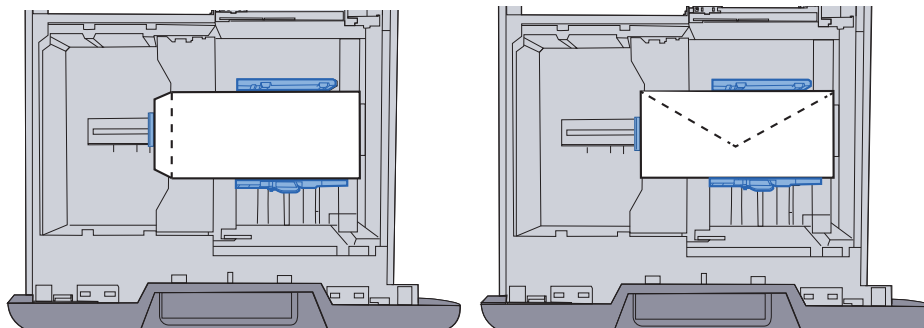
> ⊘ **IMPORTANT**
> • **How to load envelopes (orientation and facing) will differ depending on the type of envelope. Be sure to load it in correctly, otherwise printing may be done in the wrong direction or on the wrong face.**
> • **Ensure that the loaded envelope does not exceed the level indicator.**

> 🔍 **NOTE**
> • Approximately 50 envelopes can be loaded.

2 Display the screen.

[**System Menu**] key > [**Cassette/MP Tray Settings**] > "Cassette 1" [**Next**]

3 Configure the function.

Select the paper size and type of envelope.

4 Set by using the printer driver on the PC.

Select the paper size and type of envelope using the printer driver on the PC.

Loading in the Large Capacity Feeder

Load paper in the large capacity feeder.

1 Pull the cassette completely out of the machine.
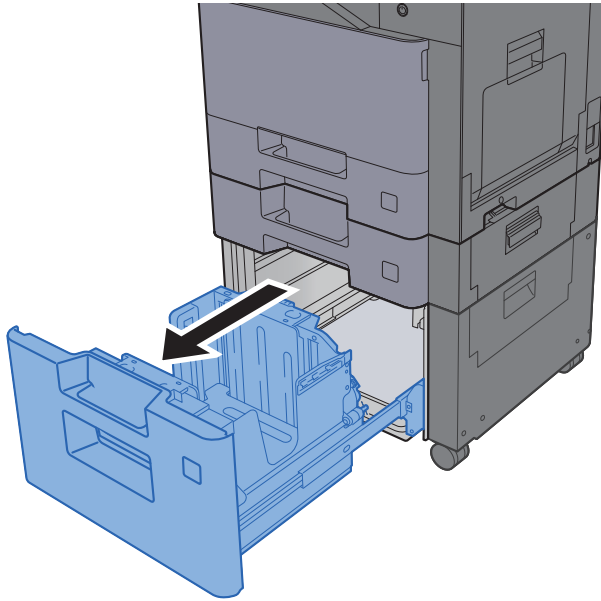
> **NOTE**
>
> Do not pull out more than one cassette at a time.

2 Load paper.
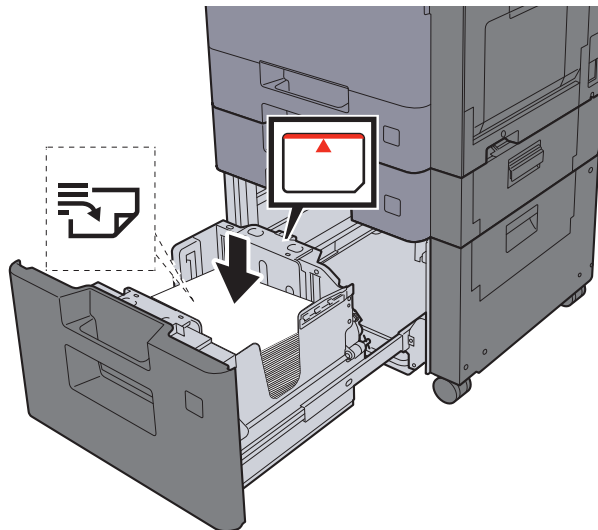
> **IMPORTANT**
>
> - **Load the paper with the print side facing up.**
>
> - **After removing new paper from its packaging, fan the paper before loading it in the cassettes.**
>
> ➡ Loading in the Cassettes (page 3-4)
>
> - **Before loading the paper, be sure that it is not curled or folded. Paper that is curled or folded may cause paper jams.**
>
> - **Ensure that the loaded paper does not exceed the level indicator.**

3 **Gently push the cassette back in.**
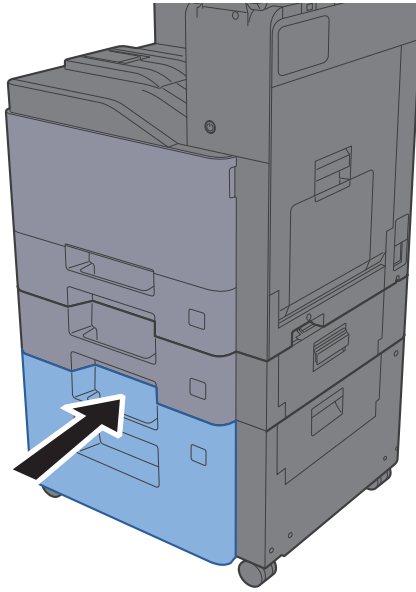
4 **Display the screen.**

[**System Menu**] key > [**Cassette/MP Tray Settings**]

5 **Select a function.**

"Cassette 3" [**Next**] > "Media Type" [**Change**]

6 **Configure the function.**

Select the paper type

Paper Stopper

When using paper A4/letter or larger, open the paper stopper shown in the figure.
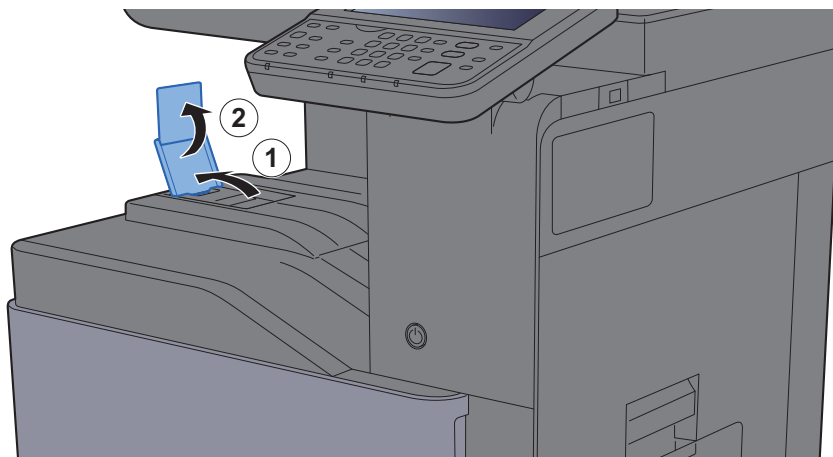
Envelope Stack Guide

To use an envelope, open the Envelope Stack Guide as shown below.
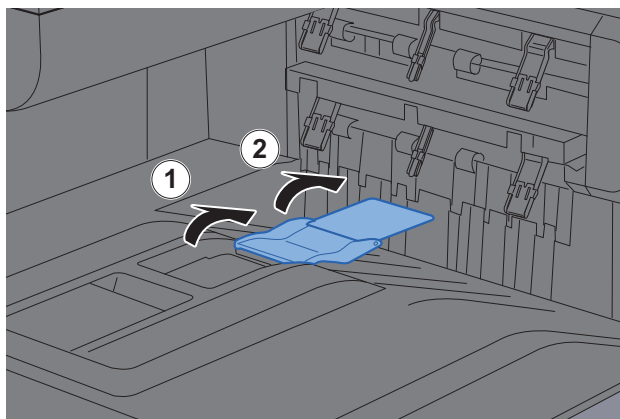
Stack Level Adjuster

If output paper curls noticeably, extend the Stack Level Adjuster as shown.

Extending the Stack Level Adjuster
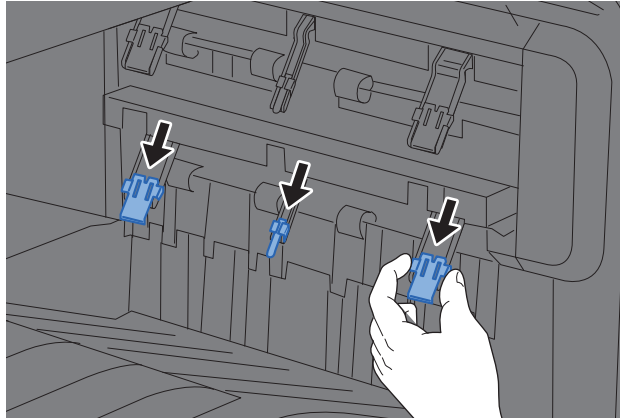
Restoring the Stack Level Adjuster
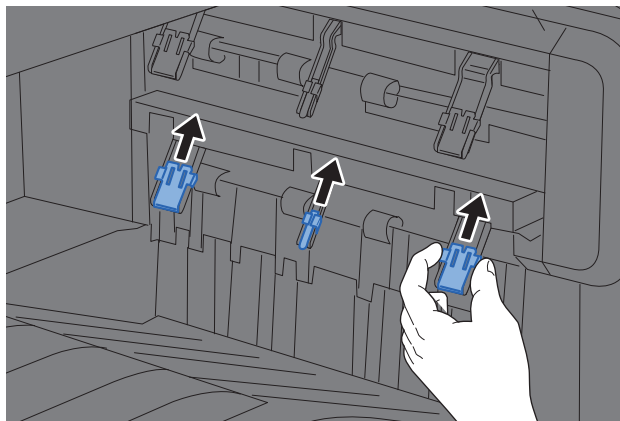
> **NOTE**
> When using the Job Separator for output, you can if needed extend the Stack Level Adjuster on the Job Separator.

Preparation for Sending a Document to a Shared Folder in a PC

Check the information that needs to be set on the machine and create a folder to receive the document on your computer. Screens of Windows 7 are used in the following explanation. The details of the screens will vary in other versions of Windows.

> **NOTE**
>
> Log on to Windows with administrator privileges.

Making a note of the computer name and full computer name

Check the name of the computer name and full computer name.

1 Display the screen.

From [**Start**] button on the Windows, select [**Computer**] and then [**System Properties**].

> **NOTE**
>
> In Windows XP, right-click [**My Computer**] and select [**Properties**]. The [**System Properties**] dialog box appears. Click the [**Computer Name**] tab in the window that appears.
> In Windows 8, select the desktop in the Start screen, right-click [**Computer**] from [**Libraries**], and then select [**Properties**].
> In Windows 8.1, select the desktop in the Start screen, right-click [**PC**] from the desktop [**Explorer**] and select [**Properties**]. Or, right-click the Window icon and select [**System**].

2 Check the computer name.
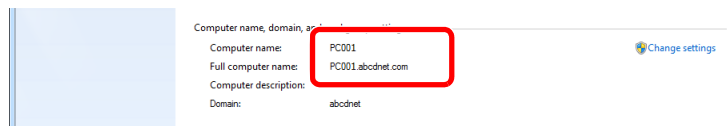
Check the computer name and full computer name.

Screen example:
    Computer name: PC001
    Full computer name: PC001.abcdnet.com

Windows XP:

If the full computer name does not have a dot (.), the full computer name and the computer name are the same.
If the full computer name has a dot (.), the text string in front of the dot (.) in the full computer name is the computer name.

Example: PC001.abcdnet.com
                PC001 is the computer name
                PC001.abcdnet.com is the full computer name

After checking the computer name, click the [**Close**] button to close the "**System Properties**" screen.

In Windows XP, after checking the computer name, click the [**Cancel**] button to close the "**System Properties**" screen.

Making a note of the user name and domain name

Check the domain name and user name for logging onto Windows.

1 **Display the screen.**
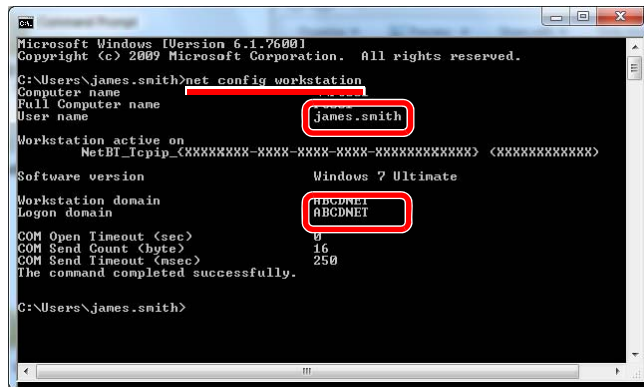
From [**Start**] button on the Windows, select [**All Programs**] (or [**Programs**]), [**Accessories**] and then [**Command Prompt**].
In Windows 8, display [**Apps**] on [**Search**] in charms on the Start screen, and select [**Command Prompt**].

The Command Prompt window appears.

2 **Check the domain name and user name.**

At the Command Prompt, enter "net config workstation" and then press [**Enter**].

Check the user name and domain name.

Screen example:
   User Name: james.smith
   Domain Name: ABCDNET

Creating a Shared Folder, Making a Note of a Shared Folder

Create a shared folder to receive the document in the destination computer.

> **NOTE**
>
> If there is a workgroup in System Properties, configure the settings below to limit folder access to a specific user or group.
>
> **1** From [**Start**] button on the Windows, select [**Control Panel**], [**Appearance and Personalization**], and then [**Folder Options**].
>
>
>
> In Windows XP, click [**My Computer**] and select [**Folder Options**] in [**Tools**].
>
> In Windows 8, select [**Settings**] in charms on Desktop, and select [**Control Panel**], [**Appearance and Personalization**], and then [**Folder Options**].
>
> **2**
>
>
>
> Make sure that the [**View**] tab is selected.
>
> Remove the checkmark from [**Use Sharing Wizard (Recommended)**] in "Advanced settings".
>
> In Windows XP, click the [**View**] tab and remove the checkmark from [**Use Simple File Sharing (Recommended)**] in "Advanced settings".
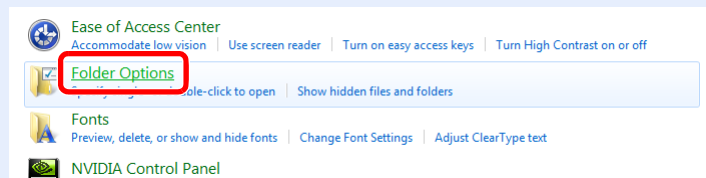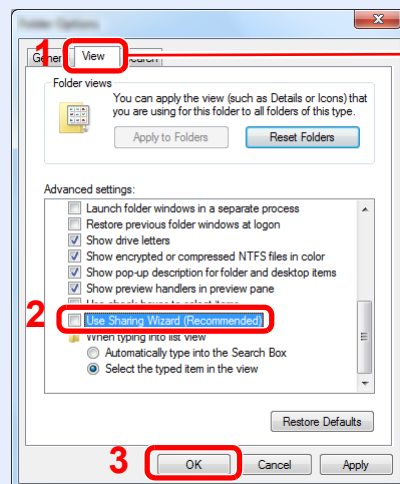
1 Create a folder.

1 Create a folder on your computer.

For example, create a folder with the name **"scannerdata"** on the desktop.
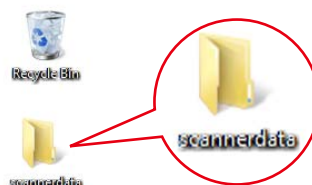
2 **Right-click the "scannerdata"** folder and click [**Share**] and [**Advanced sharing**]. Click the [**Advanced Sharing**] button.
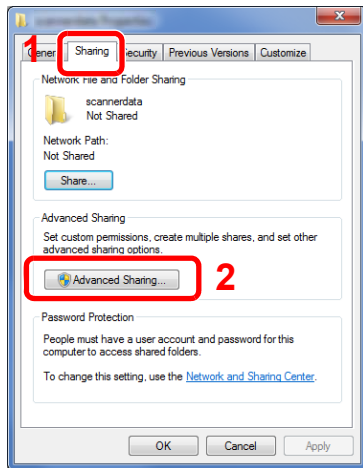
In Windows XP, right-click the "scannerdata" folder and select [**Sharing and Security**] (or [**Sharing**]).

2 Configure permission settings.

1 Select the [**Share this folder**] checkbox and click the [**Permissions**] button.
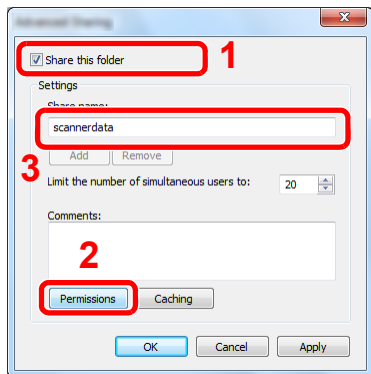
In Windows XP, select [**Share this folder**] and click the [**Permissions**] button.

2 Make a note of the [**Share name**].

3 Click the [**Add**] button.
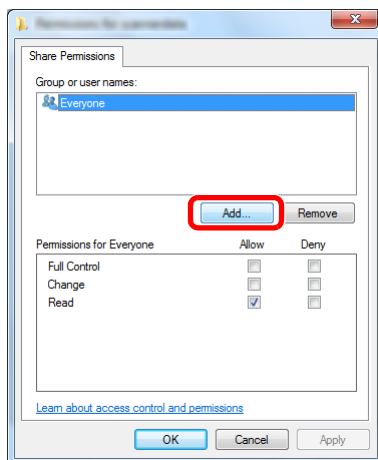
4 Specify the location.
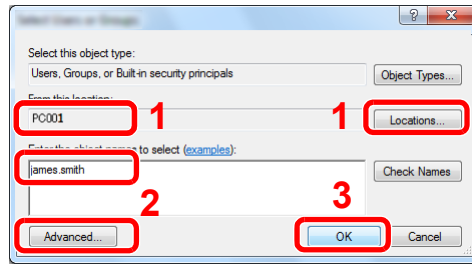
1 If the computer name that you made a note of on page is the same as the domain name: If the computer name is not shown in "From this location", click the [**Locations**] button, select the computer name, and click the [**OK**] button.
Example: PC001
If the computer name that you made a note of on page is not the same as the domain name: If the text after the first dot (.) in the full computer name that you made a note of does not appear in "From this location", click the [**Locations**] button, select the text after the dot (.), and click the [**OK**] button.
Example: abcdnet.com

2 Enter the user name that you made a note of on page in the text box, and click the [**OK**] button.
Also the user name can be made by clicking the [**Advanced**] button and selecting a user.

5 Set the access permission for the user selected.
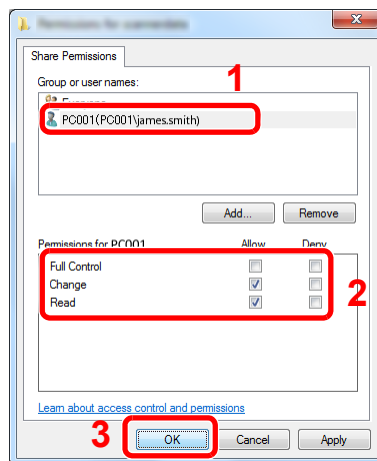
1 Select the user you entered.

2 Select the [**Allow**] checkbox of the "Change" and "Read" permissions

3 Press [**OK**].

In Windows XP, go to step 6.

> **NOTE**
>
> "**Everyone**" gives sharing permission to everyone on the network. To strengthen security, it is recommended that you select "**Everyone**" and remove the "**Read**" [**Allow**] checkmark.

6 Click the [**OK**] button in the "**Advanced Sharing**" screen to close the screen.

3-16

7 Check the details set in the [**Security**] tab.
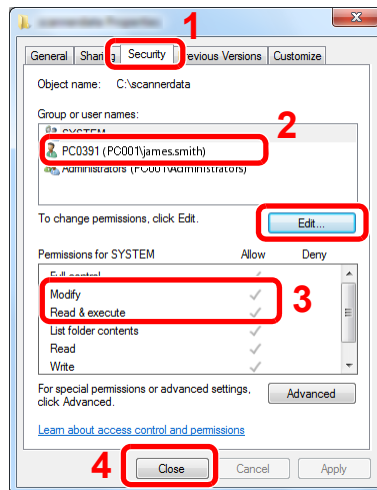
1 Select the [**Security**] tab.

2 Select the user you entered.
If the user does not appear on "Group or user names", click [**Edit**] button to add user in a similar way of "configuration of permission settings".

3 Make sure that checkmarks appear on [**Allow**] checkbox for the "**Modify**" and "**Read & execute**" permissions.

4 Click the [**Close**] button.

In Windows XP, make sure that checkmarks appear on [**Allow**] checkbox for the "**Modify**" and "**Read & execute**" permissions, and click the [**OK**] button.

3-17

Configuring Windows Firewall

Permit sharing of files and printers and set the port used for SMB transmission.

> **NOTE**
> Log on to Windows with administrator privileges.

1 Check file and printer sharing.

1 From [**Start**] button on the Windows, select [**Control Panel**], [**System and Security**], and [**Allow a program through Windows Firewall**].
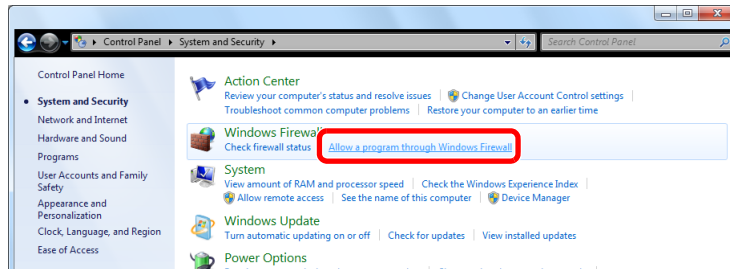
> **NOTE**
> If the User Account Control dialog box appears, click the [**Continue**] button.

2 Select the [**File and Printer Sharing**] checkbox.
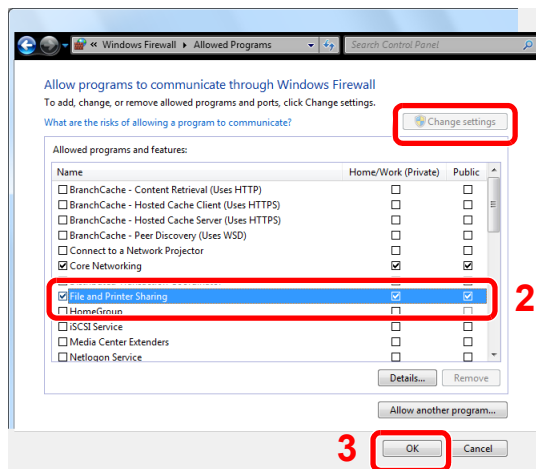
2 Add a port.

1 From [**Start**] button on the Windows, select [**Control Panel**], [**System and Security**], and [**Check firewall status**].
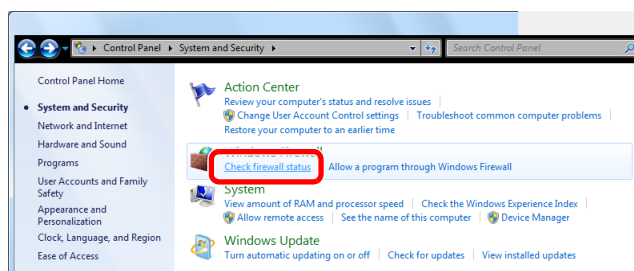
2 Select [**Advanced settings**].
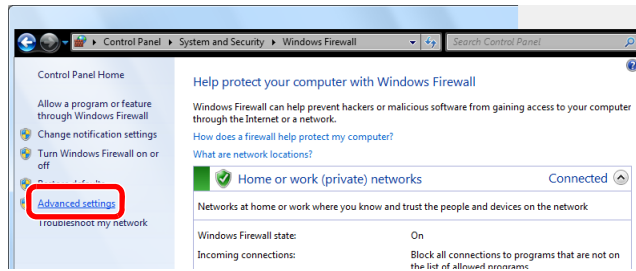
3 Select [**Inbound Rules**].
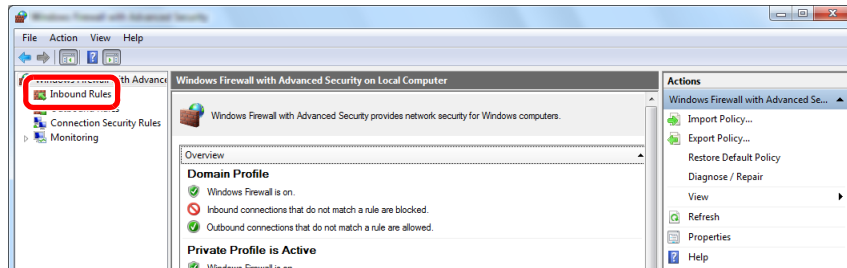
4 Select [**New Rules**].
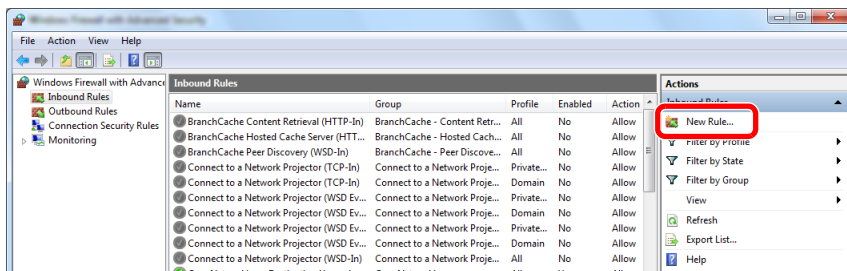
5 Select [**Port**].
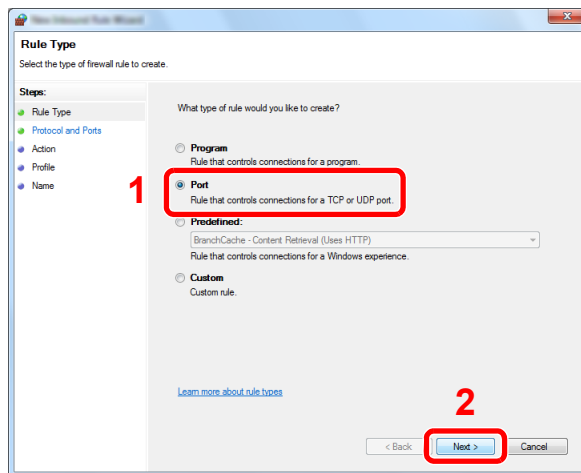
6 Select [**TCP**] as the port to apply the rule to. Then select [**Specific local ports**] and enter "445" then click [**Next**].
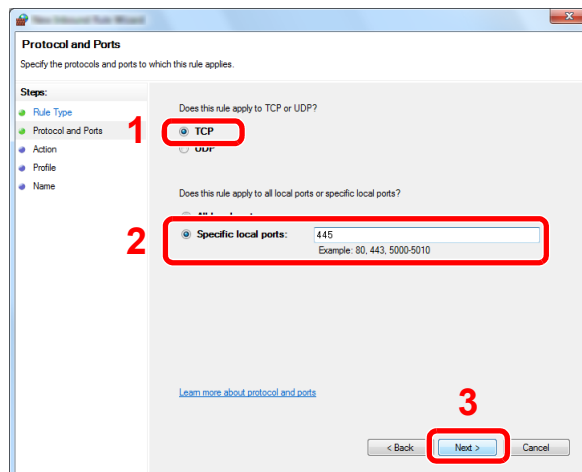
7 Select [**Allow the connection**] and click the [**Next**] button.
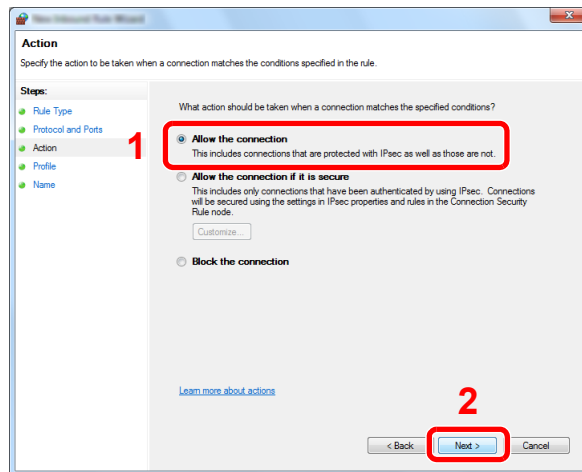
8 Make sure all checkboxes are selected and click the [**Next**] button.
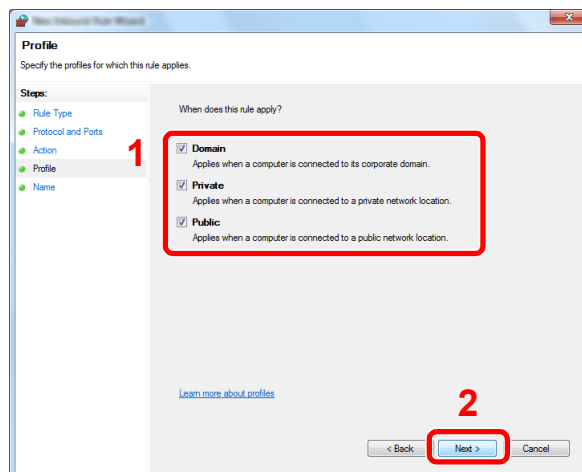
9   Enter **"Scan to SMB"** in "**Name**" and click [**Finish**].
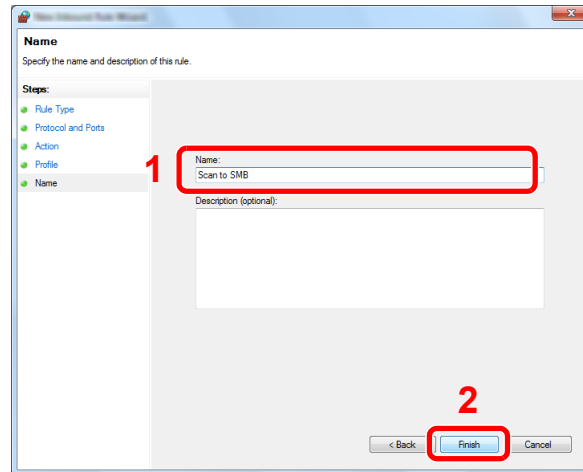
In Windows XP or Windows Vista

1   In Windows XP, from [**Start**] button on the Windows, select [**Control Panel**], and then [**Windows Firewall**].
In Windows Vista, from [**Start**] button on the Windows, select [**Control Panel**], [**Security**], and then [**Turn Windows Firewall on or off**].
If the User Account Control dialog box appears, click the [**Continue**] button.

2   Click the [**Exceptions**] tab and then the [**Add port...**] button.

3   Specify Add a Port settings.
Enter any name in "**Name**" (example: Scan to SMB). This will be the name of the new port.
Enter "445" in "**Port Number**". Select [**TCP**] for "**Protocol**".

4   Click [**OK**] button.

In Windows 8

1   In charms on Desktop, click [**Settings**], [**Control Panel**], [**System and Security**], and then [**Windows Firewall**].
If the User Account Control dialog box appears, click the [**Continue**] button.

2   Configure the settings

➡

Registering Destinations in the Address Book

Save frequently used destinations to the Address Book or One Touch Keys. The saved destinations can be changed. The destinations are available for Send as E-mail, Send to Folder, and Fax Transmission (Only on products with the fax function installed).

> **NOTE**
>
> Registering and editing of the Address Book can also be done in Embedded Web Server RX.
>
> ➡

Adding a Destination (Address Book)

Add a new destination to the Address Book. There are two registering methods, contacts and groups. When adding a group, enter the group name and select group members from the Address Book.

> **NOTE**
>
> If user login administration is enabled, you can only edit destinations in the Address Book by logging in with administrator privileges.

Registering a contact address

A maximum of 2,000 contact addresses can be registered. Each address can include the information such as destination name, E-mail address, FTP server folder path, computer folder path, and FAX No. (Only on products with the fax function installed).

1 Display the screen.

[**System Menu**] key > [**Edit Destination**] > "Address Book" [**Add/Edit**] > [**Add**] > [**Contact**] > [**Next**]

2 Add the name.

1 Select "Address Number" [**Change**].

2 Use [**+**] / [**-**] or the numeric keys to enter an address number (1 to 2500).

To have the number assigned automatically, enter "0000".

> **NOTE**
>
> Address Number is an ID for a destination. You can select any available number out of 2,000 numbers for contacts and 500 numbers for groups.
>
> If you specify an address number that is already in use, an error message appears when you select [**Save**] and the number cannot be registered. If you set "0000" as the address number, the address is registered under the lowest available number.

3 Select [**OK**].

The screen shown in step 1 reappears.

4 Select "Name" [**Change**].

5 Enter the destination name (up to 32 characters) to be displayed on the Address Book and select [**OK**].

The screen shown in step 1 reappears.

> **NOTE**
> Refer to the following for details on entering characters.
> ➡ Character Entry Method (page 11-10)

3 Add the address.

E-mail Address

[**E-mail Address**] > Enter the E-mail address > [**OK**]

> **NOTE**
> Refer to the following for details on entering characters.
> ➡ Character Entry Method (page 11-10)

The Folder (SMB) Address

"Host Name", "Path", "Login User Name" and "Login Password" [**Change**] >
Enter the information > [**OK**]

> **NOTE**
>
> For the computer name, share name, domain name, and user name, enter the information that you noted when you created the shared folder. For details on creating shared folders, refer to the following:
>
> ➡ Preparation for Sending a Document to a Shared Folder in a PC (page 3-12)

The table below explains the items to be entered.

Item	Description	Max. No. of Characters
Host Name[*1]	Computer name	Up to 64 characters
Path	Share name For example: scannerdata If saving in a folder in the shared folder: share name\folder name in shared folder	Up to 128 characters
Login User Name	If the computer name and domain name are the same: User Name For example: james.smith If the computer name and domain name are different: Domain name\User name For example: abcdnet\james.smith	Up to 64 characters
Login Password	Windows logon password **(Case sensitive.)**	Up to 64 characters

*1 You can also specify the port number. Enter the following format separated by a colon.
"Host name: port number" or "IP address: port number"
To enter the IPv6 address, enclose the address in brackets [ ].
(Example: [2001:db8:a0b:12f0::10]:445)
If the port number is not specified, the default port number is 445.

To search for a folder on a PC on the network, select "Search Folder from Network" or "Search Folder by Host Name" [**Next**].

If you selected "Search Folder from Network" [**Next**], you can enter the "Domain/Workgroup", and "Host Name" to search PCs on the network for the destination.

If you pressed "Search Folder by Host Name"[**Next**], you can search all PCs on the network for a destination.

A maximum of 500 addresses can be displayed. Select the host name (PC name) that you want to specify in the screen that appears, and select [**Next**]. The login user name and login password entry screen appears.

After you enter the login user name and login password name of the destination PC, the shared folders appear. Select the folder that you want to specify and select [**Next**]. The address of the selected shared folder is set.

Select the folder from the Search Results list.

> **NOTE**
>
> • Refer to the following for details on entering characters.
>
> ➡ Character Entry Method (page 11-10)
>
> • Select [**Connection Test**] to check the connection to the server you chose. If the connection fails, check the entries you made.

The Folder (FTP) Address

"Host Name", "Path", "Login User Name" and "Login Password" [**Change**] >
Enter the information > [**OK**]
The table below explains the items to be entered.

Item	Descriptions	Max. No. of Characters
Host Name[*1]	Host name or IP address of FTP server	Up to 64 characters
Path[*2]	Path for the file to be stored For example: User\ScanData If no path is entered, the file is stored in the home directory.	Up to 128 characters
Login User Name	FTP server login user name	Up to 64 characters
Login Password	FTP server login password	Up to 64 characters

*1 You can also specify the port number. Enter the following format separated by a colon.
    "Host name: port number" or "IP address: port number"
    To enter the IPv6 address, enclose the address in brackets [ ].
    (Example: [2001:db8:a0b:12f0::10]:21)
    If the port number is not specified in [Host Name], the default port number is 21.

*2 When the FTP server is based on Linux/UNIX, the path including the sub-folder is combined by the slash "/" not using the back-slash.

NOTE

• Refer to the following for details on entering characters.

➡ Character Entry Method (page 11-10)

• Select [**Connection Test**] to check the connection to the FTP server you chose. If the connection fails, check the entries you made.

4 **Check if the destination entry is correct > [Save]**

The destination is added to the Address Book.

To register the registered address in a one-touch key, select [**Save**] > [**Yes**]

NOTE

Refer to the following for registering the One Touch Key.

➡ Adding a Destination on One Touch Key (One Touch Key) (page 3-29)

Add the group

Compile two or more contacts into a group. Designations in the group can be added at the same time. When adding a group, a maximum of 500 groups can be added in the Address Book.

> **NOTE**
>
> To add a group, you need individually added destinations. Register one or more individual destinations as needed before proceeding. Up to 100 destinations for the E-mail, 500 destinations for the FAX, and a total of 10 destinations for the FTP and SMB can be registered per group.

1 Display the screen.

[**System Menu**] key> [**Edit Destination**] > "Address Book" [**Add/Edit**] > [**Add**] > [**Group**] > [**Next**]

2 Add the name.

1 Select "Address Number" [**Change**].

2 Use [**+**] / [**-**] or the numeric keys to enter an address number (1 to 2,500).

To have the number assigned automatically, set "0000".

> **NOTE**
>
> Address Number is an ID for a group. You can select any available number out of 2,000 numbers for contacts and 500 numbers for groups.
>
> If you specify an address number that is already in use, an error message appears when you select [**Save**] and the number cannot be registered. If you set "0000" as the address number, the address is registered under the lowest available number.

3 Select [**OK**]. The "Add Group" screen reappears.

4 Select "Name" [**Change**].

5 Enter the group name displayed on the Address Book > [**OK**]

The "Add Group" screen reappears.

> **NOTE**
>
> Up to 32 characters can be entered.
>
> • Refer to the following for details on entering characters.
>
> ➡ Character Entry Method (page 11-10)

3 Select the members (destinations).

1 [**Member**] > [**Add**]

2 Select destinations (contacts) to add to the group > [**OK**]

> **NOTE**
>
> Destinations can be sorted or searched by destination name or address number.
>
> ➡ Checking and Editing Destinations (page 5-42)

If you have more destinations to add, repeat Steps 2 to 3.

4 **Check if the selected destination was added to the group > [Save]**

The group is added to the Address Book.

To register the registered address in a one-touch key, select [**Save**] > [**Yes**]

> **NOTE**
> Refer to the following for registering the One Touch Key.
>
> → Adding a Destination on One Touch Key (One Touch Key) (page 3-29)

Editing Address Book Entries

Edit the destinations (contacts) you added to the Address Book.

1 **Display the screen.**

1 [**System Menu**] key > [**Edit Destination**] > "Address Book" [**Add/Edit**]

2 Select a destination or group to edit > [**Detail**]

> **NOTE**
> Destinations can be sorted or searched by destination name or address number.
>
> → Specifying Destination (page 5-39)

2 **Edit the destination.**

Editing a Contact

1 Change "Name", "Address Number" and destination type and address.

> → Adding a Destination (Address Book) (page 3-22)

2 [**Save**] > [**Yes**]

Register the changed destination.

Add a destination to a group

1 Change "Name" and "Address Number".

> → Add the group (page 3-26)

2 [**Member**] > [**Add**]

3 After you have completed the changes, [**Save**] > [**Yes**]

Register the changed destination.

To delete any destination from the group

1 [**Member**] > Select the delete destination > [**delete**] > [**Yes**]

2 After you have completed the changes, [**Save**] > [**Yes**]

Register the changed destination.

Deleting Address Book Entries

Delete the destinations (contacts) you added to the Address Book.

1 Display the screen.

1 [**System Menu**] key> [**Edit Destination**] > "Address Book" [**Add/Edit**]

2 Select a destination or group to delete.

> **NOTE**
> Destinations can be sorted or searched by destination name or address number.
> ➡ Specifying Destination (page 5-39)

2 [Delete] > [Yes]

Delete the contact or group.

Adding a Destination on One Touch Key (One Touch Key)

Assign a new destination (contact or group) to an one touch key. A maximum of 100 destinations can be registered.

> **NOTE**
> • Refer to the following for use of One Touch Key.
> ➡ Specifying Destination (page 5-39)
> • You can add One Touch keys and change their settings on Embedded Web Server RX.
> ➡ Registering Destinations (page 2-59)

1 Display the screen.

[**System Menu**] key > [**Edit Destination**] > "One Touch Key" [**Add/Edit**]

2 Add One Touch Keys.

1 Select a One Touch Key number (001 to 100) for the destination > [**Add/Edit**]
Selecting the [**Quick No. Search**] key enables direct entry of a One Touch Key number.

Select a One Touch Key with no registered destination.

2 Select "Display Name" [**Change**].

3 Enter the One Touch Key name displayed in the send base screen > [**Next**]

> **NOTE**
> Up to 24 characters can be entered.
> Refer to the following for details on entering characters.
>
> ➡ Character Entry Method (page 11-10)

4 Select "Destination" [**Change**].

The Address Book appears.

5 Select a destination (contact or group) to add to the One Touch Key number > [**Next**]

Selecting [**Detail**] shows the detailed information of the selected destination.

> **NOTE**
> Destinations can be sorted or searched by destination name or address number.
>
> ➡ Specifying Destination (page 5-39)

6 Select [**Save**].

The destination will be added to the One Touch Key.

Editing One Touch Key

Edit the destinations you added to One Touch Key.

1 Display the screen.

1 [**System Menu**] key > [**Edit Destination**] > "One Touch Key" [**Add/Edit**]

2 Select a One Touch Key number (001 to 100) to edit. Selecting the [**Quick No. Search**] key enables direct entry of a One Touch Key number.

2 Changing the Registered Information.

1 Select [**Add/Edit**].

2 Select a new destination (contact or group). Selecting [**Detail**] shows the detailed information of the selected destination.

> **NOTE**
> Destinations can be sorted or searched by destination name or address number.
> ➜ Specifying Destination (page 5-39)

3 [**OK**] > [**Save**] > [**Yes**]

Add the destination to the One Touch Key.

Deleting the Destination to the One Touch Key

1 Display the screen.

1 [**System Menu**] key > [**Edit Destination**] > "One Touch Key" [**Add/Edit**]

2 Select a One Touch Key number (001 to 100) to edit. Selecting the [**Quick No. Search**] key enables direct entry of a One Touch Key number.

2 Delete the Registered Information.

Select [**Delete**] > [**Yes**]

The data registered in the One Touch Key is deleted.

4 Printing from PC

This chapter explains the following topics:

Printer Driver Print Settings Screen

The printer driver print settings screen allows you to configure a variety of print-related settings.

➡ **Printing System Driver User Guide**

No.	Description
1	**[Quick Print] tab**
	Provides icons that can be used to easily configure frequently used functions. Each time you click an icon, it changes to an image resembling the print results and applies the settings.
	[Basic] tab
	This tab groups basic functions that are frequently used. You can use it to configure the paper size, destination, and duplex printing.
	[Layout] tab
	This tab lets you configure settings for printing various layouts, including booklet printing, combine mode, poster printing, and scaling.
	[Imaging] tab
	This tab lets you configure settings related to the quality of the print results.
	[Publishing] tab
	This tab lets you create covers and inserts for print jobs and put inserts between sheets of OHP film.
	[Job] tab
	This tab lets you configure settings for saving print data from the computer to the machine. Regularly used documents and other data can be saved to the machine for easy printing later. Since saved documents can be printed directly from the machine, this function is also convenient when you wish to print a document that you don't want others to see.
	[Advanced] tab
	This tab lets you configure settings for adding text pages or watermarks to print data.
2	**[Profiles]**
	Printer driver settings can be saved as a profile. Saved profiles can be recalled at any time, so it's a convenient practice to save frequently used settings.
3	**[Reset]**
	Click to revert settings to their initial values.

Displaying the Printer Driver Help

The printer driver includes Help. To learn about print settings, open the printer driver print settings screen and display Help as explained below.
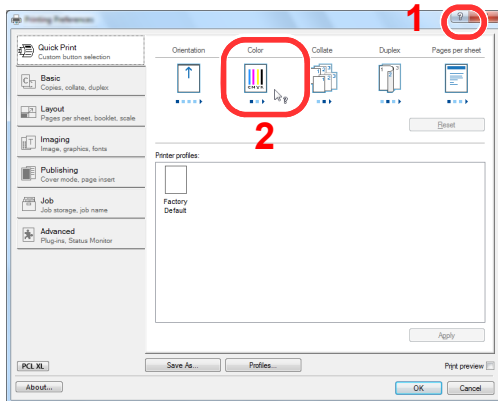
1 Click the [**?**] button in the upper right corner of the screen.

2 Click the item you want to know about.

> **NOTE**
> The Help appears, even when you click the item you want to know about and press the [**F1**] key on your keyboard.

Changing the Default Printer Driver Settings (Windows 7)

The default printer driver settings can be changed. By selecting frequently used settings, you can omit steps when printing. For the settings, refer to the following:

➡ **Printing System Driver User Guide**

1 Click [Start] button on the Windows, and then click [Devices and Printers].

2 Right-click the printer driver icon of the machine, and click the [Printer properties] menu of the printer driver.

3 Click the [Basic] button on the [General] tab.

4 Select the default settings and click the [OK] button.

Printing from PC

Follow the steps below to print documents from applications.

This section provides the printing method using the Printing System Driver.

> **NOTE**
> • To print the document from applications, install the printer driver on your computer from the supplied DVD (Product Library).
>
> • In some environments, the current settings are displayed at the bottom of the printer driver.
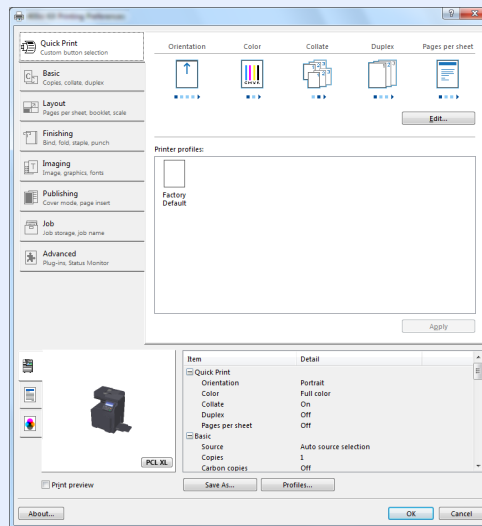
> • When printing the cardstock or envelopes, load the cardstock or envelopes in the multi purpose tray before performing the following procedure.
>
> ➡

Printing on Standard Sized Paper

If you loaded a paper size that is included in the print sizes of the machine, select the paper size in the [**Basic**] tab of the print settings screen of the printer driver.

1 Display the screen.

Click [**File**] and select [**Print**] in the application.

2 Configure the settings.

1 Select the machine from the "Name" menu and click the [**Properties**] button.
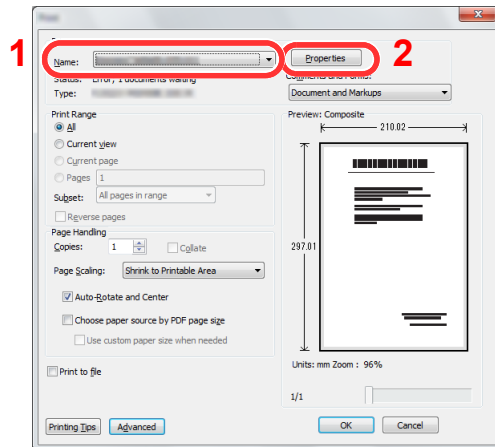
2 Select the [**Basic**] tab.

3 Click "Print size" menu and select the paper size to use for printing.

To load the paper of size that is not included in print sizes of the machine such as cardstock or envelopes, the paper size needs to be registered.

➡ Printing on Non-standard Sized Paper (page 4-6)

To print on the special paper such as thick paper or transparency, click "Media type" menu and select the media type.
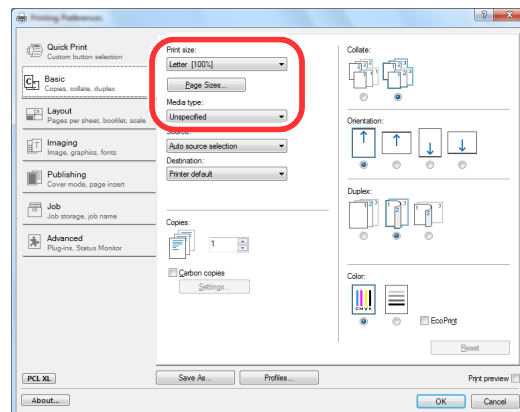
4 Click [**OK**] button to return to the Print dialog box.

3 Start printing.

Click the [**OK**] button.

Printing on Non-standard Sized Paper

If you loaded a paper size that is not included in the print sizes of the machine, register the paper size in the [**Basic**] tab of the print settings screen of the printer driver.

The registered size can be selected from the "Print size" menu.

> **NOTE**
>
> To execute printing at the machine, set the paper size and type in the following:
>
> → Original / Paper Settings (page 8-10)

1 **Display the print settings screen.**

2 **Register the paper size.**

    1 Click the [**Basic**] tab.
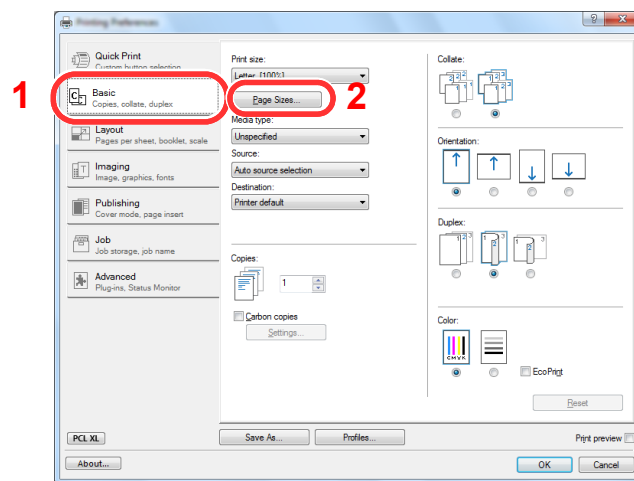
    2 Click the [**Page Size...**] button.

    3 Click the [**New**] button.
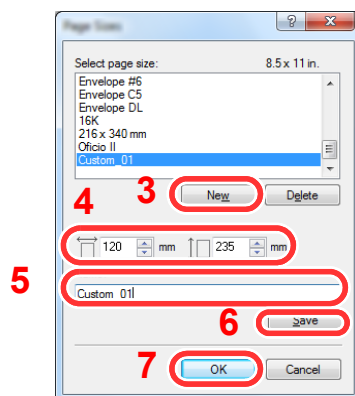
    4 Enter the paper size.

    5 Enter the name of the paper.

    6 Click the [**Save**] button.

    7 Click the [**OK**] button.

8 Click the [**OK**] button.
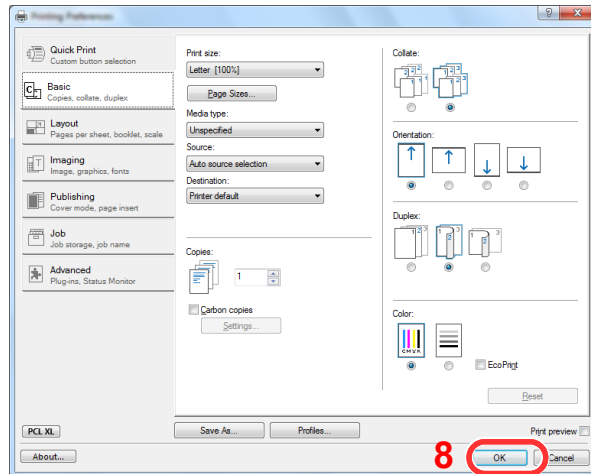
3 **Display the screen.**

Click [**File**] and select [**Print**] in the application.

4 **Select the paper size and type of non-standard size paper.**

1 Select the machine from the "Name" menu and click the [**Properties**] button.

2 Select the [**Basic**] tab.

4-7

3 Click "Print size" menu and select the paper size registered in step 2.
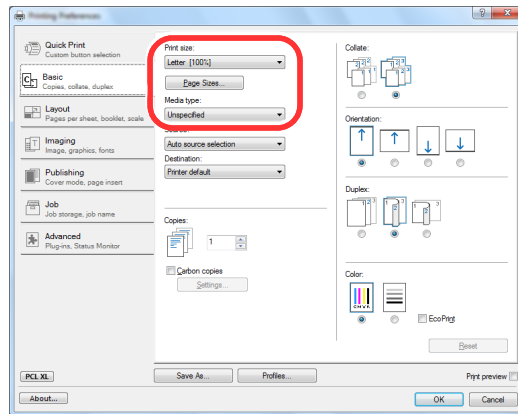
To print on the special paper such as thick paper or transparency, click "Media type" menu and select the media type.

> **NOTE**
>
> If you loaded a postcard or envelope, select [**Cardstock**] or [**Envelope**] in the "Media type" menu.

4 Select the paper source in the "Source" menu.

5 Click [**OK**] button to return to the Print dialog box.

5 Start printing.

Click the [**OK**] button.

Banner printing

When a document length from 470.1 mm (18.5") to a maximum of 1220.0 mm (48") is specified for printing, the print job is treated as banner printing.

Max. number of sheets	1 sheet (manual feed)
Paper width	210 or 216 mm (8.5")
Paper length	470.1 (18.5") to 1220 mm (48")
Paper weight	129 to 163 g/m^2
Media type	Heavy 2 or Heavy 3

Follow the steps below to set banner paper in the printer driver.

1 Display the screen.

Click [**File**] and select [**Print**] in the application.

2 Configure the settings.

1 Select the machine from the "Name" menu and click the [**Properties**] button.
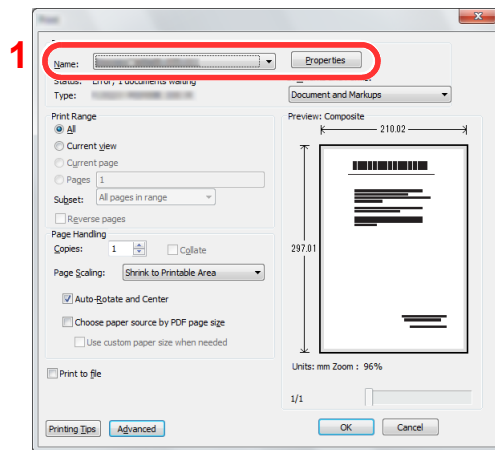
2 Select the [**Basic**] tab.
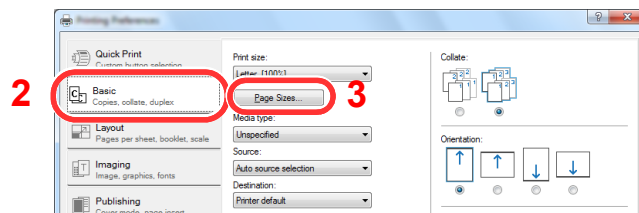
3 Click the [**Page Size...**] button.

4-9

3 Register the paper size.
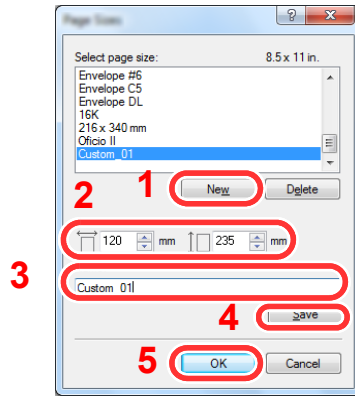
1   Click the [**New**] button.

2   Enter the paper size.

3   Enter the name of the paper.

4   Click the [**Save**] button.

5   Click the [**OK**] button.

4 Configure the print paper size.

1   Click "Print size" menu and select the paper size registered in step 3.
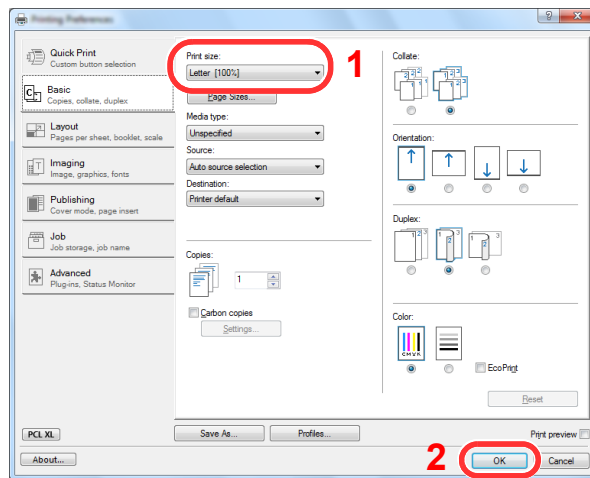
2   Click the [**OK**] button.

5 Load paper.

1 Open the multi purpose tray and extend the support tray section of the multi purpose tray.
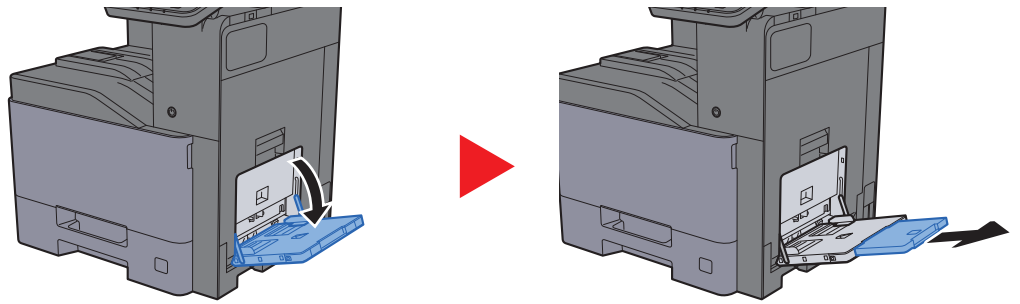
2 Remove the banner guides.
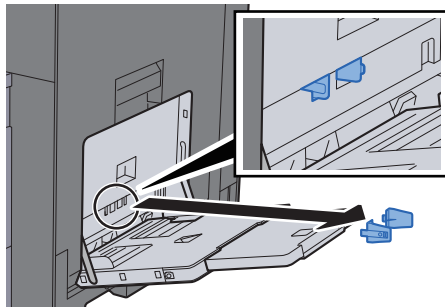
3 Load paper.
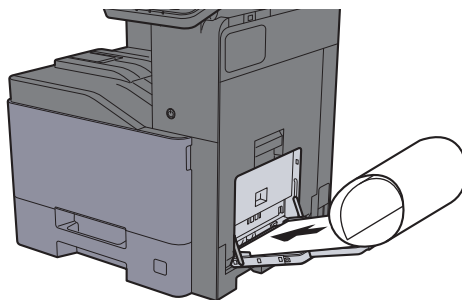
4 Attach the banner guides to the multi purpose tray according to the width of the paper.
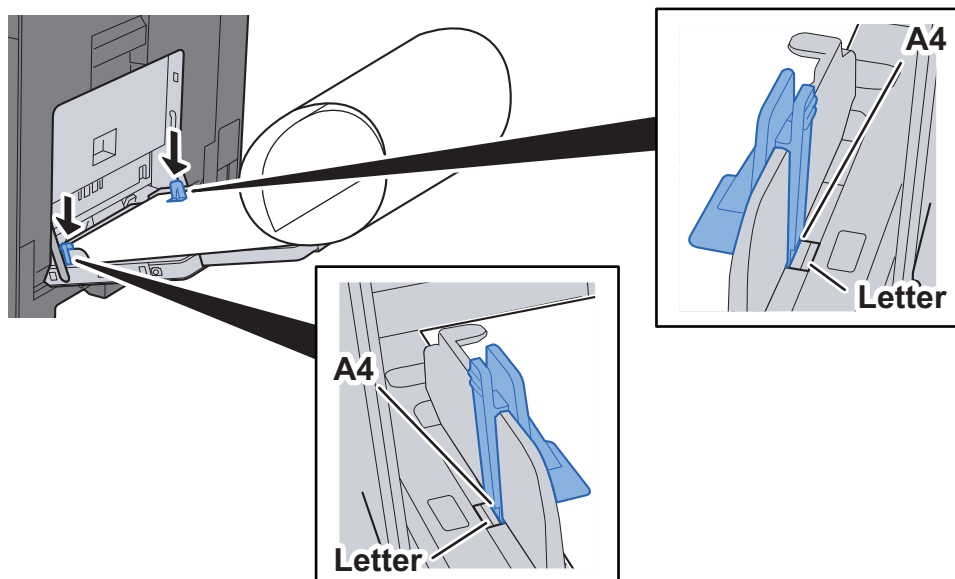
6 Start printing.

Click the [**OK**] button.

When you execute printing in this case, a message appears on the machine's operation panel. Place the paper in the Multi Purpose tray, continue to support it so that it does not fall, and select [**Continue**]. To cancel printing, select [**Cancel**].
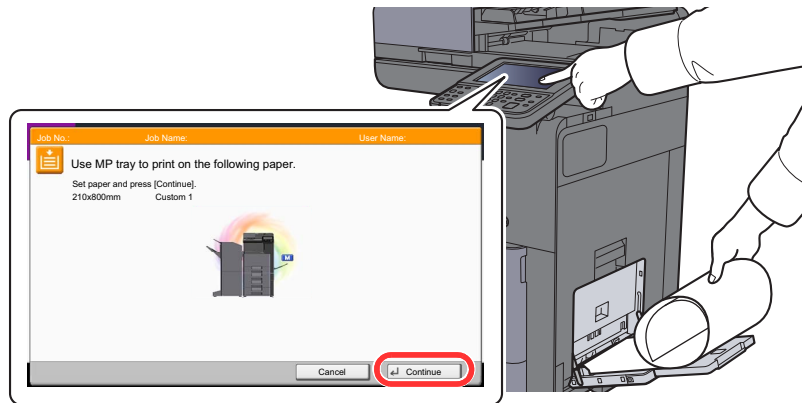
> **⊘ IMPORTANT**
>
> **If an output tray that cannot be used for banner printing such as Mailbox (option) is selected in the printer driver, the output tray automatically changes to a tray that can be used.**
>
> **After pressing [Continue], support the paper with both hands so that it feeds in correctly.**
>
>
>
> **After printing starts, catch the paper when it is output so that it does not fall. When using the inner tray as the output location, do not stand up the stopper.**
>
>
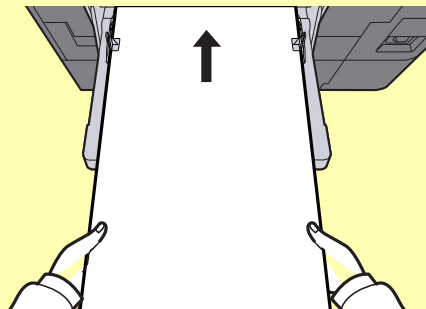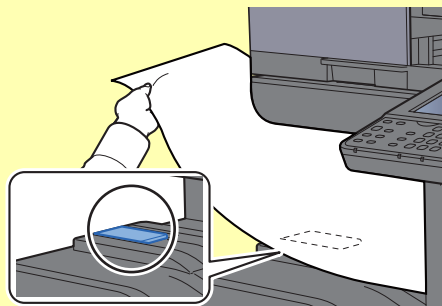
Set whether the confirmation screen appears before each sheet is printed when printing multiple banner sheets.

→ Message Banner Print (page 8-25)

7 Return the banner guide to the initial position.

Canceling Printing from a Computer

To cancel a print job executed using the printer driver before the printer begins printing, do the following:

> **NOTE**
>
> When canceling printing from this machine, refer to the following:
>
> ➡ Canceling Jobs (page 5-20)

1 Double-click the printer icon (🖨️) displayed on the taskbar at the bottom right of the Windows desktop to display a dialog box for the printer.

2 Click the file for which you wish to cancel printing and select [Cancel] from the "Document" menu.

Printing from the Handheld Device

This machine supports the AirPrint, Google Cloud Print and Mopria. According to the supported OS and application, you can print the job from any handheld device or computer without installing a printer driver.

Printing by AirPrint

AirPrint is a printing function that is included standard in iOS 4.2 and later products, and Mac OS X 10.7 and later products.

To use the AirPrint, make sure that the AirPrint setting is enabled in the Embedded Web Server RX.

➡ **Embedded Web Server RX User Guide**

Printing by Google Cloud Print

Google Cloud Print is a printing service provided by Google. This service enables a user with a Google account to print from a machine connected to the Internet.

The machine can be configured in the Embedded Web Server RX.

➡ **Embedded Web Server RX User Guide**

> **NOTE**
>
> A Google account is necessary to use Google Cloud Print. Obtain a Google account if you do not have one.
>
> It is also necessary to register the machine with the Google Cloud Print service in advance. The machine can be registered from a PC connected to the same network.

Printing by Mopria

Mopria is a standard on printing function included in Android 4.4 or later products.

Mopria Print Service needs to be installed and enabled in advance.

For details on how to use, refer to a Web site of Mopria Alliance.

Printing Data Saved in the Printer

You can save the print job into the Job Box of this device and print it as necessary.

If you configure settings in the [**Job**] tab of the printer driver and then print, the print job will be saved in the Job Box (memory) and printing can be executed at the machine.

Follow the work flow below when using Job Box.

Specifying the Job Box from a computer and sending the print job. (page 4-15)

Using the operation panel to specify a file within a Box and printing it.

You can print the documents from the following boxes.

Specifying the Job Box from a Computer and Storing the Job

Use the procedure below to store data in a Job Box.

1 Click [File] and select [Print] in the application. The Print dialog box displays.

2 Select the machine from the "Name" menu.

3 Click the [Properties] button. The Properties dialog box displays.

4 Click the [Job] tab and select the [Job storage (e-MPS)] check box to set the function.

> **NOTE**
>
> For information on how to use the printer driver software, refer to the following:
>
> → **Printing System Driver User Guide**

Printing Documents from Private Print Box

In Private Printing, you can specify that a job is not to be printed until you operate the machine. When sending the job from the application software, specify a 4-digit access code in the printer driver. The job is released for printing by entering the access code on the operation panel, ensuring confidentiality of the print job. The data will be deleted upon completion of the print job or after the power switch is turned off.

Print the documents stored in a Private Print box. The procedure is as follows.

1 Display the screen.

1 [**Home**] key > [**Job Box**]

2 Select [**Private Print/Stored Job**].

3 Select the creator of the document.

2 Print the document.

1 Select the document to print > [**Print**]

2 Enter the access code.

3 Specify the number of copies to print as desired.

4 Select [**OK**].

Printing starts.
Upon completion of printing, the Private Print job is automatically deleted.

Deleting the Documents Stored in the Private Print Box

You can delete the documents stored in the Private Print Box. The procedure is as follows.

1 Display the screen.

1 [**Home**] key > [**Job Box**]

2 Select [**Private Print/Stored Job**].

3 Select the creator of the document.

2 Delete the document.

Select the document to delete > [**Delete**] > Enter the access code

The document is deleted.

Printing Document from Stored Job Box

In Stored Job, the print data sent from the application is saved to the machine. You can set up an access code as necessary. If you set up an access code, enter the access code when printing. Print data will be stored in the Stored Job Box after printing. This will allow printing of the same print data repeatedly.

Print the documents stored in a Stored Job box. The procedure is as follows.

1 Display the screen.

1 [**Home**] key > [**Job Box**]

2 Select [**Private Print/Stored Job**].

3 Select the creator of the document.

2 Print the document.

1 Select the document to print > [**Print**]

2 Specify the number of copies to print as desired.

3 Select [**OK**].

Printing starts.

> **NOTE**
>
> If the document is protected by an access code, the password entry screen will be displayed. Enter the password using the numeric keys.

Deleting the Documents Stored in the Stored Job Box

You can delete the documents stored in the Stored Job Box. The procedure is as follows.

1 Display the screen.

1 [**Home**] key > [**Job Box**]

2 Select [**Private Print/Stored Job**].

3 Select the creator of the document.

2 Delete the document.

1 Select the document to delete > [**Delete**]

2 If the document is protected by an access code, enter the code.

The document is deleted.

Printing Document from Quick Copy Box

Quick Copy feature facilitates additional prints of a document already printed. Activating Quick Copy and printing a document using the printer driver allow the print data to be stored in the Quick Copy Job Box. When additional copies are required, you can reprint the required number of copies from the touch panel. By default, up to 32 documents can be stored. When power is turned off, all stored jobs will be deleted.

> **NOTE**
> • When the number of jobs reaches the limit, the oldest job will be overwritten by the new one.
> • To maintain free space on the box, you can set the maximum number of stored jobs.
> ➡ Quick Copy Job Retention (page 8-33)

You can print the documents stored in the Quick Copy box. The procedure is as follows.

1 Display the screen.

1 [**Home**] key > [**Job Box**]

2 Select [**Quick Copy/Proof and Hold**].

3 Select the creator of the document.

2 Print the document.

1 Select the document to print > [**Print**]

2 Specify the number of copies to print as desired.

3 Select [**OK**].

Printing starts.

Deleting the Documents Stored in the Quick Copy Box

You can delete the documents stored in the Quick Copy Box. The procedure is as follows.

1 Display the screen.

1 [**Home**] key > [**Job Box**]

2 Select [**Quick Copy/Proof and Hold**].

3 Select the creator of the document.

2 Delete the document.

Select the document to delete > [**Delete**] > Enter the access code

The document is deleted.

Printing Document from Proof and Hold Box

The Proof and Hold feature produces only a single proof print of multiple-print job and holds printing of the remaining copies. Printing a multiple-print job in Proof and Hold using the printer driver allows only a single copy to be printed while maintaining the document data in the Job Box. To continue to print the remaining copies, use the touch panel. You can change the number of copies to print.

You can print the documents stored in the Proof and Hold box. The procedure is as follows.

1 Display the screen.

1 [**Home**] key > [**Job Box**]

2 Select [**Quick Copy/Proof and Hold**].

3 Select the creator of the document.

2 Print the document.

1 Select the document to print > [**Print**]

2 Specify the number of copies to print as desired.

3 Select [**OK**].

Printing starts.

Deleting the Documents Stored in the Proof and Hold Box

You can delete the documents stored in the Proof and Hold Box. The procedure is as follows.

1 Display the screen.

1 [**Home**] key > [**Job Box**]

2 Select [**Quick Copy/Proof and Hold**].

3 Select the creator of the document.

2 Delete the document.

Select the document to delete > [**Delete**]

The document is deleted.

Monitoring the Printer Status (Status Monitor)

The Status Monitor monitors the printer status and provides an ongoing reporting function.

> **NOTE**
>
> When you activate Status Monitor, check the status below.
>
> • Printing System Driver is installed.
>
> • Either [**Enhanced WSD**] or [**Enhanced WSD(SSL)**] is enabled.
>
> → Network (page 8-42)

Quick View State

The status of the printer is displayed using icons. Detailed information is displayed when the Expand button is clicked.
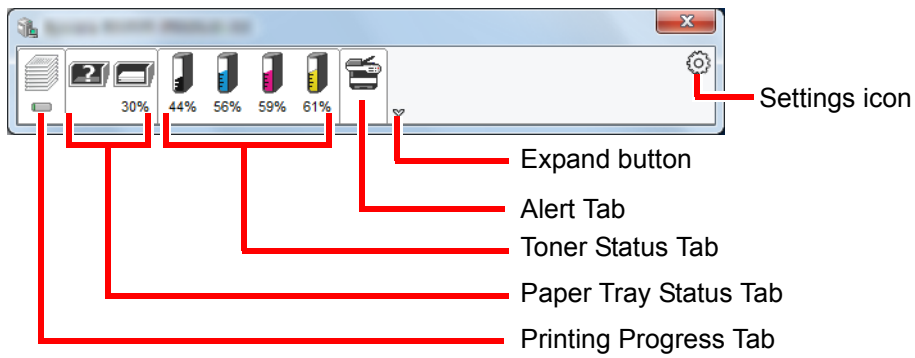
Detailed information is displayed by clicking on each icon tab.

Printing Progress Tab

The status of the print jobs is displayed.

Job list

Status icon
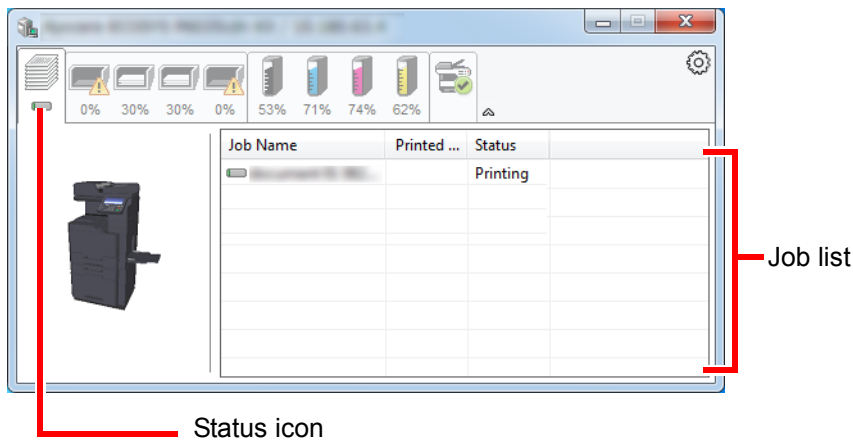
Select a job on the job list and it can be canceled using the menu displayed with a right-click.

Paper Tray Status Tab

Information is displayed about the paper in the printer and about the amount of paper remaining.
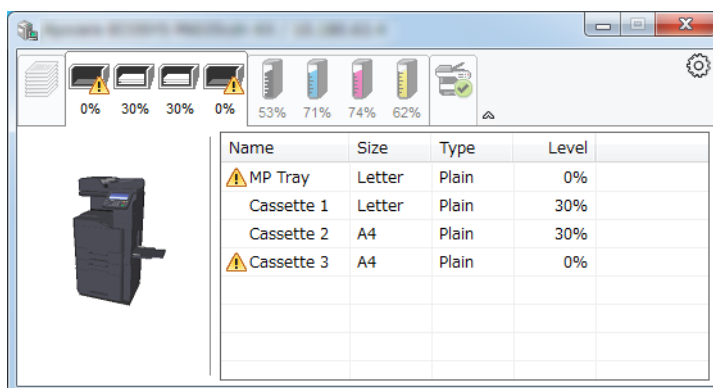
Toner Status Tab

The amount of toner remaining is displayed.

4-21
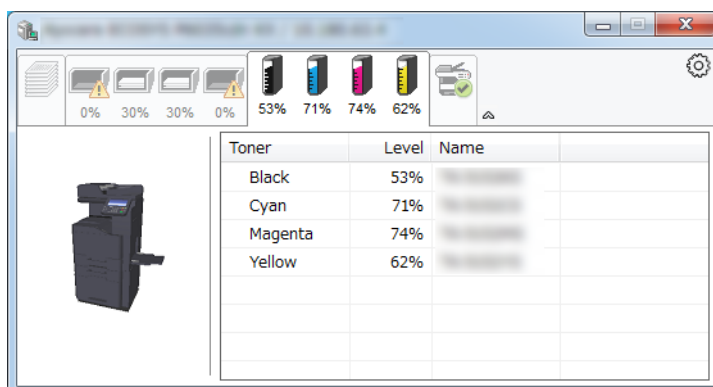
Alert Tab

If an error occurs, a notice is displayed using a 3D image and a message.
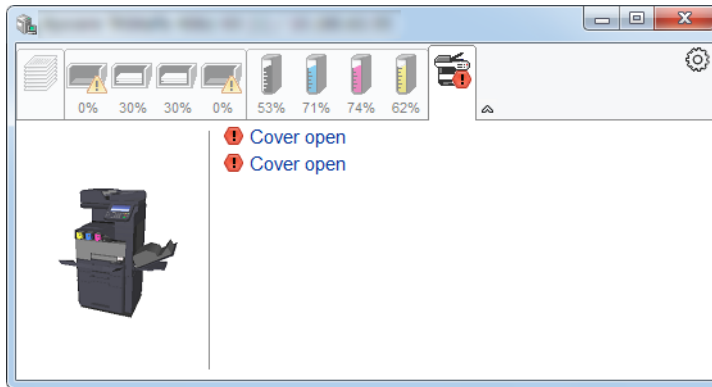
Status Monitor Context Menu

The following menu is displayed when the settings icon is clicked.
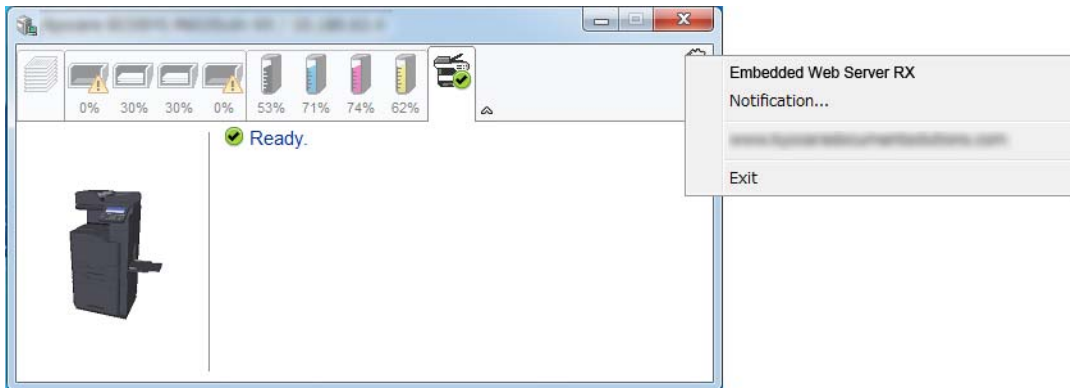
- **Embedded Web Server RX**
  If the printer is connected to a TCP/IP network and has its own IP address, use a web browser to access the Embedded Web Server RX to modify or confirm the network settings. This menu is not displayed when using USB connection.
  ➡ **Embedded Web Server RX User Guide**

- **Notification…**
  This sets the display of the Status Monitor.
  ➡ **Status Monitor Notification Settings (page 4-23)**

- **Exit**
  Exits the Status Monitor.

4-22

Accessing the Status Monitor

The Status Monitor also starts up when printing is started.

Exiting the Status Monitor

Use either of the methods listed below to exit the Status Monitor.

*   Exit manually:
    Click the settings icon and select Exit in the menu to exit the Status Monitor.

*   Exit automatically:
    The Status Monitor automatically shuts down after 7 minutes if it is not being used.

Status Monitor Notification Settings

The Status Monitor settings and event list details are displayed.
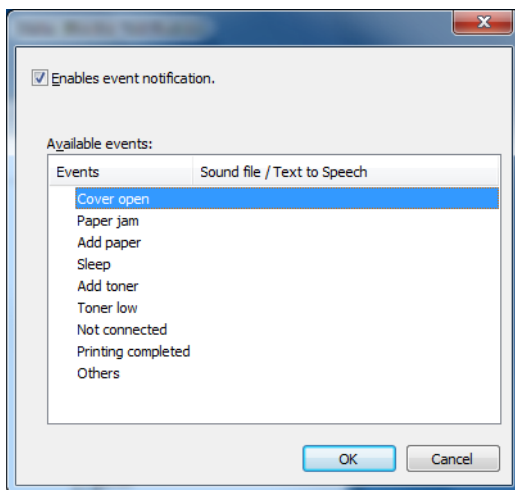
Select whether notification is performed when an error in the event list occurs.

1 **Select Enable event notification.**

If this setting is set to Off, then the Status Monitor will not start up even when printing is executed.

2 **Select an event to use with the text to speech function in Available events.**

3 **Click Sound file / Text to Speech column.**

Click the browse (...) button to notify the event by sound file.
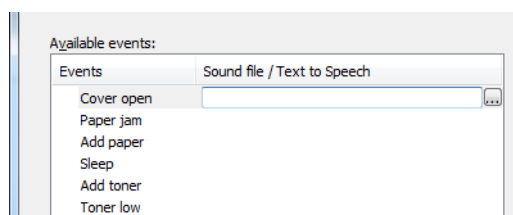
> **NOTE**
>
> The available file format is WAV.

When customizing the message texts to read on the screen aloud, enter the texts in the text box.

4-23

5 Operation on the Machine

This chapter explains the following topics:

Loading Originals

Load the originals on the platen or document processor, depending on the original size, type, volume, and function.

- Platen: Place the sheet, book, postcards, and envelopes.
- Document Processor: Place the multiple originals. You can also place the two sided originals.

Placing Originals on the Platen

You may place books or magazines on the platen in addition to ordinary sheet originals.
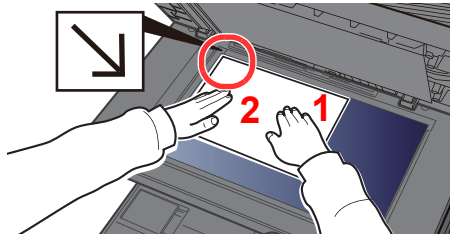
1 Put the scanning side facedown.

2 Align it flush against the original size indicator plates with the back left corner as the reference point.

> **NOTE**
>
> For details on Original Orientation, refer to the following:
>
> → Original Orientation (page 6-18)

When you place envelopes or cardstock on the platen
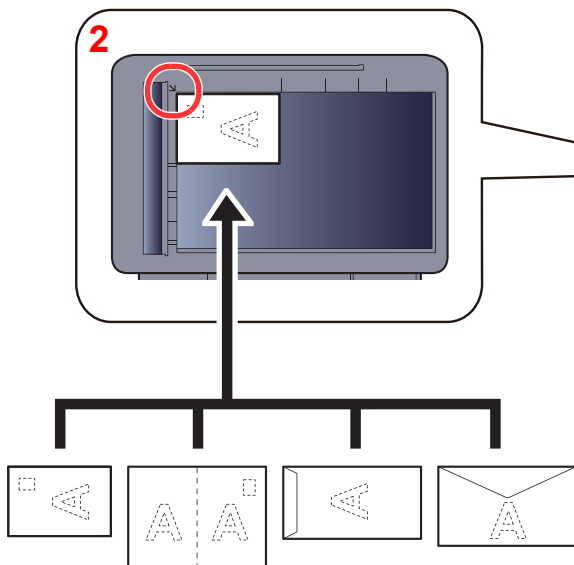
1 Put the scanning side facedown.

2 Align it flush against the original size indicator plates with the back left corner as the reference point.
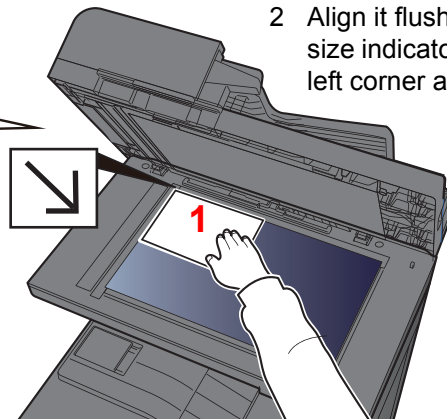
> **NOTE**
>
> For the procedure for feeding envelopes or cardstock, refer to the following:
>
> → When you load envelopes or cardstock in the multi purpose tray (page 5-8)
>
> When you load envelopes in the Cassettes (page 3-7)
>
> MP Tray Setting (page 8-8)

> ⚠️ **CAUTION**
>
> **Do not leave the document processor open as there is a danger of personal injury.**

> **IMPORTANT**
> - **Do not push the document processor forcefully when you close it. Excessive pressure may crack the platen glass.**
> - **When placing books or magazines on the machine, do so with the document processor in the open position.**

Loading Originals in the Document Processor

The document processor automatically scans each sheet of multiple originals. Both sides of two-sided originals are scanned.

The document processor supports the following types of originals.

Detail	Document Processor (Automatic 2-Sided)	Document Processor (Dual scan DP)
Weight	50 to 120 g/m^2 (duplex: 50 to 120 g/m^2)	
Sizes	Maximum 216 x 356 mm (Long-sized 216 x 1900 mm) to Minimum 105 x 148 mm	
No. of sheets	Plain paper (80 g/m^2), Recycled paper, Vellum paper: 75 sheets (Mixed size originals: 75 sheets) Thick paper (120 g/m^2): 50 sheets Art paper: 1 sheet	Plain paper (80 g/m^2), Recycled paper, Vellum paper: 75 sheets (Mixed size originals: 75 sheets) Thick paper (120 g/m^2): 50 sheets Art paper: 1 sheet

Do not use the document processor for the following types of originals. Otherwise, the originals may be jammed or the document processor may become dirty.

- Originals bound with clips or staples (Remove the clips or staples and straighten curls, wrinkles or creases before loading. Failure to do so may cause the originals to jam.)
- Originals with adhesive tape or glue
- Originals with cut-out sections
- Curled original
- Originals with folds (Straighten the folds before loading. Failure to do so may cause the originals to jam.)
- Carbon paper
- Crumpled paper

> **IMPORTANT**
> - **Before loading originals, be sure that there are no originals left on the original eject table. Originals left on the original eject table may cause the new originals to jam.**
> - **Do not make an impact on the document processor top cover, such as aligning the originals on the top cover. It may cause an error in the document processor.**

1 Adjust the original width guides.
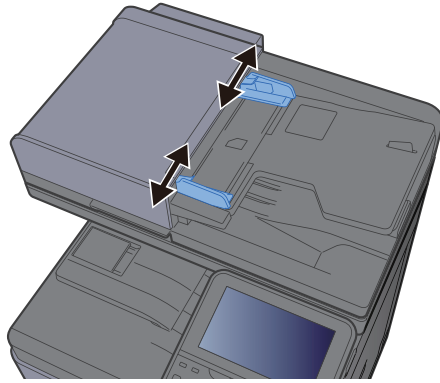
2 Place the originals.

1 Put the side to be scanned (or the first side of two-sided originals) face-up. Slide the leading edge into the document processor as far as it will go.
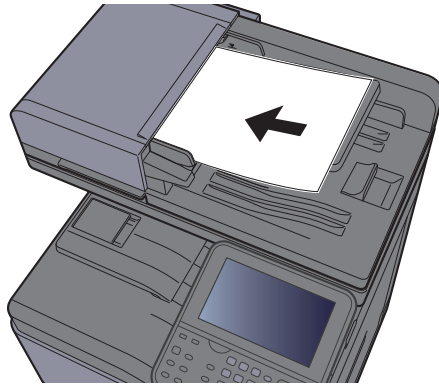
> 📎 **NOTE**
>
> For details on Original Orientation, refer to the following:
>
> ➡ Original Orientation (page 6-18)

> ✅ **IMPORTANT**
>
> **Confirm that the original width guides exactly fit the originals. If there is a gap, readjust the original width guides. The gap may cause the originals to jam.**
>
>
>
> **Ensure that loaded originals do not exceed the level indicator. Exceeding the maximum level may cause the originals to jam.**
>
> **Originals with punched holes or perforated lines should be placed in such a way that the holes or perforations will be scanned last (not first).**
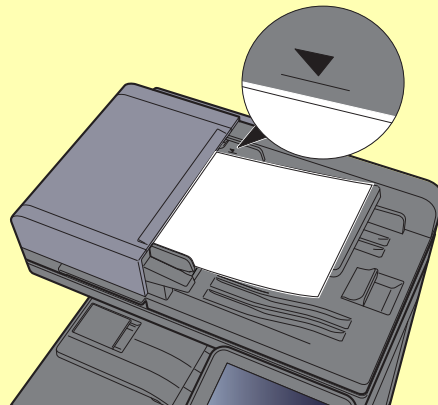
2 Open the original stopper to fit the size of the original set (Original size: B5, A4, Letter, or Legal).
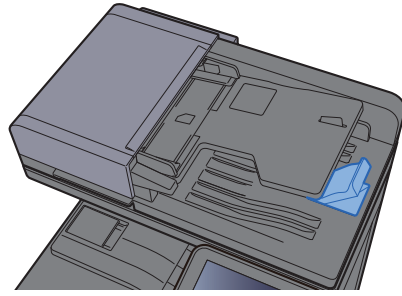
Loading Paper in the Multi Purpose Tray

The multi purpose tray will hold up to 100 sheets of plain paper (80 g/m^2).

For details of the supported paper sizes, refer to the following:

➡ Choosing the Appropriate Paper (page 11-14)

For the paper type setting, refer to the following:

➡ Media Type Setting (page 8-13)

Be sure to use the multi purpose tray when you print on any special paper.

> ✓ **IMPORTANT**
>
> - **If you are using a paper weight of 106 g/m^2 or more, set the media type to Thick and set the weight of the paper you are using.**
> - **Remove each transparency from the inner tray as it is printed. Leaving transparencies in the inner tray may cause a paper jam.**

The capacity of the multi purpose tray is as follows.

- Plain paper (80 g/m^2), recycled paper or color paper: 100 sheets
- Thick paper (209 g/m^2): 10 sheets
- Thick paper (157 g/m^2): 10 sheets
- Thick paper (104.7 g/m^2): 25 sheets
- Hagaki (Cardstock): 20 sheets
- Envelope DL, Envelope C5, Envelope #10, Envelope #9, Envelope #6 3/4, Envelope Monarch, Youkei 4, Youkei 2: 5 sheets
- OHP film: 1 sheet
- Coated: 30 sheets

> 🔍 **NOTE**
>
> - When you load custom size paper, enter the paper size by referring to the following:
> ➡ Original / Paper Settings (page 8-10)
> - When you use special paper such as transparencies or thick paper, select the media type by referring to the following:
> ➡ MP Tray Setting (page 8-8)
> - Paper size can be automatically detected and selected, refer to the following:
> ➡ Paper Selection (page 6-15)
>   MP Tray Setting (page 8-8)

1 Open the multi purpose tray.
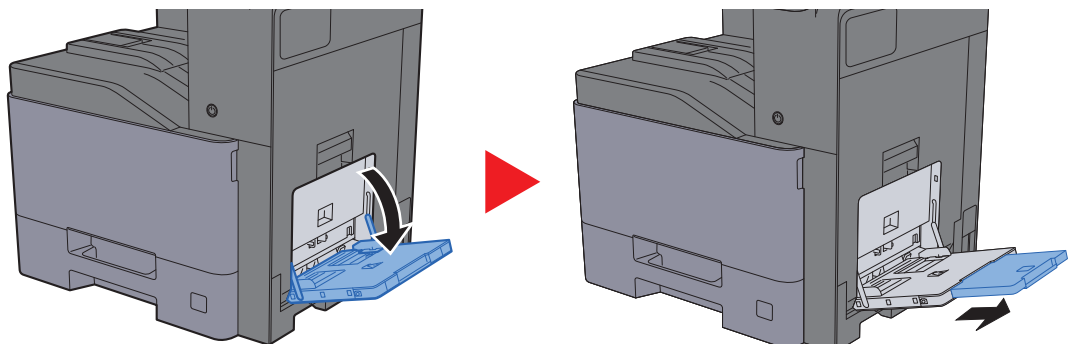
2 Adjust the multi purpose tray size.

Paper sizes are marked on the multi purpose tray.
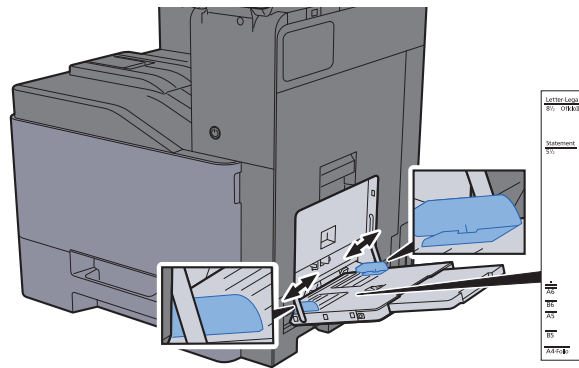
3 Load paper.
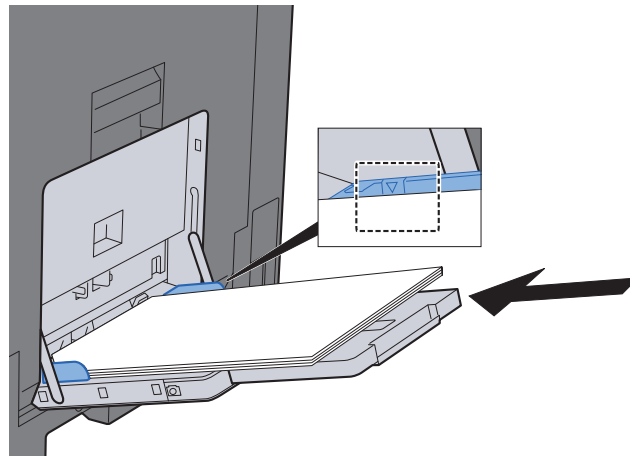
Insert the paper along the paper width guides into the tray until it stops.

After removing new paper from its packaging, fan the paper before loading it in the multi purpose tray.

→ Precaution for Loading Paper (page 3-2)

> **✓ IMPORTANT**
>
> - **When loading the paper, keep the print side facing down.**
>
> - **Curled paper must be uncurled before use.**
>
> - **When loading paper into the multi purpose tray, check that there is no paper left over in the tray from a previous job before loading the paper. If there is just a small amount of paper left over in the multi purpose tray and you want to add more, first remove the left-over paper from the tray and include it with the new paper before loading the paper back into the tray.**
>
> - **If there is a gap between the paper and the paper width guides, readjust the guides to fit the paper in order to prevent skewed feeding and paper jams.**
>
> - **Ensure that the loaded paper does not exceed the load limits.**

4 Specify the type of paper loaded in the multi purpose tray using the operation panel.

→ MP Tray Setting (page 8-8)

When you load envelopes or cardstock in the multi purpose tray

Load the paper with the print side facing down. For the procedure for printing, refer to the following:

➡ **Printing System Driver User Guide**

Example: When printing the address.

| Oufuku hagaki (Return postcard) | Hagaki (Cardstocks) | Portrait form envelopes | Landscape form envelopes |

Open the flap

Close the flap.
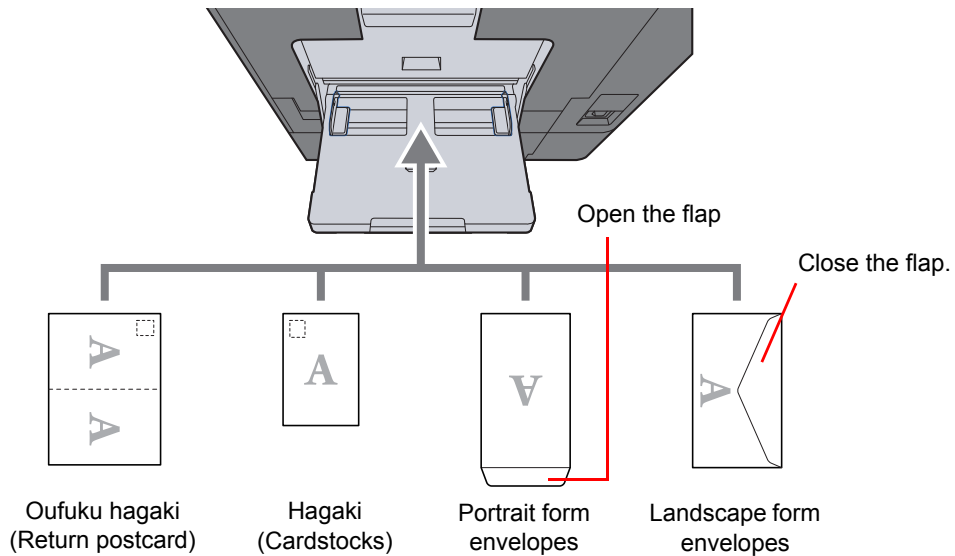
✓ IMPORTANT

• **Use unfolded Oufuku hagaki (Return postcard).**

• **How to load envelopes (orientation and facing) will differ depending on the type of envelope. Be sure to load it in correctly, otherwise printing may be done in the wrong direction or on the wrong face.**

📝 NOTE

• When you load envelopes in the multi purpose tray, select the envelope type by referring to the following:

➡ Cassette/MP Tray Settings (page 8-7)

• When you load cardstocks in the multi purpose tray, open the stopper as shown below.
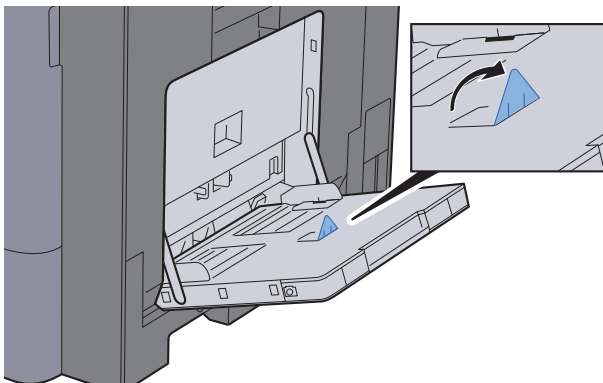
Program

By registering sets of frequently used functions as a single program, you can simply press the program number as needed to recall those functions. You can also name the programs for easy identification when recalling.

The programs below have been preregistered. The registered contents can be re-registered for easier use in your environment.

Program name	Description	Default Registration
ID Card Copy	Use this when you want to copy a driver's license or an insurance card. When you scan the front and back of the card, both sides will be combined and copied onto a single sheet.	Copying Functions Color: Black & White Combine: [**2 in 1**] Continuous Scan: [**On**] Original Size: A5 Paper Selection: Cassette 1 Zoom: Auto Zoom
Eco Copy	Use this to save toner consumption when printing. This changes color printing to black & white with lighter density, so that the toner consumption can be reduced.	Copying Functions Color: Black & White EcoPrint: [**On**] (Level [**5**])
Newspaper Copy	Use this when you want to copy a newspaper article, or other originals printed on a colored substrate. This adjusts the image quality so that the color of the substrate or the text on the reverse side will not show on the copy.	Copying Functions Color: Black & White Prevent Bleed-thru: [**On**] Background Density Adj.: [**Auto**]
Technical Drawing Copy	Use this when you want to copy a drawing that contains shapes drawn with lines, and graphics. Use this also when you want to copy colored lines in black & white.	Copying Functions Color: Black & White Original Image: [**Text**] Sharpness (All): [**+3**] Background Density Adj.: [**Auto**]
Confidential Stamp	Use this to show a translucent text "Confidential" on the center of the document.	Copying Functions Color: Black & White Prevent Bleed-thru: [**On**] Stamp: Confidential Font Size: middle Font Color: [**Black**] Stamp Position: [**Center**] Display Pattern: [**Transparent**]
Highlighter Copy	Use this when you want to clearly print out the color of text and lines written/drawn by a highlighter pen, which are normally difficult to copy.	Copying Functions Color: Full Color Original Image: Text+Photo [**Book /Magazine**] Highlighter: On
Vivid Copy	Use this when you want to make a copy with an overall vivid appearance.	Copying Functions Color: Full Color Original Image: Text+Photo [**Book /Magazine**] One-touch Image Adjust: [**Vivid**]

> **NOTE**
> Up to 50 functions combining copying and sending can be registered in the program.
> If user login administration is enabled, you can only register functions by logging in with administrator privileges.

Registering Programs

Use the procedure below to register a program.
The following procedure is an example of registering the copying function.

1 Display the screen.

1 [**Home**] key > [**Copy**]

2 Select the [**Program**] tab while the copy mode is accessed.

2 Register the program.

1 [**Add**] > Select a number (01 to 50) for the program number > [**Next**]

> **NOTE**
> If you select a program number already registered, the currently registered functions can be replaced with a new set of functions.

2 Enter the new program name > [**Save**]

The program is registered.

To display a registered program on the Home screen, select [**Yes**] on the confirmation screen that appears, proceed to step 2-3.

3 Specify the position in which you want to display the icon of registered program.

4 Select [**Save**].

Recalling Programs

Use the procedure below to recall a registered program.

1 Recall the program.

1 Select [**Program**] in the Home screen, or the key of the registered program.

Selecting the key of the registered program will recall the program. If you selected [**Program**], proceed to step 1-2.

2 Select the key for the program number you want to recall.

Select the [**Quick No. Search**] key or [**No.**] to enter the program number (01 to 50) directly for recalling.

> **NOTE**
> If the program cannot be recalled, the Document Box or the form overlay specified in the program might have been deleted. Check the Document Box.

2 Execute the program.

Place the originals > [**Start**] key

> **NOTE**
> [**Program**] can be pressed in each function to call up the program registered for the function.

Editing Programs

You can change program number and program name.

Use the procedure below to edit a program.

1 Display the screen.

1 [**Home**] key > [**Program**]

2 Select [**Edit**].

2 Edit the program.

1 Select the key(s) corresponding to the program number (01 to 50) to change.

2 Select [**Edit**] to change the program number and program name.

➡ Registering Programs (page 5-10)

3 [**Save**] > [**Yes**]

Deleting Programs

You can also delete program.

Use the procedure below to delete a program.

1 Display the screen.

1 [**Home**] key > [**Program**]

2 Select [**Edit**].

2 Delete the program.

1 Select the key(s) corresponding to the program number (01 to 50) to delete.

2 [**Delete**] > [**Yes**]

Application

The functionality of the machine can be expanded by installing applications.

Applications that help you perform your daily more efficiently such as a scan feature and an authentication feature are available.

For details, consult your sales representative or dealer.

Installing Applications

To use applications, first install the application in the machine and then activate the application.

> **NOTE**
>
> A maximum of 16 applications and 5 certificates can be installed on the machine. To add different applications, uninstall an application that has been installed.
>
> ➡

The procedure is as follows.

1 Display the screen.

[**System Menu**] key > [**Application**]

> **NOTE**
>
> If the user authentication screen appears, enter your login user name and login password and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login with administrator privileges. The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Model Name	Login User Name	Login Password
350ci	3500	3500
400ci	4000	4000

2 Install the application.

1 Select [**Add**].

2 Insert the removable memory containing the application to be installed into the USB Memory Slot.

> **NOTE**
>
> When the message "Removable Memory was recognized. Displaying files. Are you sure?" is displayed, select [**No**].

3 Select the application to be installed > [**Install**]

You can view detailed information on the selected application by selecting [**Detail**].

4 Select [**Yes**].

Installation of the application begins. Depending on the application being installed, the installation may take some time.

Once the installation ends, the original screen reappears.

> **NOTE**
> • To install another application, repeat steps 2-3 and 2-4.
>
> • To remove the removable memory, select [**Remove Memory**] and wait until the message "Removable Memory can be safely removed." appears. Then remove the removable memory.

Activating Applications

The procedure is as follows.

1 **Display the screen.**

[**System Menu**] key > [**Application**]

> **NOTE**
> If the user authentication screen appears, enter your login user name and login password and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login with administrator privileges. The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Model Name	Login User Name	Login Password
350ci	3500	3500
400ci	4000	4000

2 **Activate the application.**

1 Select the desired application > [**Activate**]

You can view detailed information on the selected application by selecting [**Detail**].

2 Enter the license key > [**Official**]

Some applications do not require you to enter a license key. If the license key entry screen does not appear, go to step 3-3. To use the application as a trial, select [**Trial**] without entering the license key.

3 Select [**Yes**].

> **IMPORTANT**
> **If you change the date/time while using the trial version of an application, you will no longer be able to use the application.**

4 Select the application icon in the Home screen.

Select the application icon.

The application will start up.

Deactivating Applications

The procedure is as follows.

1 Display the screen.

[**System Menu**] key > [**Application**]

> **NOTE**
>
> If the user authentication screen appears, enter your login user name and login password and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login with administrator privileges. The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Model Name	Login User Name	Login Password
350ci	3500	3500
400ci	4000	4000

2 Deactivate the application.

Select the desired application to exit > [**Deactivate**]

> **NOTE**
>
> Select [**x**] on the screen if you want to exit the already activated application.
>
> The procedure for exiting some applications may differ.

Uninstalling Applications

The procedure is as follows.

1 Display the screen.

[**System Menu**] key > [**Application**]

> **NOTE**
>
> If the user authentication screen appears, enter your login user name and login password and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login with administrator privileges. The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Model Name	Login User Name	Login Password
350ci	3500	3500
400ci	4000	4000

2 Deactivate the application.

1 Select the application you want to delete > [**Delete**]

You can view detailed information on the selected application by selecting [**Detail**].

2 Select [**Yes**].

Registering Shortcuts (Copy, Send, and Document Box Settings)

You can register shortcuts in the Quick Setup screen for easy access to the frequently used functions. The settings for the selected function can also be registered. A function name linked to a registered shortcut can be changed as necessary. You can register up to 6 shortcuts for copying functions, sending functions, and functions set for document box.

Adding Shortcuts

Shortcut registration is performed in the setup screen of each function. Shortcuts can be registered for all functions in which [**Add Shortcut**] appears on the screen.

Use the procedure below to register a shortcut.

1 In each function, display the configuration screen you want to register.

2 Register the shortcuts.

　1 Select the setting you want to add.

　2 Select [**Add Shortcut**].
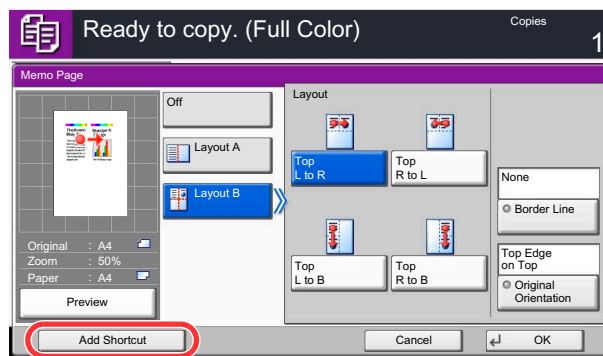
　3 Select the keys corresponding to the shortcut number (01 to 06) to register.

> 🔍 **NOTE**
>
> If you select a shortcut number already registered, the currently registered shortcut can be replaced with a new one.

　4 Enter the shortcut name > [**Save**].
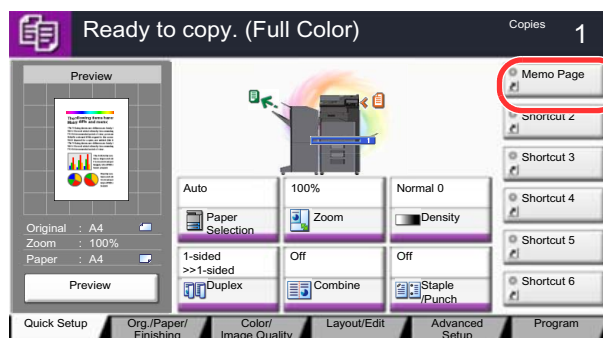
The shortcut is registered.

Editing Shortcuts

Follow the steps shown below to change a shortcut number/name.

1 In the setup screen of each function, select [Add Shortcut] in the bottom of the screen.

2 Edit the shortcut

1 Select [**Edit**].

2 Select the shortcut key you want to edit.

3 Select "Shortcut No" [**Change**] or "Shortcut Name" [**Change**] > Change the settings > [**OK**].

4 [**Save**] > [**Yes**]

Deleting Shortcuts

Follow the steps shown below to delete a shortcut.

1 In the setup screen of each function, select [Add Shortcut] in the bottom of the screen.

2 Delete the shortcut

1 Select [**Edit**].

2 Select the shortcut key you want to delete > [**Delete this Shortcut**] > [**Yes**]

Copying

The procedures here represent the basic copy operation and how to cancel the copy.

Basic Operation

Follow the steps as below for basic copying.

1 [Home] key > [Copy]

2 Place the originals.

1 Place the originals.
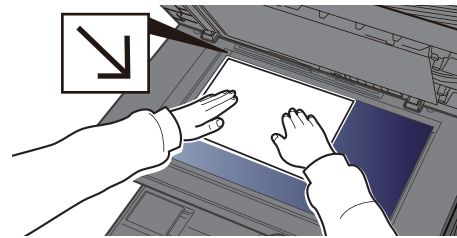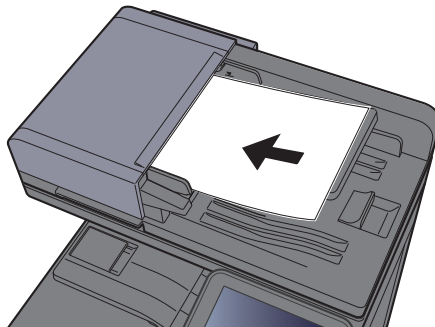
→ Loading Originals (page 5-2)

2 Check the preview image.

Check the Original, Zoom, and Paper settings.

Document Processor

5-17
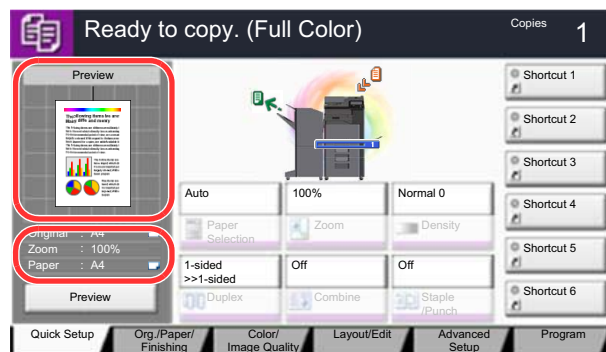
Platen

Specify the original size to be scanned.

[**Org./Paper/Finishing**] > [**Original Size**] > Specify the original size > [**OK**]
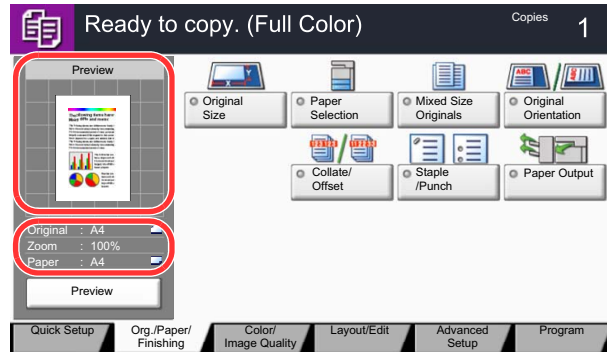
> 📇 **NOTE**
>
> When the original size is set in the system menu, the actual original size is ignored, and the set size is displayed.
>
> ➥ Default Original Size(Platen) (page 8-10)
>
> Select [**Preview**] to show a preview image.
>
> ➥ Original Preview (page 2-19)

3 ## Select the color mode.

[**Auto Color**] key	Automatically recognizes whether a document is color or black & white and then scans the document.
[**Full Color**] key	Scans all documents in full color.
[**Black & White**] key	Scans all documents in black & white.

➥ Color Selection (page 6-25)

4 ## Select the functions.

To configure the settings for functions, select the function key. By selecting [**tabs**], other selectable functions will be shown as a list.

➥ How to Select Functions (page 6-2)

5 ## Use the numeric keys to enter the copy quantity.

Specify the desired number up to 999.

6 ## Press the [Start] key.

Copying begins.

5-18

> **NOTE**
>
> This function allows you to reserve the next job during printing. Using this function, the original will be scanned while the machine is printing. When the current print job ends, the reserved copy job is printed. If "Reserve Next Priority" is set to [**Off**], [**Reserve Next**] will appear. Select [**Reserve Next**] and configure the necessary settings for the copy job.
>
> ➡

Copying...			Copies 24
Job No.: 000021	Job Name: doc20081010101034	User Name: -----	
Scanner Setting		Printer Setting	
Scanned Pages		Copies	
2	▶	2/ 24	
● A4		● A4 Plain	
● 100%		● 2-sided	
● 2-sided		● Collate	
● Top Edge on Top		●	
		● Tray A	
	Cancel	↵Reserve Next	
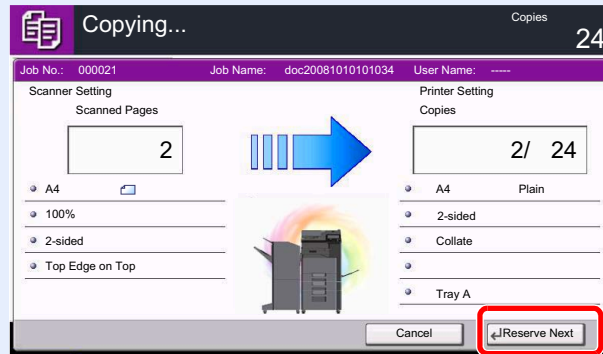
Interrupt Copy

This function allows you to pause the current jobs in progress when you need to make copies immediately.

When the interruption copy ends, the machine resumes the paused print jobs.

> **NOTE**
>
> - If the machine is left unused for 60 seconds in interrupt copy mode, interrupt copying is automatically cancelled and printing resumes.
>   You can change the delay until interrupt copying is canceled. Change the delay as required.
>
> ➡
>
> - The interrupt copy function may be unavailable depending on the status of document finisher usage. In this case, try the priority override.
>
> ➡

1 Configure the settings.

1 Select the [**Interrupt**] key.

The current print job is temporarily interrupted.

2 Place the originals onto the machine for interrupt copy, and configure the copy settings.

2 Press the [Start] key.

Interrupt copying begins.

3 When interrupt copying ends, select the [Interrupt] key.

The machine resumes the paused print jobs.

Canceling Jobs

You can also cancel jobs by selecting the [**Stop**] key.

1 **Select the [Stop] key with the copy screen displayed.**

2 **Cancel a job.**

When there is a job is being scanned

The copy job is canceled.

When there is a job printing or on standby

Canceling job screen appears. The current print job is temporarily interrupted.

Select the job you wish to cancel > [**Cancel**] > [**Yes**]

> **NOTE**
>
> If "Reserve Next Priority" is set to [**Off**], the Copying screen appears in the touch panel. In such case, selecting the [**Stop**] key or [**Cancel**] will cancel the printing job in progress.
>
> ➡ Reserve Next Priority (page 8-27)

Frequently-Used Sending Method

This machine can send a scanned image as an attachment of an E-mail message or to a PC linked to the network. In order to do this, it is necessary to register the sender and destination (recipient) address on the network.

A network environment which enables the machine to connect to a mail server is required in order to send E-mail. It is recommended that a Local Area Network (LAN) be used to assist with transmission speed and security issues.

Follow the steps below for basic sending. The following four options are available.

- Send as E-mail (E-mail Addr Entry): Sends a scanned original image as an E-mail attachment.

➡ Sending Document via E-mail (page 5-22)
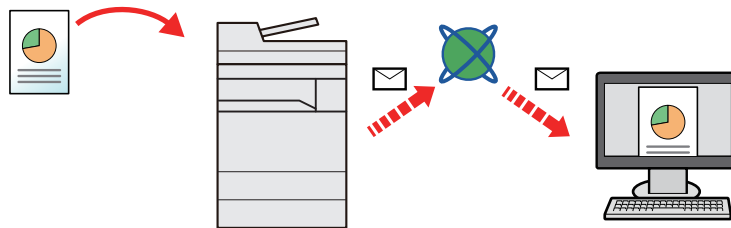
- Send to Folder (SMB): Stores a scanned original image in a shared folder of any PC.

➡ Sending Document to Desired Shared Folder on a Computer (Scan to PC) (page 5-23)

- Send to Folder (FTP): Stores a scanned original image in a folder of an FTP server.

➡ Sending Document to Folder on an FTP Server (Scan to FTP) (page 5-26)
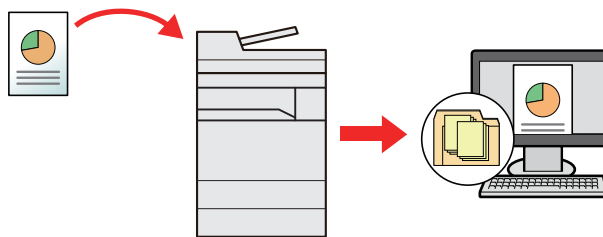
- Image Data Scanning with TWAIN / WIA: Scan the document using a TWAIN or WIA compatible application program.

➡ Scanning using TWAIN or WIA (page 5-28)

> **NOTE**
> - Different sending options can be specified in combination.
> ➡ Sending to Different Types of Destinations (Multi Sending) (page 5-36)
> - The fax function can be used on products equipped with fax capability.
> ➡ **FAX Operation Guide**

Sending Document via E-mail

Follow the steps as below for sending a document via e-mail.

Configuring Settings before Sending

Before sending an E-mail, configure the SMTP and E-mail settings using the Embedded Web Server RX.

→ E-mail Settings (page 2-55)

Sending Scanned Document via E-mail

Follow the steps as below for sending a document via e-mail.

1 [Home] key > [Send]

2 Place the originals.
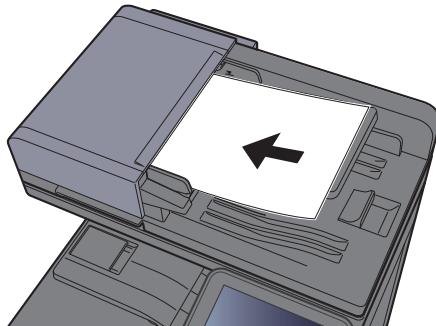
→ Loading Originals (page 5-2)
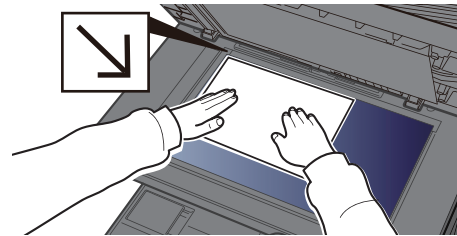
3 In the basic screen for sending, select [E-mail Addr Entry].

4 Enter destination E-mail address > [OK]

Up to 128 characters can be entered.

→ Character Entry Method (page 11-10)

To enter multiple destinations, select [**Next Destination**] and enter the next destination. Up to 100 E-mail addresses can be specified.

You can register the entered E-mail address in the Address Book by selecting [**Add Address Book**]. You can also replace the information for a previously registered destination.

Destinations can be changed later.

→ Confirmation Screen of Destinations (page 5-43)

5 Select the functions.

Press tabs to display other functions.

→ Send (page 6-5)

6 Press the [Start] key.

Sending starts.

Sending Document to Desired Shared Folder on a Computer (Scan to PC)

You can store the scanned document into the desired shared folder on a computer.

Configuring Settings before Sending

Before sending a document, configure the following settings.

- Make a note of the computer name and full computer name
  - ➡ Making a note of the computer name and full computer name (page 3-12)
- Make a note of the user name and domain name
  - ➡ Making a note of the user name and domain name (page 3-13)
- Create a shared folder and make a note of a shared folder
  - ➡ Creating a Shared Folder, Making a Note of a Shared Folder (page 3-14)
- Configure the Windows firewall
  - ➡ Configuring Windows Firewall (page 3-18)

Sending Document to Desired Shared Folder on a Computer

Follow the steps as below for sending a document to the desired shared folder on a computer.

1 [Home] key > [Send]

2 Place the originals.
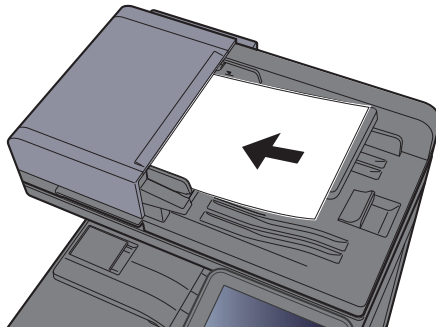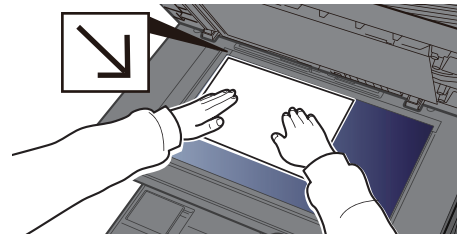
➡ Loading Originals (page 5-2)

3 In the basic screen for sending, select [Folder Path Entry].

4 **Enter the destination information.**

1 Select [**SMB**].

2 Select the key of each item > enter the destination data > [**OK**].

➡ Character Entry Method (page 11-10)

The table below lists the items to be set.

Item	Detail	Max. characters
Host Name *1	Computer name	Up to 64 characters
Path	Share name For example: scannerdata If saving in a folder in the shared folder: share name\folder name in shared folder	Up to 128 characters
Login User Name	If the computer name and domain name are the same: User Name For example: james.smith If the computer name and domain name are different: Domain name\User name For example: abcdnet\james.smith	Up to 64 characters
Login Password	Windows logon password **(Case sensitive.)**	Up to 64 characters

*1 You can also specify the port number. Enter the following format separated by a colon.
"Host name: port number" or "IP address: port number"
To enter the IPv6 address, enclose the address in brackets [ ].
(Example: [2001:db8:a0b:12f0::10]:445)
If the port number is not specified, the default port number is 445.

To search for a folder on a PC on the network, select "Search Folder from Network" or "Search Folder by Host Name" [**Next**].

If you selected "Search Folder from Network" [**Next**], you can enter the "Domain/Workgroup", and "Host Name" to search PCs on the network for the destination.

If you pressed "Search Folder by Host Name"[**Next**], you can search all PCs on the network for a destination.

Up to 500 addresses can be displayed. Select the host name (PC name) that you want to specify in the screen that appears, and select [**Next**]. The login user name and login password entry screen appears.

After you enter the login user name and login password name of the destination PC, the shared folders appear. Select the folder that you want to specify and select [**Next**]. The address of the selected shared folder is set.

Select the folder from the Search Results list.

5 Check the status.

1 Check the information.

Change the delay as required.

2 Select [**Connection Test**] to check the connection.

"Connected." appears when connection to the destination is correctly established. If "Cannot connect." appears, review the entry.

To enter multiple destinations, select [**Next Destination**] and enter the next destination. You can specify a combine total of up to 10 SMB and FTP destination folders.

You can register the entered information in the Address Book by selecting [**Add to Address Book**].

6 Select [OK].

Destinations can be changed later.

➡ Confirmation Screen of Destinations (page 5-43)

7 Select the functions.

Select tabs to display other functions.

➡ Send (page 6-5)

8 Press the [Start] key.

Sending starts.

Sending Document to Folder on an FTP Server (Scan to FTP)

You can store the scanned document into the desired shared folder on a computer.

Configuring Settings before Sending

Before sending a document, configure the FTP Client (Transmission).

→ Protocol Settings (page 8-44)

Sending Document to Folder on an FTP Server

Follow the steps as below for sending a document to the folder on an FTP server.

1 [Home] key > [Send]

2 Place the originals.
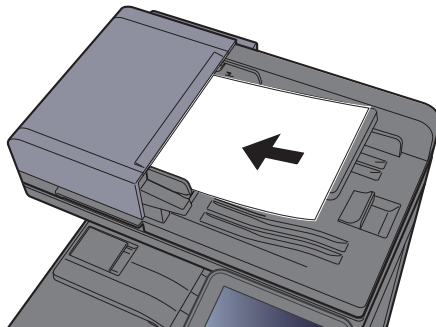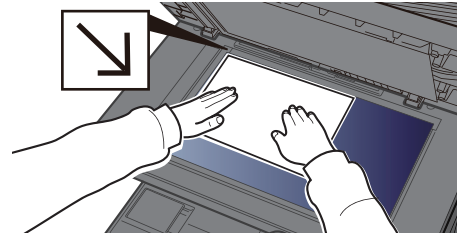
→ Loading Originals (page 5-2)

3 In the basic screen for sending, select [Folder Path Entry].

4 Enter the destination information.

1 Select [**FTP**].

2 Select the key of each item > enter the destination data > [**OK**].

➡ Character Entry Method (page 11-10)

The table below lists the items to be set.

Item	Data to be entered	Max. characters
Host Name *1	Host name or IP address of FTP server	Up to 64 characters
Path*2	Path to the receiving folder For example: User\ScanData Otherwise the data will be saved in the home directory.	Up to 128 characters
Login User Name	FTP server login user name	Up to 64 characters
Login Password	FTP server login password **(Case sensitive.)**	Up to 64 characters

*1 You can also specify the port number. Enter the following format separated by a colon.
"Host name: port number" or "IP address: port number"
To enter the IPv6 address, enclose the address in brackets [ ].
(Example: [2001:db8:a0b:12f0::10]:21)
If the port number is not specified in [Host Name], the default port number is 21.

*2 When the FTP server is based on Linux/UNIX, the path including the sub-folder is combined by the slash "/" not using the back-slash.

5 Check the status.

1 Check the information.

Change the delay as required.

2 Select [**Connection Test**] to check the connection.

"Connected." appears when connection to the destination is correctly established. If "Cannot connect." appears, review the entry.

To enter multiple destinations, select [**Next Destination**] and enter the next destination.

You can register the entered information in the Address Book by selecting [**Add Address Book**].

6 Select [OK].

Destinations can be changed later.

➡ Confirmation Screen of Destinations (page 5-43)

7 Select the functions.

Select tabs to display other functions.

➡ Send (page 6-5)

8 Press the [Start] key.

Sending starts.

Scanning using TWAIN or WIA

This section explains how to scan an original using TWAIN or WIA.

Configuring Settings before Sending

Before sending a document, confirm that TWAIN/WIA driver is installed on a computer and the settings are configured.

Scanning Document Using Application

This subsection explains how to scan an original using TWAIN. The WIA driver is used in the same way.

1 Display the screen.

1 Activate the TWAIN compatible application software.

2 Select the machine using the application and display the dialog box.

> **NOTE**
> For selecting the machine, see the Operation Guide or Help for each application software.

2 Configure the scan settings.

Select scanning settings in the dialog box that opens.

> **NOTE**
> For the settings, refer to Help in the dialog box.

3 Place the originals.
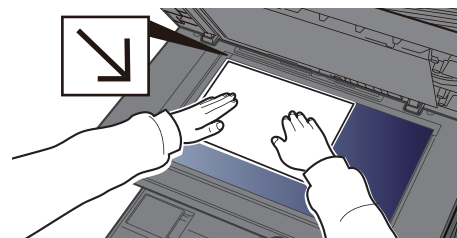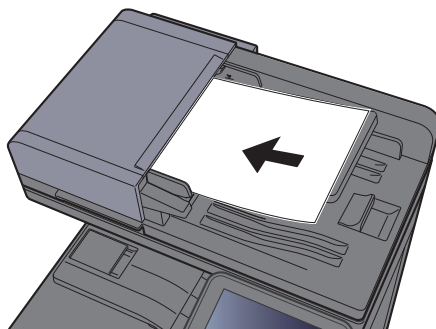
4 Scan the originals.

Click the [**Scan**] button. The document data is scanned.

Scanning Document stored in a Custom Box

Follow the steps as below for scanning a document stored in a custom box using the TWAIN driver.

Configuring Settings before Sending

Before sending a document, confirm that TWAIN driver is installed on a computer and the settings are configured.

→ Setting TWAIN Driver (page 2-43)

Scanning Document Stored in a Box

This subsection explains how to scan an original using an application supporting TWAIN.

1 Display the screen.

1 Activate the TWAIN compatible application software.

2 Select the machine using the application and display the dialog box.

> **NOTE**
>
> For selecting the machine, see the Operation Guide or Help for each application software.

2 Display lists of documents.

1 Select a custom box stored a document. If a password has been set for the box, the password entry screen appears. Enter the password and click the [**OK**] button. When you select a box, the document files in the Custom Box appear in [**Document List**].

2 Set how to display the document data. Click the [**Setting**] button to select each item.

> **NOTE**
>
> For the settings, refer to Help in the dialog box.

3 Click [**OK**] button.

3 Scan the originals.

1 Select the document data to be scanned from [**Document List**].

Enter the document data name in the Search (Name) to find the data having the same document data name or the document data name with the same beginning.

Click the [**Detail**] button to display the selected document data. When the document data includes multiple pages, select the checkbox beside the pages you want to scan. The selected pages will be scanned.

> **NOTE**
> In this case, the scanned page or the selected document data will not be deleted from the Custom Box.

2 Click the [**Acquire**] button.

The document data is scanned.

Useful Sending Method

You can specify the follwing useful scanning (sending) methods.

WSD Scan: Saves images of originals scanned on this machine as files on a WSD-compatible computer.

➡ WSD Scan (page 5-31)

DSM Scan: A scanned document can be automatically saved in any format or sent to any destination by reading a scan process from Active Directory.

➡ DSM Scan (page 5-33)

Scanning with File Management Utility: Scans a document using the settings of File Management Utility and saves it to a specified network folder or PC.

➡ Scanning with File Management Utility (page 5-35)

Sending to different types of destinations (Multi sending): Sends to different types of destination (E-mail addresses, folders, etc.) in a single operation.

➡ Sending to Different Types of Destinations (Multi Sending) (page 5-36)

Send to Me (E-mail): Sends to the E-mail address of the logged in user when user login is enabled.

➡ Send to Me (E-mail) (page 5-37)

WSD Scan

WSD Scan saves images of originals scanned on this machine as files on a WSD-compatible computer.

> **NOTE**
> - To use WSD Scan, confirm that the computer used for WSD scanning and the machine is network-connected, and "WSD Scan" is set to [**On**] in the network settings.
>
> → WSD Scan (page 8-44)
> - For information on operating the computer, refer to the computer's help or the operation guide of your software.

For Windows 7

1 Display [Network] in the Start menu.

Click [**Start**] button on the Windows and then select [**Network**].

> **NOTE**
> When [**Network**] does not appear in the Start menu, perform the following procedure.
>
> 1 Right-click [**Start**] and click [**Property**] in the menu that appears.
>
> 2 Select the [**[Start] menu**] tab in the "**Task bar and [Start] menu properties**" screen, and click [**Customize**].
>
> 3 When the "**Customize [Start] menu**" screen appears, select the "**Network**" check box and click [**OK**].

2 Install the driver.

Right-click the machine's icon and then click [**Install**].

> **NOTE**
> If the "**User Account Control**" window appears, click [**Continue**].
> If the "**Found New Hardware**" window appears, click [**Cancel**].

During the installation, double-click the icon shown on the task bar to display the "**Driver Software Installation**" screen. When "**Your devices are ready to use**" is displayed on the [**Driver Software Installation**] screen, the installation is completed.

For Windows 8 and Microsoft Windows Server 2012

1 Click [Search] in charms, [Control Panel], and then [View devices and printers].

2 Install the driver.

Click [**Add a device**]. Select the machine's icon and then click [**Next**].

When the machine's icon is displayed in "**Printers**" on the [**Devices and Printers**] screen, the installation is completed.

Executing WSD scan

1 **[Home] key > [Send]**

2 **Place the originals.**
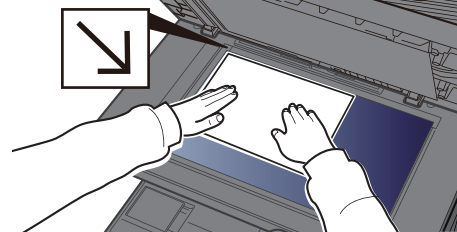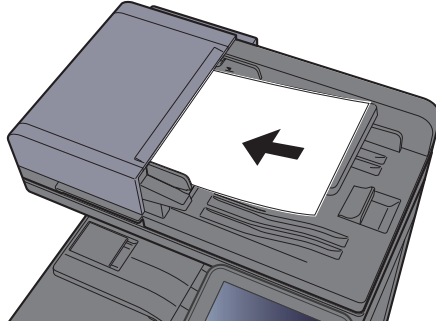
➔ Loading Originals (page 5-2)

3 **Display the screen.**

Select [**WSD Scan/DSM Scan**].

If DSM Scan is set to [**Off**] in the network settings, select [**WSD Scan**] and go to step 4.

➔ DSM Scan (page 8-44)

4 **Scan the originals.**

Procedure using this machine

1 [**From Operation Panel**] > [**Next**]

2 Select the destination computer > [**OK**]

Select [**Reload**] to reload the computer list.

You can view information on the selected computer by selecting [**Detail**].

3 Set the type of original, file format, etc., as desired.

4 Press the [**Start**] key.

Sending begins and the software installed on the computer is activated.

Procedure from Your Computer

1 [**From Computer**] > [**Next**]

2 Use the software installed on the computer to send the images.

DSM Scan

A scanned document can be automatically saved in any format or sent to any destination by reading a scan process from Active Directory. This function only supports the computers installed Windows Server 2008 R2 or Windows Server 2012.

Configuring Settings before Sending

If you are performing DSM scan, check the items below.

- The machine is connected to an Active Directory on the network that the scan process can reference.

- "DSM Scan", "LDAP" and "HTTP" are set to [**On**] in Network.
  - → Protocol Settings (page 8-44)

- "SSL" is set to [**On**] in Network.
  - → Security Settings (page 8-45)

- [**Network Authentication**] is set in.
  - → Enabling User Login Administration (page 9-3)

> **NOTE**
>
> If the Active Directory that the scan process can reference is not on the network authentication server, DSM must be set in Embedded Web Server RX.
>
> → **Embedded Web Server RX User Guide**

Executing DSM Scan

1 **[Home] key > [Send]**

> **NOTE**
>
> Depending on the settings, the address book screen may appear. In this event, select [**Cancel**] to display the screen for sending.

2 **Place the originals.**
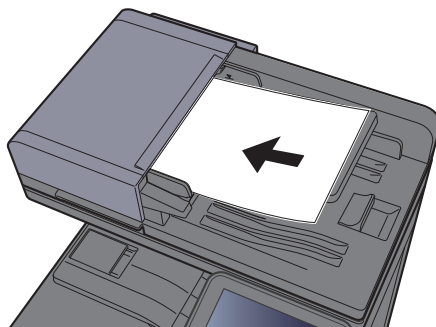
→ Loading Originals (page 5-2)
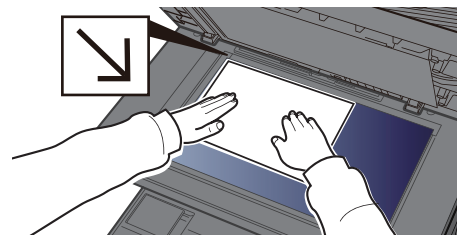
3 **Display the screen.**

Select [**WSD Scan/DSM Scan**].

If WSD Scan is set to [**Off**] in the network settings, select [**DSM Scan**] and go to step 5.

→ WSD Scan (page 8-44)

4 **[DSM Scan] > [Next]**

5 **Select the scan process to be used > [OK].**

Select [**Reload**] to reload the computer list.

To check the settings, select [**Detail**].

6 **Change the settings and add destinations as needed.**

Only E-mail addresses can be added as destinations.
In the send base screen, select [**Detail/Edit**], [**Destination**], and then [**Address Book**] or [**E-mail Addr Entry**], and add a destination.
In some scan processes, it may not be possible to change settings or add destinations.

7 **Press the [Start] key.**

Sending starts.

Scanning with File Management Utility

"FMU Connection" is installed on the machine as a standard application.

FMU Connection can be used to scan an original according to the settings configured with "File Management Utility" on the provided DVD, and save the image data and scanning information on a specified server or in a specified folder. Unlike regular transmission functions, this application lets you use metadata such as the scan date and time and the data format.

Configuring Settings before Sending

The first time you use FMU Connection, you must enable it in System Menu.

→ Application (page 8-58)

To use this function, you must install File Management Utility on your computer and configure settings for the multifunction machine to be used, scanning conditions, and the file save location. To install File Management Utility, refer to the following.

→ Installing Software (page 2-33)

> **NOTE**
> For information on using File Management Utility, refer to the following:
>
> → **File Management Utility User Guide**

Using FMU Connection to scan an original

Follow the steps as below for scanning a document using FMU Connection.

1 **Make sure that File Management Utility is running on the computer (or server) on which File Management Utility is installed.**

2 **Place the original.**

3 **Select [FMU Connection].**

FMU Connection starts.

4 **Follow the on-screen instructions to enter the necessary information and select [Next].**

5 **When the scan settings screen appears, press each item and configure the necessary settings.**

The features that can be set depend on File Management Utility.

6 **Press the [Start] key.**

Sending starts.

Sending to Different Types of Destinations (Multi Sending)

You can specify destinations that combine E-mail addresses, folders (SMB or FTP) and fax numbers (Fax functionality can only be used on products equipped with fax capability.). This is referred to as Multi Sending. This is useful for sending to different types of destination (E-mail addresses, folders, etc.) in a single operation.
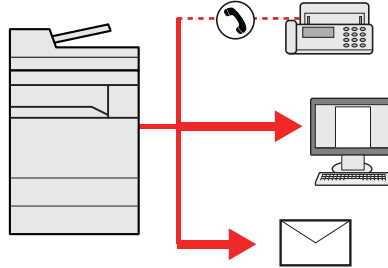
No. of broadcast items

E-mail: Up to 100

Folders (SMP, FTP): Total of 10 SMB and FTP

FAX: Up to 500

i-FAX: Up to 100

Also, depending on the settings, you can send and print at the same time.

Procedures are the same as used in specifying the destinations of respective types. Continue to enter E-mail address or folder path so that they appear in the destination list. Press the [**Start**] key to start transmission to all destinations at one time.

> **NOTE**
>
> If the destinations include a fax, the images sent to all destinations will be black and white.

Send to Me (E-mail)

When user login is enabled, the document is sent to the E-mail address of the logged in user.

Configuring Settings before Sending

To use this function, configure the followings.

To use this function, the function icon must be displayed in the home screen.

➡ [Editing the Home Screen (page 2-13)](#)

An E-mail address must be set in user login for the user who logs in.

➡ [Adding a User (Local User List) (page 9-8)](#)

Sending a document to the mail address of the logged in user

The sending procedure using [E-mail] is as follows.

1 Select [Home] key.

2 Select [Send to Me (E-mail)] .

Canceling Sending Jobs

You can also cancel jobs by selecting the [**Stop**] key.

Canceling Scanning

The procedure to cancel the scanned document is as follows.

1 **Select the [Stop] key with the send screen displayed.**

2 **Cancel a job.**

When there is a job is being scanned

Job Cancel appears.

When there is a job sending or on standby

Canceling job screen appears.
Select the job you wish to cancel > [**Cancel**] > [**Yes**]

> **NOTE**
> Selecting the [**Stop**] key will not temporarily stop a job that you have already started sending.

Handling Destination

This section explains how to select and confirm the destination.

Specifying Destination

Select the destination using either of the following methods except entering address directly:

- Choosing from the Address Book
    - ➡ Choosing from the Address Book (page 5-39)
- Choosing from the External Address Book
- For details on the External Address Book, refer to the following:
    - ➡ **Embedded Web Server RX User Guide**
- Choosing from One Touch key
    - ➡ Choosing from the One Touch Key (page 5-41)
- Choosing from the Speed Dial
    - ➡ Choosing from the Speed Dial (page 5-41)
- Choosing from the FAX
    - ➡ **FAX Operation Guide**

> **NOTE**
> - You can set the machine up so that the address book screen appears when you select the [**Send**] key.
> ➡ Default Screen (page 8-28)
> - If you are using the products equipped with the fax function, you can specify the fax destination. Enter the other party number using the numeric keypad.

Choosing from the Address Book

Select a destination registered in the Address Book.

For more information about how to register destinations in the Address Book, refer to the following:

➡ Registering Destinations in the Address Book (page 3-22)

1 In the basic screen for sending, select [Address Book].

> **NOTE**
> For details on the External Address Book, refer to the following:
> ➡ **Embedded Web Server RX User Guide**

2 Select the destinations.

Select the checkbox to select the desired destination from the list. The selected destinations are indicated by a checkmark in the check box. To use an address book on the LDAP server, select "Addr Book" [**Ext Address Book**].

You can change the order in which the destinations are listed by selecting [**Name**] or [**No.**] from the "Sort".

> **NOTE**
> To deselect, select the checkbox again and remove the checkmark.

Destination Search

Destinations registered in the Address Book can be searched. Advanced search by type or by initial letter is also available.
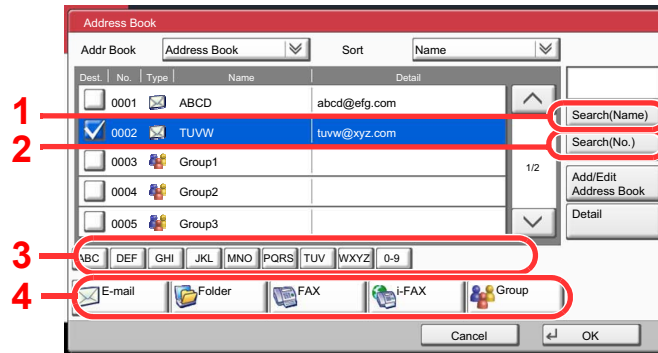
Keys used	Search type	Subjects searched
1	Search by name	Search by registered name.
2	Search by number	Search by registered address number.
3	Advanced search by initial letter	Advanced search by initial letter of registered name.
4	Advanced search by destination	Advanced search by type of registered destination (E-mail, Folder (SMB/FTP), FAX, i-FAX or Group). (FAX: Only when the optional FAX Kit is installed. i-FAX: Only when the optional Internet FAX Kit is activated.) You can set this function up so that destination types are selected when the address book is displayed. For details, refer to the following: ➡ Narrow Down (page 8-52)

3 Accept the destination > [OK]

Destinations can be changed later.

➡ Confirmation Screen of Destinations (page 5-43)

> 🔍 **NOTE**
> To delete the destination, select the destination you want to delete and select [**Delete**].
>
> You can set the default "Sort" settings.
>
> ➡ Sort (page 8-52)

Choosing from the One Touch Key

Select the destination using the One Touch Keys.

In the basic screen for sending, select the One Touch Keys where the destination is registered.

> **NOTE**
>
> If the One Touch Keys for the desired destination is hidden on the touch panel, select [∧] or [∨] to scroll and view next or previous One Touch Keys. This procedure assumes that One Touch Keys have already been registered. For more information on adding One Touch keys, refer to the following:
>
> → Adding a Destination on One Touch Key (One Touch Key) (page 3-29)
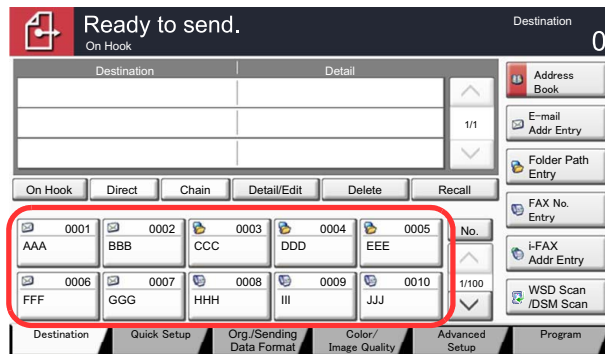
Choosing from the Speed Dial

Access the destination by specifying the 4-digit (0001 to 1000) One Touch Key number (speed dial).

In the basic screen for sending, select the [**Quick No. Search**] key or [**No.**] and use the numeric keys to enter the speed dial number in the numeric entry screen.

> **NOTE**
>
> If you entered the speed dial in 1 to 3-digit, select [**OK**].
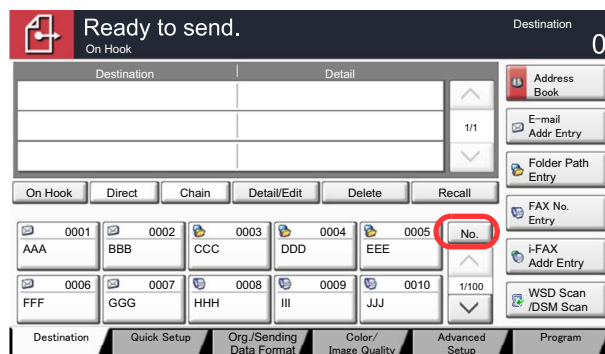
Checking and Editing Destinations

Check and edit a selected destination.

1 Display the screen.

Specify the destination.

➡ Specifying Destination (page 5-39)

2 Check and edit the destination.

Select a destination and select [**Detail/Edit**] to check it. The entered addresses can be edited if they have been specified.

Select a destination and select [**Delete**] to remove the destination from the list..

> **NOTE**
>
> • When selecting [**On**] for Entry Check for New Destination, the confirmation screen appears. Enter the same host name and path again, and select [**OK**].
>
> ➡ Entry Check for New Dest. (page 8-28)
>
> • When selecting [**On**] for Destination Check before Send, the confirmation screen appears after pressing the [**Start**] key.
>
> ➡ Dest. Check before Send (page 8-28)
> Confirmation Screen of Destinations (page 5-43)

Confirmation Screen of Destinations

When selecting [**On**] for Destination Check before Send, the confirmation screen of destinations appears after pressing the [**Start**] key.

➡ Dest. Check before Send (page 8-28)

Follow the steps below to confirm the destinations.
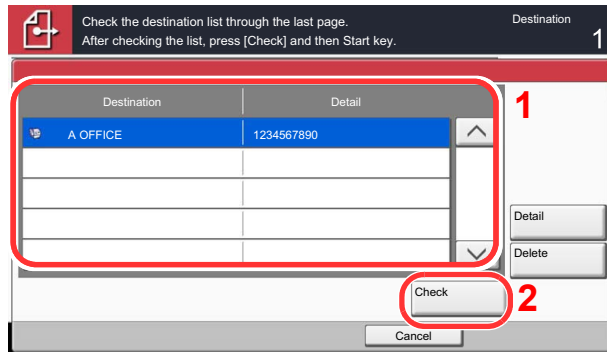
1 Select [∨] or [∧] to confirm all destination.

Selecting [**Detail**] shows the detailed information of the selected destination.

To delete the destination, select the destination you want to delete > [**Delete**] > [**Yes**]

To add the destination, select [**Cancel**] and then return to the destination screen.

2 Select [**Check**].

> **NOTE**
> Be sure to confirm all destination by displaying them on the touch panel. You cannot select [**Check**] unless you have confirmed all destination.

Recall

Recall is a function allowing you to send the last entered destination once again. When you want to send the image to the same destination, select [**Recall**], and you can call the destination you sent on the destination list.

1 Select [Recall].

The destination you sent is displayed on the destination list.

> **NOTE**
> When the last sending included FAX, folders and E-mail destinations, they are also displayed. If necessary, add or delete the destination.

2 Press the [Start] key.

Sending starts.

> **NOTE**
> • When [**On**] is selected in "Dest. Check before Send", a destination confirmation screen is displayed when you press the [**Start**] key.
>
> ➡ Confirmation Screen of Destinations (page 5-43)
>
> • Recall information is canceled in the following conditions.
>   - When you turn the power off
>   - When you send a next image (new recall information is registered)
>   - When you log out

How to use the FAX Function

On products with a FAX function, it is possible to use the FAX function.

→ **FAX Operation Guide**

Using Document Boxes

Document Box is a function for saving print data from a computer and sharing it with multiple users.

The available Document Boxes are as follows: Custom Box, Job Box, Removable Memory Box, and Fax Box.

What is Custom Box?

Custom Box is a component box which you can create within the Document Box and store data for later retrieval. You can create or delete a Custom Box.

The following operations are possible:

- Creating a new Custom Box
- Printing Document in a Custom Box
- Saving scanned documents to a Custom Box
- Sending Documents in a Custom Box
- Editing Documents in a Custom Box
- Deleting Documents in a Custom Box

> **NOTE**
> - To use Custom Box, a hard disk must be installed in the machine.
> - A hard disk is an option for some models. Contact your dealer or our sales or service representatives for detail
> ➤ HD-11 "Hard Disk" (Option for 350ci) (page 11-5)
> - The operation on Custom Box you perform from operation panel can also be made using Embedded Web Server RX.
> ➤ **Embedded Web Server RX User Guide**

What is Job Box?

Job Box is a generic name for the "Private Print/Stored Job Box", "Quick Copy/Proof and Hold Box", "Repeat Copy Box", and "Form for Form Overlay Box". These Job Boxes cannot be created or deleted by a user.

> **NOTE**
> - You can set up the machine so that temporary documents in job boxes are automatically deleted.
> ➤ Deletion of Job Retention (page 8-33)
> - For details on operating the Job Box, refer to the following:
> ➤ Printing Data Saved in the Printer (page 4-15)

Repeat Copy Box

Repeat Copy feature stores the copied original document data in the Job Box and allows you to print additional copies later. By default, up to 32 documents can be stored. When power is turned off, all stored jobs will be deleted.

➤ Outputting Repeat Copy Jobs (page 5-61)

> **NOTE**
> Repeat Copy function is not available when the optional Data Security Kit is installed.

Form for Form Overlay Box

Image Overlay feature copies the original document overlaid with a form or image. This Job Box is used to store the forms or images for overlaying.

➡ Form for Form Overlay (page 5-62)

> **NOTE**
> • To use Form for Form Overlay Box, a hard disk must be installed in the machine.
> • A hard disk is an option for some models. Contact your dealer or our sales or service representatives for details.
>
> ➡ HD-11 "Hard Disk" (Option for 350ci) (page 11-5)

What is Removable Memory Box?

A USB memory stick can be connected to the USB memory slot on the machine to print a saved file. You can print data directly from the USB memory without a PC. Image files scanned using this machine can also be saved to USB memory in the PDF, TIFF, JPEG, XPS, OpenXPS or high compression PDF format (Scan to USB).

Fax Box

Fax Box store the fax data.

➡ **FAX Operation Guide**

Basic Operation for Document Box

This section explains basic operations for document boxes, using examples where tasks are carried out with custom boxes.

> **NOTE**
> In the following explanation, it is assumed that user login administration is enabled. For details on User Logon privileges, refer to the following:
>
> ➡ Editing Custom Box (page 5-52)

Box List
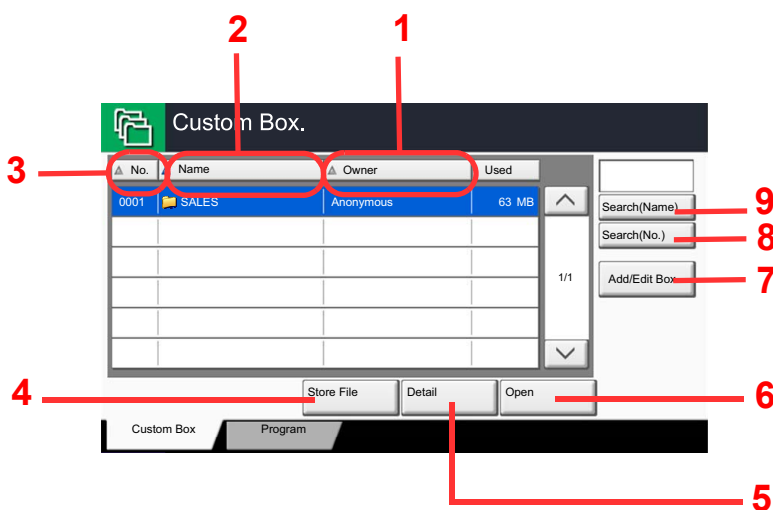
1 Listing the boxes by owner in alphabetical order.
2 Listing the boxes by name in alphabetical order.
3 Listing the boxes by number in ascending/descending order.
4 Saves the document in the selected box.
5 Displays the details for the selected box.
6 Opens the selected box.
7 Registers new boxes and checks, modifies or deletes box information.
8 A box can be searched for by Box No.
9 A box can be searched for by Box Name.

Document List

The document list is a list of the documents stored in the custom box. Documents can be listed either by name or as thumbnails. The list can be used as shown below.

List
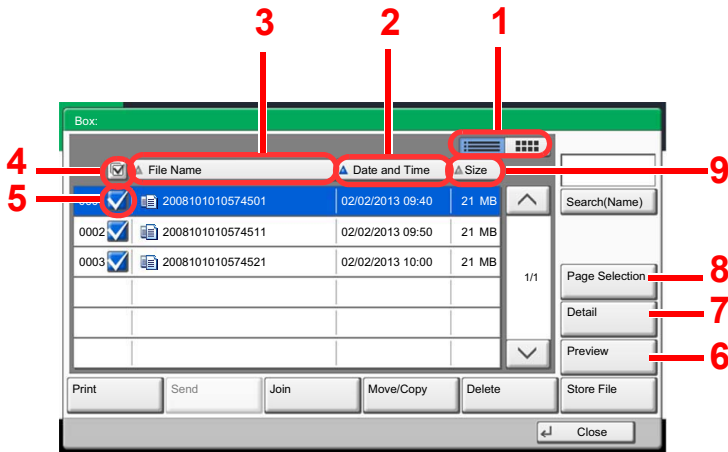
Thumbnail

1   Switches between list display and thumbnail display.

2   Listing the documents by time of update in ascending/descending order.

3   Listing the documents by name in alphabetical order.

4   Selecting more than one document at a time.

5   Selecting documents by checking checkboxes.

6   Previews the selected document.

7   Select a document in the Document List and select [**Detail**] to display the details for the selected document.

8   Select a document in the Document List and select [**Page Selection**] to display the selected document.

9   Listing the documents by size in ascending/descending order.
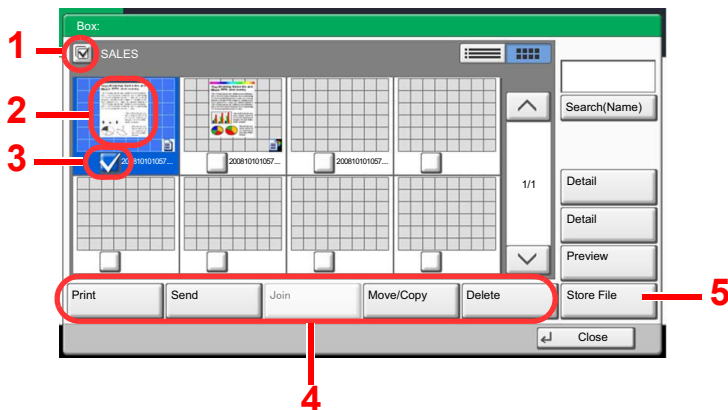
1   Selecting more than one document at a time.

2   Highlighting a document to display its details with [**Detail**].

3   Selecting documents by checking checkboxes.

4   Prints, sends, joins, moves, copies or deletes the selected documents.

5   Saves the document in the open box.

> **NOTE**
>
> You can select multiple documents by pressing the respective document checkboxes. However, note that you cannot select multiple documents when you are sending documents.

5-47

Viewing Box Details

You can check and modify box information.

Use the procedure below.

1 **Select [Add/Edit Box] in the box list screen.**

2 **Highlight the box whose box details you wish to check and select [Detail/Edit].**

> **NOTE**
>
> If a custom box is protected by a password, enter the correct password.

3 **Check the box details.**

4 **[Cancel] > [Close]**

The display returns to the default Document Box screen.

Editing Box Details

You can check and modify box information.

Use the procedure below.

1 **Select [Add/Edit Box] in the box list screen.**

2 **Highlight the box whose box details you wish to check and select [Detail/Edit].**

> **NOTE**
>
> If a custom box is protected by a password, enter the correct password.

3 **Check the box details.**

To edit details, select [**Change**] of the detail you wish to edit. Edit the detail as desired and select [**OK**].

4 **If you have changed the details, select [Save] and then select [Yes] in the confirmation screen.**

If you do not change the details, select [**No**].

5 **Select [Close].**

The display returns to the default Document Box screen.

Previewing Documents/Checking Document Details

You can use this function to preview the documents stored in a document box or display the document details for checking.

1 Select (highlight) a document to preview and then select [Preview] or [Detail].

2 Preview the document or check the document details.

The operations available in the preview screen are shown below.
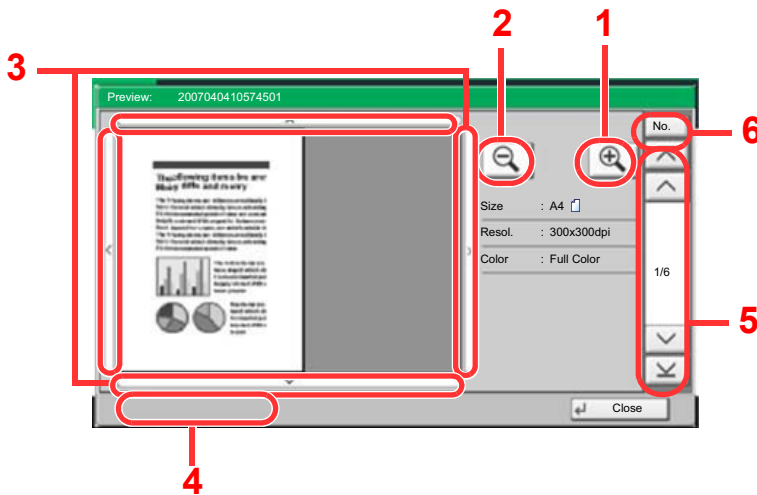
1 Zoom in.

2 Zoom out.

3 When you have zoomed in, you can use these keys to move the displayed area.

4 Press to select any page of the open document and print, send or copy to removable memory.

➡ Selecting a page (page 5-50)

5 In multiple-page documents, you can use these buttons to change pages.

6 In multiple-page documents, you can change pages by entering the desired page number.

> **NOTE**
> The preview display can be controlled by moving your finger(s) on the touch panel.
>
> ➡ Original Preview (page 2-19)

3 Confirm the document(s) and select [Close].

Selecting a page

When printing, sending, or copying a document within a Custom Box, you can specify any pages at will.
Select [**Page Selection**] in the document list screen of the Custom Box, or [**Select Pages to Process**] in the Preview screen, to display the page selection screen.
Select the pages you want to work with, and select [**Print**], [**Send**], or [**Copy to Memory**].
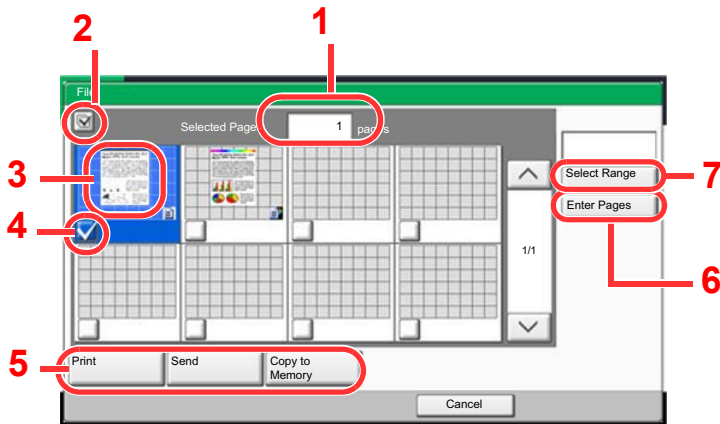
1 Displaying the number of pages selected.

2 Selecting more than one document at a time.

3 Highlighting the selected document.

4 Selecting documents by checking checkboxes.

5 Selected pages can be printed, sent, or copied to custom box.

6 You can specify the pages you want to select by selecting [**Enter Pages**].

7 You can specify a range of selection by selecting [**Select Range**].

Creating a New Custom Box

Follow the steps below to create a new Custom Box.

> **NOTE**
> - To use Custom Box, a hard disk must be installed in the machine.
> - A hard disk is an option for some models. Contact your dealer or our sales or service representatives for details.
> - If user login administration is enabled, you can only change the settings by logging in with administrator privileges. The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.
>
> | Model Name | Login User Name | Login Password |
> |------------|-----------------|----------------|
> | **350ci** | 3500 | 3500 |
> | **400ci** | 4000 | 4000 |
>
> - If user login administration is enabled, log in with administrator privileges to perform the following operations. They cannot be performed with user privileges.
>   - Creating a box
>   - Deleting a box of which owner is another user.

1 Display the screen.

1 [**Home**] key > [**Custom Box**] > [**Add/Edit Box**]

2 Register the Custom Box.

1 [**Add**] > Enter the information for each item > [**OK**]

The table below lists the items to be set.

Item	Description
Box Name	Enter a box name consisting of up to 32 characters. ↪ Character Entry Method (page 11-10)
Box No.	Enter the box number by selecting [**+**], [**-**] or number keys. The box number can be from 0001 to 1000. A Custom Box should have a unique number. If you enter 0000, the smallest number available will be automatically assigned.
Owner[*1]	Set the owner of the box. Select the owner from the user list that appears.
Permission[*2]	Select whether to share the box.
Box Password	User access to the box can be restricted by specifying a password to protect the box. Entering a password is not mandatory. Enter the same password of up to 16 characters in both [**Password**] and [**Confirm Password**]. This can be set if [**Shared**] is selected in Permission.
Usage Restriction	The usage for a box can be restricted. To enable a capacity restriction enter a value for the storage capacity of the Custom Box in megabytes by selecting [**-**], [**+**] or number keys. You can enter a limit between 1 and 30,000 (MB).
Auto File Deletion	Automatically deletes stored documents after a set period of time. Select [**On**] to enable automatic deletion and then use [**+**] and [**-**] or the numeric keys to enter the number of days for which documents are stored. You can enter any number between 1 and 31 (day(s)). To disable automatic file deletion, select [**Off**].
Free Space	Displays the free space on the box.

Item	Description
Overwrite Setting	Specifies whether or not old stored documents are overwritten when new documents are stored. To overwrite old documents, select [**Permit**]. To retain old documents, select [**Prohibit**].
Delete after Printed	Automatically delete a document from the box once printing is complete. To delete the document, select [**On**]. To retain the document, select [**Off**].

*1 Displayed when the user login administration is enabled.

*2 Not displayed when "Owner" is set to [**No Owner**].

2 Select [**Add**].

The Custom Box is created.

Editing Custom Box

Follow the steps below to edit a Custom Box.

1 Display the screen.

[**Home**] key > [**Custom Box**] > [**Add/Edit Box**]

2 Edit the custom box.

1 Select the box > [**Detail/Edit**] > Enter the information for each item > [**OK**] > [**Edit**]

> **NOTE**
> • When you have logged in as a user, you can only edit a box whose owner is set to that user.
> • When you have logged in as administrator, you can edit all boxes.

When user login administration is enabled, the settings that can be changed varies depending on the privileges of the logged in user.

Privileges	Settings that can be changed
Administrator	Box Name
	Box No.
	Owner
	Permission
	Box Password
	Usage Restriction
	Auto File Deletion
	Overwrite Setting
	Delete after Printed

Privileges	Settings that can be changed
User	Box Name
	Box Password
	Permission
	Auto File Deletion
	Overwrite Setting
	Delete after Printed

➧

2 Select [**Save**].

3 Select [**Close**].

The display returns to the default Document Box screen.

Deleting Custom Box

1 **Display the screen.**

[**Home**] key > [**Custom Box**] > [**Detail/Edit**]

2 **Delete the custom box.**

Select the box > [**Delete**] > [**Yes**]

NOTE

- When you have logged in as a user, you can only delete a box whose owner is set to that user.

- When you have logged in as administrator, you can edit all boxes.

Storing Documents to a Custom Box

Custom box stores the print data which is sent from a PC. For the operation of the printing from the PC, refer to the following:

➧ **Printing System Driver User Guide**

Printing Documents in Custom Box

The procedure for printing documents in a custom box is explained below.

1 Display the screen.

1 [**Home**] key > [**Custom Box**]

2 Select the box containing the document you want to print.

> **NOTE**
> If a custom box is protected by a password, enter the correct password.

3 Select [**Open**].

2 Print the document.

1 Select the document in the list that you want to print by selecting the checkbox.

The document is marked with a checkmark.

> **NOTE**
> To deselect, select the checkbox again and remove the checkmark.

2 Select [**Print**].

3 Set the paper selection, duplex printing, etc., as desired.

For the features that can be selected, refer to the following:

➡ Custom Box (Store File, Printing, Send) (page 6-7)

If a document stored from a computer is selected, the print settings selection screen appears.

- To use the settings used at the time of printing (when the document was saved), select [**Print As Is**]. Select [**Start Print**] to start printing.
- To change the print settings, select [**Print after Change Settings**] and change the print settings.
  After a document saved in the machine is selected, the [**Use File Settings**] key may appear in the setting screen for the feature to be used.
- To use the settings saved with the document, select [**Use File Settings**].
- If you need to change the print settings, select [**Print after Change Settings**].

4 Press the [**Start**] key.

Printing of the selected document begins.

Saving scanned documents to a Custom Box

The procedure for saving documents in a custom box is explained below.

1 Display the screen.

[**Home**] key > [**Custom Box**]

2 Place the originals.
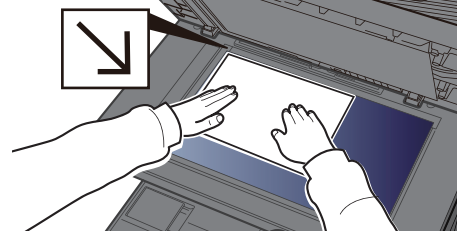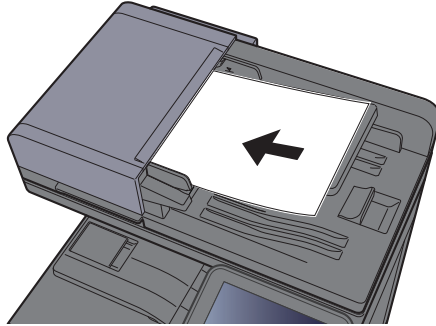
→ Loading Originals (page 5-2)

3 Store the document.

1 Select the box > [**Store File**]

2 Select the functions.

To configure the settings for functions, select the function key. By selecting [**tabs**], other selectable functions will be shown as a list.

→ Custom Box (Store File, Printing, Send) (page 6-7)

3 Press the [**Start**] key.

The original is scanned and the data is stored in the specified Custom Box.

> **NOTE**
>
> Enter up to 32 characters as the file name.

5-55

Sending Documents in Custom Box

The procedure for sending documents in a custom box is explained below.

1 Display the screen.

[**Home**] key > [**Custom Box**] > Select the box > [**Open**]

> **NOTE**
>
> If a custom box is protected by a password, enter the correct password.

2 Send the document.

1 Select the document you wish to send by checking the checkbox.

The document is marked with a checkmark.

> **NOTE**
>
> You cannot select and send multiple documents.
> To deselect, press the checkbox again and remove the checkmark.

2 Select [**Send**].

> **NOTE**
>
> Depending on the settings, the address book screen may appear.

3 Set the destination.

For more information on selecting destinations, refer to the following:

➡ Specifying Destination (page 5-39)

4 Set the sending size, original image, etc., as desired.

For the features that can be set, refer to the following:

➡ Custom Box (Store File, Printing, Send) (page 6-7)

5 Press the [**Start**] key.

Sending of the selected document begins.

Sending Documents in Custom Box to E-mail address of logged in user.

When user login is enabled, documents in the custom box are sent to the E-mail address of the logged in user.

Setting before send

Before using this function, the following are necessary.

• The function icon must be displayed in the home screen.

➡ Editing the Home Screen (page 2-13)

• An E-mail address must be set in user login for the user who logs in.

➡ Adding a User (Local User List) (page 9-8)

Sending to the E-mail address of the logged in user.

When user login is enabled, documents in the custom box are sent to the E-mail address of the logged in user.

Send to the E-mail address of the logged in user. The procedure is as follows.

1 Select [Home] key.

2 Select [Send to Me(E-mail)].

> **NOTE**
>
> When this function is used, functions other than transmission cannot be used.

Moving Documents in Custom Box

This function allows you to move documents stored in custom boxes into other boxes. The procedure for moving documents is explained below.

1 Display the screen.

[**Home**] key > [**Custom Box**] > Select the box > [**Open**]

> **NOTE**
>
> If a custom box is protected by a password, enter the correct password.

2 Move the documents.

1 Select the document in the list that you want to move by selecting the checkbox.

The document is marked with a checkmark.

> **NOTE**
>
> To deselect, select the checkbox again and remove the checkmark.

2 [**Move/Copy**] > [**Move to Custom Box**] > [**Next**] > select the destination of move > [**Move/Copy**] > [**OK**]

The selected document is moved.

> **NOTE**
>
> If the box to which the document is to be moved is protected by a password, enter the correct password.

Copying Documents in Custom Box into Other Boxes

This function allows you to copy documents stored in custom boxes into other boxes. The procedure for copying documents is explained below.

1 Display the screen.

1 [**Home**] key > [**Custom Box**] > Select the box > [**Open**]

> **NOTE**
>
> If a custom box is protected by a password, enter the correct password.

2 Copy the documents.

1 Select the document in the list that you want to copy by selecting the checkbox.

The document is marked with a checkmark.

> **NOTE**
>
> To deselect, select the checkbox again and remove the checkmark.

2 [**Move/Copy**] > [**Copy to Custom Box**] > [**Next**] > select the destination of copy > [**Copy**] > [**OK**]

The selected document is copied.

> **NOTE**
>
> If the box to which the document is to copied is protected by a password, enter the correct password.

Copying Documents in Custom Box to Removable Memory

This function allows you to copy documents stored in custom boxes to removable memory. The procedure for moving documents is explained below.

1 Display the screen.

1 [**Home**] key > [**Custom Box**] > Select the box > [**Open**]

> **NOTE**
>
> If a custom box is protected by a password, enter the correct password.

2 Copy the documents.

1 Select the document in the list that you want to copy by selecting the checkbox.

The document is marked with a checkmark.

> **NOTE**
>
> To deselect, select the checkbox again and remove the checkmark.

2 [**Move/Copy**] > [**Copy to Removable Memory**] > [**Next**] > select the destination of copy > [**Next**] > [**Copy**] > [**OK**]

The selected document is copied.

Joining Documents in Custom Box

You can join documents within a custom box into one file.

> **NOTE**
> You can only join a document to other documents in the same custom box. If necessary, move the documents to be joined beforehand.

1 Display the screen.

[**Home**] key > [**Custom Box**] > Select the box > [**Open**]

> **NOTE**
> If a custom box is protected by a password, enter the correct password.

2 Join the document.

1 Select the documents in the list that you wish to join by selecting the checkbox.

The document is marked with a checkmark.

You can join up to 10 documents.

> **NOTE**
> To deselect, select the checkbox again and remove the checkmark.

2 Select [**Join**].

3 Arrange the documents into the order in which they are to be joined.

Highlight the document you want to rearrange and select [**Up**] or [**Down**] to move it to the correct place in the sequence.

4 [**Next**] > [**File Name**] > Enter the file name for the joined document > [**OK**]

> **NOTE**
> Enter up to 64 characters as the file name.

5 [**Join**] > [**Yes**]

The documents are joined.

> **NOTE**
> After joining, the original documents are left unchanged. Delete the documents if they are no longer needed.

Deleting Documents in Custom Box

The procedure for deleting documents in a custom box is explained below.

1 Display the screen.

1 [**Home**] key > [**Custom Box**]

2 Select the box containing the document > [**Open**]

> **NOTE**
>
> If a custom box is protected by a password, enter the correct password.

2 Delete the document.

1 Select the document in the list that you want to delete by selecting the checkbox.

The document is marked with a checkmark.

> **NOTE**
> • [**Delete**] is disabled until a document is selected.
>
> • To deselect, select the checkbox again and remove the checkmark.

2 [**Delete**] > [**Yes**]

The document is deleted.

Job Box

This section explains the Repeat Copy Box and the Form for Form Overlay Box. For Private Print/Stored Job Box and Quick Copy/Proof and Hold Box, refer to the following:

→ Printing Data Saved in the Printer (page 4-15)

Outputting Repeat Copy Jobs

Repeat Copy feature stores the copied original document data in the Job Box and allows you to print additional copies later. By default, up to 32 documents can be stored. When power is turned off, all stored jobs will be deleted. This section explains how to print documents saved by the Repeat Copy function.

→ Repeat Copy (page 6-54)

1 Display the screen.

1 [**Home**] key > [**Job Box**]

2 [**Repeat Copy**] > [**Open**]

2 Print the document.

1 Select the document to print > [**Print**]

If the document is protected by a password, enter the password using the numeric keys.

2 Specify the number of copies to print as desired > [**Start Print**]

Printing begins.
The Repeat Copy box job will be deleted when the power switch is turned off.

Form for Form Overlay

Image Overlay feature copies the original document overlaid with a form or image. This Job Box is used to store the forms or images for overlaying.

Storing a Form

You can store forms to be used for the form overlay in the job box. One page can be registered in one form.

1 Place the original.

2 Display the screen.

1 [**Home**] key > [**Job Box**]

2 [**Form for Form Overlay**] > [**Open**]

3 Store the forms.

1 Select [**Store File**].

2 If necessary, select the image quality of original, scanning density, etc. before the original is scanned.

3 Press the [**Start**] key.

The original is scanned and stored in the [**Form for Form Overlay**] box.

Deleting a Form Stored

You can delete the form stored in the job box

1 Display the screen.

1 [**Home**] key > [**Job Box**]

2 [**Form for Form Overlay**] > [**Open**]

2 Delete the forms.

Select the form to delete > [**Delete**] > [**Yes**]

The form is deleted.

Operating using Removable USB Memory

Plugging USB memory directly into the machine enables you to quickly and easily print the files stored in the USB memory without having to use a computer.

The following file types can be printed:

- PDF file (Version 1.7 or older)
- TIFF file (TIFF V6/TTN2 format)
- JPEG file
- XPS file
- OpenXPS file
- Encrypted PDF file

In addition, you can store scanned image files in USB memory connected to the machine.

The following file types can be stored:

- PDF file format
- TIFF file format
- JPEG file format
- XPS file format
- OpenXPS file format
- High-compression PDF file format

Printing Documents Stored in Removable USB Memory

The procedure for printing documents stored in a removal USB memory is explained below.

> **NOTE**
> - PDF files you wish to print should have an extension (.pdf).
> - Files to be printed should be saved no further down than the top 3 folder levels, including the root folder.
> - Use USB memory properly formatted by this machine.
> - Plug the USB memory directly into the USB Memory Slot.

1 Plug the USB memory.
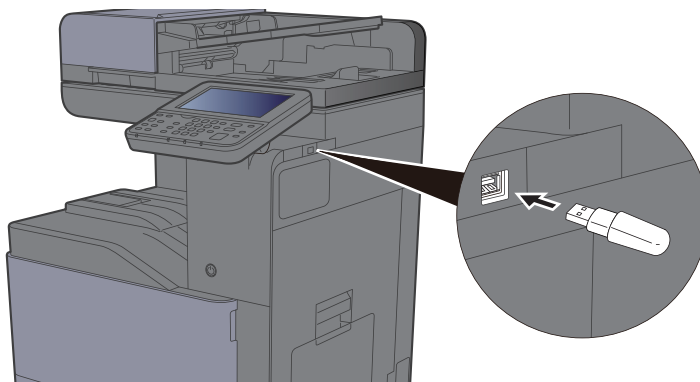
1 Plug the USB memory into the USB Memory Slot.

2 When the machine reads the USB memory, "Removable Memory is recognized. Displaying files. Are you sure?" may appear. Select [**Yes**].

Displays the removable memory screen.

> **NOTE**
> If the message does not appear, select [**Removable Memory**] on the Home screen.

2 Print the document.

1 Select the folder containing the file to be printed.

The machine will display documents in the top 3 folder levels, including the root folder.

> **NOTE**
> • 1,000 documents can be displayed.
> • To return to a higher level folder, select [**Back**].

2 Select the file to be printed > [**Print**]

3 Change the number of copies, duplex printing, etc. as desired.

For the features that can be selected, refer to the following:

➡ Removable Memory (Store File, Printing Documents) (page 6-11)

4 Press the [**Start**] key.

Printing of the selected file begins.

5-64

Saving Documents to USB Memory (Scan to USB)

The procedure for storing scanned documents to a removal USB memory is explained below.

> **NOTE**
> The maximum number of the storable files is 1,000.

1 Place the originals.
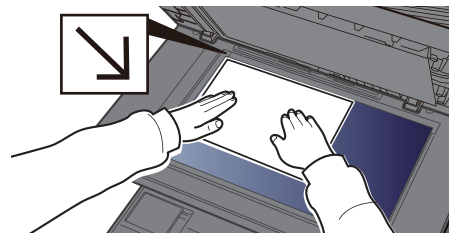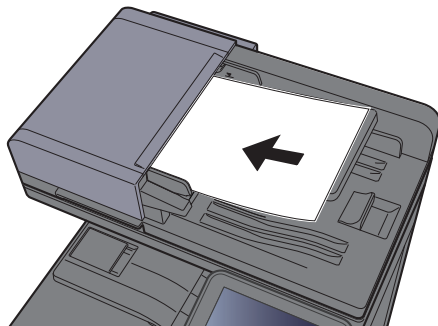
> ➡ Loading Originals (page 5-2)

2 Plug the USB memory.
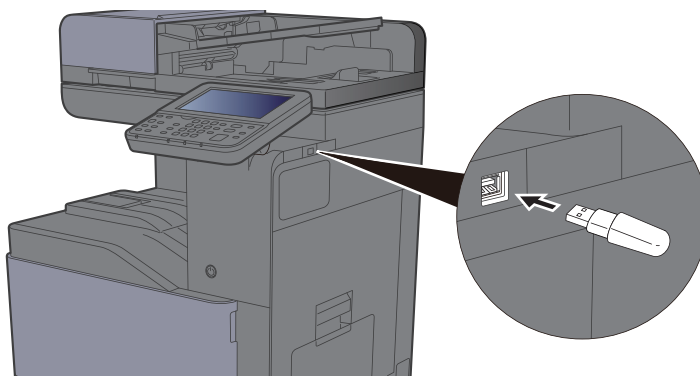
1 Plug the USB memory into the USB Memory Slot.

2 When the machine reads the USB memory, "Removable Memory is recognized. Displaying files. Are you sure?" may appear. Select [**Yes**] to display the removable memory screen.

Displays the Removable Memory screen.

> **NOTE**
> If the message does not appear, select [**Removable Memory**] on the Home screen.

3 Store the document.

1 Select the folder where the file will be stored > [**Open**].

The machine will display the top 3 folder levels, including the root folder.

2 Select [**Store File**].

3 Set the type of original, file format, etc., as desired.

For the features that can be set, refer to the following:

➜ Removable Memory (Store File, Printing Documents) (page 6-11)

4 Check the storing image.

5 Press the [**Start**] key.

The original is scanned and the data is stored in the USB memory.

Check the USB Memory Information

You can check the USB memory information.

1 In the removable memory screen, select [Memory Information].

2 Once you confirm the information, select [Close].

Removing USB Memory

Follow the steps below to remove the USB memory.

> ⊘ **IMPORTANT**
> **Be sure to follow the proper procedure to avoid damaging the data or USB memory.**

1 Display the screen.

[**Home**] key > [**Remove Memory**]

2 Select [Remove Memory].

Select [**OK**], and remove the USB memory after "Removable Memory can be safely removed." is displayed.

> 📇 **NOTE**
> USB memory can also be removed after checking the status of the device.
> ➜ Device/Communication (page 7-13)

Using the Internet Browser

If the machine is connected to the network, you can browse the Internet on the touch panel.

> **NOTE**
>
> To use the internet browser, "Internet Browser Setting" must be set to [**On**] in Internet.
>
> ➡ Internet (page 8-58)

Launching and Exiting the Browser

Use the procedure below to launch and exit the Internet browser.

Display the screen.

1 [**Home**] key > [**Internet Browser**]

The Internet browser starts up.

2 Use the browser screen to browse web pages.

For information on how to use the browser screen, refer to the following:

➡ Using the Browser Screen (page 5-68)

3 To exit the browser, select [**X**] (Close) and then select [**Yes**] in the exit confirmation screen.

> **NOTE**
>
> You can specify preferences such as the way the Internet browser screen is displayed.
>
> ➡ Browser Environment (page 8-58)

Using the Browser Screen

The operations available in the Internet browser screen are shown below.

Text box
Pressing the text box displays a keyboard that allows you to type text.

Title bar
Displays the page title.

Close
Closes the Internet browser and returns you to the application list screen.

Scroll bars
These allow you to scroll the displayed page up, down, left and right by selecting [∧], [∨], [〈] or [〉] or by moving one of the slide bars with your finger.

Security lock icon
Displayed when you are viewing a protected page.

Loader/Progress bar
Shows the status of page loading. When the browser is loading a web page, the loader changes to an animated display.

Menu
Displays the browser setup menu. You can use this menu to specify the browser's display magnification, set the text encoding scheme and check the server certificate.

Search (Search Internet/Retrieval in page)
Displays a search menu in which you can select "Retrieval in page" or an Internet search site.
Search Internet: Use the selected search site to search with the entered keyword.
Retrieval in page: Search from the entered keyword in the currently displayed page. You can continue your search by selecting [**SearchUp**] or [**SearchDown**].

Enter URL
Use this to display a desired web page by entering the URL for that page.

Home page
Displays your specified home page. You can set your home page in the Browser Environment (page 8-58).

Reload
Updates the page.

Back/Forward
Displays the previous page or the next page.

NOTE

Selecting the [**Reset**] key while the Internet browser is displayed will exit the browser and return you to the application list screen without displaying the browser exit.

Manual Staple

You can staple copied paper manually without any print operation. It is useful when you have forgotten to set the staple sort mode before starting copying, or when you want to staple originals.

> **NOTE**
>
> This function requires the optional Sheet Finisher:
>
> ➡ 3,000-Sheet Finisher (page 11-28)
>
> If there are no staples when manual stapling is performed, the stapling position lamps and stapling position key LEDs all blink. Add staples.
>
> ➡ Replacing Staples (3,000-Sheet Finisher) (page 10-17)
>
> Manual stapling cannot be executed when the machine is in operation.

Maximum number of sheets available for manual stapling

Paper size	Paper weight
	52 - 105 g/m^2 (14.0 - 28.0 lb. Bond)
Ledger, Legal, Folio, Oficio II, A3, B4, 8K	30 sheets
A4, B5, Letter, 16K	50 sheets

Use the keys on the control section of the Finisher (optional) for manual stapling.
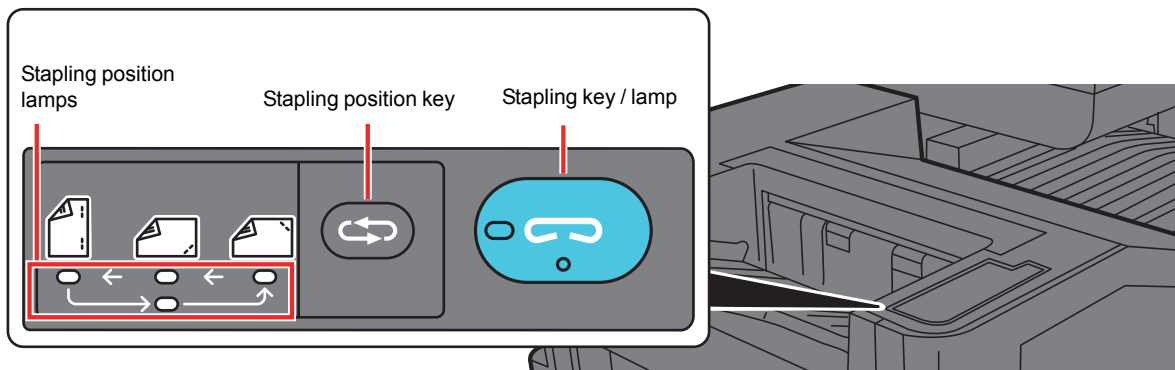
1 Press the stapling position key on the stapling control section.

The shutter of the paper exit area is opened and this equipment enters into the manual staple mode.

2 Set the staple position.

Press the stapling position key to select the stapling position

(Back ⬚ / Front ⬚ / 2 Points ⬚).

Operation is not possible while the stapling position lamps are blinking. Operate after the lamps light solidly.

3 Load the paper.

Straighten the edges of the paper well and place the paper front side down in the shutter opening of the output unit.

If the near side of the paper ( ) will be stapled, place the paper against the front guide (A).

If the far side of the paper ( ) will be stapled, place the paper against the back guide (B).

If the edge of the paper ( ) will be stapled at two points, place the paper with the center aligned to the center point between the two side guides (A and B).
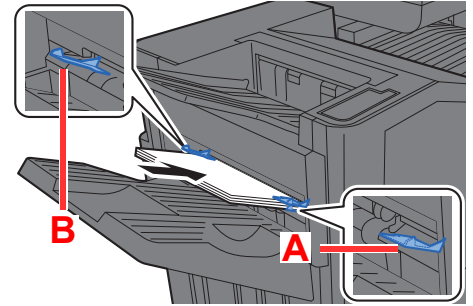
> ⚠️ **CAUTION**
> **Do not insert your hand inside the open shutter.**

> 📝 **NOTE**
> • Press the stapling position key before you place the paper. Once the paper is placed, the stapling position key cannot be used.
> • The stapling lamp lights when the paper is properly placed. If it does not light, replace the paper.

4 Staple the paper.

Let go of the paper, and then press the stapling key.

Stapling starts. Stapling finishes and the output is delivered to tray.

> ⚠️ **CAUTION**
> **Be sure that your hands are away from the paper while stapling is in progress.**

Finishing the manual staple mode

Press the stapling position key several times until the stapling position lamps turn off. The shutter of the paper exit area closes. It means that manual stapling is finished.
If no operation is performed for approx. 10 seconds, the manual staple mode will be automatically finished.

> 📝 **NOTE**
> The time after which manual staple mode is automatically exited can be changed.

➡ Manual Staple (page 8-24)

5-70

6 Using Various Functions

This chapter explains the following topics:

Functions Available on the Machine

About Functions Available on the Machine

This machine provides the various functions available.

How to Select Functions

To configure the settings for functions, select the tab and press the function key.

Copy

For details on each function, see the table below.

Tab	Function key	Description	Reference page
Org./Paper/ Finishing Configure the settings for originals, paper, and finishing such as collate and staple.	**Original Size**	Specify the original size to be scanned.	page 6-14
	Paper Selection	Select the cassette or multi-purpose tray that contains the required paper size.	page 6-15
	Mixed Size Originals	Scans all sheets in the document processor, even if they are of different sizes.	page 6-16
	Original Orientation	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction.	page 6-18
	Collate/Offset	Offsets the output by page or set.	page 6-19
	Staple/Punch	Staples or punches printed documents.	page 6-20
	Paper Output	Specify the output tray.	page 6-23

Tab	Function key	Description	Reference page
Color/ Image Quality Configure the settings for density, quality of copies, and color balance.	**Density**	Adjust density.	page 6-24
	Original Image	Select original image type for best results.	page 6-24
	EcoPrint	EcoPrint saves toner when printing.	page 6-25
	Color Selection	Select the color mode setting.	page 6-25
	Color Balance	Adjust the strength of cyan, magenta, yellow, and black.	page 6-26
	Hue Adjustment	Adjust the color (hue) of images.	page 6-27
	One-touch Image Adjust	Adjust images as desired to more [**Vivid**] or more [**Muted**] images.	page 6-28
	Sharpness	Adjusts the sharpness of image outlines.	page 6-30
	Background Density Adj.	Removes dark background from originals, such as newspapers.	page 6-31
	Saturation	Adjust the color saturation of the image.	page 6-31
	Prevent Bleed-thru	Hides background colors and image bleed-through when scanning thin original.	page 6-32
	Contrast	You can adjust the contrast between light and dark areas of the image.	page 6-30

Tab	Function key	Description	Reference page
Layout/Edit Configure the settings for duplex printing and stamp.	**Zoom**	Adjust the zoom to reduce or enlarge the image.	page 6-32
	Combine	Combines 2 or 4 original sheets into 1 printed page.	page 6-34
	Margin/Centering	Margin: Add margins (white space). In addition, you can set the margin width and the back page margin. Centering: Centers the original image on the paper when copying onto paper different from the original size.	page 6-36
	Border Erase	Erases the black border that forms around the image.	page 6-37
	Duplex	Produces two-sided copies. You can also create single-sided copies from two-sided originals.	page 6-39
	Cover	Adds a cover to the finished documents.	page 6-41
	Form Overlay	Prints the original document overlaid with a form or image.	page 6-42
	Page #	Adds page numbers to the finished documents.	page 6-43
	Memo Page	Delivers copies with a space for adding notes.	page 6-45
	Poster	Separates and copies an enlarged image onto multiple pages to make copies larger than the maximum paper size.	page 6-46
	Image Repeat	Tiles the original image on one sheet of paper.	page 6-47
	Text Stamp	You can add a text stamp on the documents.	page 6-48
	Bates Stamp	You can add a bates stamp on the documents.	page 6-50

Tab	Function key	Description	Reference page
Advanced Setup Configure the settings for continuous scanning, mirror image copies, and Skip Blank Page function.	**Continuous Scan**	Scans a large number of originals in separate batches and then produce as one job.	page 6-52
	Negative Image	Inverts black and white portions of the image for printing.	page 6-52
	Mirror Image	Copies the mirrored image of the original.	page 6-52
	Job Finish Notice	Sends E-mail notice when a job is complete.	page 6-53
	File Name Entry	Adds a file name.	page 6-53
	Priority Override	Suspends the current job and gives a new job top priority.	page 6-54
	Repeat Copy	Enables additional copies in the desired quantity as necessary after a copy job is completed.	page 6-54
	OHP Backing Sheet	When printing to sheets of transparency, automatically inserts a paper between them.	page 6-55
	DP Read Action	When the document processor is used, select the scanning operation for the document processor.	page 6-56
	Skip Blank Page	When there are blank pages in a scanned document, this function skips the blank pages and prints only pages that are not blank.	page 6-56
	Quiet Mode	Lower print and scan speed for quiet processing.	page 6-56

Send

To configure the settings for functions, select the tab and press the function key.

For details on each function, see the table below.

Tab	Function key	Description	Reference page
Org./Sending Data Format Configure the settings for original type and file format.	**Original Size**	Specify the original size to be scanned.	page 6-14
	Mixed Size Originals	Scans all sheets in the document processor, even if they are of different sizes.	page 6-16
	2-sided/Book Original	Select the type and orientation of the binding based on the original.	page 6-57
	Original Orientation	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction.	page 6-18
	Sending Size	Select size of image to be sent.	page 6-58
	File Format	Specify the image file format. Image quality level can also be adjusted.	page 6-59
	File Separation	Creates several files by dividing scanned original data page by page, and sends the files.	page 6-63
	Long Original	Reads long-sized original documents using a document processor.	page 6-67
Color/ Image Quality Configure the settings for density, quality of copies, and color balance.	**Density**	Adjust density.	page 6-24
	Original Image	Select original image type for best results.	page 6-24
	Scan Resolution	Select fineness of scanning resolution.	page 6-63
	FAX TX Resolution	Select fineness of images when sending FAX.	Refer to the **FAX Operation Guide**.
	Color Selection	Select the color mode setting.	page 6-25
	Sharpness	Adjusts the sharpness of image outlines.	page 6-30
	Background Density Adj.	Removes dark background from originals, such as newspapers.	page 6-31
	Prevent Bleed-thru	Hides background colors and image bleed-through when scanning thin original.	page 6-32
	Contrast	You can adjust the contrast between light and dark areas of the image.	page 6-30

Tab	Function key	Description	Reference page
	Zoom	Adjust the zoom to reduce or enlarge the image.	page 6-32
	Centering	Centers the original image on the paper when sending onto paper different from the original size.	page 6-36
	Border Erase	Erases the black border that forms around the image.	page 6-37
	FAX Delayed Transmission	Set a send time.	Refer to the **FAX Operation Guide**.
	Continuous Scan	Scans a large number of originals in separate batches and then produce as one job.	page 6-52
	Job Finish Notice	Sends E-mail notice when a job is complete.	page 6-53
	File Name Entry	Adds a file name.	page 6-53
	E-mail Subject/Body	Adds subject and body when sending a document.	page 6-64
	i-FAX Subject/Body	Adds subject and body when sending a document by i-FAX.	Refer to the **FAX Operation Guide**.
Advanced Setup Configure the settings for transmission copy, encrypted transmission, and file size confirmation.	**FAX Direct Transmission**	Sends FAX directly without reading original data into memory.	Refer to the **FAX Operation Guide**.
	FAX Polling RX	Dial the destination and receive documents for Polling Transmission stored in the polling box.	Refer to the **FAX Operation Guide**.
	Send and Print	Prints a copy of the document being sent.	page 6-64
	Send and Store	Stores a copy of the document being sent in a Custom Box.	page 6-65
	FTP Encrypted TX	Encrypts images when sending via FTP.	page 6-65
	Text Stamp	You can add a text stamp on the documents.	page 6-48
	Bates Stamp	You can add a bates stamp on the documents.	page 6-50
	File Size Confirmation	Checks the file size before sending/storing the original.	page 6-66
	FAX TX Report	Print a report of fax transmission results.	Refer to the **FAX Operation Guide**.
	Skip Blank Page	When there are blank pages in a scanned document, this function skips the blank pages and sends only pages that are not blank.	page 6-56
	Quiet Mode	Lower print and scan speed for quiet processing.	page 6-56

Custom Box (Store File, Printing, Send)

To configure the settings for functions, select the tab and press the function key.

Function key

Tab

For details on each function, see the table below.

Store File

Tab	Function key	Description	Reference page
Functions Configure the settings when storing the document in the Custom Box.	**Original Size**	Specify the original size to be scanned.	page 6-14
	Mixed Size Originals	Scans all sheets in the document processor, even if they are of different sizes.	page 6-16
	2-sided/Book Original	Select the type and orientation of the binding based on the original.	page 6-57
	Original Orientation	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction.	page 6-18
	Storing Size	Select size of image to be stored.	page 6-67
	Prevent Bleed-thru	Hides background colors and image bleed-through when scanning thin original.	page 6-32
	Density	Adjust density.	page 6-24
	Original Image	Select original image type for best results.	page 6-24
	Scan Resolution	Select fineness of scanning resolution.	page 6-63
	Color Selection	Select the color mode setting.	page 6-25
	Sharpness	Adjusts the sharpness of image outlines.	page 6-30
	Background Density Adj.	Removes dark background from originals, such as newspapers.	page 6-31
	Zoom	Adjust the zoom to reduce or enlarge the image.	page 6-32
	Centering	Centers the original image on the paper when storing onto paper different from the original size.	page 6-36
	Border Erase	Erases the black border that forms around the image.	page 6-37
	Continuous Scan	Scans a large number of originals in separate batches and then produce as one job.	page 6-52
	Job Finish Notice	Sends E-mail notice when a job is complete.	page 6-53
	File Name Entry	Adds a file name.	page 6-53

Tab	Function key	Description	Reference page
Functions Configure the settings when storing the document in the Custom Box.	**Skip Blank Page**	When there are blank pages in a scanned document, this function skips the blank pages and stores only pages that are not blank.	page 6-56
	Quiet Mode	Lower print and scan speed for quiet processing.	page 6-56
	Contrast	You can adjust the contrast between light and dark areas of the image.	page 6-30

Print

Tab	Function key	Description	Reference page
	Paper Selection	Select the cassette or multi-purpose tray that contains the required paper size.	page 6-15
	Collate/Offset	Offsets the output by page or set.	page 6-19
	Staple/Punch	Staples or punches printed documents.	page 6-20
	Paper Output	Specify the output tray.	page 6-23
	Combine	Combines 2 or 4 original sheets into 1 printed page.	page 6-34
	Margin/Centering	Margin: Add margins (white space). In addition, you can set the margin width and the back page margin. Centering: Centers the original image on the paper when copying onto paper different from the original size.	page 6-36
	Duplex	Prints 1-sided or open book originals to 2-sided, or 2-sided or open book originals to 1-sided.	page 6-39
	Cover	Adds a cover to the finished documents.	page 6-41
Functions Configure the settings for paper selection and duplex printing when printing from the Custom Box.	**Form Overlay**	Prints the original document overlaid with a form or image.	page 6-42
	Page #	Adds page numbers to the finished documents.	page 6-43
	Job Finish Notice	Sends E-mail notice when a job is complete.	page 6-53
	File Name Entry	Adds a file name.	page 6-53
	Delete after Printed	Automatically deletes a document from the box once printing is complete.	page 6-66
	Priority Override	Suspends the current job and gives a new job top priority.	page 6-54
	EcoPrint	EcoPrint saves toner when printing.	page 6-25
	Zoom	Adjust the zoom to reduce or enlarge the image.	page 6-32
	Text Stamp	You can add a text stamp on the documents.	page 6-48
	Bates Stamp	You can add a bates stamp on the documents.	page 6-50
	Color Balance	Adjust the strength of cyan, magenta, yellow, and black.	page 6-26
	Hue Adjustment	Adjust the color (hue) of images.	page 6-27
	One-touch Image Adjust	Adjust images as desired to more [**Vivid**] or more [**Muted**] images.	page 6-28
	Saturation	Adjust the color saturation of the image.	page 6-31
	Quiet Mode	Lower print and scan speed for quiet processing.	page 6-56

Tab	Function key	Description	Reference page
Color/Image Quality Configure the settings for density, quality of copies, and color balance.	**Density**	Adjust density.	page 6-24
	Original Image	Select original image type for best results.	page 6-24
	Color Selection	Select the color mode setting.	page 6-25
	Sharpness	Adjusts the sharpness of image outlines.	page 6-30
	Background Density Adj.	Removes dark background from originals, such as newspapers.	page 6-31
	Prevent Bleed-thru	Hides background colors and image bleed-through when scanning thin original.	page 6-32
	Contrast	You can adjust the contrast between light and dark areas of the image.	page 6-30

Send

Tab	Function key	Description	Reference page
Functions Configure the settings for file format and FAX transmission when sending from the Custom Box.	**Sending Size**	Select size of image to be sent.	page 6-58
	File Format	Specify the image file format. Image quality level can also be adjusted.	page 6-59
	FAX TX Resolution	Select fineness of images when sending FAX.	Refer to the **FAX Operation Guide**.
	Centering	Centers the original image on the paper when sending onto paper different from the original size.	page 6-36
	FAX Delayed Transmission	Set a send time.	Refer to the **FAX Operation Guide**.
	Job Finish Notice	Sends E-mail notice when a job is complete.	page 6-53
	File Name Entry	Adds a file name.	page 6-53
	E-mail Subject/Body	Adds subject and body when sending a document.	page 6-64
	i-FAX Subject/Body	Adds subject and body when sending a document by i-FAX.	Refer to the **FAX Operation Guide**.
	FTP Encrypted TX	Encrypts images when sending via FTP.	page 6-65
	Delete after Transmitted	Automatically deletes a document from the box once transmission is complete.	page 6-66
	Zoom	Adjust the zoom to reduce or enlarge the image.	page 6-32
	File Separation	Creates several files by dividing scanned original data page by page, and sends the files.	page 6-63
	Text Stamp	You can add a text stamp on the documents.	page 6-48
	Bates Stamp	You can add a bates stamp on the documents.	page 6-50
	File Size Confirmation	Checks the file size before sending/storing the original.	page 6-66

Tab	Function key	Description	Reference page
Functions Configure the settings for file format and FAX transmission when sending from the Custom Box.	**FAX TX Report**	Print a report of fax transmission results.	Refer to the **FAX Operation Guide**.
Color/ Image Quality Configure the settings for density, quality of copies, and color balance.	**Density**	Adjust density.	page 6-24
	Original Image	Select original image type for best results.	page 6-24
	Resolution	Select fineness of scanning resolution.	page 6-63
	Color Selection	Select the color mode setting.	page 6-25
	Sharpness	Adjusts the sharpness of image outlines.	page 6-30
	Background Density Adj.	Removes dark background from originals, such as newspapers.	page 6-31
	Prevent Bleed-thru	Hides background colors and image bleed-through when scanning thin original.	page 6-32
	Contrast	You can adjust the contrast between light and dark areas of the image.	page 6-30

Removable Memory (Store File, Printing Documents)

To configure the settings for functions, select the tab and press the function key.

Function key

Tab

Ready to store in Box.	Free Space 200.0MB

Storing Image

Original : A4
Zoom : 100%
Store : A4

Preview

Original Size | Mixed Size Originals | 2-sided/Book Original | Original Orientation

Storing Size | Prevent Bleed-thru | Density | Original Image

Scan Resolution | Color Selection | Sharpness | Background Density Adj.

1/2

Functions | RemoveMemory | Back to List

For details on each function, see the table below.

Store File

Tab	Function key	Description	Reference page
Functions Configure the settings for color selection and document name when storing the document in the removable memory.	**Original Size**	Specify the original size to be scanned.	page 6-14
	Mixed Size Originals	Scans all sheets in the document processor, even if they are of different sizes.	page 6-16
	2-sided/Book Original	Select the type and orientation of the binding based on the original.	page 6-57
	Original Orientation	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction.	page 6-18
	Storing Size	Select size of image to be stored.	page 6-67
	Prevent Bleed-thru	Hides background colors and image bleed-through when scanning thin original.	page 6-32
	Density	Adjust density.	page 6-24
	Original Image	Select original image type for best results.	page 6-24
	Scan Resolution	Select fineness of scanning resolution.	page 6-63
	Color Selection	Select the color mode setting.	page 6-25
	Sharpness	Adjusts the sharpness of image outlines.	page 6-30
	Background Density Adj.	Removes dark background from originals, such as newspapers.	page 6-31
	Zoom	Adjust the zoom to reduce or enlarge the image.	page 6-32
	Centering	Centers the original image on the paper when storing onto paper different from the original size.	page 6-36
	Border Erase	Erases the black border that forms around the image.	page 6-37
	Continuous Scan	Scans a large number of originals in separate batches and then produce as one job.	page 6-52
	Job Finish Notice	Sends E-mail notice when a job is complete.	page 6-53
	File Name Entry	Adds a file name.	page 6-53
	File Format	Specify the image file format. Image quality level can also be adjusted.	page 6-59
	File Separation	Creates several files by dividing scanned original data page by page, and sends the files.	page 6-63
	Skip Blank Page	When there are blank pages in a scanned document, this function skips the blank pages and stores only pages that are not blank.	page 6-56
	Quiet Mode	Lower print and scan speed for quiet processing.	page 6-56

6-11

Tab	Function key	Description	Reference page
Functions Configure the settings for color selection and document name when storing the document in the removable memory.	**Contrast**	You can adjust the contrast between light and dark areas of the image.	page 6-30
	Long Original	Reads long-sized original documents using a document processor.	page 6-67
	Text Stamp	You can add a text stamp on the documents.	page 6-48
	Bates Stamp	You can add a bates stamp on the documents.	page 6-50

Printing Documents

Tab	Function key	Description	Reference page
Functions Configure the settings for paper selection and duplex printing when printing from the removable memory.	**Paper Selection**	Select the cassette or multi-purpose tray that contains the required paper size.	page 6-15
	Collate/Offset	Offsets the output by page or set.	page 6-19
	Staple/Punch	Staples or punches printed documents.	page 6-20
	Paper Output	Specify the output tray.	page 6-23
	Margin	Add margins (white space). In addition, you can set the margin width and the back page margin.	page 6-36
	2-sided	Print a document to 1-sided or 2-sided sheets.	page 6-39
	Job Finish Notice	Sends E-mail notice when a job is complete.	page 6-53
	Priority Override	Suspends the current job and gives a new job top priority.	page 6-54
	EcoPrint	EcoPrint saves toner when printing.	page 6-25
	Text Stamp	You can add a text stamp on the documents.	page 6-48
	Bates Stamp	You can add a bates stamp on the documents.	page 6-50
	Encrypted PDF Password	Enter the preassigned password to print the PDF data.	page 6-68
	JPEG/TIFF Print	Select the image size when printing JPEG or TIFF files.	page 6-68
	XPS Fit to Page	Reduces or enlarges the image size to fit to the selected paper size when printing XPS file.	page 6-68
	Quiet Mode	Lower print and scan speed for quiet processing.	page 6-56

Tab	Function key	Description	Reference page
Color/ Image Quality Configure the color mode settings.	**Color Selection**	Select the color mode setting.	page 6-25

Functions

On pages that explain a convenient function, the modes in which that function can be used are indicated by icons.

Icon	Description
Copy Org./Paper/ Finishing	Access to the function is indicated by icons. Example: Select the [**Org./Paper/Finishing**] tab in the Copy screen to use the function.
Send Org./Sending Data Format	Access to the function is indicated by icons. Example: Select the [**Org./Sending Data Format**] tab in the Send screen to use the function.
Custom Box Functions	Access to the function is indicated by icons. Example: Select the [**Functions**] tab in the Custom Box screen to use the function.
USB Memory Functions	Access to the function is indicated by icons. Example: Select the [**Functions**] tab in the Removable Memory screen screen to use the function.

Original Size

| Copy | Org./Paper/ Finishing | Send | Org./Sending Data Format | Custom Box | Functions | USB Memory | Functions |

Specify the original size to be scanned.

Select [**Standard Sizes 1**], [**Standard Sizes 2**], [**Others**] or [**Size Entry**] to select the original size.

Item	Value	Description
Standard Sizes 1	Metric models: Auto, A4, A5, A6, B5, B6, Folio, 216 x 340 mm Inch models: Auto, Letter, Legal, Statement, Executive, Oficio II	Have the size of original detected automatically, or select from the standard sizes.
Standard Sizes 2	Metric models: Letter, Legal, Statement, Executive, Oficio II, 16K Inch models: A4, A5, A6, B5, B6, Folio, 16K, 216 x 340 mm	Select from standard sizes except Standard Sizes 1.
Others	ISO B5, Envelope #10, Envelope #9, Envelope #6, Envelope Monarch, Envelope DL, Envelope C5, Hagaki (Cardstock), Oufuku Hagaki (Return postcard), Youkei 4, Youkei 2, Custom[*1]	Select from special standard sizes and custom sizes.
Size Entry	Metric X: 50 to 356 mm (in 1 mm increments) Y: 50 to 216 mm (in 1 mm increments) Inch X: 1.97 to 14.02" (in 0.01" increments) Y: 1.97 to 8.50" (in 0.01" increments)	Enter the size not included in the standard sizes 1 and 2.[*2] When you have selected [**Size Entry**], select [**+**] or [**-**] to set the sizes of "X" (horizontal) and "Y" (vertical). Select [**# Keys**] to use the numeric keys for entry.

*1 For instructions on how to specify the custom original size, refer to the following:
*2 The input units can be changed in System Menu. For details, refer to the following:

> **NOTE**
>
> Be sure to always specify the original size when using custom size original.

Paper Selection

Copy | Org./Paper/ Finishing

Custom Box | Functions

USB Memory | Functions

Select the cassette or multi-purpose tray that contains the required paper size.

Select from [1] (Cassette 1) to [4] (Cassette 4) to use the paper contained in that cassette.

If [**Auto**] is selected, the paper matching the size of the original is selected automatically.

> **NOTE**
> - Specify in advance the size and type of the paper loaded in the cassette.
> ➡ Cassette/MP Tray Settings (page 8-7)
> - Cassettes 2 to 4 are displayed when the optional paper feeder is installed.

To select [**MP tray**], select [**Paper Size**] and [**Media Type**], and specify the paper size and the media type. The available paper sizes and media types are shown in the table below.

Item		Value	Description
Paper Size	**Standard Sizes 1**	Metric models: A4[*1][*2], A5[*1][*2], A6[*1][*2], B5[*1][*2], B6[*1][*2], Folio[*1][*2], 216 x 340mm Inch models: Letter[*1][*2], Legal[*1][*2], Statement[*1][*2], Executive, Oficio II	Select from the standard size.
	Standard Sizes 2	Metric models: Letter[*1][*2], Legal[*1][*2], Statement[*1][*2], Executive, Oficio II, 16K Inch models: A4[*1][*2], A5[*1][*2], A6[*1][*2], B5[*1][*2], B6[*1][*2], Folio[*1][*2], 216 x 340mm, 16K	Select from standard sizes except Standard Sizes 1.
	Others	ISO B5, Envelope #10, Envelope #9, Envelope #6, Envelope Monarch, Envelope DL, Envelope C5, Hagaki (Cardstock)[*2], Oufuku Hagaki (Return postcard), Youkei 4, Youkei 2, Custom[*3]	Select from special standard sizes and custom sizes.
	Size Entry	Metric X: 148 to 356 mm (in 1 mm increments) Y: 70 to 216 mm (in 1 mm increments) Inch X: 5.83 to 14.02" (in 0.01" increments) Y: 2.76 to 8.50" (in 0.01" increments)	Enter the size not included in the standard size.[*4] When you have selected [**Size Entry**], use [**+**]/[**-**] or the numeric keys to set the sizes of "X" (horizontal) and "Y" (vertical). Select [**# Keys**] to use the numeric keys for entry.
Media type		Plain (60 to 105 g/m^2), Transparency, Rough, Vellum (60 to 105 g/m^2), Labels, Recycled, Preprinted[*5], Bond, Cardstock, Color, Prepunched[*5], Letterhead[*5], Envelope, Thick (106 to 220 g/m^2), Coated, High Quality, Custom 1-8[*5]	

*1 Paper size is automatically detected in the cassette.
*2 Paper size is automatically detected in the Multi Purpose Tray.
*3 For instructions on how to specify the custom paper size, refer to the following:
    ➡ Custom Paper Size (page 8-11)
*4 The input units can be changed in System Menu. For details, refer to the following:
    ➡ Measurement (page 8-13)
*5 For instructions on how to specify the custom paper types 1 to 8, refer to the following:
    ➡ Media Type Setting (page 8-13)
    To print on preprinted or prepunched paper or on letterhead, refer to the following:
    ➡ Special Paper Action (page 8-12)

> **IMPORTANT**
>
> **When paper size and the media type for MP tray is specified, [Paper Settings] is selected. Note that if [MP Tray] is pressed at this point, the settings will be canceled.**

> **NOTE**
> • You can conveniently select in advance the size and type of paper that will be used often and set them as default.
> ➜ MP Tray Setting (page 8-8)
> • If the specified size of paper is not loaded in the paper source cassette or multi purpose tray, a confirmation screen appears. Load the required paper in the multi purpose tray and select [**Continue**] to start copying.

Mixed Size Originals

| Copy | Org./Paper/ Finishing | Send | Org./Sending Data Format | Custom Box | Functions | USB Memory | Functions |

Scans all sheets in the document processor, even if they are of different sizes.

Copying

Item	Description
Off	
Mixed Size Copies	Originals are detected individually for size and copied to the same size paper as originals.
Same Size Copies	Select the original orientation of the first page.

Sending/Storing

Item	Value	Description
Mixed Size Originals	Off	
	Same Width	Scans and sends multiple sheets of the same width using the document processor.

Supported Combinations of Originals

Same Width

Legal and Letter (Folio and A4)
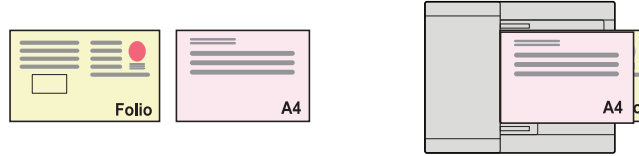
> **NOTE**
>
> When mixing the original sizes as using the following combination: Folio and A4, make sure to set "Auto Detect Original Size" to [**Metric**] for "Folio".
>
> → Auto Detect Original Size (page 8-11)

Selecting How to Copy Originals

Set the paper size (copy size) when printing scanned document. Select whether you wish to create individual copies on different size paper matching the original sizes or to produce all copies on the same size paper.

Mixed Size Copies

Originals are detected individually for size and copied to the same size paper as originals.

Same Size Copies

Originals are all copied to the same size paper.

6-17

Original Orientation

| Copy | Org./Paper/ Finishing | | Send | Org./Sending Data Format | | Custom Box | Functions | | USB Memory | Functions |

Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction.

To use any of the following functions, the document's original orientation must be set.

- Zoom
- Duplex
- Margin/Centering
- Border Erase
- Combine
- Memo page

- Page #
- Stapling/Punch (optional feature)
- 2-sided/Book Original
- Text Stamp
- Bates Stamp

NOTE

If [**On**] is selected in the setting for Original Orientation in System Menu, the selection screen for original orientation appears when you select any of the above functions.

➡ Orientation Confirmation (page 8-16)

Select original orientation from [**Top Edge on Top**], [**Top Edge on Left**] or [**Auto**].

Item	Image
Top Edge on Top	Original Original orientation
Top Edge on Left	Original Original orientation
Auto[*1]	

*1 This function can only be used when the optional OCR Scan Activation Kit is installed.

NOTE

The default setting for Original Orientation can be changed.

➡ Orig. Orientation (Copy) (page 8-17)

Collate/Offset

Copy	Org./Paper/ Finishing		Custom Box	Functions		USB Memory	Functions

Offsets the output by page or set.

> **NOTE**
>
> This function requires the optional Sheet Finisher:
>
> → Inner Finisher (page 11-26)
>
>   1,000-Sheet Finisher (page 11-27)
>
>   3,000-Sheet Finisher (page 11-28)

without optional Sheet Finisher*

(**Value**: [**Off**] / [**On**])

* Collate Only

with optional Sheet Finisher

Collate (**Value**: [**Off**] / [**On**])

Offset (**Value**: [**Off**] / [**Offset Each Page**] */ [**Offset Each Set**] **)

*This function appears when Collate is set to [**Off**].

This function appears when Collate is set to [On**].

Item	Image	Description
Collate		Scans multiple originals and delivers complete sets of copies as required according to page number.
Offset Each Page		Printed copies are collated and output as individual pages separately.
Offset Each Set		Printed copies are collated and output as individual set separately.

> **NOTE**
>
> The paper sizes supported in Offset are Legal, Oficio II, Letter, A4, 216 × 340 mm and 16K.

Staple/Punch

Copy	Org./Paper/Finishing	Custom Box	Functions	USB Memory	Functions

Staples the finished documents. The staple position can be selected.

Staple

Staples the finished documents. The staple position can be selected.

Item	Value	Description
Staple	Off	
	Top Left	Select the staple position. For details on original orientation and staple position, refer to the following:
	Top Right	
	2 staples Left	➜ **Original Orientation and Punch Hole Position (page 6-22)**
	2 staples Top	
	2 staples Right	
Original Orientation	Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto[*1]	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction. Select [**Original Orientation**] to choose orientation of the originals, either [**Top Edge on Top**] or [**Top Edge on Left**]. Then select [**OK**].

*1 This function can only be used when the optional OCR Scan Activation Kit is installed.

NOTE

This function requires the optional Sheet Finisher:
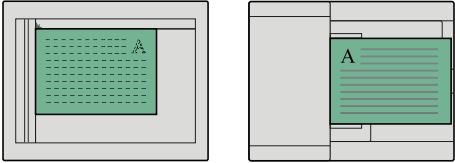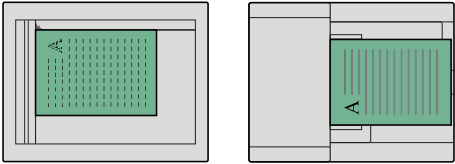
➜ Inner Finisher (page 11-26)

1,000-Sheet Finisher (page 11-27)

3,000-Sheet Finisher (page 11-28)

Original Orientation and Staple Position

1,000-Sheet Finisher, 3,000-Sheet Finisher

Image		Original Orientation	
Original	**Print results**		
		Top Edge on Top	
		Top Edge on Left	

Inner Finisher

Image		Original Orientation	
Original	**Print results**		
		Top Edge on Top	
		Top Edge on Left	

NOTE

- Two position staple is not available for long edge paper orientation.
- Two position staple is not available for B5 paper.

Mixed Size Stapling

Even with mixed paper sizes, if the sizes have the same width as shown in the combinations below, the output can be stapled. The size of sheets that can be stapled together is Letter and Legal. Up to 30 sheets can be stapled.

NOTE

When performing Mixed Size Stapling, refer to the following:

Punch

Punches holes in sets of finished documents.

NOTE

- The optional 1,000-Sheet Finisher and punching unit or the optional 3,000-Sheet Finisher are required.
- For details on paper sizes that can be punched, refer to the following:

- The inch model provides two-hole and three-hole punching. The metric model provides two-hole and four-hole punching.

Item	Value		Description
Punch	**Off**		
	2 holes Left		Select the position of punch holes. For details on original orientation and position of punch holes, refer to the following:
	2 holes Top		
	2 holes Right		
	3 holes Left		
	3 holes Top		
	3 holes Right		
	4 holes Left		
	4 holes Top		
	4 holes Right		
Original Orientation	Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto[1]		Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction. Select [**Original Orientation**] to choose orientation of the originals, either [**Top Edge on Top**] or [**Top Edge on Left**]. Then select [**OK**].

[1] This function can only be used when the optional OCR Scan Activation Kit is installed.

Original Orientation and Punch Hole Position

Image		Original orientation	
Original	**Print results**	**Glass platen**	**Document processor**

> **NOTE**
> The inch model provides two-hole and three-hole punching. The metric model provides two-hole and four-hole punching.

Paper Output

Copy	Org./Paper/Finishing		Custom Box	Functions		USB Memory	Functions

Specify the output tray.

with optional Job Separator

Item	Description
Inner tray	Outputs to the Inner Tray of the machine.
Job Separator Tray	Delivery to the Inner Job Separator.

with optional 1,000-Sheet Finisher

Item	Description
Inner tray	Outputs to the Inner Tray of the machine.
Finisher Tray	Delivery to the Finisher Tray of the optional Sheet Finisher.

with optional 3,000-Sheet Finisher

Item	Description
Inner tray	Outputs to the Inner Tray of the machine.
Tray A	Delivery to the Tray A of the optional Sheet Finisher.
Tray B	Delivery to the Tray B of the optional Sheet Finisher. When [**Heavy 1**] to [**Heavy 3**] (106 g/m2 -220 g/m^2) is set in Paper Weight and tray B is set for the output destination, the output destination is automatically changed to the tray A.

with optional Mailbox

Item	Description
Inner tray	Outputs to the Inner Tray of the machine.
Tray A, Tray 1 to 5	Delivery to tray A, tray 1 to 5 (tray 1 is the uppermost tray) of the optional Mailbox. When [**Heavy 3**] (164 g/m^2 -) or higher is set in Paper Weight and Mailbox (Option) is set for the output destination, the output destination is automatically changed to the tray A.

> **NOTE**
> The default setting for Paper Output can be changed.
>
> → Paper Output (page 8-15)

Density

Copy | Color/Image Quality | Send | Color/Image Quality | Custom Box | Functions | Color/Image Quality | USB Memory | Functions | Color/Image Quality

Adjust density.

Adjust density selecting [**-4**] (Lighter) to [**+4**] (Darker).

Original Image

Copy | Color/Image Quality | Send | Color/Image Quality | Custom Box | Functions | Color/Image Quality | USB Memory | Functions | Color/Image Quality
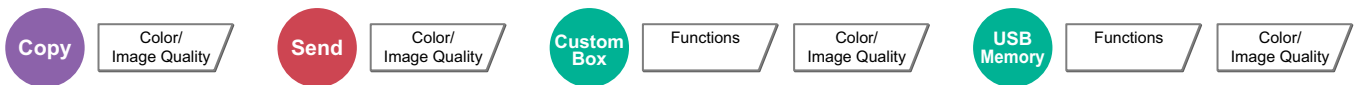
Select original image type for best results.

Copying/Printing

Item	Value	Description
Text+Photo[*1] [*2]	**Printer Output**	Best for mixed text and photo documents printed on this machine originally.
	Book/Magazine	Best for mixed text and photos printed in a magazine, etc.
Photo	**Printer Output**	Best for photos printed on this machine originally.
	Book/Magazine	Best for photos printed in a magazine, etc.
	Photo Paper	Best for photos taken with a camera.
Text[*1]	**Off** **(Light Text/Fine Line)**	Best for documents that are mostly text and were originally printed on this machine.
	On **(Light Text/Fine Line)**	Sharply renders pencil text and fine lines.
Graphic/Map[*1]	**Printer Output**	Best for maps and diagrams printed on this machine originally.
	Book/Magazine	Best for maps and diagrams printed in a magazine.

*1 "Highlighter" can be selected.
   Select to bring out text and markings made with a highlighter pen. Reproduces the color of the highlighter pen to the extent possible.
*2 If gray text is not printed completely using [**Text + Photo**], selecting [**Text**] may improve the result.

Sending/Storing

Item	Description
Text+Photo	Best for mixed text and photo documents.
Photo	Best for photos taken with a camera.
Text[*1]	Sharply renders pencil text and fine lines. Select [**Text**], [**Text (Fine Line)**] or [**Text (OCR)**].

*1 The setting "for OCR" can be configured. (**Value**: [**Off**] / [**On**]) When [**On**] is selected, scanning produces an image that is suitable for OCR. This function is only available when Color Selection is set to Black and White.
➧ Color Selection (page 6-25)

EcoPrint

Copy | Color/ Image Quality
Custom Box | Functions
USB Memory | Functions

EcoPrint saves toner when printing.
Use this function for test prints or any other occasion when high quality print is not required.
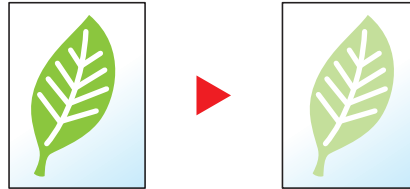
Item	Value	Description
Off		
On	[1] (Low) to [5] (High)	Adjust the Toner Save Level.

Color Selection

Copy | Color/ Image Quality
Send | Color/ Image Quality
Custom Box | Functions | Color/ Image Quality
USB Memory | Functions | Color/ Image Quality
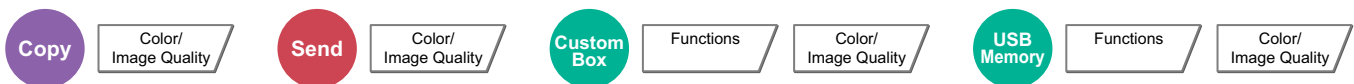
Select the color mode setting.

Copying

Item		Description
Auto Color		Automatically recognizes whether documents are color or black and white.
Full Color		Prints documents in full color.
Black & White		Prints documents in black and white.
Single Color	Cyan	Specify one of the colors and produce copies in that color regardless of original type.
	Magenta	
	Yellow	
	Red	
	Green	
	Blue	

Printing

Item	Description
Auto Color (Color/Gray)[1]	The color of the stored document is automatically detected. A color document is printed in full color, and a black & white document is printed in grayscale.
Auto Color (Color/B & W)[1]	The color of the stored document is automatically detected. A color document is printed in full color, and a black & white document is printed in black & white.
Full Color	Prints documents in full color.
Grayscale[1]	Prints documents in grayscale.
Black & White	Prints documents in black and white.

[1] Not displayed when printing from removable memory.

6-25

Sending/Storing

Item	Description
Auto (Color/Gray)	Automatically recognizes whether the document is color or black and white, and scan color documents in Full Color and black and white documents in Grayscale.
Auto (Color/B & W)	Automatically recognizes whether the document is color or black and white, and scan color documents in Full Color and black and white documents in Black and White.
Full Color	Scans the document in full color.
Grayscale	Scans the document in grayscale. Produces a smooth, detailed image.
Black & White	Scans the document in black and white.

Color Balance

Copy | Color/Image Quality

Custom Box | Functions

Adjust the strength of cyan, magenta, yellow, and black.

Example:

Less Magenta   Original   More Magenta

Item		Value	Description
Off			
On	Cyan	[-5] to [+5]	Select [<] or [>] on each side of the color (Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, Black) to adjust each color.
	Magenta		
	Yellow		
	Black		

NOTE

This feature is used with full color and auto color copying.

Hue Adjustment

Copy | Color/ Image Quality | Custom Box | Functions

Adjust the color (hue) of images.
Make adjustments such as adjusting red to a strong yellow-red or yellow to a strong green-yellow to make more creative copies.

Original

When adjusting yellow to more green, blue to more magenta (the ▼ part)

When adjusting yellowish-red to more yellow, bluish-cyan to more blue (the ▼ part)

The following settings can be set.

Yellow
Red   Green
Magenta   Cyan
Blue

Item	Description
Off	
All	Adjust hue for all colors. Select [↺] or [↻] to adjust the hue.
Individual	Select individual colors to adjust the hue. Select [**Red**], [**Magenta**], [**Blue**], [**Yellow**], [**Green**] or [**Cyan**] and then select [↺] or [↻] to adjust the hue.

> **NOTE**
> This feature is used with full color and auto color copying.
> These adjustments are especially useful on rich color images.

One-touch Image Adjust

| Copy | Color/Image Quality | Custom Box | Functions |

Adjust images as desired to more [**Vivid**] or more [**Muted**] images.
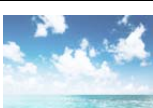
> **NOTE**
> This feature can be used with full color and auto color.

The following settings can be set.

After selecting [**Portrait Photo**], [**Landscape Photo (Blue)**] or [**Landscape Photo (Green)**], select [**Color Shade**], select from the 3 colors, and select [**OK**].

Item			Before	After	Description
Off					
[Portrait Photo]	Color Shade	[Portrait 1]			Gives skin color a warm, rosy look.
		[Portrait 2]			Gives skin color a tanned look.
		[Portrait 3]			Gives skin color a whiter look.
[Landscape Photo (Blue)]	Color Shade	[Blue 1]			Makes blue more vivid.
		[Blue 2]			Makes blue a true blue without any green.
		[Blue 3]			Gives blue a greenish (emerald green) tint.
[Landscape Photo (Green)]	Color Shade	[Green 1]			Makes green more vivid.
		[Green 2]			Gives green a yellowish-green tint.
		[Green 3]			Gives green a slightly bluish tint.

Item	Before	After	Description
[Vivid]			Increases saturation for a more vivid effect.
[Muted]			Reduces saturation for a calmer effect.
[Sharp]			Increases contrast for a more pronounced image.
[Smooth]			Reduces contrast for a softer image.
[Light]			Makes overall color lighter and less vivid for a bright and light feel.
[Dark]			Makes overall color darker for a heavier feel.

> **NOTE**
> Select from one of the 9 available One Touch Image Adjust types. Multiple selections are not possible.

Sharpness

| Copy | Color/Image Quality | | Send | Color/Image Quality | | Custom Box | Functions | | Color/Image Quality | | USB Memory | Functions |

Adjusts the sharpness of image outlines.

When copying penciled originals with rough or broken lines, clear copies can be taken by adjusting sharpness toward "Sharpen". When copying images made up of patterned dots such as magazine photos, in which moire[1] patterns appear, edge softening and weakening of the moire effect can be obtained by setting the sharpness toward "Blur".

When [**All**] is selected, select [**-3**] to [**3**] (Blur - Sharpen) to adjust the sharpness.
When [**Text/Fine Line**] is selected, select [**0**] to [**3**] (Normal - Sharpen) to adjust the sharpness.

| **Less Sharp** | **Original** | **More Sharp** |
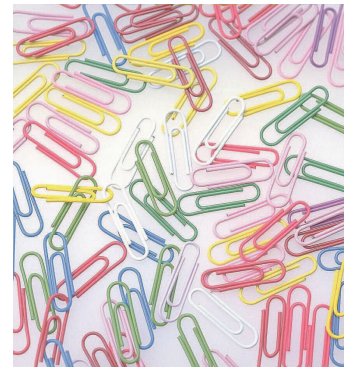
Item	Value	Description
All	**[+1] to [+3] (Sharpen)**	Emphasizes the image outline.
	[-1] to [-3] (Blur)	Blurs the image outline. Can weaken a Moire[1] effect.
Text/Fine Line	**[0] to [3] (Normal - Sharpen)**	Makes letters and lines appear sharper. Only text and fine lines are emphasized.

*1   Patterns that are created by irregular distribution of halftone dots.

Contrast

| Copy | Color/Image Quality | | Send | Color/Image Quality | | Custom Box | Functions | | Color/Image Quality | | USB Memory | Functions |

You can adjust the contrast between light and dark areas of the image.

| **Lower** | **Original** | **Higher** |

Item	Description
[+1] to [+4] (Higher)	Increases the sharpness of colors.
[-1] to [-4] (Lower)	Creates smoother colors.

Background Density Adj. (Background Density Adjustment)

Copy — Color/Image Quality   Send — Color/Image Quality   Custom Box — Functions   USB Memory — Functions

Removes dark background from originals, such as newspapers.

This feature is used with full color and auto color. Background Density Adjustment is disabled if Auto Color detects black and white originals.

If the ground color is obtrusive, select [**Auto**]. If [**Auto**] does not remove the ground color, select [**Manual**] and adjust the density of the ground color.

Item	Description
Off	Does not adjust the ground color.
Auto	Automatically adjusts the background density based on the original.
Manual	Select [**1**] to [**5**] (Lighter - Darker) to adjust the background density manually.

Saturation

Copy — Color/Image Quality   Custom Box — Functions

Adjust the color saturation of the image.

Grayish   **Original**   **Vivid**

Results in paler color.   Results in more vivid color.

> **NOTE**
> This feature is used with full color and auto color. Saturation is disabled if Auto Color detects black and white originals.

Item	Description
[-1] to [-3] (Grayish)	Results in paler color.
[+1] to [+3] (Vivid)	Results in more vivid color.

Prevent Bleed-thru

| Copy | Color/Image Quality | | Send | Color/Image Quality | | Custom Box | Functions | Color/Image Quality | | USB Memory | Functions |

Hides background colors and image bleed-through when scanning thin original.

(**Value**: [**Off**] / [**On**])

A B C ▶ A B C

Zoom

| Copy | Layout/Edit | | Send | Advanced Setup | | Custom Box | Functions | | USB Memory | Functions |
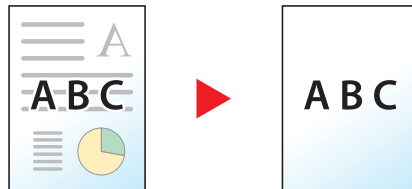
Adjust the zoom to reduce or enlarge the image.

Copying

The following zoom options are available.

Auto

Adjusts the image to match the paper size.

A5 ▶ A4: 141%
A6: 70%
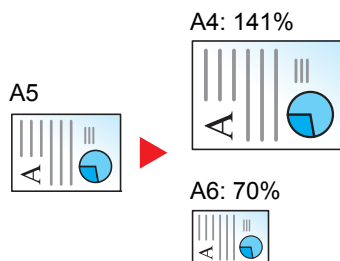
Standard Zoom

Reduces or enlarges at preset magnifications.

Model	Zoom Level (Original Copy)		Model	Zoom Level (Original Copy)	
Metric Models	400% Max.	90% Folio>>A4	Inch Models	400% Max.	78% Legal>>Letter
	200%	75%		200%	77%
	141% A5 >> A4	70% A4>>A5		154% STMT>>Legal	64% Letter>>STMT
	127%	50%		129% STMT>>Letter	50%
	106%	25% Min.		121%	25% Min.
	100%			100%	

Zoom Entry

Manually reduces or enlarges the original image in 1% increments between 25% and 400%. Use the numeric keys or select [+] or [-] to enter the any magnification.
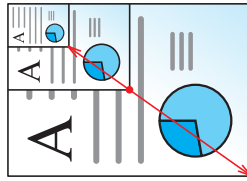
Printing/Sending/Storing

Item	Description
100%	Reproduces the original size.
Auto	Reduces or enlarges original to sending/storing size.

NOTE

- To reduce or enlarge the image, select the paper size, sending size, or storing size.
  - Paper Selection (page 6-15)
    Sending Size (page 6-58)
    Storing Size (page 6-67)
- Some combinations of original size and paper size or sending size may cause the image to be positioned at the edge of the paper. To center the original vertically and horizontally on the page, use the Centering function.
  - Margin/Centering, Margin, Centering (page 6-36)

Combine

Copy — Layout/Edit

Custom Box — Functions

Combines 2 or 4 original sheets into 1 printed page.

You can select the page layout and the type of boundary lines around the pages.

The following types of the boundary lines are available.

None	Solid Line	Dotted Line	Positioning Mark

Item		Value	Description
Off			
2 in 1	**Layout**	L to R/T to B, R to L/B to T	Select the page layout of scanned originals.
	Border Line	None, Solid Line, Dotted Line, Positioning Mark	Select the boundary line type. Select [**Border Line**] to select the page boundary line, and select [**OK**].
	Original Orientation	Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction. Select [**Original Orientation**] to choose orientation of the originals, either [**Top Edge on Top**] or [**Top Edge on Left**]. Then select [**OK**].
4 in 1	**Layout**	Right then Down, Left then Down, Down then Right, Down then Left	Select the page layout of scanned originals.
	Border Line	None, Solid Line, Dotted Line, Positioning Mark	Select the boundary line type. Select [**Border Line**] to select the page boundary line, and select [**OK**].
	Original Orientation	Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction. Select [**Original Orientation**] to choose orientation of the originals, either [**Top Edge on Top**] or [**Top Edge on Left**]. Then select [**OK**].

Layout image

Item		Image
2 in 1	L to R/T to B	
	R to L/B to T	
4 in 1	Right then Down	
	Left then Down	
	Down then Right	
	Down then Left	

> **NOTE**
> - The paper sizes supported in Combine mode are A4, A5, B5, Folio, 216 × 340 mm, Letter, Legal, Statement, Oficio II, and 16K.
> - When placing the original on the platen, be sure to copy the originals in page order.

Margin/Centering, Margin, Centering

| Copy | Layout/Edit | | Send | Advanced Setup | | Custom Box | Functions | | USB Memory | Functions |

Copying/Printing

Add margins (white space). In addition, you can set the margin width and the back page margin.
Centering: Centers the original image on the paper when copying onto paper different from the original size.

> **NOTE**
>
> The default setting for margin width can be changed.
>
> → Margin Default (page 8-18)

Item		Value	Description
Off			
Margin	**Left/Right**	Metric: -18 mm to +18 mm (in 1 mm increments)	Set the margin width.[*1] Select [**+**] or [**-**] to enter the margins for "Left/ Right" and "Top/Bottom". Select [**# Keys**] to use the numeric keys for entry.
	Top/Bottom	Inch: -0.75 to +0.75" (in 0.01" increments)	
	Back Page	Auto, Manual	For duplex copying, select [**Back Page**] and select [**Auto**] or [**Manual**].
			When [**Auto**] is selected, an appropriate margin is applied automatically on the rear page depending on a margin specified for the front page and a binding orientation.
			When [**Manual**] is set, you can set a different margin than the front on the back. Set the margin in the screen that is displayed. The setting selections are the same as for the front.
	Original Orientation	Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto[*2]	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction.
			Select [**Original Orientation**] to choose orientation of the originals, either [**Top Edge on Top**] or [**Top Edge on Left**]. Then select [**OK**].
Centering[*3]	**Original Orientation**	Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto[*2]	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction.
			Select [**Original Orientation**] to choose orientation of the originals, either [**Top Edge on Top**] or [**Top Edge on Left**]. Then select [**OK**].

*1 The input units can be changed in System Menu.
    → Measurement (page 8-13)
*2 This function can only be used when the optional OCR Scan Activation Kit is installed.
*3 Not displayed when printing from removable memory.

Sending/Storing

When you have sent/stored the original after specifying the original size and sending size, depending on these sizes, a margin is created at the bottom, left, or right side of paper. By using the Centering function, the image is placed with a margin equally created for all edges.
(**Value**: [**Off**] / [**On**])

Border Erase

Copy | Layout/Edit | Send | Advanced Setup | Custom Box | Functions | USB Memory | Functions

Erases the black border that forms around the image.

The following modes are available.

Border Erase Sheet
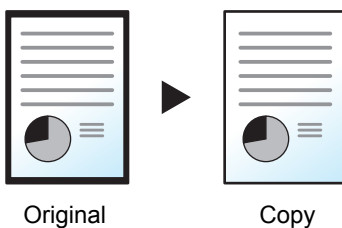
Erases black borders around the single sheet original.

Original   Copy
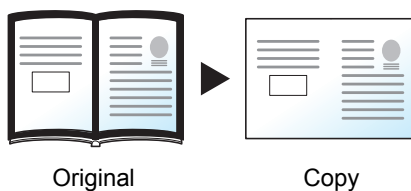
Border Erase Book

Erases black borders around the edges and in the middle of the original such as a thick book. You can specify the widths individually to erase the borders around the edges and in the center of the book.

Original   Copy

Individual Border Erase
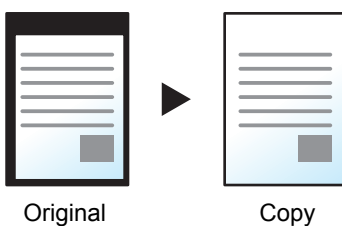
You can specify border erase widths individually for all edges.

Original   Copy

> **NOTE**
>
> • The default setting for border erase width can be changed.
>
> ➡ Border Erase Default (page 8-17)
>
> • The default width for back page can be changed.
>
> ➡ Border Erase to Back Page (page 8-17)

Item		Value	Description
Off			
Border Erase Sheet	**Border**	Metric: 0 mm to 50 mm (in 1 mm increments) Inch: 0.00 to 2.00" (in 0.01" increments)	Set the border erase width.[*1] Set the value by selecting [**+**] or [**-**]. Select [**# Keys**] to use the numeric keys for entry.
	Back Page	Same as Front Page, Do Not Erase	For 2-sided originals, select [**Back Page**] and then select [**Same as Front Page**] or [**Do Not Erase**].
Border Erase Book	**Border**	Metric: 0 mm to 50 mm (in 1 mm increments) Inch: 0.00 to 2.00" (in 0.01" increments)	Set the border erase width.[*1] Set the value by selecting [**+**] or [**-**]. Select [**# Keys**] to use the numeric keys for entry.
	Gutter		
	Back Page	Same as Front Page, Do Not Erase	For 2-sided originals, select [**Back Page**] and then select [**Same as Front Page**] or [**Do Not Erase**].
Individual Border Erase	**Top**	Metric: 0 mm to 50 mm (in 1 mm increments) Inch: 0.00 to 2.00" (in 0.01" increments)	Set the border erase width.[*1] Set the value by selecting [**+**] or [**-**]. Select [**# Keys**] to use the numeric keys for entry.
	Bottom		
	Left		
	Right		
	Original Orientation	Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto[*2]	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction. Select [**Original Orientation**] to choose orientation of the originals, either [**Top Edge on Top**] or [**Top Edge on Left**]. Then select [**OK**].
	Back Page	Same as Front Page, Do Not Erase	For 2-sided originals, select [**Back Page**] and then select [**Same as Front Page**] or [**Do Not Erase**].

*1 The input units can be changed in System Menu.
➠ Measurement (page 8-13)

*2 This function can only be used when the optional OCR Scan Activation Kit is installed.

Duplex

Copy | Layout/Edit

Custom Box | Functions

USB Memory | Functions

Produces two-sided copies. You can also create single-sided copies from two-sided originals.

The following modes are available.

One-sided to Two-sided
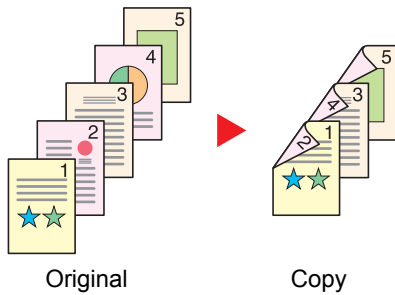
Original   Copy

Produces two-sided copies from one-sided originals. In case of an odd number of originals, the back side of the last copy will be blank.

A   B

Original   Copy
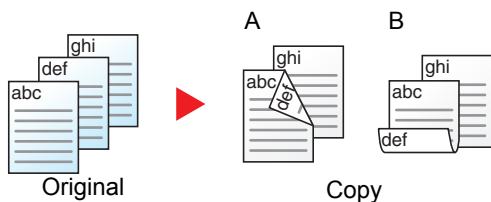
The following binding options are available.

A Original Left/Right to Binding Left/Right: Images on the second sides are not rotated.

B Original Left/Right to Binding Top: Images on the second sides are rotated 180 degrees. Copies can be bound on the top edge, facing the same orientation when turning the pages.

Two-sided to One-sided

Original   Copy
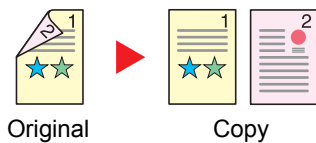
Copies each side of a two-sided original onto two individual sheets.

The following binding options are available.

• Binding Left/Right: Images on the second sides are not rotated.

• Binding Top: Images on the second sides are rotated 180 degrees.

Two-sided to Two-sided
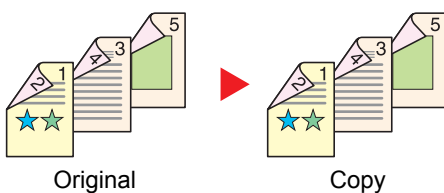
Original   Copy

Produces two-sided copies from two-sided originals.

NOTE

The paper sizes supported in Two-sided to Two-sided mode are A4, B5, A5, Legal, Letter, Executive, Statement, Oficio II, 216 × 340 mm, Folio, and 16K.

Copying

Prints 1-sided or open book originals to 2-sided, or 2-sided or open book originals to 1-sided. Select the binding orientation for original and finished documents.

Item		Value	Description
1-sided>>1-sided		—	Disables the function.
1-sided>>2-sided	**Finishing**	Binding Left/Right, Binding Top	Select the binding orientation of copies.
	Original Orientation	Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto[*1]	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction. Select [**Original Orientation**] to choose orientation of the originals, either [**Top Edge on Top**] or [**Top Edge on Left**]. Then select [**OK**].
2-sided>>1-sided	**Original**	Binding Left/Right, Binding Top	Select the binding orientation of originals.
	Original Orientation	Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto[*1]	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction. Select [**Original Orientation**] to choose orientation of the originals, either [**Top Edge on Top**] or [**Top Edge on Left**]. Then select [**OK**].
2-sided>>2-sided	**Original**	Binding Left/Right, Binding Top	Select the binding direction of originals.
	Finishing	Binding Left/Right, Binding Top	Select the binding orientation of copies.
	Original Orientation	Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto[*1]	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction. Select [**Original Orientation**] to choose orientation of the originals, either [**Top Edge on Top**] or [**Top Edge on Left**]. Then select [**OK**].

*1   This function can only be used when the optional OCR Scan Activation Kit is installed.

When placing the original on the platen, consecutively replace each original and press the [**Start**] key.

After scanning all originals, select [**Finish Scan**] to start copying.

Printing

Print a document to 1-sided or 2-sided sheets.

Item	Value	Description
1-sided	—	Disables the function.
2-sided	Left/Right	Prints a 2-sided document so that the sheets are aligned properly for binding on the left or right.
	Top	Prints a 2-sided document so that the sheets are aligned properly for binding on the top.

Cover

Copy — Layout/Edit

Custom Box — Functions

Adds a cover to the finished documents.

You can print the first page and/or the last page onto colored paper or thick paper fed from the different paper source than the regular one. The following two options are available. Paper for the cover is supplied from the multi purpose tray. To feed the cover paper from the cassette, refer to the following:

➡

The printing method can be set for the covers. Specify a print setting for each cover.

Item		Value	Description
Off			
Front Cover		Not Print, Front Only, Back Only, Duplex	Different paper has to be inserted for the first page of the document. Select [**Stop Printing**], [**Front Only**], [**Back Only**], or [**Duplex**] for the print setting of the inserted paper.
Front and Back Covers	**Front Cover Print Setting**	Not Print, Front Only, Back Only, Duplex	Different paper has to be inserted for the first page and last page of the document. Select [**Stop Printing**], [**Front Only**], [**Back Only**], or [**Duplex**] for the print setting of the inserted paper.
	Back Cover Print Setting	Not Print, Front Only, Back Only, Duplex	

Form Overlay

Copy   Layout/Edit

Custom Box   Functions

Prints the original document overlaid with a form or image.

Once you scan and register the form, the form is overlaid onto the original. You can also use a form that is already registered in the Job Box.

Place the original for the form on top of the other originals. When using the optional document processor, the first page of the originals should be placed on the top.

Form   Original   Copy   Density: 30%

Density: 100%

Item		Value	Description
Off			
Select Stored Form	**Density**	10% to 100%	Specify the density of the form to be overlaid. Select [**+**] or [**-**] in "Density".
	Finishing Image	Transparent	The form is overlaid on the document.
		Form on Original Image	The form is placed on top of the document.
		Original Image on Form	The form is placed under the document.
	Select Form*	—	Select the form to be overlaid from Job Box. Select [**Select Form**] to display the job boxes that store documents which can be used as a form. Select the desired form from the list and select [**OK**].
Scan New Form	**Density**	10% to 100%	Specify the density of the form to be overlaid. Select [**+**] or [**-**] in "Density".
	Finishing Image	Transparent	The form is overlaid on the document.
		Form on Original Image	The form is placed on top of the document.
		Original Image on Form	The form is placed under the document.

*   Form must be previously registered in Job Box.
  ➤ Form for Form Overlay (page 5-62)

Page

Copy   Layout/Edit   Custom Box   Functions

Adds page numbers to the finished documents.

The available formats for numbering are [**-1-**], [**P.1**] and [**1/n**]. The format [**1/n**] prints the total number of pages in the place of "n".
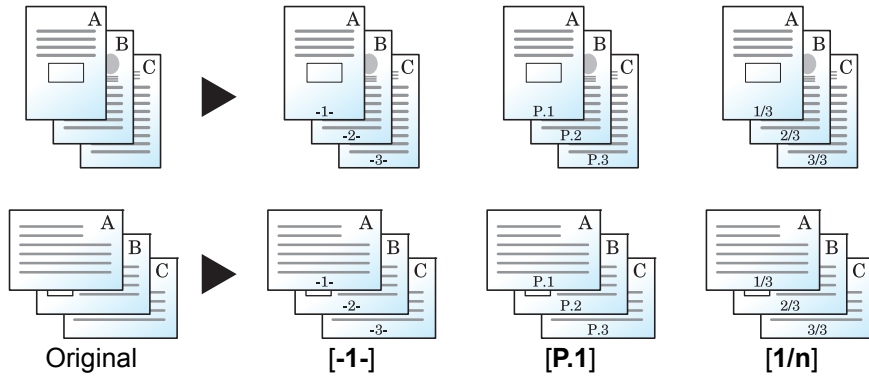
Original	[-1-]	[P.1]	[1/n]

Select the numbering format from [**-1-**], [**P.1**] or [**1/n**].

Item		Value	Description
Off			
-1-, P.1, 1/n **Position**		Top Left, Top Middle, Top Right, Bottom Left, Bottom Middle, Bottom Right, Detail	Select the print position of page number. Select [**Detail**] to specify the detailed page number position using numeric values, and to set the page number position ([**Same as Front Page**], [**Mirror Front Page**]) when a page number is placed on the back side of the paper in duplex printing.
1st Page		1 to 10	To start page numbering from a page other than the first page, select [**+**] or [**-**] in "1st Page" to specify the starting page. Select [**# Keys**] to use the numeric keys for entry.
Start #		1 to 999	To start the numbering with a number other than 1, select [**+**] or [**-**] in "Start Number" to specify the starting number. Select [**# Keys**] to use the numeric keys for entry.
Last Page		Auto, Manual (-10 to 0)	If you do not want page numbering through to the last page, select [**Last Page**]. Select [**Manual**] and select [**+**] or [**-**] to specify the final page to be numbered (a negative number of pages counting backwards from the last page), and then select [**OK**]. Specify the desired number up to -10. Select [**# Keys**] to use the numeric keys for entry.
Font	**Size**	Font sizes registered in Text (Text Stamp) (page 8-20) are displayed.	Set the font size of page number.
	Style	None, Bold, Italic, Bold/Italic	Set the font style of page number.
	Font	Courier, Letter Gothic	Set the font of page number.
	Color	Black, Red, Green, Blue, Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, White	Set the color of page number.
	Density	10 to 100% (in 10% increments)	Set the density of the color of page number. Set the value by selecting [**+**] or [**-**].
	Display Pattern	Transparent, Clipping, Overwrite	Set the display method of page number.
Denominator#[*1]		Auto, Manual (1 to 999)	The total number of pages "n" in the format [**1/n**] can be changed manually. Select [**Denominator #**] and select [**Manual**]. Select [**+**] or [**-**] to enter the total number of pages and select [**OK**]. Select [**# Keys**] to use the numeric keys for entry.
Original Orientation		Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto[*2]	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction. Select [**Original Orientation**] to choose orientation of the originals, either [**Top Edge on Top**] or [**Top Edge on Left**]. Then select [**OK**].

*1   This item appears when [**1/n**] is selected.

*2   This function can only be used when the optional OCR Scan Activation Kit is installed.

6-44

Memo Page

Copy — Layout/Edit

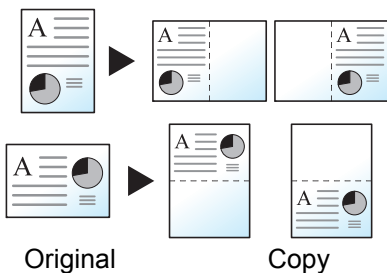Delivers copies with a space for adding notes.

You can also print two originals onto the same sheet with a space or add lines to indicate page boundaries.

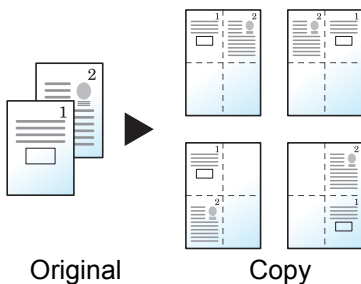Select [**Layout A**] or [**Layout B**] and select the page layout from "Layout".

> **NOTE**
>
> The paper sizes supported in Memo mode are A4, B5, A5, Legal, Oficio II, 216 × 340 mm, Letter, Statement, Folio and 16K.

Layout A

Reduces images of each original page for printing onto half of a page, leaving the other half blank for notes.

Original   Copy

Layout B

Reduces images of two original pages for printing onto half of a page, leaving the other half blank for notes.

Original   Copy

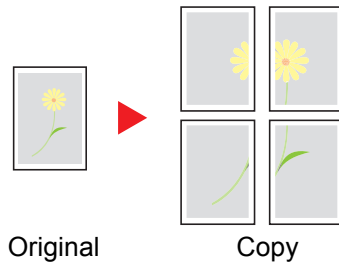| Item		Value	Description
Off			
Layout A	**Layout**	Left/Top, Right/Bottom	Select how to lay out the pages of scanned original.
	Border Line	None, Solid Line, Dotted Line, Positioning Mark	Select the boundary line type. Select [**Border Line**] to select the page boundary line, and select [**OK**].
	Original Orientation	Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto[*1]	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction. Select [**Original Orientation**] to choose orientation of the originals, either [**Top Edge on Top**] or [**Top Edge on Left**]. Then select [**OK**].
Layout B	**Layout**	Top L to R, Top R to L, Top L to B, Top R to B	Select how to lay out the pages of scanned original.
	Border Line	None, Solid Line, Dotted Line, Positioning Mark	Select the boundary line type. Select [**Border Line**] to select the page boundary line, and select [**OK**].
	Original Orientation	Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto[*1]	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction. Select [**Original Orientation**] to choose orientation of the originals, either [**Top Edge on Top**] or [**Top Edge on Left**]. Then select [**OK**].

*1 This function can only be used when the optional OCR Scan Activation Kit is installed.

Poster

Copy | Layout/Edit

To use this device to make copies larger than the maximum paper size, use Poster mode to separate and copy an enlarged image onto multiple pages.

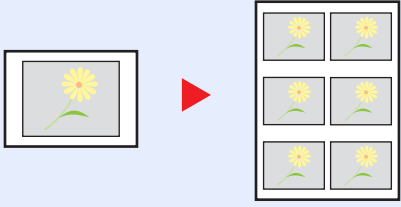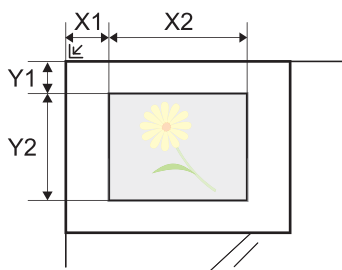The completed copies have overlapping areas. A single large page can be created by pasting those areas together.

Original   Copy
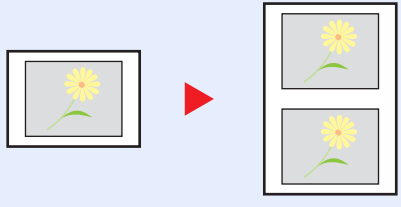
Choose one of the following 3 enlargement settings:

Item	Value	Description
Off		
Copy Size	Metric: A0, A1, A2, A3 Inch: 34 × 44", 22 × 34", 17 × 22", 11 x 17"	Metric: Select A0, A1, A2 or A3 as finish size. Copy is enlarged according to the selected paper size. Inch: Select 34 × 44", 22 × 34", 17 × 22" or 11×17" as finish size. Copy is enlarged according to selected paper size.
Zoom Priority	100 to 400% (in 1% increments)	Image will be output on the necessary number of copies for the specified zoom size. Select [**+**] or [**-**] to change the displayed magnification as desired. Select [**# Keys**] to use the numeric keys for entry.
Number of Sheets	2 sheets, 4 sheets, 8 sheets, 16 sheet	Copy is enlarged according to the specified number of sheets.

Image Repeat

Copy   Layout/Edit

Tiles the 1 copied sheet with an original image. You can also specify the area of the original to repeat.

Item	Value			Description
Off				
Zoom Priority Original → Copy	25 to 400% (in 1% increments)			Set the default screen. Select [**+**] or [**-**] to change the displayed magnification as desired. Select [**# Keys**] to use the numeric keys for entry.
	Specify Repeat Area	**Off**		
		On: Start	Metric X1: 0 to 355 mm Y1: 0 to 215 mm Inch X1: 0.00 to 14.01" Y1: 0.00 to 8.49"	To set the area of the original to be repeated, select [**On**] for "Specify Repeat Area". Select [**+**] or [**-**] to input the area of the original to be repeated.* Select [**# Keys**] to use the numeric keys for entry. Y1: Length from top left of platen to top edge of repeat area X1: Length from top left of platen to left edge of repeat area Y2: Height of repeat area X2: Width of repeat area
		On: Area	Metric X2: 1 to 356 mm Y2: 1 to 216 mm Inch X2: 0.01 to 14.02" Y2: 0.01 to 8.50"	
Double Copy Original → Copy	—			Makes 2 copies of the same original on a single sheet. For example, you can double-copy an A5 original onto an A4 sheet which you then cut in half to make 2 copies that are identical to the original.

*   The input units can be changed in System Menu.

Text Stamp

Copy | Layout/Edit

Send | Advanced Setup

Custom Box | Functions

USB Memory | Functions

You can add a text stamp on the documents.

NOTE

This cannot be set when Text Stamp is set in the system settings.

→ Printing Jobs (page 8-21)

Copying/Printing

Item			Value	Description
Off				
On	**Stamp**		Keyboard, Template 1 to 8	Select [**Keyboard**] and enter the text string to be printed, or select a text stamp from the displayed templates. **NOTE** Templates that have been set will appear. For details on registering templates, refer to the following: → Text (Text Stamp) (page 8-20)
	Stamp Method		Each Print Page, Each Original Page	Select the stamp method. Select [**Stamp Method**] and set the stamp method for text stamp.
	Position		Top Left, Top Middle, Top Right, Middle Left, Center, Middle Right, Bottom Left, Bottom Middle, Bottom Right, Detail	Set the stamp position to be printed. Select [**Position**] and select the text stamp position. Select [**Detail**] to specify the detailed stamp position using numeric values, and to set the stamp position and angle when a stamp is placed on the back side of the paper in duplex printing.
	Font	**Size**	Registered font sizes are displayed. For details on registering font sizes, refer to the following: → Font (Text Stamp) (page 8-20)	Set the font size of text stamp.
		Character Border	Off, Circle, Rectangle, Underline	Set the character border and underline.
		Style	None, Bold, Italic, Bold/Italic	Set the font style of text stamp.
		Font	Courier, Letter Gothic	Set the font of text stamp.
		Color	Black, Red, Green, Blue, Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, White	Set the color of text stamp.
		Density	10 to 100% (in 10% increments)	Set the density of text stamp color. Set the value by selecting [**+**] or [**-**].
		Display Pattern	Transparent, Clipping, Overwrite	Set the display method of text stamp.
	Original Orientation		Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto[*1]	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction. Select [**Original Orientation**] to choose orientation of the originals, either [**Top Edge on Top**] or [**Top Edge on Left**]. Then select [**OK**].

*1 This function can only be used when the optional OCR Scan Activation Kit is installed.

Sending/Storing

> **NOTE**
>
> This cannot be set when Long Original is set.
>
> → Long Original (page 6-67)

Item			Value	Description
Off				
On	**Stamp**		Keyboard, Template 1 to 8	Select [**Keyboard**] and enter the text string to be printed, or select a text stamp from the displayed templates. **NOTE** Templates that have been set will appear. For details on registering templates, refer to the following: → Text (Text Stamp) (page 8-20)
	Position		Top Left, Top Middle, Top Right, Middle Left, Center, Middle Right, Bottom Left, Bottom Middle, Bottom Right, Detail	Set the stamp position to be printed. Select [**Position**] and select the text stamp position. Select [**Detail**] to set the stamp position using numeric values, and to set the stamp angle.
	Font	**Size**	Registered font sizes are displayed. For details on registering font sizes, refer to the following: → Font (Text Stamp) (page 8-20)	Set the font size of text stamp.
		Character Border	Off, Circle, Rectangle, Underline	Set the character border and underline.
		Style	None, Bold, Italic, Bold/Italic	Set the font style of text stamp.
		Font	Courier, Letter Gothic	Set the font of text stamp.
		Color	Black, Red, Green, Blue, Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, White	Set the color of text stamp.
		Density	10 to 100% (in 10% increments)	Set the density of text stamp color. Set the value by selecting [**+**] or [**-**].
		Display Pattern	Transparent, Clipping, Overwrite	Set the display method of text stamp.
	Original Orientation		Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto[*1]	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction. Select [**Original Orientation**] to choose orientation of the originals, either [**Top Edge on Top**] or [**Top Edge on Left**]. Then select [**OK**].

*1   This function can only be used when the optional OCR Scan Activation Kit is installed.

Bates Stamp

| Copy | Layout/Edit | | Send | Advanced Setup | | Custom Box | Functions | | USB Memory | Functions |

You can add a bates stamp on the documents.

> **NOTE**
>
> This cannot be set when Text Stamp is set in the system settings.
>
> → Printing Jobs (page 8-21)

Copying/Printing

Item			Value	Description
Off				
On	**Stamp**		Date, User Name, Serial Number, Numbering, Text 1, Text 2	Set the stamp to be printed. When [**Text 1**] or [**Text 2**] is selected, select [**Change**] below and enter the text string. If you selected [**Date**], select [**Date Format**] and select [**MM/DD/YYYY**], [**DD/MM/YYYY**], or [**YYYY/MM/DD**] to set the date format. To set [**Numbering**], select [**Numbering Default**] and set the starting sequence number (1 to 9999999).
	Position		Top Left, Top Middle, Top Right, Middle Left, Center, Middle Right, Bottom Left, Bottom Middle, Bottom Right, Detail	Set the stamp position to be printed. Select [**Position**] and select the text stamp position. Select [**Detail**] to specify the detailed stamp position using numeric values, and to set the stamp position when a stamp is placed on the back side of the paper in duplex printing.
	Font	**Size**	Registered font sizes are displayed. For details on registering font sizes, refer to the following: → Font (Bates Stamp) (page 8-20)	Set the font size of bates stamp.
		Style	None, Bold, Italic, Bold/Italic	Set the font style of bates stamp.
		Font	Courier, Letter Gothic	Set the font of bates stamp.
		Color	Black, Red, Green, Blue, Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, White	Set the color of the bates stamp.
		Density	10 to 100% (in 10% increments)	Set the density of bates stamp color. Set the value by selecting [**+**] or [**-**].
		Display Pattern	Transparent, Clipping, Overwrite	Set the display method of the bates stamp.
	Original Orientation		Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto*1	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction. Select [**Original Orientation**] to choose orientation of the originals, either [**Top Edge on Top**] or [**Top Edge on Left**]. Then select [**OK**].

*1 This function can only be used when the optional OCR Scan Activation Kit is installed.

Sending/Storing

> **NOTE**
>
> This cannot be set when Long Original is set.
>
> ➜ Long Original (page 6-67)

Item			Value	Description
Off				
On	**Stamp**		Date, User Name, Serial Number, Numbering, Text 1, Text 2	Set the stamp to be printed. When [**Text 1**] or [**Text 2**] is selected, press [**Change**] below and enter the text string. If you selected [**Date**], press [**Date Format**] and select [**MM/DD/YYYY**], [**DD/MM/YYYY**], or [**YYYY/MM/DD**] to set the date format. To set [**Numbering**], select [**Numbering Default**] and set the starting sequence number (1 to 9999999).
	Position		Top Left, Top Middle, Top Right, Middle Left, Center, Middle Right, Bottom Left, Bottom Middle, Bottom Right, Detail	Set the stamp position to be printed. Select [**Position**] and select the text stamp position. Select [**Detail**] to specify the stamp position using numeric values.
	Font	**Size**	Registered font sizes are displayed. For details on registering font sizes, refer to the following: ➜ Font (Bates Stamp) (page 8-20)	Set the font size of bates stamp.
		Style	None, Bold, Italic, Bold/Italic	Set the font style of bates stamp.
		Font	Courier, Letter Gothic	Set the font of bates stamp.
		Color	Black, Red, Green, Blue, Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, White	Set the color of bates stamp.
		Density	10 to 100% (in 10% increments)	Set the density of bates stamp color. Set the value by selecting [**+**] or [**-**].
		Display Pattern	Transparent, Clipping, Overwrite	Set the display method of bates stamp.
	Original Orientation		Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto[*1]	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction. Select [**Original Orientation**] to choose orientation of the originals, either [**Top Edge on Top**] or [**Top Edge on Left**]. Then select [**OK**].

*1   This function can only be used when the optional OCR Scan Activation Kit is installed.

Continuous Scan

Copy | Advanced Setup

Send | Advanced Setup

Custom Box | Functions

USB Memory | Functions

Scans a large number of originals in separate batches and then produce as one job.

Originals will be scanned continuously until you select [**Finish Scan**].

Select [**On**] to use continuous scanning. To use Job Build, select [**Job Build**]. You can set the functions that appear on the screen during scanning.

(**Value**: [**Off**] / [**On**] / [**Job Build**])

1~10   11~20   21~30   ▶   1~30
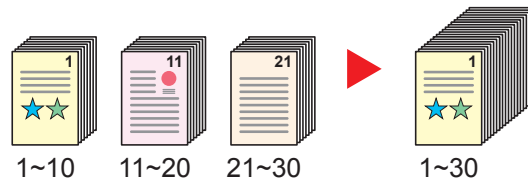
Job Build

When [**Job Build**] is selected when copying or printing, the binding orientation for finished documents can be selected from [**Binding Left**], [**Binding Right**] or [**Binding Top**].

The following functions can be selected during scanning.

Item	Description
Next Copy: On Back	In duplex copying, prints on the back side if the next page is to be printed on the front side. Select [**Next Copy: On Back**] to use this function.
Next Copy: On Front	In duplex copying, prints on the front side if the next page is to be printed on the back side. Select [**Next Copy: On Front**] to use this function.
Sheet Insertion	Inserts a blank paper in the next page. Select [**Sheet Insertion**] to use this function.

Negative Image

Copy | Advanced Setup

Inverts black and white portions of the image for printing.

(**Value**: [**Off**] / [**On**])

> **NOTE**
> This function is only available for black and white copy mode.

Mirror Image

Copy | Advanced Setup

Copies the mirrored image of the original.

(**Value**: [**Off**] / [**On**])

Job Finish Notice

Copy | Advanced Setup | **Send** | Advanced Setup | **Custom Box** | Functions | **USB Memory** | Functions

Sends E-mail notice when a job is complete.

Users can be notified of the completion of a job while working at a remote desk, saving the time spent waiting beside the machine to finish.

> **NOTE**
>
> PC should be configured in advance so that E-mail can be used.
>
> → Embedded Web Server RX (page 2-49)
>
> E-mail can be sent to a single destination.

Item		Description
Off		
Address Book		Select the notification destination from the address book.
	Detail	Information on the selected destination can be viewed.
	Address Book	Select the notification destination on the address book screen, then select [**OK**].
Address Entry		Enter E-mail address directly. Select [**E-mail Address**], enter the address (up to 128 characters) and select [**OK**].

File Name Entry

Copy | Advanced Setup | **Send** | Advanced Setup | **Custom Box** | Functions | **USB Memory** | Functions

Adds a file name.

Additional information such as job number and date and time can also be set. You can check a job history or job status using the file name, date and time, or job number specified here.

Select [**File Name**], enter the file name (up to 32 characters), and select [**OK**].

To add date and time, select [**Date and Time**]. To add job number, select [**Job No.**]. The added information will be displayed in "Additional Info".

Priority Override

Copy | Advanced Setup   Custom Box | Functions   USB Memory | Functions

Suspends the current job and gives a new job top priority.

The suspended job resumes after the other job is finished.

(**Value**: [**Off**] / [**On**])

> 📝 **NOTE**
> * This function is not available if current job was an override.
> * Priority override may not be available depending on the status of the current print job and memory usage. In this case, try the interrupt copy.
>   ➡ Interrupt Copy (page 5-19)

Repeat Copy

Copy | Advanced Setup

Enables additional copies in the desired quantity as necessary after a copy job is completed.

For confidential documents, you can set up a password for the use of Repeat Copy. In such a case, the correct password must be entered to perform Repeat Copy.

To register a password, select [**# Keys**] and enter a 4-digit password.

> ✓ **IMPORTANT**
> * A Repeat Copy job is cleared when the power switch is turned off.
> * If you forget the password, Repeat Copy cannot be performed for that document. Make a note of the password beforehand if necessary.

(**Value**: [**Off**] / [**On**])

Repeat Copy is not available when the machine is equipped with the optional Data Security Kit.

When the maximum number of Repeat Copy jobs to retain in the document box is set to 0 (zero), this function cannot be used.

➡ Repeat Copy Job Retention (page 8-33)

You can select Repeat Copy as the default setting.

➡ Repeat Copy (page 8-19)

Giving a file name to a copy job will facilitate identification of the data when copying.

➡ File Name Entry (page 6-53)

Repeat Copy

The Repeat Copy jobs are stored in the Job Box. Refer to Outputting Repeat Copy Jobs to print out the Repeat Copy jobs.

➡ Outputting Repeat Copy Jobs (page 5-61)

OHP Backing Sheet

Copy | Advanced Setup

When two or three OHP transparencies are stacked on top of each other, static electricity may make them difficult to handle. When using OHP Backing Sheet, a paper sheet is automatically inserted between each transparency, making them easier to handle. Also, the same original page can be printed to the backing sheet for multiple page printing.

> **NOTE**
>
> For transparency film that can be used, refer to the following:
>
> → Transparencies (page 11-17)
>
> Never load OHP transparencies into trays or cassettes other than the multi purpose tray.
>
> When OHP Backing Sheet is set, the multi purpose tray paper type is automatically set to "Transparency".
>
> If the optional 1,000-Sheet Finisher or 3,000-Sheet Finisher is installed, you may need to specify the output destination for finished copies.
>
> → Paper Output (page 6-23)

Blank Sheet

Outputs a blank backing sheet after printing to a transparency. (* denotes transparency.)

Original   Copy
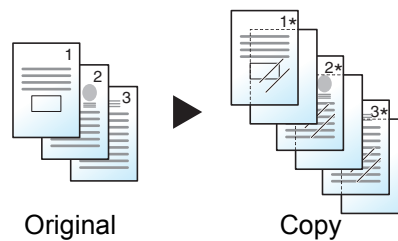
Copied Sheet

After printing to a transparency, copies the same original image to the backing sheet paper. (* denotes transparency.)

Original   Copy
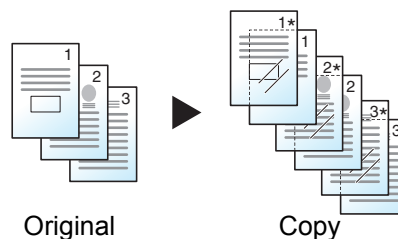
> **IMPORTANT**
>
> **Fan through the transparencies before loading.**
>
> **Up to 1 transparency can be loaded at one time.**
>
> **Be sure that paper of the same size and orientation as the transparencies is loaded in the cassette.**

Item	Value	Description
OFF		
Blank Sheet, Copied Sheet	Auto, Cassette 1 (to 4)	Select the media to be fed. When [**Auto**] is selected, the machine automatically selects media that matches the size of the original.

DP Read Action

Copy | Advanced Setup

When the document processor is used, select the scanning operation for the document processor.

Item	Description
Speed Priority	Gives priority to scanning speed.
Quality Priority	Gives priority to image quality at a slightly slower scan speed.

Skip Blank Page

Copy | Advanced Setup | Send | Advanced Setup | Custom Box | Functions | USB Memory | Functions

When there are blank pages in a scanned document, this function skips the blank pages and prints only pages that are not blank.

When set to [**High**], the level at which blank paper is recognized is higher.

The machine detects blank pages, saving unnecessary printing without the need to check for blank pages in the document.

Select [**Low**], [**Middle**] or [**High**] in [**On**].

> **NOTE**
> The originals with punched holes or originals printed on a colored substrate may not be recognized as blank pages.

Quiet Mode

Copy | Advanced Setup | Send | Advanced Setup | Custom Box | Functions | USB Memory | Functions

Lower print and scan speed for quiet processing.

Select this mode when the running noise is uncomfortable.

It is possible to set the use of Quiet Mode for each function, such as copying and sending.

(**Value**: [**Off**] / [**On**])

> **NOTE**
> • The processing speed will be slower than normal when in Quiet Mode.
> • This cannot be used when [**Prohibit**] is set for "Specify for Each Job".

2-sided/Book Original

Send | Org./Sending Data Format

Custom Box | Functions

USB Memory | Functions

Select the type and orientation of the binding based on the original.

Item		Value	Description
1-sided		—	"2-sided/Book Original" is not set.
2-sided	**Binding**	Binding Left/Right, Binding Top	Select the binding orientation of originals.
	Original Orientation	Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto[*1]	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction. Select [**Original Orientation**] to choose orientation of the originals, either [**Top Edge on Top**] or [**Top Edge on Left**]. Then select [**OK**].
Book	**Binding**	Binding Left, Binding Right	Select the binding orientation of originals.
	Original Orientation	Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto[*1]	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction. Select [**Original Orientation**] to choose orientation of the originals, either [**Top Edge on Top**] or [**Top Edge on Left**]. Then select [**OK**].

*1 This function can only be used when the optional OCR Scan Activation Kit is installed.

Sample image

Value		Image
2-sided	**Binding Left/Right**	
	Binding Top	
Book	**Binding Left**	
	Binding Right	

Sending Size

Send | Org./Sending Data Format

Custom Box | Functions

Select size of image to be sent.

Select [**Standard Sizes 1**], [**Standard Sizes 2**], or [**Others**] to select the storing size.

Item	Value		Description
Standard Sizes 1	Metric models:	Same as Original Size, A4, A5, A6, B5, B6, Folio, 216 × 340 mm	Select from Same as Original Size or Standard Size.
	Inch models:	Same as Original Size, Letter, Legal, Statement, Executive, Oficio II	
Standard Sizes 2	Metric models:	Letter, Legal, Statement, Executive, Oficio II, 16K	Select from standard sizes except Standard Sizes 1.
	Inch models:	A4, A5, A6, B5, B6, Folio, 16K, 216 × 340 mm	
Others	ISO B5, Envelope #10, Envelope #9, Envelope #6, Envelope Monarch, Envelope DL, Envelope C5, Hagaki (Cardstock), Oufukuhagaki (Return postcard), Youkei 4, Youkei 2		Select from special standard sizes and custom sizes.

Relationship between Original Size, Sending Size, and Zoom

Original Size (page 6-14), Sending Size, and Zoom (page 6-32) are related to each other. For details, see the table below.

Original size and sending size are	the same	different
Original Size (page 6-14)	Specify as necessary.	Specify as necessary.
Sending Size	Select [**Same as Original Size**].	Select the desired size.
Zoom (page 6-32)	Select [**100%**] (or [**Auto**]).	Select [**Auto**].

> **NOTE**
>
> When you specify the sending size that is different from the original size, and select the zoom of [**100%**], you can send the image as the actual size (No Zoom).

File Format

| Send | Org./Sending Data Format | Custom Box | Functions | USB Memory | Functions |

Specify the image file format. Image quality level can also be adjusted.

Select the file format from [**PDF**], [**TIFF**], [**JPEG**], [**XPS**], [**OpenXPS**], and [**High Comp. PDF**].

When the color mode in scanning has been selected for Grayscale or Full Color, set the image quality.

If you selected [**PDF**] or [**High Comp. PDF**], you can specify encryption or PDF/A settings.
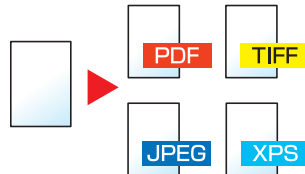
Item	Value	Color mode
PDF *1 *2	1 Low Quality (High Comp.) to 5 High Quality (Low Comp.)	Auto Color (Color/Grayscale), Auto Color (Color/Black and White), Full Color, Grayscale, Black and White
TIFF	1 Low Quality (High Comp.) to 5 High Quality (Low Comp.)	Auto Color (Color/Grayscale), Auto Color (Color/Black and White), Full Color, Grayscale, Black and White
JPEG	1 Low Quality (High Comp.) to 5 High Quality (Low Comp.)	Auto Color (Color/Grayscale), Full Color, Grayscale
XPS	1 Low Quality (High Comp.) to 5 High Quality (Low Comp.)	Auto Color (Color/Grayscale), Auto Color (Color/Black and White), Full Color, Grayscale, Black and White
OpenXPS	1 Low Quality (High Comp.) to 5 High Quality (Low Comp.)	Auto Color (Color/Grayscale), Auto Color (Color/Black and White), Full Color, Grayscale, Black and White
High Comp. PDF *1 *2	Compression Ratio Priority, Standard, Quality Priority	Auto Color (Color/Grayscale), Auto Color (Color/Black and White), Full Color, Grayscale

*1 Set the PDF/A. (**Value**: [**Off**] / [**PDF/A-1a**] / [**PDF/A-1b**]).
*2 You can create Searchable PDF file by running OCR on the scanned document.
➤ OCR Text Recognition (Option) (page 6-60)

NOTE

• When [High Comp. PDF] is selected, you cannot adjust the image quality.

• You can use PDF encryption functions.
➤ PDF Encryption Functions (page 6-61)

• If encryption is enabled, PDF/A settings cannot be specified.

OCR Text Recognition (Option)

When [**PDF**] or [**High Comp. PDF**] is selected for the file format, you can create Searchable PDF file by running OCR on the scanned document. Select [**OCR Text Recognition**], and then [**On**], select the language of the document, and select [**OK**].

Item		Description
Off		Do not create Searchable PDF file.
On		Create Searchable PDF file. Select the language to extract from the languages that appear on the touch panel.
	Auto Image Rotation	Rotates image automatically by recognizing text orientation. **Value**: Off, On

> **NOTE**
> * This function can only be used when the optional OCR Scan Activation Kit is installed.
>   ➡ Scan extension kit(A) "OCR Scan Activation Kit" (page 11-7)
>
> * If the proper language is not selected, PDF creation may take a long time or the creation may fail.
>   The default language can be changed in System Menu.
>   ➡ Primary OCR Language (page 8-19)
>
> * If you do not set an original in the correct orientation, the text of the document may not be recognized as characters. In addition, it may take some time to create the PDF. Check the following:
>   - The original orientation is correct.
>   - When setting the originals with the mixed orientation at once, [**On**] is selected for [**Auto Image Rotation**]. If you frequently use the originals with the mixed orientation, the default of [**Auto Image Rotation**] can be changed in System Menu.
>   ➡ OCR Text Recognition (page 8-19)
>
> * The accuracy of the text recognition depends on the original condition. The following condition may result in decreasing the recognition accuracy.
>   - Repeatedly copied documents (as copied copy)
>   - Received faxes (with low resolution)
>   - Originals with the character space too narrow or wide
>   - Originals with the lines on the text
>   - Originals with the special fonts
>   - Binding part of the book
>   - A handwritten texts

PDF Encryption Functions

If you have selected PDF or High Comp. PDF for file format, you can restrict the access level for displaying, printing, and editing PDF's by assigning a secure password.

Select [**Others**], [**PDF**] or [**High Comp. PDF**] in [**File Format**], and select [**Encryption**].

Items that can be set vary depending on the setting selected in [**Compatibility**].

When [Acrobat 3.0 and later, Encryption Level: Middle(40-bit)] is selected

Item		Value	Description
Password to Open Document		Off, On	Enter the password to open the PDF file.
			Select [**On**], enter a password (up to 256 characters) and then select [**Next**].
			Enter the password again for confirmation, and select [**OK**].
Password to Edit/Print Document		Off, On	Enter the password to edit the PDF file.
			Select [**On**], enter a password (up to 256 characters) and then select [**Next**].
			Enter the password again for confirmation, and select [**OK**].
			When you have entered the password to edit/print document, you can specifically limit the operation.
	Printing Allowed	Not Allowed, Allowed	Restricts printing of the PDF file.
	Changes Allowed	Not Allowed	Disables the change to the PDF file.
		Commenting	Can only add commenting.
		Page Layout except extracting Pages	Can change the page layout except extracting the pages of the PDF file.
		Any except extracting Pages	Can conduct all operations except extracting the pages of the PDF file.
	Copying of Text/Images/Others	Disable, Enable	Restricts the copying of text and objects on the PDF file.

When [Acrobat 5.0 and later, Encryption Level: High(128-bit)] is selected

Item	Value	Description
Password to Open Document	Off, On	Enter the password to open the PDF file.
		Select [**On**], enter a password (up to 256 characters) and then select [**Next**].
		Enter the password again for confirmation, and select [**OK**].
Password to Edit/Print Document	Off, On	Enter the password to edit the PDF file.
		Select [**On**], enter a password (up to 256 characters) and then select [**Next**].
		Enter the password again for confirmation, and select [**OK**].
		When you have entered the password to edit/print document, you can specifically limit the operation.
Printing Allowed	Not Allowed	Disables the printing of PDF file.
	Allowed (Low Resolution only)	Can print the PDF file only in low resolution.
	Allowed	Can print the PDF file in original resolution.
Changes Allowed	Not Allowed	Disables the change to the PDF file.
	Inserting/Deleting/Rotating Pages	Can only insert, delete, and rotate the pages of the PDF file.
	Commenting	Can only add commenting.
	Any except extracting Pages	Can conduct all operations except extracting the pages of the PDF file.
Copying of Text/Images/ Others	Disable, Enable	Restricts the copying of text and objects on the PDF file.

File Separation

Send | Org./Sending Data Format | Custom Box | Functions | USB Memory | Functions

Creates several files by dividing scanned original data page by page, and sends the files.

(Value: [Off] / [Each Page])

Select [Each Page] to set File Separation.
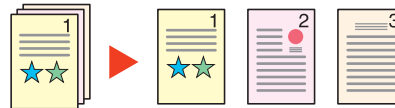
NOTE

A three-digit serial number such as "abc_001.pdf, abc_002.pdf..." is attached to the end of the file name.

Scan Resolution

Send | Color/ Image Quality | Custom Box | Functions | Color/ Image Quality | USB Memory | Functions

Select fineness of scanning resolution.

(Value: [600 × 600dpi] / [400 × 400dpi Ultra] / [300 × 300dpi] / [200 × 400dpi Super] / [200 × 200dpi Fine] / [200 × 100dpi Normal])
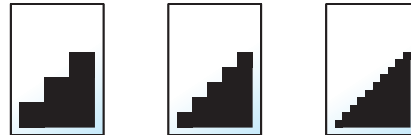
NOTE

The larger the number, the better the image resolution. However, better resolution also means larger file sizes and longer send times.

E-mail Subject/Body

Send | Advanced Setup | Custom Box | Functions

Adds subject and body when sending a document.

Select [**Subject**] / [**Body**] to enter the E-mail subject/body.
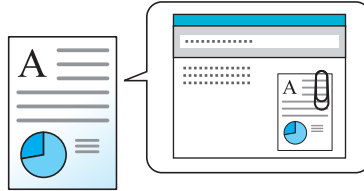
> **NOTE**
> - The subject can include up to 60 characters, and the body can include up to 500 characters.
> - Select [**Body 1**], [**Body 2**], or [**Body 3**] to enter stored text for the body text. For details on registering templates, refer to the following:
>   ➡ E-mail Subject/Body (page 8-18)

Send and Print

Send | Advanced Setup

Prints a copy of the document being sent.

(**Value**: [**Off**] / [**On**])

Send

Send and Print

6-64

Send and Store

Send | Advanced Setup
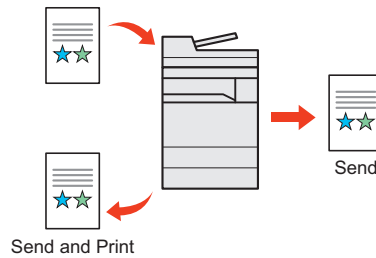
Stores a copy of the document being sent in a Custom Box.

(**Value**: [**Off**] / [**On**])

> **NOTE**
>
> • To use this function, a hard disk must be installed in the machine.
>
> ➡ HD-11 "Hard Disk" (Option for 350ci) (page 11-5)
>
> • When [**On**] is selected, select the Custom Box in which the copy is to be stored.
>   If a password entry screen for the Custom Box appears, enter the password.
>   You can view information on the selected Custom Box by selecting [**Detail**].

Send

Send and Store

FTP Encrypted TX

Send | Advanced Setup   Custom Box | Functions

Encrypts images when sending via FTP.

Encryption secures the document transmission.

(**Value**: [**Off**] / [**On**])

> **NOTE**
>
> Click [**Security Settings**], and then [**Network Security**] in the Embedded Web Server RX. Be sure that "SSL" of
> Secure Protocol Settings is "On" and one or more effective encryption are selected in Client side settings.
>
> ➡ **Embedded Web Server RX User Guide**

File Size Confirmation

Send | Advanced Setup | Custom Box | Functions
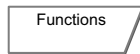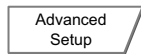
Checks the file size before sending the original.

(**Value**: [**Off**] / [**On**])

Delete after Printed

Custom Box | Functions
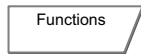
Automatically deletes a document from the box once printing is complete.

(**Value**: [**Off**] / [**On**])

Delete after Transmitted

Custom Box | Functions
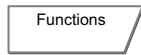
Automatically deletes a document from the box once transmission is complete.

(**Value**: [**Off**] / [**On**])

Storing Size

Custom Box	Functions		USB Memory	Functions

Select size of image to be stored.

Select [**Standard Sizes 1**], [**Standard Sizes 2**], or [**Others**] to select the storing size.

Item	Value		Description
Standard Sizes 1	Metric models:	Same as Original Size, A4, A5, A6, B5, B6, Folio, 216 × 340 mm	Select from Same as Original Size or Standard Size.
	Inch models:	Same as Original Size, Letter, Legal, Statement, Executive, Oficio II	
Standard Sizes 2	Metric models:	Letter, Legal, Statement, Executive, Oficio II, 16K	Select from standard sizes except Standard Sizes 1.
	Inch models:	A4, A5, A6, B5, B6, Folio, 16K, 216 × 340 mm	
Others	ISO B5, Envelope #10, Envelope #9, Envelope #6, Envelope Monarch, Envelope DL, Envelope C5, Hagaki (Cardstock), Oufukuhagaki (Return postcard), Youkei 4, Youkei 2		Select from special standard sizes and custom sizes.

Relationship between Original Size, Storing Size, and Zoom

Original Size, Storing Size, and Zoom are related to each other. For details, see the table below.

Original Size and the size you wish to store as are	the same	different
Original Size (page 6-14)	Specify as necessary.	Specify as necessary.
Storing Size	Select [**Same as Original**].	Select the desired size.
Zoom (page 6-32)	Select [**100%**] (or [**Auto**]).	Select [**Auto**].

> **NOTE**
>
> When you select Storing Size that is different from Original Size, and select the Zoom [100%], you can store the image as the actual size (No Zoom).

Long Original

Send	Advanced Setup		USB Memory	Functions

Reads long-sized original documents using a document processor.

(**Value**: [**Off**] / [**On**])

> **NOTE**
>
> • Only a single side of a long original cannot be scanned.
>
> • Originals of up to 1,900mm / 74.8" long can be scanned.
>
> • This cannot be set when Bates Stamp is set.

Encrypted PDF Password

| USB Memory | Functions |

Enter the preassigned password to print the PDF data.

Enter the Password, and select [**OK**].

> **NOTE**
>
> For details on entering the password, refer to the following:
>
> → Character Entry Method (page 11-10)

JPEG/TIFF Print

| USB Memory | Functions |

Select the image size when printing JPEG or TIFF files.

(**Value**: [**Paper Size**] / [**Image Resolution**] / [**Print Resolution**])
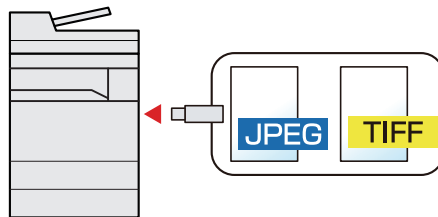
Item	Description
Paper Size	Fits the image size to the selected paper size.
Image Resolution	Prints at resolution of the actual image.
Print Resolution	Fits the image size to the print resolution.

XPS Fit to Page

| USB Memory | Functions |

Reduces or enlarges the image size to fit to the selected paper size when printing XPS file.

(**Value**: [**Off**] / [**On**])
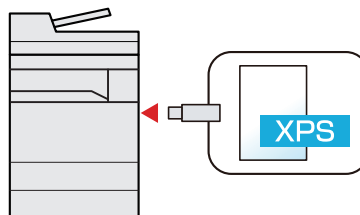
7 Status/Job Cancel

This chapter explains the following topics:

Checking Job Status

Check the status of jobs being processed or waiting to be printed.

Available Status Screens

The processing and waiting statuses of jobs are displayed as a list on the touch panel in four different screens - Printing Jobs, Sending Jobs, Storing Jobs, and Scheduled Jobs.

The following job statuses are available.

Status Display	Job status to be displayed
Print Job Status	• Copy • Printer • FAX reception • E-mail reception • Printing from Document Box • Printing data from removable memory • Application • Job Report/List
Send Job Status	• FAX transmission • i-FAX transmission • E-mail • Folder transmission • Application • Multiple destination • Sending Job FAX using Delayed transmission
Store Job Status	• Scan • FAX • i-FAX • Printer • Join Box Document • Copy Box Document
Scheduled Job	• Sending Job FAX using Delayed transmission

Displaying Status Screens

1 Display the screen.

Select the [**Status/Job Cancel**] key.

2 Select the job you want to check.

Select either of [**Print Job Status**], [**Send Job Status**], [**Store Job Status**] or [**Scheduled Job**] to check the status.

Details of the Status Screens

> **NOTE**
>
> You can show the job statuses of all users, or only the statuses of your own jobs.
>
> → Display Status/Log (page 8-25)
>
> This setting can also be changed from Embedded Web Server RX.
>
> → **Embedded Web Server RX User Guide**

Print Job Status Screen

No.	Item	Description
1	Job No.	Acceptance No. of job
2	Accepted Time	Accepted Time of job
3	Type	Icons that indicate the job type
		Copy job
		Printer job
		Job from Document Box
		FAX reception
		i-FAX reception
		E-mail reception
		Data from removable memory
		Application
		Report/List
4	Job Name	Job Name or file name
5	User Name	User Name for the executed job
6	Status	Status of job
		InProcess: The status before starting to print.
		Printing: Printing
		Waiting: Print Waiting
		Pause: Pausing print job or error
		Canceling: Canceling the job
7	[∨] of "Job Type"	Only selected type of jobs is displayed.

| No.	Item	Description
8	[**Pause All Print Jobs**]	Pauses all the printing jobs. By pressing this key again, the printing jobs will be resumed.
9	[**Cancel**]	Select the job you want to cancel from the list, and press this key.
10	[**Priority Override**]	Select the job to be overridden, and press this key. ➡ Priority Override for Waiting Jobs (page 7-11)
11	[**Move Up**]	In the list, select the job that you want to move up the job queue and press this key. ➡ Reordering Print Jobs (page 7-12)
12	[**Detail**]	Select the job whose detailed information you want to display from the list, and press this key. ➡ Checking Detailed Information of Jobs (page 7-8) You can select [**Change**] in "Copies" in the detailed information screen to change the number of copies that are printed.

> **NOTE**
> The job name and user name can be changed to other information if needed.
>
> ➡ Customize Status Display (page 8-25)

Send Job Status screen

No.	Item	Description
1	Job No.	Acceptance No. of job
2	Accepted Time	Accepted Time of job
3	Type	Icons that indicate the job type Sending Job FAX Sending Job i-FAX Sending Job E-mail Sending Job Folder Sending Job Application Multi Sending
4	Destination	Destination (Either destination name, FAX number, E-mail address, or server name)
5	User Name	User Name for the executed job
6	Status	Status of job InProcess: The status before starting sending such as during scanning originals Sending: Sending Waiting: Waiting Sending Canceling: Canceling the job Pause: Pausing the job
7	[∨] of "Job Type"	Only selected type of jobs is displayed.
8	[**Cancel**]	Select the job you want to cancel from the list, and press this key.
9	[**Priority Override**]	Select the job to be overridden, and press this key. Only displayed when the optional fax kit is installed.
10	[**Detail**]	Select the job whose detailed information you want to display from the list, and press this key. ➡ Checking Detailed Information of Jobs (page 7-8)

NOTE

The address and user name can be changed to other information if needed.

➡ Customize Status Display (page 8-25)

Store Job Status screen

No.	Item	Description
1	Job No.	Acceptance No. of job
2	Accepted Time	Accepted Time of job
3	Type	Icons that indicate the job type Storing Job Scan Storing Job Printer Storing Job FAX Storing Job i-FAX Join Box Document Copy Box Document
4	Job Name	Job name or file name is displayed.
5	User Name	User Name for the executed job
6	Status	Status of job InProcess: The status before starting to save such as during scanning originals Storing: Storing Data Canceling: Canceling the job Pause: Pausing the job
7	[∨] of "Job Type"	Only selected type of jobs is displayed.
8	[**Cancel**]	Select the job you want to cancel from the list, and press this key.
9	[**Detail**]	Select the job whose detailed information you want to display from the list, and press this key. ➧ Checking Detailed Information of Jobs (page 7-8)

> **NOTE**
> The job name and user name can be changed to other information if needed.
>
> ➧ Customize Status Display (page 8-25)

Scheduled Job Status Screen

No.	Item	Description
1	Job No.	Acceptance No. of job
2	Accepted Time	Accepted Time of job
3	Type	Icons that indicate the job type Scheduling Job FAX
4	Destination	Destination (Either destination name, FAX number, or No. of broadcast items)
5	User Name	User Name for the executed job
6	Start Time	Time to start the scheduled job
7	[**Cancel**]	Select the job you want to cancel from the list, and press this key.
8	[**Start Now**]	Select the job you want to send immediately from the list, and press this key.
9	[**Detail**]	Select the job whose detailed information you want to display from the list, and press this key. ➡ Checking Detailed Information of Jobs (page 7-8)

Checking Detailed Information of Jobs

Check the detailed information of each job.

1 **Display the screen.**

➡ Details of the Status Screens (page 7-3)

2 **Check the information.**

1 Select [**Detail**] for the job for which you wish to display detailed information.
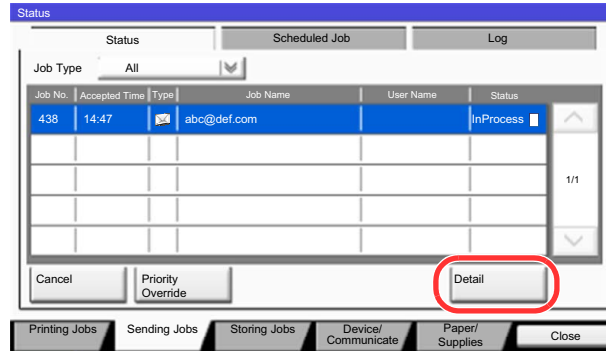
Detailed information of the selected job is displayed.

Use [∨] or [∧] to see the next or previous page of information.

In Sending Jobs, you can check the destination by selecting [**Detail**] in "Destination" or "Status/Destination".

"Status/Destination" is displayed when address is selected. Select [**Detail**] to display the list. Select [∨] or [∧], select a destination and select [**Detail**]. Information on the selected job is displayed for checking.

2 To exit from the detailed information, select [**Close**].

Checking Job History

Check the history of completed jobs.

> **NOTE**
> • Job history is also available by Embedded Web Server RX or NETWORK PRINT MONITOR from the computer.
> ➡ **Embedded Web Server RX User Guide**
> ➡ **NETWORK PRINT MONITOR User Guide**
> • You can show the job log of all users, or only your own job log.
> ➡ Display Status/Log (page 8-25)
> • This setting can also be changed from Embedded Web Server RX.
> ➡ **Embedded Web Server RX User Guide**

Available Job History Screens

The job histories are displayed separately in four screens - Printing Jobs, Sending Jobs, Storing Jobs, and FAX Jobs. The following job histories are available.

Screen	Job histories to be displayed
Print Job Log	• Copy • Printer • FAX reception • i-FAX reception • E-mail reception • Printing from Document Box • Job Report/List • Printing data from removable memory • Application
Send Job Log	• FAX • i-FAX • E-mail • Folder • Application • Multiple destination
Store Job Log	• Scan • FAX • i-FAX • Printer • Join Box Document • Copy Box Document
FAX Job Log	➡ **FAX Operation Guide**

Displaying Job History Screen

1 Display the screen.

Select the [**Status/Job Cancel**] key.

2 Select the job to check details.

Select the [**Log**] tab, and select the job to check details from the list.

Checking the Detailed Information of Histories

Check the detailed information of each history.

1 Display the screen.

2 Check the information.

1 Select the job to check details from the list, and select [**Detail**].
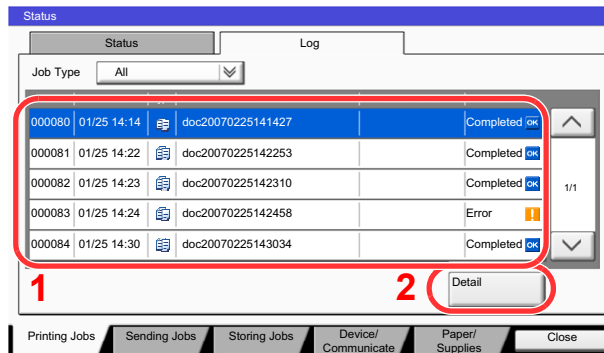
Detailed information of the selected job is displayed.

> **NOTE**
> To check the information of the next/previous page, select [∨] or [∧].

2 To exit from the detailed information, select [**Close**].

Sending the Log History

You can send the log history by E-mail. You can either send it manually as needed or have it sent automatically whenever a set number of jobs is reached.

Job Operation

Pause and Resumption of Jobs

Pause/resume all printing jobs in printing/waiting.

1 **Display the screen.**

Select the [**Status/Job Cancel**] key.

2 **Select [Pause All Print Jobs] on the printing jobs status screen.**

Printing is paused.

When resuming the printing of jobs that have been paused, select [**Resume All Print Jobs**].

Canceling of Jobs

A job in printing/waiting status can be canceled.

1 **Display the screen.**

Select the [**Status/Job Cancel**] key.

2 **Select the job to be canceled from the list, and select [Cancel].**

3 **Select [Yes] in the confirmation screen.**

Priority Override for Waiting Jobs

Priority Override function suspends the current job and prints the job in waiting first.

1 **Display the screen.**

Select the [**Status/Job Cancel**] key.

2 **Select [Printing Jobs].**

3 **Select the job to be given priority, and select [Priority Override].**

4 **Select [Yes] in the confirmation screen.**

The current job in printing is suspended, and the job for override.

Reordering Print Jobs

This function allows you to select a queued print job and raise its output priority.

1 **Display the screen.**

Select the [**Status/Job Cancel**] key.

2 **Select [Printing Jobs].**

3 **Select the job to be assigned a higher priority and select [Move Up].**

The priority of the selected job is increased by 1.

To further raise the job's priority, select [**Move Up**] again. Each time you select [**Move Up**], the priority increases by 1.

Device/Communication

Configure the devices/lines installed or connected to this machine or check their status.

1 **Display the screen.**

1 Select the [**Status/Job Cancel**] key.

2 Select [**Device/Communicate**].

The screen to check the status or configure the devices is displayed.

2 **Check the status.**

The items you can check are described below.

"Scanner"

The status of an original scanning or the error information (paper jam, opened cover, etc.) is displayed.

"Printer"

Error information such as paper jam, out of toner, or out of paper, and status such as waiting or printing are displayed.

"FAX Port 1", "FAX Port 2", "i-FAX"

- The information such as sending/receiving and dialing is displayed.

  ➡ **FAX Operation Guide**

"Removable Memory (USB Memory)"

- The usage, capacity and free space of the external media connected to this machine are displayed.

- Select [**Format**] to format external media.

  > ✅ **IMPORTANT**
  > **When [Format] is selected, all data in the external media is erased.**

- Select [**Remove**] to safely remove the external media.

"USB Keyboard"

The status of the optional USB Keyboard is displayed.

"Network Connection Status"

The network connection status appears.

"Option Network Connection Status"

The connection status of an optional network interface kit appears.

"Wireless Network"

The connection status of the Wireless Network Interface Kit is displayed.

"Hard Disk"

The status of the hard disk is displayed.

"SSD"

The status of the SSD is displayed.

> 🔍 **NOTE**
> When both a hard disk and SSD are installed, "Hard Disk" is displayed.

Checking the Remaining Amount of Toner and Paper (Paper/Supplies)

Check the remaining amount of toner, and paper on the touch panel.

1 Display the screen.

1 Select the [**Status/Job Cancel**] key.

2 Select [**Paper/Supplies**].

2 Check the status.

The items you can check are described below.

"Toner Status"

The amount of toner remaining is shown in levels. And you can check the status of waste toner box.

"Paper Status"

You can check the size, orientation, type, and remaining amount of paper in each paper source. The amount of paper remaining is shown in levels.

"Others"

You can check the status of staples and punch waste box.

8 Setup and Registration (System Menu)

This chapter explains the following topics:

System Menu

Configure settings related to overall machine operation.

Operation Method

System Menu is operated as follows:

1 Display the screen.

Select the [**System Menu**] key.

2 Select a function.
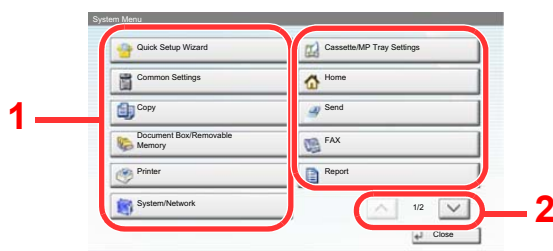
1 Displays the System Menu items.

2 Scrolls up and down when the list of values cannot be displayed in its entirety on a single screen.

3 Displays setting items
Select the key of a function to display the setting screen.

4 Returns to the previous screen.
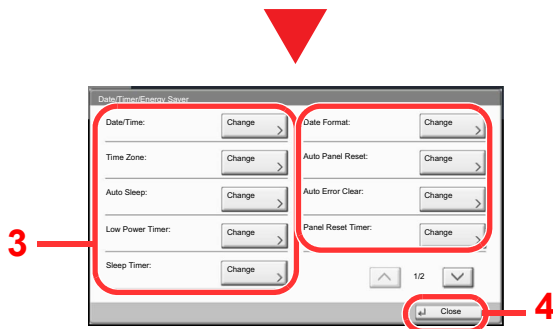
3 Configure the function.
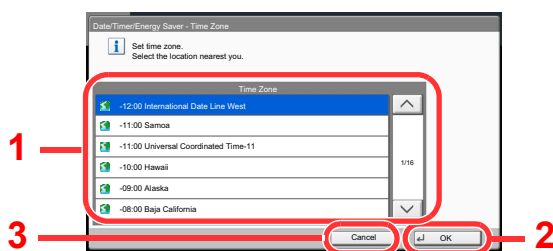
1 Enter a setting by selecting it.

2 Accepts the settings and exits.

3 Returns to the previous screen without making any changes.

> **NOTE**
>
> In order to change settings that require administer privileges, you must log in with administrator privileges.
>
> The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.
>
> | Model Name | Login User Name | Login Password |
> |---|---|---|
> | **350ci** | 3500 | 3500 |
> | **400ci** | 4000 | 4000 |
>
> If function default settings have been changed, the [**Reset**] key can be selected in each function screen to immediately change the settings.

Refer to System Menu Settings on the following page and configure as needed.

System Menu Settings

This section explains the functions that can be configured in System Menu. To configure the settings, select the item in System Menu and select the setting item. For details on each function, see the table below.

Item	Description	Reference Page
Quick Setup Wizard	The Quick Setup Wizard configures Fax, Network and Energy Saver settings.	page 2-31
Cassette/MP Tray Settings	Select paper size and media type for Cassettes and multi purpose tray.	page 8-7
Cassette 1 (to 4)	Select type of paper in Cassette 1 (to 4).	page 8-7
MP Tray Setting	Select type of paper in multi purpose tray.	page 8-8
Common Settings	Configure overall machine operation.	page 8-9
Language	Set the language to use for the touch panel display.	page 8-9
Default Screen	Select the screen appearing right after start-up (default screen).	page 8-9
Sound	Set options for buzzer sound during the machine operations.	page 8-9
Keyboard Layout	Change the layout of the touch panel keyboard used to enter characters.	page 8-20
Original/Paper Settings	Configure settings for originals and paper.	page 8-10
Measurement	Select inch or metric for the unit for paper dimensions.	page 8-13
Error Handling	Select whether to cancel or continue the job when error has occurred.	page 8-14
Paper Output	Select the output tray respectively for copy jobs, print jobs from Document Box, computers, and FAX RX data.	page 8-15
Orientation Confirmation	Check the orientation of original.	page 8-16
Color Toner Empty Action	Select whether printing is prohibited or the Print in Black and White setting is used for printing once the color toner runs out.	page 8-16
Function Defaults	Defaults are the values automatically set after the warm-up is completed or the [**Reset**] key is selected. Set the defaults for available settings such as copying and sending. Setting the frequently-used values as defaults makes subsequent jobs easier.	page 8-17
USB Keyboard Type	Select the type of USB keyboard that you want to use.	page 8-20
System Stamp	Configure settings for header, footer, and stamp.	page 8-20
Manual Staple	Select whether to use Manual Staple.	page 8-24
Offset Documents by Job	Select whether to offset documents by Job.	page 8-24
Low Toner Alert Level	Set the amount of remaining toner to notify the administrator when to order a toner when the toner is running low.	page 8-24
Offset One Page Documents	Set whether one-page documents are sorted.	page 8-24
Display Status/Log	Set the display method of the Status/Log.	page 8-25
Message Banner Print	Set whether the confirmation screen appears before each sheet is printed when printing multiple banner sheets.	page 8-25
Customize Status Display	Select the item that appears for the printing jobs status.	page 8-25
Function Key Usage	Configure settings for function key on the operation panel.	page 8-25
Message Board Settings	Configure settings for message board.	page 8-26
Remote Printing	Configure settings for remote printing.	page 8-26
Show Power Off Message	Select whether the confirmation message is displayed, when Power Switch is pressed.	page 8-27

Item	Description	Reference Page
Home	Configure settings for Home screen.	<u>page 8-27</u>
Copy	Configures settings for copying functions.	<u>page 8-27</u>
Send	Configures settings for sending functions.	<u>page 8-28</u>
Document Box/Removable Memory	Configures settings related to the Custom Box, Job Box, Sub Address Box and Polling Box. For details on FAX Box and Polling Box, refer to the following: ➡ **FAX Operation Guide**	<u>page 8-33</u>
FAX	Configures settings for fax functions. ➡ **FAX Operation Guide**	—
Printer	Printing from computers, settings are generally made on the application software screen. However, the following settings are available for configuring the defaults to customize the machine.	<u>page 8-34</u>
Report	Print reports to check the machine settings, status, and history. Settings for printing reports can also be configured.	<u>page 8-37</u>
Print Report	Configure settings for printing reports and histories.	<u>page 8-37</u>
Admin Report Settings		Refer to the **FAX Operation Guide**.
Result Report Setting		<u>page 8-38</u>
Sending Log History		<u>page 8-38</u>
Login History Settings		<u>page 8-39</u>
Device Log History Settings		<u>page 8-40</u>
Secure Comm. Error Log		<u>page 8-41</u>
System/Network	Configure machine system settings.	<u>page 8-42</u>
Network	Configures network settings.	<u>page 8-42</u>
Optional Network	Configure settings for the optional Network Interface Kit.	<u>page 8-47</u>
Network Interface (Send)	Specify the network interface card to be used for the send function, the network authentication and connecting to external address book.	<u>page 8-49</u>
Security Level	The Security Level setting is primarily a menu option used by service personnel for maintenance work. There is no need for customers to use this menu.	—
Interface Block Setting	This allows you to protect this machine by blocking the interface with external devices such as USB hosts or optional interfaces.	<u>page 8-49</u>
Data Security	Configure settings for data stored in the SSD, hard disk, and machine's memory.	<u>page 8-50</u>
Optional Function	You can use the optional applications installed on this machine.	<u>page 8-51</u>
Restart Entire Device	Restart the CPU without turning the main power switch off. Use this to deal with any unstable operation by the machine. (Same as the computer restart.)	<u>page 8-51</u>

Item	Description	Reference Page
Edit Destination	Configures Address Book and One Touch Key settings. Address Book: ➔ Adding a Destination (Address Book) (page 3-22) One Touch Key: ➔ Adding a Destination on One Touch Key (One Touch Key) (page 3-29)	page 8-52
User Login/Job Accounting	Configures settings related to machine management. User Login: ➔ Overview of User Login Administration (page 9-2) Job Accounting: ➔ Overview of Job Accounting (page 9-35)	—
User Property	Allows you to view information about logged in users and edit some of that information.	page 8-52
Date/Timer/Energy Saver	Configures settings related to the date and time.	page 8-53
Adjustment/Maintenance	Adjust printing quality and conduct machine maintenance.	page 8-56
Internet	Configure settings related to the internet.	page 8-58
Application	Configure settings for Application.	page 8-58

Cassette/MP Tray Settings

Select paper size and media type for Cassettes and multi purpose tray.

Cassette 1 (to 4)

[**System Menu**] key > [**Cassette/MP Tray Settings**] > [**Cassette 1 (to 4)**]

Select paper size and media type for Cassettes 1 to 4.

Selection Item		Selectable Size/Type
Paper Size	Auto	Paper size is automatically detected and selected. **Values: Metric, Inch**
	Standard Sizes 1[*1]	Available options are as follows: **Values** **Metric models: A4[*2], A5[*2], A6[*2], B5[*2], B6[*2], Folio[*2], 216 x 340 mm** **Inch models: Letter[*2], Legal[*2], Statement[*2], Executive, Oficio II**
	Standard Sizes 2[*1]	Select from standard sizes except Standard Sizes 1. **Values** **Metric models: Letter[*2], Legal[*2], Statement[*2], Executive, Oficio II, 16K** **Inch models: A4[*2], A5[*2], A6[*2], B5[*2], B6[*2], Folio[*2], 216x340mm, 16K**
	Others	Select from special standard sizes and custom sizes. **Values: ISO B5, Envelope #10, Envelope #9, Envelope #6, Envelope Monarch, Envelope DL, Envelope C5, Youkei 4, Youkei 2**
	Size Entry	Enter the size not included in the standard size. **Values** **Metric** **X: 148 to 356 mm (in 1mm increments)** **Y: 92 to 216 mm (in 1mm increments)** **Inch** **X: 5.83 to 14.02" (in 0.01" increments)** **Y: 3.62 to 8.50" (in 0.01" increments)**
Media Type[*3]		Select the media type. **Values: Plain (60 - 105 g/m^2), Rough, Vellum (60 - 105 g/m^2), Recycled, Preprinted[*4], Bond, Color, Prepunched[*4], Letterhead[*4], Envelope, Thick (106 - 163 g/m^2), High Quality, Custom 1 - 8**

*1   Only A4 and Letter can be specified when the optional Large Capacity Feeder (2,000-sheet) is used.
*2   Paper size is automatically detected in the cassette.
*3   To change to a media type other than "Plain".
      ➡ Media Type Setting (page 8-13)
       When a paper weight that cannot be loaded in the cassette is set for a media type, that media type does not appear.
*4   To print on preprinted or prepunched paper or on letterhead.
      ➡ Special Paper Action (page 8-12)
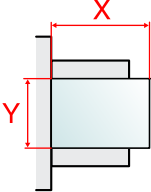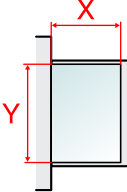
MP Tray Setting

[**System Menu**] key > [**Cassette/MP Tray Settings**] > [**MP Tray Setting**]

Select paper size and media type for the multi purpose tray.

Item		Description
Paper Size	**Auto**	Paper size is automatically detected and selected. **Values: Metric, Inch**
	Standard Sizes 1	Available options are as follows: **Values** **Metric models: A4**[*1]**, A5**[*1]**, A6**[*1]**, B5**[*1]**, B6**[*1]**, Folio**[*1]**, 216 x 340 mm** **Inch models: Letter**[*1]**, Legal**[*1]**, Statement**[*1]**, Executive, Oficio II, 16K**
	Standard Sizes 2	Select from standard sizes except Standard Sizes 1. **Values** **Metric models: Letter**[*1]**, Legal**[*1]**, Statement**[*1]**, Executive, Oficio II, 16K** **Inch models: A4**[*1]**, A5**[*1]**, A6**[*1]**, B5**[*1]**, B6**[*1]**, Folio**[*1]**, 216 x 340 mm**
	Others	Select from special standard sizes and custom sizes. **Values: ISO B5, Envelope #10, Envelope #9, Envelope #6, Envelope Monarch, Envelope DL, Envelope C5, Hagaki (Cardstock)**[*1]**, Oufuku hagaki (Return postcard), Youkei 4, Youkei 2**
	Size Entry	Enter the size not included in the standard size. **Values** **Metric** **X: 148 to 356 mm (in 1mm increments)** **Y: 70 to 216 mm (in 1mm increments)** **Inch** **X: 5.83 to 14.02" (in 0.01" increments)** **Y: 2.76 to 8.50" (in 0.01" increments)** **X=Length, Y=Width** Horizontal Vertical
Media Type[*2]		Select the media type. **Values: Plain (60 to 105 g/m²), Transparency, Rough, Vellum (60 to 105 g/m²), Labels, Recycled, Preprinted**[*3]**, Bond, Cardstock, Color, Prepunched**[*3]**, Letterhead**[*3]**, Envelope, Thick (106 to 220 g/m²), Coated, High Quality, Custom 1-8**

*1   Paper size is automatically detected in the Multi Purpose Tray.
*2   To change to a media type other than "Plain".
   ➡ Media Type Setting (page 8-13)
*3   To print on preprinted or prepunched paper or on letterhead.
   ➡ Special Paper Action (page 8-12)

> **NOTE**
>
> If the optional FAX Kit is installed, the available media types for printing received faxes are as shown below.
>
> Plain, Rough, Vellum, Labels, Recycled, Bond, Cardstock, Color, Envelope, Thick, Coated, High Quality and Custom1-8

Common Settings

Configures overall machine operation.

Language

[**System Menu**] key > [**Common Settings**] > [**Language**]

Item	Description
Language	Set the language to use for the touch panel display.

Default Screen

[**System Menu**] key > [**Common Settings**] > [**Default Screen**]

Item	Description
Default Screen	Select the screen appearing right after start-up (default screen). **Value**: Home, Copy, Send, FAX[*1], Status, Custom Box[*2], Job Box, Removable Memory, FAX Box[*1], Program, Home (Accessibility), Accessibility Copy, Accessibility Send, Accessibility FAX[*1], Internet Browser[*3], Application Name[*4]

*1 Displayed only when the optional FAX Kit is installed.
*2 Displayed when the hard disk is installed
*3 Configure necessary settings for Internet Browser.
   ➡ Internet (page 8-58)
*4 The running application will be displayed.
   ➡ Application (page 5-12)

Sound

[**System Menu**] key > [**Common Settings**] > [**Sound**]

Item		Description
Buzzer		Set options for buzzer sound during the machine operations.
	Volume	Set the buzzer volume level. **Value**: 0 (Mute), 1 (Minimum), 2, 3 (Medium), 4, 5 (Maximum)
	Key Confirmation	Emit a sound when the operation panel and touch panel keys are selected. **Value**: Off, On
	Job Finish	Emit a sound when a print job is normally completed. **Value**: Off, On, FAX Reception Only[*1]
	Ready	Emit a sound when the warm-up is completed. **Value**: Off, On
	Warning	Emit a sound when errors occur. **Value**: Off, On
	USB Keyboard	Emit a sound to confirm keypresses with a sound. **Value**: Off, On
FAX Speaker Volume[*1]		➡ **FAX Operation Guide**
FAX Monitor Volume[*1]		➡ **FAX Operation Guide**
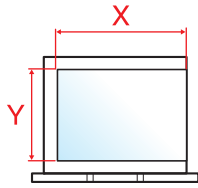
*1 Displayed only when the optional FAX Kit is installed.
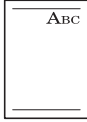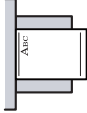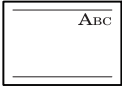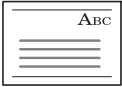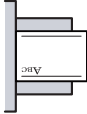
Original / Paper Settings

[**System Menu**] key > [**Common Settings**] > [**Original / Paper Settings**]

Configure settings for originals.

Item	Description
Custom Original Size	Set up frequently-used custom original size. The custom size option is displayed on the screen to select original size. To register a custom paper size, select [**On**] and enter the desired size. **Value** **Metric** **X: 50 to 356 mm (in 1 mm increments)** **Y: 50 to 216 mm (in 1 mm increments)** **Inch** **X: 1.97 to 14.02" (in 0.01" increments)** **Y: 1.97 to 8.50" (in 0.01" increments)** **X=Length, Y=Width** Horizontal
Default Original Size(Platen)	Select a default size for the originals placed on the platen. If [**Off**] is selected, a confirmation will be displayed before each job is processed. **Value** **Off** **Standard Sizes 1: Metric** **A4, A5, A6, B5, B6, Folio, 216 × 340 mm** **Inch** **Letter, Legal, Statement, Executive, OficioII** **Standard Sizes 2: Metric** **Letter, Legal, Statement, Executive, OficioII, 16K** **Inch** **A4, A5, A6, B5, B6,Folio, 16K, 216×340mm** **Others: ISOB5, Envelope#10, Envelope#9, Envelope#6, EnvelopeMonarch, EnvelopeDL,** **EnvelopeC5, Hagaki (Cardstock), Oufukuhagaki (Return postcard), Youkei4,** **Youkei2**

Item	Description
Custom Paper Size	Set up frequently-used custom paper size. One custom paper size is set for each paper supply source. The custom size option is displayed on the screen to select paper size.
Custom 1	Register the custom paper size to be used in Cassette 1. **Value** **Metric** **X: 148 to 356 mm (in 1 mm increments)** **Y: 70 to 216 mm (in 1 mm increments)** **Inch** **X: 5.83 to 14.02" (in 0.01" increments)** **Y: 2.76 to 8.50" (in 0.01" increments)** **X=Length, Y=Width** Horizontal
Custom 2 (to 4)	Register the custom paper size to be used in Cassettes 2 to 4. **Value** **Metric** **X: 148 to 356 mm (in 1 mm increments)** **Y: 70 to 216 mm (in 1 mm increments)** **Inch** **X: 5.83 to 14.02" (in 0.01" increments)** **Y: 2.76 to 8.50" (in 0.01" increments)**
Media Type Setting	Select weight for each media type. For Custom 1-8, settings for duplex printing and media type name can be changed. ➡ Media Type Setting (page 8-13)
Default Paper Source	Select the default paper source from Cassette 1-4 and multi purpose tray. **Value: Cassette 1 (to 4), Multi Purpose Tray** **NOTE** [**Cassette 2**] to [**Cassette 4**] are displayed when the following optional paper feeder is installed. [**Cassette 2**]: When a paper feeder (500-sheet) is installed. [**Cassette 3**]: When a paper feeder (500-sheet x 2) or large capacity paper feeder (2,000-sheet) is installed. [**Cassette 4**]: When a paper feeder (500-sheet x 2) is installed.
Auto Detect Original Size	Set the original sizes for the device to detect automatically. **Value: Metric, Inch (Legal / OficioII / 216 x 340 mm)**
Media for Auto (Color) **Media for Auto (B&W)**	Select a default media type for auto paper selection when [**Auto**] is selected of Paper Selection. If [**Plain**] is selected, the paper source with plain paper loaded in the specific size is selected. Select [**All Media Types**] for the paper source with any kind of paper loaded in the specific size. **Value: All Media Types, Plain, Transparency, Rough, Vellum, Labels, Recycled, Preprinted, Bond, Cardstock, Color, Prepunched, Letterhead, Envelope, Thick, Coated, High Quality, Custom 1 to 8**

8-11

Item	Description
Paper Source for Cover	Select the paper source in which the cover paper used for the Cover function is placed. **Value: Cassette 1 (to 4), Multi Purpose Tray** 🔎 **NOTE** [**Cassette 2**] to [**Cassette 4**] are displayed when the following optional paper feeder is installed. [**Cassette 2**]: When a paper feeder (500-sheet) is installed. [**Cassette 3**]: When a paper feeder (500-sheet x 2) or large capacity paper feeder (2,000-sheet) is installed. [**Cassette 4**]: When a paper feeder (500-sheet x 2) is installed.
Special Paper Action	When printing on Prepunched, Preprint, and Letterhead, punch-holes might not be aligned or the print direction might be upside-down depending on how originals are set and the combination of copying functions. In such a case, select [**Adjust Print Direction**] to adjust the print direction. When paper orientation is not important, select [**Speed Priority**]. If [**Adjust Print Direction**] is selected, load paper according to the steps below. Example: copying on Letterhead Original Paper Finished Cassette Multi Purpose Tray Original Paper Finished Cassette Multi Purpose Tray **Value: Adjust Print Direction, Speed Priority**

Media Type Setting

The following media type and paper weight combinations are available.

Paper Weight	Weight (g/m²)	Paper Weight	Weight (g/m²)
Light	52 g/m² to 59 g/m²	Heavy 1	106 g/m² to 128 g/m²
Normal 1	60 g/m² to 74 g/m²	Heavy 2	129 g/m² to 163 g/m²
Normal 2	75 g/m² to 90 g/m²	Heavy 3	164 g/m² to 220 g/m²
Normal 3	91 g/m² to 105 g/m²	Extra Heavy	Transparencies

Each media type's default weight is indicated.

Media Type	Default	Media Type	Default
Plain	Normal 2	Color	Normal 3
Rough	Normal 3	Prepunched	Normal 2
Vellum	Heavy 1	Letterhead	Normal 2
Labels	Heavy 2	Envelope	Heavy 2
Recycled	Normal 2	Thick	Heavy 2
Preprinted	Normal 2	High Quality	Normal 2
Bond	Normal 3	Coated	Heavy 1
Cardstock	Heavy 3	Custom 1 - 8	Normal 2

For Custom 1-8, settings for duplex printing and media type name can be changed.

Item		Description
Duplex Print	Prohibit	Duplex printing allowed.
	Permit	Duplex printing not allowed.
Name		Change names for Custom 1-8. Names should be not more than 16 characters. Selecting media type at multi purpose tray, the name after change will be displayed.
		➡ Character Entry Method (page 11-10)

Measurement

[**System Menu**] key > [**Common Settings**] > [**Measurement**]

Item	Description
Measurement	Select inch or metric for the unit for paper dimensions.
	Value: mm, inch

Error Handling

[**System Menu**] key > [**Common Settings**] > [**Error Handling**]

Select whether to cancel or continue the job when error has occurred.

Item	Description
Duplexing Error	Set what to do when duplex printing is not possible for the selected paper sizes and media types. **Value** **1-sided: Printed in 1-sided** **Display Error: Message to cancel printing is displayed.**
Finishing Error	Set alternative actions when finishing (Staple/Punch/Offset) is not available for the selected paper size or media type. **Value** **Ignore: The setting is ignored and the job is printed.** **Display Error: Message to cancel printing is displayed.**
No Staple Error	Set what to do when staples run out during printing. **Value** **Ignore: Printing continues without stapling.** **Display Error: Message to cancel printing is displayed.** 🔍 **NOTE** Requires the optional Sheet Finisher.
Finished Pages Exceeded	Set what to do when finishing (stapling or offsetting) capacity is exceeded during printing. **Value** **Ignore: Printing continues without finishing.** **Display Error: Message to cancel printing is displayed.** 🔍 **NOTE** Requires the optional Sheet Finisher.
Punch Waste Full Error	Set what to do when the punch waste box becomes full during printing. **Value** **Ignore: Printing continues without punching.** **Display Error: Message to cancel printing is displayed.** 🔍 **NOTE** Requires the optional Sheet Finisher and Hole Punch Unit.
Paper Mismatch Error	Set what to do when the selected paper size or type does not match paper size or type loaded in the specified paper source while printing from the computer by specifying the cassette or multi-purpose tray. **Value** **Ignore: The setting is ignored and the job is printed.** **Display Error: Message to cancel printing is displayed.**

Item	Description
Inserted Paper Mismatch	Set what to do when it is detected that the cassette paper size setting does not match the actual paper size that is fed. **Value** **Ignore: The setting is ignored and the job is printed.** **Display Error: Message to cancel printing is displayed.**
Paper Jam before Staple	The page from which printing is resumed when a paper jam occurs during a job with stapling can be selected. **Value** **Resume at Top of Page: Resume printing from the first page of the document.** **Resume at Jammed Page: Resume printing from the page where the jam occurred.** **NOTE** Requires the optional Sheet Finisher.

Paper Output

[**System Menu**] key > [**Common Settings**] > [**Paper Output**]

Item	Description
Paper Output	Select the output tray respectively for copy jobs, print jobs from Document Box, computers, and FAX RX data. **Value:** **with optional job separator** • **Inner Tray:** Outputs to the Inner Tray of the machine • **Job Separator Tray:** Delivery to the Job Separator. **with optional 1,000-Sheet Finisher** • **Inner Tray:** Outputs to the Inner Tray of the machine • **Finisher Tray:** Delivery to the Finisher Tray of the optional Sheet Finisher. **with optional 3,000-Sheet Finisher** • **Inner Tray:** Outputs to the Inner Tray of the machine • **Tray A:** Delivery to the Tray A of the optional Sheet Finisher • **Tray B:** Delivery to the Tray B of the optional Sheet Finisher **with optional Mailbox** • **Inner Tray:** Outputs to the Inner Tray of the machine • **Tray A, Tray 1 to 5:** Delivery to tray A, tray 1 to 5 (tray 1 is the uppermost tray) of the optional Mailbox **NOTE** FAX RX data output can be specified when the optional FAX Kit is installed.

Orientation Confirmation

[**System Menu**] key > [**Common Settings**] > [**Orientation Confirmation**]

Item	Description
Orientation Confirmation	Select whether to display a screen for selecting the orientation of the originals to be placed on the platen when using the following functions. ➡ Original Orientation (page 6-18) • Zoom • Page # • Duplex • Booklet • Margin/Centering • Staple/Punch (optional feature) • Border Erase • 2-sided/Book Original • Combine • Text Stamp • Memo Page • Bates Stamp **Value: Off, On**

Color Toner Empty Action

[**System Menu**] key > [**Common Settings**] > [**Color Toner Empty Action**]

Item	Description
Color Toner Empty Action	Select whether printing is prohibited or the Print in Black and White setting is used for printing once the color toner runs out. **Value: Stop printing, Print in Black & White**

Function Defaults

[**System Menu**] key > [**Common Settings**] > [**Function Defaults**]

Item	Description
Orig. Orientation (Copy) Orig. Orient.(Send/Store)	Set the original orientation defaults. **Value**: **Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto**[*1]
Original Image (Copy)	Set the default original document type for copying. **Value**: **Text+Photo (Printer), Text+Photo (Magazine), Photo (Printer), Photo (Magazine), Photo (Photo Paper), Text, Text (Fine Line), Graphic/Map (Printer), Graphic/Map (Magazine)**
Org. Image (Send/Store)	Set the default original document type for sending/storing. **Value**: **Text+Photo, Photo, Text, Text(Fine Line), Text (for OCR)**
Scan Resolution	Select the default scanning resolution. **Value**: **600×600dpi, 400×400dpi Ultra Fine, 300×300dpi, 200×400dpi Super Fine, 200×200dpi Fine, 200×100dpi Normal**
FAX TX Resolution[*2]	➡ **FAX Operation Guide**
Color Selection (Copy)	Set the default copying color mode setting. **Value**: **Auto Color, Full Color, Black & White**
Color Select.(Send/Store)	Select the default color mode for scanning documents. **Value**: **Auto Color (Color/Gray), Auto Color (Color/B & W), Full Color, Grayscale, Black & White**
File Format	Set the default type of the files. **Value**: **PDF, TIFF, JPEG, XPS, OpenXPS, High Comp. PDF**
Backgrnd Density (Copy)	Set the default Backgrnd Density (Copy). **Value**: **Off, Auto, Manual (Darker 5)**
BackgrndDens.(Send/Store)	Set the default Backgrnd Density (Send/Store). **Value**: **Off, Auto, Manual (Darker 5)**
Prevent Bleed-thru (Copy)	Set the default value for preventing bleed-through (Copy). **Value**: **Off, On**
Prevent Bleed(Send/Store)	Set the default Prevent Bleed (Send/Store). **Value**: **Off, On**
Zoom	Select the enlarged/reduced default when paper size/sending size changed after the originals set. **Value**: **100%, Auto**
Border Erase Default	Set the default width to be erased as a border. **Value** **Metric: 0 to 50 mm (in 1 mm increments)** **Inch: 0 to 2" (in 0.01" increments)** 🔍 **NOTE** To specify border erase widths around original, set the value in "Border". To specify border erase widths in the middle of original, set the value in "Gutter".
Border Erase to Back Page	Select the Border Erase Method for Back Page of a sheet. **Value**: **Same as Front Page, Do Not Erase**

Item	Description
Margin Default	Set the default margin. **Value** **Metric** **Left/Right:** -18 to 18 mm (in 1 mm increments) **Top/Bottom: -18 to 18 mm (in 1 mm increments)** **Inch** **Left/Right:** -0.75 to 0.75" (in 0.01" increments) **Top/Bottom: -0.75 to 0.75" (in 0.01" increments)**
EcoPrint	Select the EcoPrint default. **Value: Off, On**
Toner Save Level (EcoPrint)	Select the default Toner Save Level (EcoPrint). **Value: [1](Low) to [5](High)** **NOTE** Raising the level reduces toner consumption, but image quality falls.
High Comp. PDF Image	Select the default quality setting for high compressed PDF files. **Value: Compression Ratio Priority, Standard, Quality Priority**
Color TIFF Compression	Select the compression method for sending the color documents in the TIFF format. **Value: [TIFF V6], [TTN2]**
Image Quality (File Format)	Select the default PDF/TIFF/JPEG/XPS file quality. **Value: 1 Low Quality (High Comp.) to 5 High Quality (Low Comp.)**
Collate/Offset	Set the defaults for Collate/Offset. **Value** **Collate: Off, On** **Offset: Off, Each Set (If [Off] is selected of Collate, it is set to [Each Page].)**
JPEG/TIFF Print	Select the image size (resolution) when printing JPEG or TIFF file. **Value: Fit to Paper Size, Image Resolution, Fit to Print Resolution**
XPS Fit to Page	Set the default value for the XPS fit to page function. **Value: Off, On**
PDF/A	Select the default PDF/A setting. **Value: Off, PDF/A-1a, PDF/A-1b**
Cont. Scan (Except FAX)	Set the continuous scan defaults. **Value: Off, On**
Continuous Scan (FAX)[2]	➡ **FAX Operation Guide**
File Name Entry	Set an automatically entered name (default) for jobs. Additional information such as Date and Time and Job No. can also be set. **Value** **File Name: Up to 32 characters can be entered.** **Additional Info: None, Date and Time, Job No., Job No. & Date and Time,** **Date and Time & Job No.**
E-mail Subject/Body	Set the subject and body automatically entered (default subject and body) when sending the scanned originals by E-mail. Three body messages can be registered, and the initial template can be used to choose which body message is used. **Value** **Subject: Up to 60 characters can be entered.** **Body 1 to 3: Up to 500 characters can be entered.**

Item	Description
i-FAX Subject/Body	Set the subject and body automatically entered (default subject and body) when sending the scanned originals by i-FAX. **Value** **Subject: Up to 60 characters can be entered.** **Body: Up to 500 characters can be entered.** 🔍 **NOTE** This function is displayed when the optional Internet FAX Kit is activated. ➡ Internet FAX Kit(A) "Internet FAX Kit" (page 11-6)
DP Read Action	Set the operation when a document is scanned from the document processor. **Value: Speed Priority, Quality Priority**
OCR Text Recognition	Set the default OCR Text Recognition. **Value: Off, On** 🔍 **NOTE** This function can only be used when the optional OCR Scan Activation Kit is installed. ➡ Scan extension kit(A) "OCR Scan Activation Kit" (page 11-7)
Primary OCR Language	Set the default language of the text to be extracted. ([**English**] is selected as a default.) Select the language to extract from the options displayed on the touch panel. 🔍 **NOTE** This function can only be used when the optional OCR Scan Activation Kit is installed. ➡ Scan extension kit(A) "OCR Scan Activation Kit" (page 11-7)
Repeat Copy	Select the Repeat Copy default. **Value: Off, On** 🔍 **NOTE** This function will not be displayed when the optional Data Security Kit is installed. This function will not be displayed when Repeat Copy Job Retention is set to 0.
Skip Blank Page (Copy)	Select the default Skip Blank Page settings. **Value: Off, On**
Skip Blank Page (Send/Store)	
File Separation	Select the default file separation setting. **Value: Off, Each Page**

*1   This function can only be used when the optional OCR Scan Activation Kit is installed.
*2   Displayed only when the optional FAX Kit is installed.

8-19

Keyboard Layout

[**System Menu**] key > [**Common Settings**] > [**Keyboard Layout**]

Item	Description
Keyboard Layout	Change the layout of the touch panel keyboard used to enter characters. **Value: QWERTY, QWERTZ, AZERTY**

USB Keyboard Type

[**System Menu**] key > [**Common Settings**] > [**USB Keyboard Type**]

Item	Description
USB Keyboard Type	Select the type of USB keyboard that you want to use. **Value: US-English, US-English with Euro, French, German**

System Stamp

[**System Menu**] key > [**Common Settings**] > [**System Stamp**]

Item		Description
Basic		Configure settings for stamps.
	Text (Text Stamp)	Select [**Add/Edit**] to edit the test string for a template. Up to 8 templates can be registered. Select [**Delete**] to delete a template.
	Font (Page #)	Set the font size for page numbers when printing them. **Value: 6.0 to 64.0 pt**
	Font (Bates Stamp)	When a bates stamp is used, set the font sizes that can be set. **Value: 6.0 to 64.0 pt**
	Font (Text Stamp)	Set the font size for stamps when printing them. **Value: 6.0 to 64.0 pt**

Item			Description
Printing Jobs			Configure settings for stamps when a document is printed.
			After configuring the setting, return to the Copying Functions or Custom Box (Printing a Document) screen from System Menu, and select the [**Reset**] key.
	Text Stamp		Select whether to print a text stamp on all printing jobs.
			Value: **Off, On**
			![NOTE icon] **NOTE**
			When [**On**] is selected, the Text Stamp settings cannot be changed when printing.
	Edit Text Stamp		Set the default text stamp.
		Stamp	Select a text string to be stamped from templates, or select [**Stamp**] and enter a maximum of 32 characters for the text string.
			![NOTE icon] **NOTE**
			Templates that have been set will appear. For details on registering templates, refer to the following:
			➡ Text (Text Stamp) (page 8-20)
		Stamp Method	Select the stamp method for the text stamp.
			Value: **Each Print Page, Each Original Page**
		Position	Set the text stamp position.
			Value: **Top Left, Top Middle, Top Right, Middle Left, Center, Middle Right, Bottom Left, Bottom Middle, Bottom Right, Detail**
			![NOTE icon] **NOTE**
			Select [**Detail**] to specify the detailed stamp position using numeric values, and to set the stamp position and angle when a stamp is placed on the back side of the paper in duplex printing.
		Font	Set the font of the text stamp.
			Value
			Size: Font sizes registered in Font (Text Stamp) are displayed.
			➡ Font (Text Stamp) (page 8-20)
			Character Border: Off, Circle, Rectangle, Underline
			Style: None, Bold, Italic, Bold/Italic
			Font: Courier, Letter Gothic
			Color: Black, Red, Green, Blue, Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, White
			Density: 10 to 100% (in 10% increments)
			Display Pattern: Transparent, Clipping, Overwrite
	Bates Stamp		Select whether to print a bates stamp on all printing jobs.
			Value: **Off, On**
			![NOTE icon] **NOTE**
			When [**On**] is selected, the Bates Stamp settings cannot be changed when printing.
	Edit Bates Stamp		Set the default Bates Stamp.
			Value: **Date, User Name, Serial Number, Numbering, Text 1, Text 2, Date Format, Numbering Default, Position, Font**
			![NOTE icon] **NOTE**
			To set [**Text 1**] or [**Text 2**], select [**Change**] below and enter a maximum of 32 characters for the text string.
			To set [**Date**], select [**Date Format**] and set the date display format.
			To set [**Numbering**], select [**Numbering Default**] and set the starting sequence number (1 to 9999999).
			Select [**Detail**] in "Position" to specify the detailed stamp position using numeric values, and to set the stamp position to be placed on the back side of the paper in duplex printing.

Item			Description
Sending Jobs			Configure stamp settings for sending documents.
			After configuring the setting, return to the Sending Functions or Custom Box (Sending Documents) screen from System Menu, and select the [**Reset**] key.
	Text Stamp		Select whether to print a text stamp on all sending jobs.
			Value: Off, On
			![NOTE icon] **NOTE**
			When [**On**] is selected, the Text Stamp settings cannot be changed when sending.
	Edit Text Stamp		Set the default text stamp.
		Stamp	Select a text string to be stamped from templates, or select [**Stamp**] and enter a maximum of 32 characters for the text string.
			![NOTE icon] **NOTE**
			Templates that have been set will appear. For details on registering templates, refer to the following:
			➡ Text (Text Stamp) (page 8-20)
		Position	Set the text stamp position.
			Value: Top Left, Top Middle, Top Right, Middle Left, Center, Middle Right, Bottom Left, Bottom Middle, Bottom Right, Detail
			![NOTE icon] **NOTE**
			Select [**Detail**] to specify the detailed stamp position using numeric values, and to set the stamp angle.
		Font	Set the font of the text stamp.
			Value
			Size: Font sizes registered in Font (Text Stamp) are displayed.
			➡ Font (Text Stamp) (page 8-20)
			Character Border: Off, Circle, Rectangle, Underline
			Style: None, Bold, Italic, Bold/Italic
			Font: Courier, Letter Gothic
			Color: Black, Red, Green, Blue, Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, White
			Density: 10 to 100% (in 10% increments)
			Display Pattern: Transparent, Clipping, Overwrite
	Bates Stamp		Select whether to print a bates stamp on all sending jobs.
			Value: Off, On
			![NOTE icon] **NOTE**
			When [**On**] is selected, the Bates Stamp settings cannot be changed when sending.
	Edit Bates Stamp		Set the default Bates Stamp.
			Value: Date, User Name, Serial Number, Numbering, Text 1, Text 2, Date Format, Numbering Default, Position, Font
			![NOTE icon] **NOTE**
			To set [**Text 1**] or [**Text 2**], select [**Change**] below and enter a maximum of 32 characters for the text string.
			To set [**Date**], select [**Date Format**] and set the date display format.
			To set [**Numbering**], select [**Numbering Default**] and set the starting sequence number (1 to 9999999).
			Select [**Detail**] in "Position" to specify the detailed stamp position using numeric values.

Item			Description
Storing Jobs			Configure stamp settings for storing documents in removable memory. After configuring the setting, return to the Custom Box (Storing Documents) screen from System Menu, and select the [**Reset**] key.
	Text Stamp		Select whether to print a text stamp on all storing jobs. **Value: Off, On** 🔍 **NOTE** When [**On**] is selected, the Text Stamp settings cannot be changed when storing.
	Edit Text Stamp		Set the default text stamp.
		Stamp	Select a text string to be stamped from templates, or select [**Stamp**] and enter a maximum of 32 characters for the text string. 🔍 **NOTE** Templates that have been set will appear. For details on registering templates, refer to the following: ➡ Text (Text Stamp) (page 8-20)
		Position	Set the text stamp position. **Value: Top Left, Top Middle, Top Right, Middle Left, Center, Middle Right, Bottom Left, Bottom Middle, Bottom Right, Detail** 🔍 **NOTE** Select [**Detail**] to specify the detailed stamp position using numeric values, and to set the stamp angle.
		Font	Set the font of the text stamp. **Value** **Size: Font sizes registered in Font (Text Stamp) are displayed.** ➡ Font (Text Stamp) (page 8-20) **Character Border: Off, Circle, Rectangle, Underline** **Style: None, Bold, Italic, Bold/Italic** **Font: Courier, Letter Gothic** **Color: Black, Red, Green, Blue, Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, White** **Density: 10 to 100% (in 10% increments)** **Display Pattern: Transparent, Clipping, Overwrite**
	Bates Stamp		Select whether to print a bates stamp on all storing jobs. **Value: Off, On** 🔍 **NOTE** When [**On**] is selected, the Bates Stamp settings cannot be changed when storing.
	Edit Bates Stamp		Set the default Bates Stamp. **Value: Date, User Name, Serial Number, Numbering, Text 1, Text 2, Date Format, Numbering Default, Position, Font** 🔍 **NOTE** To set [**Text 1**] or [**Text 2**], select [**Change**] below and enter a maximum of 32 characters for the text string. To set [**Date**], select [**Date Format**] and set the date display format. To set [**Numbering**], select [**Numbering Default**] and set the starting sequence number (1 to 9999999). Select [**Detail**] in "Position" to specify the detailed stamp position using numeric values.

8-23

Manual Staple

[**System Menu**] key > [**Common Settings**] > [**Manual Staple**]

> **NOTE**
>
> Only displayed when the optional 3,000-Sheet Finisher is installed.

Item	Description
Manual Staple	Select whether to use Manual Staple. **Value: Off, On** **NOTE** If you selected [**On**], set the time until manual stapling mode is automatically cancelled. The setting range is 5 to 60 seconds (in 5-second increments).
Staple Position	Set the default Staple Position. **Value: A4 Long Edge, Letter Long Edge**

Offset Documents by Job

[**System Menu**] key > [**Common Settings**] > [**Offset Documents by Job**]

Item	Description
Offset Documents by Job	Select whether to offset documents by Job. **Value: Off, On** **NOTE** This function is displayed when an optional Sheet Finisher is installed.

Offset One Page Documents

[**System Menu**] key > [**Common Settings**] > [**Offset One Page Documents**]

Item	Description
Offset One Page Documents	Set whether one-page documents are sorted. **Value: Off, On** **NOTE** This function is displayed when an optional Sheet Finisher is installed.

Low Toner Alert Level

[**System Menu**] key > [**Common Settings**] > [**Low Toner Alert Level**]

Item	Description
Low Toner Alert	Set the amount of remaining toner to notify the administrator when to order a toner when the toner is running low. This notification is used for event report, Status Monitor, SNMP Trap. **Value: Off, On** **NOTE** If [**On**] is selected, set the amount of remaining toner to alert. The setting range is 5 to 100% (in 1% increments).

Display Status/Log

[**System Menu**] key > [**Common Settings**] > [**Display Status/Log**]

Set the display method of the Status/Log.

Item	Description
Display Jobs Detail Status	**Value**: Show All, My Jobs Only, Hide All
Display Jobs Log	**Value**: Show All, My Jobs Only, Hide All
Display FAX Log[*1]	**Value**: Show All, Hide All

*1   Displayed only when the optional FAX Kit is installed.

Message Banner Print

[**System Menu**] key > [**Common Settings**] > [**Message Banner Print**]

Item	Description
Message Banner Print	Set whether the confirmation screen appears before each sheet is printed when printing multiple banner sheets. **Value: Off, On**

Customize Status Display

[**System Menu**] key > [**Common Settings**] > [**Customize Status Display**]

Set the items that appear in the status screens for printing jobs, sending jobs, and storing jobs.

Item	Description
Printing Jobs Column 1	**Value**: **Job Name, User Name, Print Pages x Copies, Total Printed Pages, Color/Black & White**
Printing Jobs Column 2	**Value**: **Job Name, User Name, Print Pages x Copies, Total Printed Pages, Color/Black & White**
Sending Jobs Column 1	**Value**: **Job Name, User Name, Destination, Original Pages, Color/Black & White**
Sending Jobs Column 2	**Value**: **Job Name, User Name, Destination, Original Pages, Color/Black & White**
Storing Jobs Column 1	**Value**: **Job Name, User Name, Original Pages, Color/Black & White**
Storing Jobs Column 2	**Value**: **Job Name, User Name, Original Pages, Color/Black & White**

Function Key Usage

[**System Menu**] key > [**Common Settings**] > [**Function Key Usage**]

Select whether to enable the [**Copy**] Key, [**Send**] Key, and [**FAX**] Key on the operation panel.

Item	Description
Copy Key	**Value**: Disable, Enable
Send Key	**Value**: Disable, Enable
FAX Key[*1]	**Value**: Disable, Enable

*1   Displayed only when the optional FAX Kit is installed.

Message Board Settings

[**System Menu**] key > [**Common Settings**] > [**Message Board Settings**]

Item			Description
Message Board			Select whether to use the Message Board. **Value: Off, On**
Message List			Configure settings for the registered message board.
	Add		Add a new message board.
		Device to Show	Select where to show the message. **Value** **Hide: Displays no message.** **Operation Panel: Displays a message on the operation panel.** **Embedded Web Server: Displays a message in Embedded Web Server RX.** **Panel + Web Server: Displays a message in the operation panel and the Embedded Web Server RX.**
		Message Type	Select the message type. **Value: Normal, Alert, Prohibition**
		Place to Show	Select where to show the message in the touch panel. **Value:** **Login Screen: Login screen of user login administration** **Home Screen: Home Screen** **Login Screen+Home Screen: Login screen and Home screen of user login administration**
		Priority Show	Displays the message on the message board. **Value: Off, On**
		Title	**Enter a maximum of 30 characters for the title to display on the message board.**
		Body	**Enter a maximum of 300 characters for the body to display on the message board.**
	Delete		Deletes the message board selected on the list.
	Raise Priority		Raise the priority of the message board selected on the list.
	Lower Priority		Lower the priority of the message board selected on the list.
	Detail/Edit		Display information on the selected message board.

Remote Printing

[**System Menu**] key > [**Common Settings**] > [**Remote Printing**]

Item	Description
Remote Printing	Select whether to prohibit printing that is performed without operating the machine. When [**Prohibit**] is selected, a document that has been stored in the document box from the printer driver can be printed from the machine. This prevents another person from seeing that document. **Value**: **Prohibit, Permit** **NOTE** If [**Prohibit**] is selected, printing and storing using Quick Copy and Proof and Hold functions are disabled. Printing a received FAX (optional) is not prohibited.

Show Power Off Message

[**System Menu**] key > [**Common Settings**] > [**Show Power Off Message**]

Item	Description
Show Power Off Message	Set the mode whether display a confirmation message in power supply off. **Value**: **Off, On**

Home

[**System Menu**] key > [**Home**]

Configure settings for Home screen.

➡ Editing the Home Screen (page 2-13)

Copy

[**System Menu**] key > [**Copy**]

Configures settings for copying functions.

Item	Description
Paper Selection	Set the default paper selection. **Value**: **Auto, Default Paper Source**
Auto Paper Selection	If [**Auto**] is selected for Paper Selection, set the paper size selection method when the zoom changes. **Value** **Most Suitable Size: Selects paper size based on the current zoom and the size of the original.** **Same as Original Size: Selects paper that matches the size of the original, regardless the zoom.**
Auto % Priority	When a paper source of different size from the original is selected, select whether automatic zoom (reduce/zoom) is performed. **Value**: **Off, On**
Preset Limit	Restrict the number of copies that can be made at one time. **Value**: **1 to 999 copies**
Reserve Next Priority	Specify whether the default screen appears when a subsequent copy job is reserved while printing is in progress. To have the default screen appear, select [**On**]. **Value**: **Off, On**
Quick Setup Registration	Select the functions to be registered for Quick Setup. Six keys of the Quick Setup screen are allocated to typical functions but can be changed as necessary. Six items in the following options are available. **Value: Paper Selection, Zoom, Staple/Punch**[*1]**, Density, Duplex, Combine, Collate/Offset**[*2]**, Original Image, Original Size, Original Orientation, Color Selection, Continuous Scan, Background Density Adj., Quiet Mode**

*1   This setting is displayed when the optional Sheet Finisher is installed. When a punching unit is not installed, this item name is "Staple".

*2   When the optional Sheet Finisher is not installed, this item name is "Collate"

Send

[**System Menu**] key > [**Send**]

Configures settings for sending functions.

Item	Description
Quick Setup Registration	Select the functions to be registered for Quick Setup. Six keys of the Quick Setup screen are allocated to typical functions but can be changed as necessary. Six items in the following options are available. **Value: Original Size, 2-sided/Book Original, Sending Size, Original Orientation, File Format, Density, Original Image, Scan Resolution, FAX TX Resolution[*1], Color Selection, Zoom, Continuous Scan, Background Density Adj., Quiet Mode**
Dest. Check before Send	Select whether to display the confirmation screen of destinations after pressing the [**Start**] key when performing sending jobs. **Value: Off, On**
Color Type	Set the color type when you send color documents. **Value: RGB, sRGB**
Entry Check for New Dest.	When adding new destination, select whether to display the entry check screen to check the entered destination. **Value: Off, On**
Default Screen	Set the default screen displayed when you select the [**Send**] key. **Value: Destination, Address Book**

Item		Description
Send and Forward		Select whether to forward the original to another destination when sending images.
	Forward	Select whether to forward the original. **Value**: Off, On **NOTE** When selecting [**On**], select rules to forward from [**E-mail**], [**Folder(SMB)**], [**Folder(FTP)**], [**FAX**]*1, [**i-FAX(Via server-On)**]*2, and [**i-FAX(Via server-Off)**]*2.
	Destination	Set the destination to which the original is forwarded. One destination can be set. Follow the steps below to register the destination. • Address Book • E-mail Addr Entry • Folder Path Entry ➡ Specifying Destination (page 5-39)
	Color Setting	Configure the color settings for forwarded original. **Value**: Auto Color (Color/Gray), Auto Color (Color/B & W), Full Color, Grayscale, Black & White
	Scan Resolution	Select resolution for stored original. **Value**: 600x600dpi, 400x400dpi Ultra Fine, 300x300dpi, 200x400dpi Super Fine, 200x200dpi Fine, 200x100dpi Normal
	File Format	Select the file format of forwarded original. ➡ File format for Send and Forward (page 8-30)
	File Separation	Set whether originals are divided into multiple files before being forwarded. **Value**: Off, Each Page
	E-mail Subject	Enter a maximum of 60 characters for the subject of forwarded E-mail. ➡ Character Entry Method (page 11-10)
	FTP Encrypted TX	Set whether originals are encrypted before being forwarded. **Value**: Off, On **NOTE** This function is displayed when SSL is set to [**On**] in Security Settings. ➡ Security Settings (page 8-45)
New Destination Entry		Select whether to permit direct entry of destination. **Value**: Prohibit, Permit
Recall Destination		Select whether to permit usage of [**Recall**] on the Send screen. **Value**: Prohibit, Permit
OCR Text Recognition Act.		Configure settings for OCR Text Recognition Action. **Value**: Speed Priority, Quality Priority **NOTE** This function can only be used when the optional OCR Scan Activation Kit is installed. ➡ Scan extension kit(A) "OCR Scan Activation Kit" (page 11-7)
HighCompressionPDF Mode		Select the compression method for sending High-Compression PDF. **Value**: Text Priority, File Size Priority

*1 Displayed only when the optional fax kit is installed.
*2 This function is displayed when the optional Internet FAX Kit is activated.

File format for Send and Forward

[**System Menu**] key > [**Send**] > [**Send and Forward**] > [**File Format**]

Select the file format for forwarded original.

The table below lists the file formats and their details.

File format	Adjustable range of image quality	Color setting
PDF*	1 Low Quality (High Comp.) to 5 High Quality (Low Comp.)	Auto Color (Color/Grayscale), Auto Color (Color/Black and White), Full Color, Grayscale, Black and White
TIFF	1 Low Quality (High Comp.) to 5 High Quality (Low Comp.)	Auto Color (Color/Grayscale), Auto Color (Color/Black and White), Full Color, Grayscale, Black and White
JPEG	1 Low Quality (High Comp.) to 5 High Quality (Low Comp.)	Auto Color (Color/Grayscale), Full Color, Grayscale
XPS	1 Low Quality (High Comp.) to 5 High Quality (Low Comp.)	Auto Color (Color/Grayscale), Auto Color (Color/Black and White), Full Color, Grayscale, Black and White
OpenXPS	1 Low Quality (High Comp.) to 5 High Quality (Low Comp.)	Auto Color (Color/Grayscale), Auto Color (Color/Black and White), Full Color, Grayscale, Black and White
High Comp. PDF [*1]	Compression Ratio Priority, Standard, Quality Priority	Auto Color (Color/Grayscale), Auto Color (Color/Black and White), Full Color, Grayscale

*1 File format can be selected. (**Value**: [**Off**] / [**PDF/A-1a**] / [**PDF/A-1b**])

PDF Encryption Functions

If you have selected PDF or High Comp. PDF for file format, you can restrict the access level for displaying, printing, and editing PDF's by assigning a secure password.
Items that can be set vary depending on the setting selected in "Compatibility".

When [Acrobat 3.0 or later] is selected

[**System Menu**] key > [**Send**] > [**Send and Forward**] > [**File Format**] > [**PDF/High Comp. PDF**] > [**Encryption**]

Item			Value	Description
Password to Open Document			Off, On	Enter the password to open the PDF file. Select [**Password**], enter a password (up to 256 characters) and then select [**OK**]. Select [**Confirmation**] to enter the password again for confirmation, and select [**OK**].
Password to Edit/Print Document			Off, On	Enter the password to edit the PDF file. Select [**Password**], enter a password (up to 256 characters) and then select [**OK**]. Select [**Confirmation**] to enter the password again for confirmation, and select [**OK**]. When you have entered the password to edit/print document, you can specifically limit the operation.
	Detail	**Printing Allowed**	Not Allowed, Allowed	Restricts printing of the PDF file.
		Changes Allowed	Not Allowed	Disables the change to the PDF file.
			Commenting	Can only add commenting.
			Page Layout except extracting Pages	Can change the page layout except extracting the pages of the PDF file.
			Any except extracting Pages	Can conduct all operations except extracting the pages of the PDF file.
		Copying of Text/ Images/Others	Disable, Enable	Restricts the copying of text and objects on the PDF file.

When [Acrobat 5.0 or later] is selected

[**System Menu**] key > [**Send**] > [**Send and Forward**] > [**File Format**] > [**PDF/High Comp. PDF**] > [**Encryption**]

Item			Value	Description
Password to Open Document			Off, On	Enter the password to open the PDF file. Select [**Password**], enter a password (up to 256 characters) and then select [**OK**]. Select [**Confirmation**] to enter the password again for confirmation, and select [**OK**].
Password to Edit/Print Document			Off, On	Enter the password to edit the PDF file. Select [**Password**], enter a password (up to 256 characters) and then select [**OK**]. Select [**Confirmation**] to enter the password again for confirmation, and select [**OK**]. When you have entered the password to edit/print document, you can specifically limit the operation.
	Detail	**Printing Allowed**	Not Allowed	Disables the printing of PDF file.
			Allowed (Low Resolution only)	Can print the PDF file only in low resolution.
			Allowed	Can print the PDF file in original resolution.
		Changes Allowed	Not Allowed	Disables the change to the PDF file.
			Inserting/Deleting/ Rotating Pages	Can only insert, delete, and rotate the pages of the PDF file.
			Commenting	Can only add commenting.
			Any except extracting Pages	Can conduct all operations except extracting the pages of the PDF file.
		Copying of Text/ Images/Others	Disable, Enable	Restricts the copying of text and objects on the PDF file.

8-32

Document Box/Removable Memory

[**System Menu**] key > [**Document Box/Removable Memory**]

Configures settings related to the Custom Box, Job Box, Sub Address Box and Polling Box.

Item		Description
Custom Box[*1]		Configure settings for Custom Box.
	Add/Edit Box	➡ Creating a New Custom Box (page 5-51)
	Default Setting	Auto File Deletion Time Set the time to automatically delete stored documents.
FAX Box[*2]		➡ **FAX Operation Guide**
Job Box		Configure settings for Job Box.
	Quick Copy Job Retention	To maintain free space on the hard disk, you can set the maximum number of stored jobs. **Value**: **number between 0 and 300** **NOTE** When 0 is set, Quick Copy cannot be used.
	Repeat Copy Job Retention	To maintain free space on the hard disk, you can set the maximum number of stored jobs. **Value**: **number between 0 and 50** **NOTE** This function will not be displayed when the optional Data Security Kit is activated. When 0 is set, Repeat Copy cannot be used.
	Deletion of Job Retention	This setting specifies that documents, such as Private Printing, Quick Copying, or Proof and Hold Printing, saved temporarily in the job box are automatically deleted after they have been saved for a set time. **Value**: **Off, 1 hour, 4 hours, 1 day, 1 week** **NOTE** This function is valid for documents saved after the function is set. Regardless of this function setting, temporary documents are deleted when the power switch is turned off.
Polling Box[*2]		➡ **FAX Operation Guide**
Quick Setup Registration		Select the functions to be registered for Quick Setup. Six keys of the Quick Setup screen are allocated to typical functions but can be changed as necessary.
	Store File	Select the functions to be registered for Store File Quick Setup. **Color Selection, Storing Size, Density, 2-sided/Book Original, Scan Resolution, Zoom, Original Orientation, Original Size, Original Image, Continuous Scan, Background Density Adj., Quiet Mode** **Value**: **Off, Key 1 to 6**
	Print	Select the functions to be registered for Print Quick Setup. **Paper Selection, Collate/Offset**[*3]**, Staple/Punch, Duplex**[*4]**, Combine, Delete after Printed, Quiet Mode** **Value**: **Off, Key 1 to 6**
	Send	Select the functions to be registered for Send Quick Setup. **Sending Size, FAX TX Resolution**[*2]**, File Format, Delete after Transmitted** **Value**: **Off, Key 1 to 6**

*1 Display only when a hard disk is installed.
*2 Displayed only when the optional fax kit is installed.
*3 When an optional Sheet Finisher is not installed, this item name is "Collate".
*4 Display only when an optional Sheet Finisher is installed. When a punching unit is not installed, this item name is "Staple".

FAX

[**System Menu**] key > [**FAX**]

Configure settings for FAX.

➡ **FAX Operation Guide**

Printer

[**System Menu**] key > [**Printer**]

Printing from computers, settings are generally made on the application software screen. However, the following settings are available for configuring the defaults to customize the machine.

Item	Description
Emulation	Select the emulation for operating this machine by commands oriented to other types of printers. **Value: PCL6, KPDL, KPDL (Auto)** **NOTE** When you have selected [**KPDL (Auto)**], set "Alt Emulation", too. When you have selected [**KPDL**] or [**KPDL (Auto)**], set "KPDL Error Report", too.
Alt Emulation	When you have selected [**KPDL (Auto)**] as emulation mode, you can switch between KPDL and another emulation mode (alternative emulation) automatically according to the data to print. **Value: PCL6**
KPDL Error Report	When an error has occurred during printing in KPDL emulation mode, set whether or not the error report is output. **Value: Off, On**
Color Setting	You can choose whether reports are printed in color or black and white. **Value: Color, Black & White**
Gloss Mode	Gloss Mode increases the effect of glossiness in printing. However, printing takes longer time. **Value: Off, On** **IMPORTANT** **Gloss Mode is not available when [Labels] or [Transparency] is selected as the paper type setting.** ➡ Cassette/MP Tray Settings (page 8-7) Depending on the paper used, printing in gloss mode may cause curl in paper. To reduce curl, try using thicker paper.
EcoPrint	EcoPrint conserves toner when printing. This is recommended for test copies where faded printing is not a problem. **Value: Off, On**
Toner Save Level (EcoPrint)	Select the default Toner Save Level (EcoPrint). **Value: 1 (Low) to 5 (High)** **NOTE** Raising the level reduces toner consumption, but image quality falls.

Item	Description
Override A4/Letter	Select whether to treat A4 size and Letter, which are similar in size, as the same size when printing. **Value** **Off: A4 and Letter are not regarded as the same in size.** **On: A4 and Letter are regarded as the same in size. The machine will use whichever size is in the paper source.**
Duplex	Select binding orientation for duplex mode. **Value**: **1-sided, 2-sided Bind LongEdge, 2-sided Bind ShortEdge**
Copies	Set the default number of copies, from 1 to 999. **Value**: **1 to 999 copies**
Orientation	Set the default orientation, [**Portrait**] or [**Landscape**]. **Value**: **Portrait, Landscape**
Form Feed TimeOut	Receiving print data from the computer, the machine may sometimes wait if there is no information signaling that the last page does not have any more data to be printed. When the preset timeout passes, the machine automatically prints paper. The options are between 5 and 495 seconds. **Value**: **5 to 495 seconds (in 5 second increments)**
LF Action	Set the line feed action when the machine receives the line feed code (character code 0AH). **Value**: **LF Only, LF and CR, Ignore LF**
CR Action	Set the character return action when the machine receives the character return code (character code 0DH). **Value**: **CR Only, LF and CR, Ignore CR**
Job Name	Set whether the job name set in the printer driver is displayed. **Value**: **Off, On** **📝 NOTE** When selecting [**On**], select the job name to be displayed from [**Job Name**], [**Job No. & Job Name**], or [**Job Name & Job No.**].
User Name	Set whether the user name set in the printer driver is displayed. **Value**: **Off, On**
Paper Feed Mode	While printing from the computer, select how to feed paper when the paper source and type are specified. **Value** **Auto: Search the paper source that matches the selected paper size and type.** **Fixed: Print on paper loaded in the specified paper source.**
MP Tray Priority	If paper is set in the MP Tray then it is possible for priority to be given to that MP tray in the paper feed. **Value** **Off: The printer driver settings are followed.** **Auto Feed: If Auto is selected in the printer driver and there is paper in the MP tray then the paper feed will be from the MP tray.** **Always: If there is paper in the MP tray then the paper feed will be from the MP tray regardless of what is set in the printer driver.**

8-35

Item	Description
Auto Cassette Change	Select the following actions when the paper runs out in the paper source while printing. **Value:** Off, On 🖻 **NOTE** When selecting [**Off**], the machine displays "Add the following paper in cassette #." (# is a cassette number) or "Add the following paper in the multi purpose tray.", and stops printing. Load the paper according to the paper source displayed to resume printing. To print from the other paper cassette, select [**Paper Selection**]. Select the desired paper source. When selecting [**On**], the machine continues printing automatically when the other cassette contains the same paper as the currently-used cassette.
Wide A4	Turn this to on to increase the maximum number of characters that can be printed in a line for an A4 page (78 characters at 10 pitch) and Letter size page (80 characters at 10 pitch). This setting is only effective in PCL6 emulation. **Value:** Off, On
Resolution	Set the resolution used for printing. **Value:** 600 dpi, 1200 dpi 🖻 **NOTE** Settings that are received from the printer driver have priority over the operation panel settings.
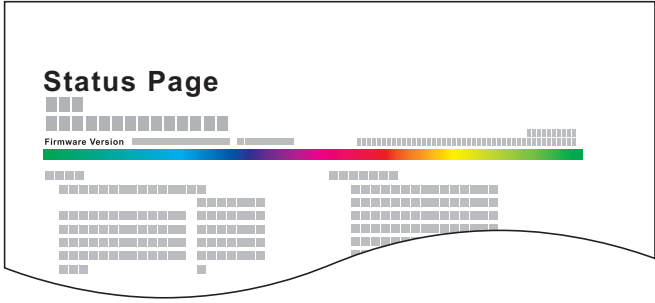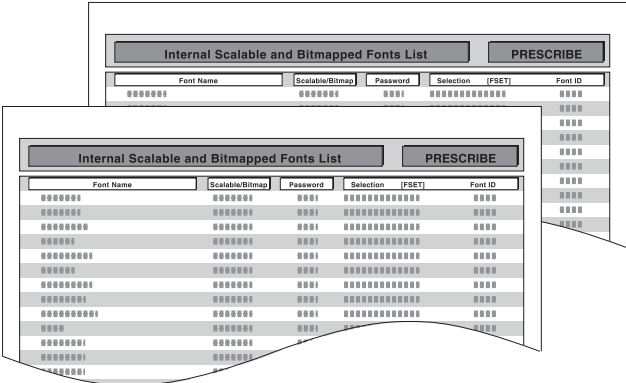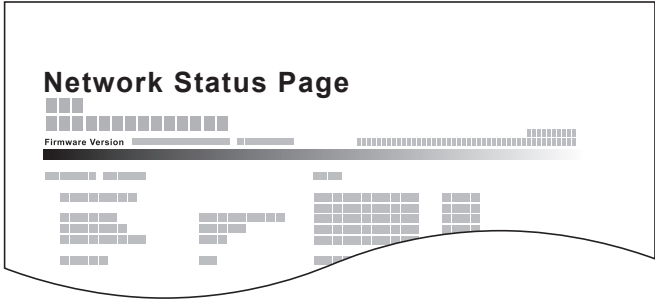
Report

Print reports to check the machine settings and status.

Default settings for printing the result reports can also be configured.

Print Report

[**System Menu**] key > [**Report**] > [**Print Report**]

Item	Description
Status Page	Prints the status page, allowing you to check the information including current settings, available memory space, and optional equipment installed.
Font List	Prints the font list, allowing you to check the font samples installed in the machine.
Network Status	Prints the network status, allowing you to check the information including network interface firmware version, network address and protocol.
Service Status	Prints the service status. More detailed information is available than on the Status Page. Service personnel usually print the service status pages for maintenance purpose.
Optional Network Status	Prints the optional network status, allowing you to check the information including optional network interface firmware version, network address and protocol. **NOTE** This function is displayed when the optional network interface kit or Wireless Network Interface Kit is installed.

Admin Report Settings

[**System Menu**] key > [**Report**] > [**Admin Report Settings**]

Configure settings for fax functions.

➡ **FAX Operation Guide**

Result Report Setting

[**System Menu**] key > [**Report**] > [**Result Report Setting**]

Item		Description
Send Result Report		Automatically print a report of transmission result when a transmission is complete.
	E-mail/Folder	Automatically print a report of transmission result when E-mail or SMB/FTP transmission is complete. **Value: Off, On, Error Only**
	FAX[*1]	➡ **FAX Operation Guide**
	Canceled before Sending[*2]	Print a send result report if the job is canceled before being sent. **Value: Off, On**
	Recipient Format[*2]	Select the Recipient Format for the send result report. **Value: Name or Destination, Name and Destination**
FAX RX Result Report[*1]		➡ **FAX Operation Guide**
Job Finish Notice Setting[*1]		➡ **FAX Operation Guide**
RX Result Report Type[*1*3]		➡ **FAX Operation Guide**

*1   Displayed only when the optional FAX Kit is installed.
*2   When "E-mail/Folder" and "FAX" are set to [**Off**], this function will not be displayed.
*3   This is not displayed if you selected [**Off**] for FAX RX Result Report.

Sending Log History

[**System Menu**] key > [**Report**] > [**Sending Log History**]

Item	Description
Auto Sending	This function automatically sends the log history to the specified destinations whenever a set number of jobs has been logged. **Value: Off, On** 💾 **NOTE** If [**On**] is selected, specify the number of job histories. The setting range is the following: 350ci: 1 to 100 (1 to 1500 when the HDD is installed) 400ci: 1 to 1500
Send Log History	You can also send the log history to the specified destinations manually.
Destination	Set the destination to which log histories are sent. Only E-mail address can be set.
Job Log Subject	Set the subject automatically entered when sending log histories by E-mail. **Value: Up to 60 characters**
Personal Information	Select whether to include personal information in the job log. **Value: Include, Exclude**

Login History Settings

[**System Menu**] key > [**Report**] > [**Login History Settings**]

Item	Description
Login History	Select whether to record the Login History. **Value: Off, On** **NOTE** If [**On**] is selected, set the number of histories to be recorded. The setting range is 1 to 1,000.
Auto Sending	Select whether the login history is automatically sent to the set address when the number of entries reaches the number set in "Login History". **Value: Off, On** **NOTE** This function is displayed when "Login History" is set to [**On**].
Destination	Set the destination to which login histories are sent. E-mail address only can be set as destination. **NOTE** This function is displayed when "Login History" is set to [**On**].
Subject	Set the subject automatically entered when sending login histories by E-mail. **Value: Up to 60 characters** **NOTE** This function is displayed when "Login History" is set to [**On**].
Log Reset	Resets the recorded login histories.

NOTE

If the user authentication screen appears, enter your login user name and login password and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login with administrator privileges. The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Model Name	Login User Name	Login Password
350ci	3500	3500
400ci	4000	4000

Device Log History Settings

[**System Menu**] key > [**Report**] > [**Device Log History Settings**]

Item	Description
Device Log History	Select whether to record the device log history. **Value: Off, On** 🔍 **NOTE** If [**On**] is selected, set the number of histories to be stored. The setting range is 1 to 1,000.
Auto Sending	Select whether the device log history is automatically sent to the set address when the number of entries reaches the number set in "Device Log History". **Value: Off, On** 🔍 **NOTE** This function is displayed when "Device Log History" is set to [**On**].
Destination	Set the destination to which device log histories are sent. E-mail address only can be set as destination. 🔍 **NOTE** This function is displayed when "Device Log History" is set to [**On**].
Subject	Set the subject automatically entered when sending device log histories by E-mail. **Value: Up to 60 characters** 🔍 **NOTE** This function is displayed when "Device Log History" is set to [**On**].

🔍 **NOTE**

If the user authentication screen appears, enter your login user name and login password and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login with administrator privileges. The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Model Name	Login User Name	Login Password
350ci	3500	3500
400ci	4000	4000

Secure Comm. Error Log

[**System Menu**] key > [**Report**] > [**Secure Comm. Error Log**]

Item	Description
Secure Comm. Error Log	Select whether to record the secure communication error log history. **Value**: Off, On **NOTE** If [**On**] is selected, set the number of histories to be stored. The setting range is 1 to 1,000.
Auto Sending	Select whether the secure communication error log history is automatically sent to the set address when the number of entries reaches the number set in "Secure Comm. Error Log". **Value**: Off, On **NOTE** This function is displayed when "Secure Communication Error Log History" is set to [**On**].
Destination	Set the destination to which secure communication error log histories are sent. E-mail address only can be set as destination. **NOTE** This function is displayed when "Secure Communication Error Log History" is set to [**On**].
Subject	Set the subject automatically entered when sending secure communication error log histories by E-mail. **Value**: Up to 60 characters **NOTE** This function is displayed when "Secure Communication Error Log History" is set to [**On**].

NOTE

If the user authentication screen appears, enter your login user name and login password and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login with administrator privileges. The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Model Name	Login User Name	Login Password
350ci	3500	3500
400ci	4000	4000

System/Network

Configures machine system settings.

Network

[**System Menu**] key > [**System/Network**] > [**Network**]

Configures network settings.

Host Name

Item	Description
Host Name	Check the host name of the machine. Host name can be changed from Embedded Web Server RX. ➡ Changing Device Information (page 2-53)

TCP/IP Setting

Item		Description
TCP/IP		Select whether to use TCP/IP Protocol. **Value: Off, On**
IPv4		Set up TCP/IP (IPv4) to connect to the network. This setting is available when [**TCP/IP**] is set to [**On**].
	IP Address	Set the IP address. **Value: ###.###.###.###** **NOTE** When DHCP is set to [**On**], this function will be grayed out and the value cannot be entered.
	Subnet Mask	Set the IP subnet mask. **Value: ###.###.###.###** **NOTE** When DHCP is set to [**On**], this function will be grayed out and the value cannot be entered.
	Default Gateway	Set the IP gateway address. **Value: ###.###.###.###** **NOTE** When DHCP is set to [**On**], this function will be grayed out and the value cannot be entered.
	DHCP	Select whether to use the DHCP (IPv4) server. **Value: Off, On**
	Auto-IP	Select whether to use Auto-IP. **Value: Off, On**

IMPORTANT

• **When setting the Auto-IP, enter "0.0.0.0" in [IP Address].**

• **After changing the setting, restart the network or turn the machine OFF and then ON.**

Item	Description
IPv6	Set up TCP/IP (IPv6) to connect to the network. This setting is available when [**TCP/IP**] is [**On**].
IPv6	Select whether to use IPv6. **Value: Off, On** 🔍 **NOTE** Selecting [**On**] displays IP address in [**IP Address (Link Local)**] after restarting the network.
RA (Stateless)	Select whether to use RA (Stateless). **Value: Off, On** 🔍 **NOTE** This function is displayed when [**IPv6**] is set to [**On**]. Selecting [**On**] displays IP address in [**IP Address (Stateless)**] after restarting the network.
Manual Setting	Manually specify the IP address, prefix length, and gateway address of TCP/IP (IPv6). **Value** **IP Address (Manual):** 128-bits address is expressed in eight groups consisting of four-digit hexadecimal digits. The groups are separated by colon (:). **Prefix Length: 0 to 128** **Default Gateway:** 128-bits address is expressed in eight groups consisting of four-digit hexadecimal digits. The groups are separated by colon (:). 🔍 **NOTE** This function is displayed when [**IPv6**] is set to [**On**]. To enter "Default Gateway", set [**RA (Stateless)**] to [**Off**].
DHCP	Select whether to use the DHCP (IPv6) server. **Value: Off, On** 🔍 **NOTE** This function is displayed when [**IPv6**] is set to [**On**]. Selecting [**On**] displays IP address in [**IP Address (Stateful)**] after restarting the network.
Bonjour	Select whether to use Bonjour. **Value: Off, On**
IPSec	Select whether to use IPSec. **Value: Off, On**

✓ **IMPORTANT**

After changing the setting, restart the network or turn the machine OFF and then ON.

Protocol Settings

Item	Description
SMTP (E-mail TX)	Select whether to send E-mail using SMTP. **Value: Off, On**
POP3 (E-mail RX)	Select whether to receive E-mail using POP3. **Value: Off, On**
FTP Client (Transmission)	Select whether to send documents using FTP. To use the FTP Client, set the protocol to [**On**]. The default port number is 21. **Value: Off, On**
FTP Server (Reception)	Select whether to receive documents using FTP.[*1] **Value: Off, On**
SMB Client (Transmission):	Select whether to send documents using SMB. To use the SMB Client, set the protocol to [**On**]. The default port number is 445. **Value: Off, On**
NetBEUI	Selects whether to receive documents using NetBEUI.[*1] **Value: Off, On**
WSD Scan	Select whether to use WSD Scan.[*1] **Value: Off, On**
WSD Print	Set whether to use our proprietary web services. WIA driver, TWAIN driver and Network FAX driver use this Enhanced WSD web service.[*1] **Value: Off, On**
i-FAX	Select whether to use i-FAX. **Value: Off, On** **NOTE** This function is displayed when the optional Internet FAX Kit is activated.
DSM Scan	Select whether to use DSM scan.[*1] **Value: Off, On**
ThinPrint	Select whether to use ThinPrint. To use the Thin Print protocol, set the protocol to [**On**]. The default port number is 4000.[*1, *2] **Value: Off, On** **NOTE** This function is displayed only when the optional ThinPrint Option is activated.
	Thin Print over SSL To use the Thin Print over SSL protocol, set [**Thin Print Over SSL**] and [**SSL**] to [**On**]. **Value: Off, On** **NOTE** When selecting [**On**], it also requires a certificate for SSL. The default certificate is the self-certificate of the machine. ➡ **Embedded Web Server RX User Guide**
LPD	Selects whether to receive documents using LPD.[*1] **Value: Off, On**
Raw	Select whether to receive documents using Raw Port.[*1] **Value: Off, On**
IPP	Selects whether to receive documents using IPP. To use the IPP protocol, set [**IPP**] to [**On**], and set [**SSL**] to [**Off**]. In addition, select [**Not Secure (IPP&IPPS)**)] on IPP Security under Security Settings from the Embedded Web Server RX. The default port number is 631.[*1] **Value: Off, On**

Item	Description
IPP over SSL	To use the IPP protocol, set [**IPP**] and [**SSL**] to [**On**]. The default port number is 443.[*1, *2] **Value: Off, On** **🔍 NOTE** When selecting [**On**], it also requires a certificate for SSL. The default certificate is the self-certificate of the machine. ➡ **Embedded Web Server RX User Guide**
HTTP	Select whether to communicate using HTTP.[*1] **Value: Off, On**
HTTPS	Select whether to communicate using HTTPS.[*1, *2] **Value: Off, On**
LDAP	Select whether to use LDAP. **Value: Off, On**
SNMPv1/v2c	Select whether to communicate using SNMP.[*1] **Value: Off, On**
SNMPv3	Select whether to communicate using SNMPv3.[*1] **Value: Off, On**
Enhanced WSD	Set whether to use our proprietary web services.[*1] **Value: Off, On** **🔍 NOTE** Selecting [**Off**] will disable the functionality of WIA, TWAIN, and Network FAX driver.
Enhanced WSD over SSL	Set whether to use our proprietary web services over SSL.[*1, *2] **Value: Off, On** **🔍 NOTE** Selecting [**Off**] will disable the functionality of WIA, TWAIN and Network FAX drivers.
eSCL	Selects whether to receive scanned documents using eSCL.[*1]
eSCL over SSL	Selects whether to receive scanned documents using eSCL over SSL.[*1, *2]

*1 The setting will be changed after restarting the device or network.
*2 Set "SSL" to [**On**] in Security Settings.
➡ Security Settings (page 8-45)

✓ IMPORTANT

After changing the setting, restart the network or turn the machine OFF and then ON.

Security Settings

Item	Description
SSL	Select whether to use SSL for communication. **Value: Off, On**

LAN Interface

Item	Description
LAN Interface	Specify the settings for the LAN interface to be used. **Value: Auto, 10BASE-T Half, 10BASE-T Full, 100BASE-T Half, 100BASE-TX Full, 1000BASE-T**

⊘ **IMPORTANT**

After changing the setting, restart the network or turn the machine OFF and then ON.

Restart Network

Item	Description
Restart Network	Restarts the network.

Proxy

Item		Description
Proxy		Set the proxy for connection to the Internet from an application.
		Value: Off, On
	Use the Same Proxy Server for All Protocols	Set whether the same proxy server is used for all protocols. To use the same proxy server, select the [**Use the Same Proxy Server for All Protocols**] checkbox.
	Proxy Server (HTTP)	Set a proxy server (HTTP).
		Value: (Enter the proxy address and port number.)
	Proxy Server (HTTPS)	Set a proxy server (HTTPS). This setup is available when "Use the Same Proxy Server for All Protocols" is [**Off**].
		Value: (Enter the proxy address and port number.)
	Do Not Use Proxy for Following Domains	Set domains for which no proxy is used.
		Value: (Enter the domain name.)

Ping

Item	Description
Ping	Checks if communication with the destination by entering the host name or IP address of the destination is possible.
	📷 **NOTE**
	If [**Network Interface (Send)**] is set to [**Optional NIC**], this item is not displayed.

Optional Network

[**System Menu**] key > [**System/Network**] > [**Optional Network**]

Configure settings for the optional Network Interface Kit.

> **NOTE**
> This menu is displayed when the optional network interface kit or Wireless Network Interface Kit is installed.

Basic

Item	Description
Host Name	Check the host name of the machine. Host name can be changed from Embedded Web Server RX. ➡ [Changing Device Information (page 2-53)](#)
TCP/IP Setting	For details on setting value. ➡ [TCP/IP Setting (page 8-42)](#) [IPSec (page 8-43)](#)
NetWare	Use NetWare to receive documents. See the Operation Guide for the optional network interface card for details. **Value: Off, On**
AppleTalk	Selects whether to receive documents using AppleTalk.[1] **Value: Off, On**
LAN Interface	Select the LAN Interface type.[1] **Value: Auto, 10Base-Half, 10Base-Full, 100Base-Half, 100Base-Full, 1000BASE-T** **NOTE** This function is displayed when the optional network interface kit is installed.
MAC Address Filter	Select whether to use MAC Address Filter. ➡ **Operation Guide** for the optional network interface kit **Value: Off, On**
Restart Network	Restarts the network card of the device.

[1] The setting will be changed after restarting the device or network.

Wireless Network

[**System Menu**] key > [**System/Network**] > [**Wireless Network**]

Configure settings for the optional Wireless Network Interface Kit.

Setup

> **NOTE**
>
> This function is displayed when the optional Wireless Network Interface Kit is installed.

Item	Description
Connection Status	When the optional Wireless Network Interface Kit is installed, you can check the wireless LAN status.
Quick Setup Wizard	If the machine will connect to an access point that supports the automatic wireless network setup, connection settings can be configured by Quick Setup.
Available Network	Select access points to which the machine can be connected, enter the Preshared Key and start a connection.
Push Button Method	If the access point supports the push button method, wireless settings can be configured using the push button. This setting executes push button, and the connection is started by pressing the push button on the access point. > **NOTE** > > The push button method supports only the WPS.
PIN Code Method (Device)	Starts connection using the machine's PIN code. Enter the PIN code into the access point. The PIN code of the machine is automatically generated.
PIN Code Method (Terminal)	Starts connection using the PIN code of the access point. Enter the PIN code of the access point.
Custom Setup	The detailed settings for wireless LAN can be changed.
Network Name (SSID)	Set the SSID (Service Set Identifier) of the wireless LAN to which the machine connects. > **NOTE** > > Up to 32 characters can be entered.
Connection Mode	Set the connection mode. **Value: Ad Hoc, Infrastructure** > **NOTE** > > **Ad Hoc**: Directly communicates with the device without going through an access point. This method cannot be used to connect to two or more devices. > **Infrastructure**: Performs communication through an access point.
Channel	Set channel. Use [-] / [+] or the numeric keys to enter a number. **Value: 1 to 11**
Network Authentication	Select network authentication type. To select other options, open the device home page from a computer. **Value: Open, Shared, WPA-PSK**[*1]**, WPA2-PSK**[*1]
Encryption	Select encryption method. If the option other than [**Disable**] is selected, enter the WEP key or the Preshared key. The setting values vary depending on the Network Authentication setting. Select [**Data Encryption**]. **When Network Authentication is set to [Open] or [Shared]** **Value: Disable, WEP** **When Network Authentication is set to [WPA-PSK] or [WPA2-PSK]** **Value: TKIP**[*2]**, AES, Auto**[*2]**, Preshared Key** > **NOTE** > > If [**WEP**] is selected, enter the WEP key. Up to 26 characters can be entered. > If [**TKIP**], [**AES**] or [**Auto**] is selected, enter the Preshared key. Enter the value in 8 to 64 characters.

*1 Not displayed if you selected [**Ad Hoc**] for "Connection Mode".
*2 Not displayed if you selected [**WPA2-PSK**] for "Network Authentication".

Network Interface (Send)

[**System Menu**] key > [**System/Network**] > [**Network Interface (Send)**]

> **NOTE**
>
> This function is displayed when the optional network interface kit or Wireless Network Interface Kit is installed.

Item	Description
Network Interface (Send)	Specify the network interface card to be used for the send function, the network authentication and connecting to external address book. **Value: Standard, Optional NIC**

Security Level

[**System Menu**] key > [**System/Network**] > [**Security Level**]

Item	Description
Security Level	Specify the security level. **Value** Low: **This mode is used during maintenance. Do not use normally.** High: **This is the security setting we recommend. Use this setting normally.** Very High: **In addition to [High] setting, this setting disables the machine settings to be changed from external command.**

Interface Block Setting

[**System Menu**] key > [**System/Network**] > [**Interface Block Setting**]

This allows you to protect this machine by blocking the interface with external devices such as USB hosts or optional interfaces.

Item	Description
USB Host	This locks and protects the USB port (USB host). **Value: Unblock, Block**
USB Device	This locks and protects the USB interface connector (USB Device). **Value: Unblock, Block**
USB Storage	This locks and protects the USB memory slot. **Value: Unblock, Block** > **NOTE** > This function is available when USB Host is set to [**Unblock**].
Optional Interface 1 Optional Interface 2	This locks and protects the optional interface slots. **Value: Unblock, Block** > **NOTE** > You can set this feature for each slot.

> **IMPORTANT**
>
> **After changing the setting, restart the network or turn the machine OFF and then ON.**

Data Security

[**System Menu**] key > [**System/Network**] > [**Data Security**]

Configure settings for data stored in the SSD, hard disk, and machine's memory.

Item	Description
SSD Initialization	Initialize data saved on an SSD. ➡ **Data Security Kit (E) Operation Guide** 📷 **NOTE** This function is displayed when the SSD is installed and the optional Data Security Kit is activated.
Hard Disk Initialization	Initialize data saved on a hard disk. ➡ **Data Security Kit (E) Operation Guide** 📷 **NOTE** This function is displayed when the Hard Disk is installed and the optional Data Security Kit is activated.
Hard Disk/SSD Initialization	Initialize data saved on a hard disk/SSD. ➡ **Data Security Kit (E) Operation Guide** 📷 **NOTE** This function is displayed when the Hard Disk and SSD are installed, and the optional Data Security Kit is activated.
Data Sanitization	Return the following information registered in the machine to the factory defaults. • Address Book • Favorites • System settings • Fax transmission and reception / forwarding data • Transmission histories • Data saved in Custom Box • Optional applications 📷 **NOTE** Once in progress, the processing cannot canceled. Before executing this function, disconnect modular, network, and other cables. Do not turn off the power switch while sanitizing the data. If the power is turned off during data erasing, erasing will be executed automatically when the power is restored, however, complete erasure cannot be guaranteed.
Software Verification	Verify the installed software. Select [**Start**] to start verification. If an error occurs during software verification, contact your dealer or service representative.

Information erased

Category	Data erased
Devices/jobs	• Job settings configured by users • Network settings • Image data saved in Document Box, etc. • Data registered in One Touch keys • Job histories • User information (user list, address book, Document Box registered by the user, etc.) • Account information of job accounting • Network certificates • Initial screen on machine changed by service representative
FAX[*1]	• Fax settings configured by users • Communication restriction settings • Encryption key settings • Transmission histories • Scheduled jobs • Conditional reception/forwarding settings
Application/program	• Application/program added by a user or service representative • Trial functions

*1 Only when the optional fax kit is installed.

Optional Function

[**System Menu**] key > [**System/Network**] > [**Optional Function**]

Item	Description
Optional Function	You can use the optional applications installed on this machine. ➡ Optional Applications (page 11-8)

Restart Entire Device

[**System Menu**] key > [**System/Network**] > [**Restart Entire Device**]

Item	Description
Restart Entire Device	Restart the CPU without turning the power switch off. Use this to deal with any unstable operation by the machine. (Same as the computer restart.)

Edit Destination

Address Book

[**System Menu**] key > [**Edit Destination**] > [**Address Book**]

Configure settings for address book.

➡ [Adding a Destination (Address Book) (page 3-22)](#)

One Touch Key

[**System Menu**] key > [**Edit Destination**] > [**One Touch Key**]

Configure settings for One Touch Key.

➡ [Adding a Destination on One Touch Key (One Touch Key) (page 3-29)](#)

Print list

[**System Menu**] key > [**Edit Destination**] > [**Print list**]

➡ **FAX Operation Guide**

Address Book Defaults

[**System Menu**] key > [**Edit Destination**] > [**Address Book Defaults**]

Item	Description
Sort	Select the default sort setting of the address for the address book. **Value: No., Name**
Narrow Down	This procedure can be used to filter (narrow down) the types of destination listed when the address book is displayed. **Value: Off, E-mail, Folder, FAX** [*1], **i-FAX**[*2], **Group**
Address Book Type	Select whether the machine's address book or the External Address Book appears when the address book is displayed. **Value: Machine Address Book, Ext Address Book**

*1 Displayed only when the optional fax kit is installed.
*2 This function is displayed when the optional Internet FAX Kit is activated.

User Login/Job Accounting

[**System Menu**] key > [**User Login/Job Accounting**]

Configure settings related to machine management.

➡ [Overview of User Login Administration (page 9-2)](#)
[Overview of Job Accounting (page 9-35)](#)
[Unknown ID Job (page 9-55)](#)

User Property

[**System Menu**] key > [**User Property**]

Allows you to view information about logged in users and edit some of that information.

➡ [Enabling User Login Administration (page 9-3)](#)

Date/Timer/Energy Saver

[**System Menu**] key > [**Date/Timer/Energy Saver**]

Configures settings related to the date and time.

Item	Description
Date/Time	Set the date and time for the location where you use the machine. If you perform Send as E-mail, the date and time set here will be displayed on the header. **Value**: Year (2000 to 2037), Month (1 to 12), Day (1 to 31), Hour (00 to 23), Minute (00 to 59), Second (00 to 59) **NOTE** If you change the date/time while using the trial version of an application, you will no longer be able to use the application.
Date Format	Select the display format of year, month, and date. The year is displayed in Western notation. **Value**: MM/DD/YYYY, DD/MM/YYYY, YYYY/MM/DD
Time Zone	Set the time difference from GMT. Choose the nearest listed location from the list. If you select a region that utilizes summer time, configure settings for summer time. ➜ Setting Date and Time (page 2-26)
Auto Panel Reset	If no jobs are run for a certain period of time, automatically reset settings and return to the default setting. Select to use Auto Panel Reset or not. **Value**: Off, On **NOTE** ➜ Panel Reset Timer (page 8-53)
Auto Error Clear	If an error occurs during processing, processing stops to wait for the next step to be taken by the user. In the Auto Error Clear mode, automatically clear the error after a set amount of time elapses. **Value**: Off, On ➜ Responding to Messages (page 10-30)
Low Power Timer	Set amount of time before entering the Low Power mode. **Value** **For Europe: 1 to 120 minutes (1 minute increments)** **Except for Europe: 1 to 240 minutes (1 minute increments)** ➜ Low Power Mode (page 2-29)
Panel Reset Timer	If you select [**On**] for Auto Panel Reset, set the amount of time to wait before Auto Panel Reset. **Value**: 5 to 495 seconds (in 5 second increments) **NOTE** This function is displayed when [**Auto Panel Reset**] is set to [**On**].
Sleep Timer	Set amount of time before entering Sleep. **Value** **For Europe: 1 to 120 minutes (1 minute increments)** **Except for Europe: 1 to 240 minutes (1 minute increments)**
Interrupt Clear Timer	Set the period after which the machine reverts to Normal mode when it has been set to Interrupt Copy mode and then left unused. **Value**: 5 to 495 seconds (in 5 second increments)

Item	Description
Error Job Skip	Set whether a job for which a "Add paper in cassette #" or "Add paper in Multi Purpose tray" error occurred when the job was started is automatically skipped after a set period of time elapses. **Value: Off, On** **NOTE** • When a job is skipped, it is moved to the end of the job queue. • If [**On**] is selected, set the time until the job is skipped. The setting range is 5 to 90 (5 second increments).
Error Clear Timer	If you select [**On**] for Auto Error Clear, set the amount of time to wait before automatically clearing errors. **Value: 5 to 495 seconds (in 5 second increments)** **NOTE** This function is displayed when [**Auto Error Clear**] is set to [**On**].
Unusable Time[*2]	➡ **FAX Operation Guide**.
Sleep Rules (models for Europe)	Select whether to use the Sleep mode for the following functions individually: • Network • USB Cable • Card Reader[*1] • FAX[*2] • Application **Value: Off, On** **NOTE** If the sleep condition is not turned off, the machine will not wake from sleep mode even if it receives a print job from a computer connected by USB cable. Also, the ID card cannot be recognized.
Sleep Level (models except for Europe)	Select the sleep level. Set the Energy Saver mode to reduce power consumption even more than normal Sleep mode. **Value: Quick Recovery, Energy Saver** **NOTE** This function will not be displayed when the optional Network Interface Kit is installed.
Sleep Rules	Select whether to use the Energy Saver mode for the following functions individually: • Network • USB Cable • Card Reader[*1] • FAX[*2] • Application **Value: Off, On** **NOTE** When the machine has entered sleep mode with Energy Saver setting, it does not wake from sleep mode when it receives print data from a PC connected by USB cable. Also, the ID card cannot be recognized.

Item	Description
EnergySaver RecoveryLevel	Select the method of recovery from energy saver. **Value:** **Full Recovery:** This mode enables the use of all functions immediately. However, this mode saves less energy. **Normal Recovery:** In this mode, you can select the method from the following: enabling the use of all functions immediately or enabling the use of desired functions only. If you want to use all functions immediately, select the [Energy Saver] key to execute recovery. **Power Saving Recovery:** This mode enables the use of desired functions only. This mode saves energy most effectively.
Weekly Timer Settings	Configure settings for switching the machine into Sleep mode and waking it automatically at a specified time for each day of the week.
Weekly Timer	Select whether to use Weekly Timer. **Value: Off, On**
Schedule	Specify the time for each day of the week at which the machine enters Sleep mode and recovers.
Retry Times	Set the number of retry to switch the machine into Sleep mode. **Value: Limited Retries, Unlimited Retries** 🔍 **NOTE** If [**Limited Retries**] is selected, set the number of retry. The setting range is 0 to 10. Retry is not performed when "0" is set. If [**Unlimited Retries**] is selected, retry is performed until the machine enters Sleep mode.
Retry Interval	Set the retry interval. Use [**-**] / [**+**] to enter a number. **Value: 10 to 60 seconds (increments of 10 seconds)**
Ping Timeout	Set the time until timeout occurs when [**Ping**] is executed in "System/Network". **Value: 1 to 30 seconds (in 1 second increments)**

*1   Displayed when the optional Card Authentication Kit is activated.
*2   Displayed only when the optional FAX Kit is installed.

Adjustment/Maintenance

[**System Menu**] key > [**Adjustment/Maintenance**]

Adjust printing quality and conduct machine maintenance.

Item			Description
Density Adjustment			Adjust density.
	Copy		Adjust copy density. Adjustment can be made in 7 levels. **Value**: -3 (Lighter), -2, -1, 0 (Normal), +1, +2, +3 (Darker)
	Send/Box		Adjust scan density when sending or storing the data in Document Box. Adjustment can be made in 7 levels. **Value**: -3 (Lighter), -2, -1, 0 (Normal), +1, +2, +3 (Darker)
	FAX[*1]		➜ FAX Operation Guide
Background Density Adj.			Darkens or lightens overall background density adjustment.
	Copy (Auto)		Darkens or lightens overall background density adjustment during copying. Adjustment can be made in 7 levels. **Value**: -3 (Lighter), -2, -1, 0 (Normal), +1, +2, +3 (Darker)
	Send/Box (Auto)		Darkens or lightens overall background density when sending images or storing them in the Document Box. Adjustment can be made in 7 levels. **Value**: -3 (Lighter), -2, -1, 0 (Normal), +1, +2, +3 (Darker)
Sharpness Adjustment			Adjust the sharpness of the image outline.
	Copy	**All**	Sharpen or blur overall image outlines during copying. Adjustment can be made in 7 levels. **Value**: -3 (Blur), -2, -1, 0, +1, +2, +3 (Sharpen)
		Text/Fine Line	Sharpen text/fine line during copying. Adjustment can be made in 4 levels. **Value**: 0 (Normal), 1, 2, 3 (Sharpen)
	Send/Box	**All**	Sharpen or blur overall image outlines when sending or storing them in the Document Box. Adjustment can be made in 7 levels. **Value**: -3 (Blur), -2, -1, 0, +1, +2, +3 (Sharpen)
		Text/Fine Line	Adjust sharpness of the text/fine line when during sending or storing them in the Document Box. Adjustment can be made in 4 levels. **Value**: 0 (Normal), 1, 2, 3 (Sharpen)
Drum Refresh			Remove image blur and white dots from the printout. It takes about 1 minute and 30 seconds. The time required may vary depending on the operating environment. ➜ Drum Refresh (page 10-49) **NOTE** Drum Refresh cannot be performed while printing. Execute Drum Refresh after the printing is done.
Correcting Black Lines			Correct fine lines (streaks caused by contamination), which may appear on the image, when the document processor is used. **Value** **Off: No correction performed.** **On (Low): Correction performed. The reproduction of fine lines on the original may become lighter than when using [Off].** **On (High): Select this item if a streak remains after using [On (Low)]. The reproduction of fine lines on the original may become lighter than when using [On (Low)].**
System Initialization			Initialize the hard disk installed on the machine to return it to the factory defaults. **NOTE** This function will not be displayed when the optional Data Security Kit is activated.

Item	Description
Display Brightness	Set the brightness of the touch panel. **Value**: **1 (Darker), 2, 3, 4, 5 (Lighter)**
Quiet Mode	Lower print and scan speed for quiet processing.
Quiet Mode	Set the Quiet Mode. Select this mode when the running noise is uncomfortable. **Value**: **Off, On**
Specify for Each Job	It is possible to set the use of Quiet Mode for each job, such as copying and sending. Set whether or not to permit the setting for each job. **Value**: **Prohibit, Permit**
Memory Diagnostics	Perform this function to check the machine memory.
Auto Color Correction	This setting allows you to adjust the detection level used by the machine to determine whether the original is color or black and white in Auto Color Selection Mode. Setting a lower value will result in more originals being identified as color, while a larger value will tend to increase the number of originals being identified as black and white. **Value**: **1 (Color), 2, 3, 4, 5 (B & W)**
Color Registration	When first installing the machine or moving it to a new location, color drift during printing may occur. Use this function to correct the color position of each of cyan, magenta and yellow to resolve color drift. ➡ Color Registration Procedure (page 10-43)
Calibration Cycle	Set the calibration cycle. **Value:** **Auto:** **Automatically sets the cycle for calibration.** **Short:** **Priority is given to image quality.** **Standard: Balances image quality and print speed.** **Long:** **Priority is given to print speed.**
Tone Curve Adjustment **Copy/Print (600dpi)** **Print (1200dpi)**	After prolonged use, or from the effects of surrounding temperature or humidity, the printed output tone may differ from the original. Perform this function to ensure consistency with the original tone. ➡ Tone Curve Adjustment (page 10-48)
Calibration	Adjust color drift or hue of printed image in the most appropriate color. ➡ Calibration (page 10-50) **ⓘ NOTE** Perform Color Registration when the color drift is not adjusted even after performing Calibration, and perform Gray Adjust if the color hue is not improved.
Developer Refresh	Adjust the printed image that is too light or incomplete, even though there is enough toner. In addition, Black or color dots appear on the white background when white original is scanned can be removed. ➡ Developer Refresh (page 10-50) **ⓘ NOTE** Waiting time may be longer when the toner is refilled during developer refresh.
Laser Scanner Cleaning	Remove vertical lines from the printout. ➡ Laser Scanner Cleaning (page 10-50)

Item	Description
First Print Position	Using this function speeds up either of the first print time of black and white printing or color printing by changing the default start position of the first print. In addition, the machine can automatically detect the appropriate position depending on your usage.
	Value: **Standard, Black & White Priority, Color Priority, Auto**
Contrast	You can increase or decrease the overall contrast.
Copy	Increases or decreases the overall contrast of copies.
	Value: **-3 (Lower), -2, -1, 0 (Normal), +1, +2, +3 (Higher)**
Send/Box	Increases or decreases the overall contrast when documents are sent or saved in a document box.
	Value: **-3 (Lower), -2, -1, 0 (Normal), +1, +2, +3 (Higher)**
Altitude Adjustment	Adjusts the altitude.
	Value: **Nomal, 1001 to 2000m, 2001 to 3000m, 3001 to 3500m**
Advanced Punch Precision	Improves punch positioning.
	Value: **Off, On**
MC	Set the MC. (350ci)
	Value:**1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7**

*1   Displayed only when the optional fax kit is installed.

Internet

[**System Menu**] key > [**Internet**]

Configure settings related to the internet.

Item	Description
Internet Browser	Select whether to use the Internet browser.
	Value: **Off, On**
Browser Environment	This specifies Internet browser preferences such as your home page setting and how pages are displayed.
	Value:
	Home page: (Enter the address for Home page.)
	Text Size: Large, Medium, Small
	Display Mode: Normal, Just-Fit Rendering, Smart-Fit Rendering
	Cookie: Accept All, Reject All, Prompt before Accepting
	➡

NOTE

To use proxy from Internet Browser, refer to the following:

➡

Application

[**System Menu**] key > [**Application**]

Configure settings for Application.

➡

9 User Authentication and Accounting (User Login, Job Accounting)

This chapter explains the following topics:

Overview of User Login Administration

User login administration specifies how the user access is administered on this machine. Enter a correct login user name and password for user authentication to login.

1 Enable User Login
Administration
([page 9-3](#))

2 Set the user
([page 9-8](#))

3 Enter the login user name and
password and execute the job
([page 9-34](#))
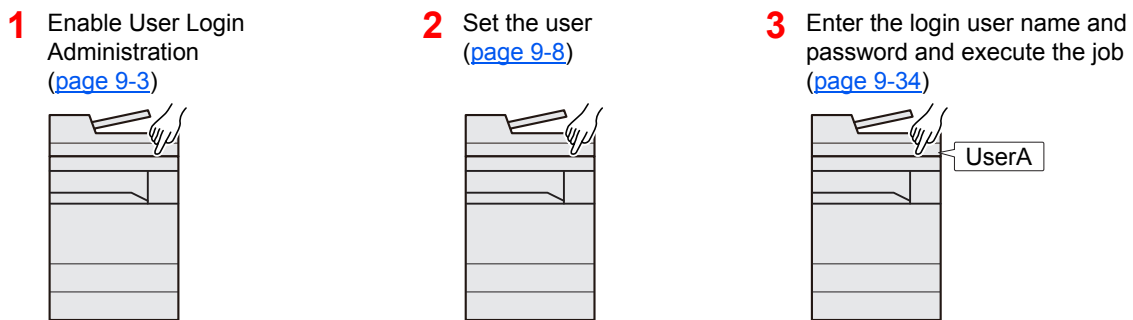
UserA

Access are in three levels - "User", "Administrator", and "Machine Administrator". The security levels can be modified only by the "Machine Administrator".

Managing the Job Account from PC

In addition to the above settings, the following are necessary to manage the job account from PC.

To Manage the Users to Print from PCs

Printer driver settings are necessary to manage the users that print on the machine from PCs.

1 Set the User Login Administration
on the printer driver ([page 9-16](#))

2 Print

User A

User B

User C
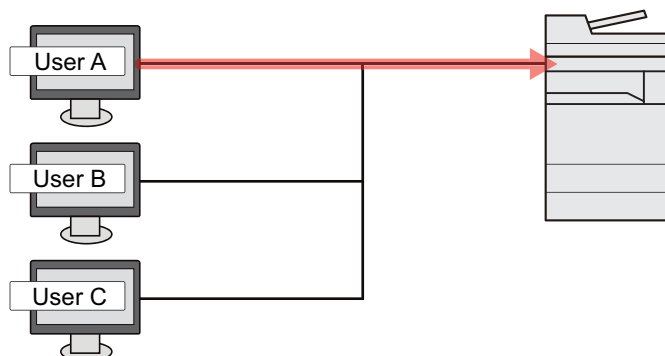
Managing the Users to Use TWAIN for Scanning

TWAIN driver settings on the PC are necessary to manage the users that use TWAIN for scanning.

→

Managing the Users to Use WIA for Scanning

WIA driver settings on the PC are necessary to manage the users that use WIA for scanning.

→

Managing the Users to Send Faxes from a PC

FAX driver settings on the PC are necessary to manage the users that send faxes from a PC.

→

The optional FAX Kit is required in order to make use of fax functionality.

Enabling User Login Administration

This enables user login administration. Select one of the following authentication methods:

Item	Descriptions
Local Authentication	User authentication based on user properties on the local user list stored in the machine.
Network Authentication	User authentication based on Authentication Server. Use a user property stored in Authentication Server to access the network authentication login page.

1 Display the screen.

1 [**System Menu**] key > [**User Login/Job Accounting**]

> ### NOTE
>
> If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login with administrator privileges.
>
> The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.
>
> | Model Name | Login User Name | Login Password |
> |------------|-----------------|----------------|
> | **350ci** | 3500 | 3500 |
> | **400ci** | 4000 | 4000 |

2 "User Login Setting" [**Next**] > "User Login" [**Change**]

2 Configure the settings.

1 Select [**Local Authentication**] or [**Network Authentication**].

Select [**Off**] to disable user login administration.

If you select [**Network Authentication**], enter the host name (64 characters or less) and domain name (256 characters or less) for the Authentication Server. Select [**NTLM**], [**Kerberos**] or [**Ext.**] as the server type.

When selecting [**Ext.**] as the server type, enter the port number.

> ### NOTE
>
> Selecting "Domain" [**Add/Edit**] displays the domain registration list. In the domain registration list screen, select [**Add/Edit**], and enter the domain name. Up to 10 domain names can be registered.

2 Select [**OK**].

"Do you want to add a new function to the home screen?" appears when [**OK**] is selected.

To add a new function, select [**Yes**]. The selection screen for functions displayed in the home screen will appear.

→ Available Functions to Display on Desktop (page 2-14)

> **NOTE**
>
> If the login user name and password are rejected, check the following settings.
>
> • Network Authentication setting of the machine
> • User property of the Authentication Server
> • Date and time setting of the machine and the Authentication Server
>
> If you cannot login because of the setting of the machine, login with any administrator registered in the local user list and correct the settings.

Setting User Login Administration

This registers, alters and deletes users and configures the settings for User Login Administration.

Authentication Security

If user authentication is enabled, configure the user authentication settings.

User Account Lockout Setting

You can prohibit the use of a user account if an incorrect password is entered repeatedly to login with that account.

1 **Display the screen.**

1 [**System Menu**] key > [**User Login/Job Accounting**]

> **NOTE**
>
> If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login with administrator privileges.
>
> The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.
>
> | Model Name | Login User Name | Login Password |
> |---|---|---|
> | **350ci** | 3500 | 3500 |
> | **400ci** | 4000 | 4000 |

2 "Authentication Security" [**Next**] > "User Account Lockout Set" [**Next**]

2 Configure the settings.

The following settings can be selected.

Item	Descriptions
Lockout	Select whether or not account lockout policy is enabled. **Value: Off, On**
Lockout Policy	Specify the conditions and the extent to which the account lockout is applied. **Value** **Number of Retries until Locked:** 　　　　　　**Specify how many login retries are allowed until the account is locked out. (1 to 10 times)** **Lockout Duration: Specify how long the account is to be locked out until it is unlocked. (1 to 60 minutes)** **Lockout Target　　Specify the extent to which the account lockout is applied. You can select from [All] or [Remote Login Only]. Remote Login Only locks out all operations from outside the operation panel.**
Locked out Users List	Displays a list of locked out users. You can unlock a user by selecting the user in the list, and selecting [**Unlock**]. ![NOTE icon] **NOTE** This function is displayed when account lockout policy is enabled.

Password Policy Settings

You can prohibit the setting and use of passwords that do not comply with the password policy.

Setting the Password Policy makes it more difficult to break the password.

1 Display the screen.

1 [**System Menu**] key > [**User Login/Job Accounting**]

> ![NOTE icon] **NOTE**
>
> If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login with administrator privileges.
>
> The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.
>
> | Model Name | Login User Name | Login Password |
> |---|---|---|
> | **350ci** | 3500 | 3500 |
> | **400ci** | 4000 | 4000 |

2 "Authentication Security" [**Next**] > "Password Policy Settings" [**Next**]

2 Configure the settings.

The following settings can be selected.

Item	Descriptions
Password Policy	Select whether or not password policy is enabled. **Value: Off, On**
Minimum password length	Set the minimum password length of characters for password. **Value: Off, On (1 to 64 characters)**
Password complexity	Set the password complexity. **Value** **No more than two consecutive identical char: Off, On** **At least one uppercase letter (A-Z): Off, On** **At least one lowercase letter (a-z): Off, On** **At least one number (0-9): Off, On** **At least one symbol: Off, On**
Maximum password age	Set the maximum password age. **Value: Off, On (1 to 180 days)**
Policy Violated User List	List of users do not meet password policy requirements.

Adding a User (Local User List)

This adds a new user. You can add up to 100 users (including the default login user name).

> **NOTE**
>
> By default, one of each default user with machine administrator rights and administrator privileges is already stored. Each user's properties are:
>
> **Machine Administrator**
>
> User Name: DeviceAdmin
>
> **Login User Name: 350ci: 3500, 400ci: 4000**
>
> **Login Password: 350ci: 3500, 400ci: 4000**
>
> Access Level: Machine Administrator
>
> **Administrator**
>
> User Name: Admin
>
> Login User Name: Admin
>
> Login Password: Admin
>
> Access Level: Administrator
>
> * Upper case and lower case letters are distinguished (case sensitive).
>
> It is recommended to periodically change the user name, login user name and login password regularly for your security.

1 Display the screen.

1 [**System Menu**] key > [**User Login/Job Accounting**]

> **NOTE**
>
> If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login with administrator privileges.
>
> The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.
>
> | Model Name | Login User Name | Login Password |
> |---|---|---|
> | **350ci** | 3500 | 3500 |
> | **400ci** | 4000 | 4000 |

2 "User Login Setting" [**Next**] > "Local User List" [**Add/Edit**]

2 Enter the user information.

[**Add**] > Enter the user information > [**OK**]

Item	Descriptions
User Name	Enter the name displayed on the user list (up to 32 characters).
Login User Name	Enter the login user name to login (up to 64 characters). The same login user name cannot be registered.
Login Password	Enter the password to login (up to 64 characters). Reenter the same password for confirmation and select the [**OK**] key.
Access Level	Select "Administrator" or "User" for user access privileges.
Account Name	Add an account where the user belongs. The user, who registered his/her account name, can login without entering the account ID. ➡ Overview of Job Accounting (page 9-35) **� NOTE** Select [**Name**] or [**ID**] from the "Sort" to sort the account list. Select [**Search(Name)**] or [**Search(ID)**] to search by account name or account ID.
E-mail Address	The user can register his/her E-mail address. The registered address will be automatically selected for subsequent operations that need any E-mail function.
ID Card Information	Register ID card information. Place the ID card on the ID card reader, and select [**Read**]. **� NOTE** This function is displayed when the optional ID Card Authentication Kit is activated. ➡ Optional Applications (page 11-8)

9-9

Item	Descriptions
Local Authorization[*1]	Set usage authority for each user. Local Authorization must be enabled. ➡ Local Authorization (page 9-20) The following restriction items are available: **Print Restriction:** Select whether or not use of the print function of the printer is prohibited. **Print Restriction (Color):** Select whether or not use of the print function (color) of the printer is prohibited. **Copy Restriction:** Select whether or not use of the copy print function is prohibited. **Copy Restriction (Color):** Select whether or not use of the copy print function (color) is prohibited. **Copy Restr. (Full Color):** Select whether or not use of the copy print function (full color) is prohibited. **Duplex Restriction:** Select whether only duplex printing is allowed. **Combine Restriction:** Specify whether only Combine is allowed. **EcoPrint Restriction:** Specify whether only EcoPrint is allowed. **Send Restriction:** Select whether or not use of the send function is prohibited. **FAX TX Restriction**[*2]**:** Select whether or not use of the fax send function is prohibited. **Storing Restr. in Box:** Select whether or not use of the box store function is prohibited. **Storing Restr. in Memory:** Select whether or not use of the removable memory store function is prohibited.
My Panel	You can register the language selection, initial screen, and shortcut settings for each user. Settings registered here can be applied simply by logging in.

*1 Displayed when Local Authorization is enabled.
➡ Local Authorization (page 9-20)
*2 Displayed only when the optional FAX Kit is installed.

🔍 **NOTE**

For details on entering characters, refer to the following:

➡ Character Entry Method (page 11-10)

If you selected [**Send**] in the Default Screen for "My Panel", select the screen to display from [**Destination**], [**Machine Address Book**], or [**Ext Address Book**].

3 Select [Save].

A new user is added on the local user list.

> **NOTE**
>
> 9-11
>
> If simple login is enabled, a confirmation screen appears when new registration is finished asking if you will configure simple login settings. To configure simple login settings, select [**Yes**]. If you select [**No**], you will return to the user list screen.
>
> For the procedure for configuring simple login settings, refer to the following:
>
> ➡

Changing User Properties

User properties can be changed. Types of user properties that could be changed may be different depending on user access privilege.

> **NOTE**
>
> To change the user information of the machine administrator, you must log in with machine administrator authority. You can only view user information if you log in as a regular user.
>
> The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.
>
> | Model Name | Login User Name | Login Password |
> |---|---|---|
> | **350ci** | 3500 | 3500 |
> | **400ci** | 4000 | 4000 |

For a user with administrator rights who logs in

User properties can be changed and users can be deleted. The items, which can be added, are all able to be changed.

1 Display the screen.

1 [**System Menu**] key > [**User Login/Job Accounting**]

> **NOTE**
>
> If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login with administrator privileges.
>
> The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.
>
> | Model Name | Login User Name | Login Password |
> |---|---|---|
> | **350ci** | 3500 | 3500 |
> | **400ci** | 4000 | 4000 |

2 "User Login Setting" [**Next**] > "Local User List" [**Add/Edit**]

2 Change the user properties.

Changing user properties

1 Select the user whose properties you wish to change > [**Detail**]

> **NOTE**
>
> Select [**Name**] or [**ID**] from the "Sort" to sort the user list.
>
> Select [**Search(Name)**] or [**Search(ID)**] to search by name or login user name.

2 Refer to step 3 of "Adding a User (Local User List)" to change a user property.

➡

3 [**Save**] > [**Yes**]

The user information is changed.

Deleting a user

1 Select the user to delete.

2 [**Delete**] > [**Yes**]

The selected user will be deleted.

> **NOTE**
> The default user with machine administrator rights cannot be deleted.

To change the user information of logged in user (User Property)

These users can partially change their own user properties including user name, login password, E-mail address, Simple Login, and My Panel.

Although "Login User Name", "Access Level", or "Account Name" cannot be changed, the users can check the present status.

1 Display the screen.

[**System Menu**] key > [**User Property**]

2 Change the user properties.

1 Refer to step 3 of "Adding a User (Local User List)" to change a user property.

➡

Item	Description
User Name	Changes the name shown on the user list. Up to 32 characters can be entered.
Login User Name	Displays the login user name that is entered at login.
Login Password	Changes the password that is entered at login. Up to 64 characters can be entered.
Access Level	Displays the user's access level.
Maximum Password Age	Displays the term of validity of the login password. 🔲 **NOTE** This function does not appear when Password Policy is set to [**Off**] or the term of validity of the password is set to [**Off**].
E-mail Address	Changes the user's e-mail address. Up to 128 characters can be entered. 🔲 **NOTE** This function appears when Local Authorization is set to [**On**], Group Authorization is set to [**On**], and Guest Authorization Setting is set to [**On**].
Authorization Rules	Displays the usage restriction that is set for the logged in user. 🔲 **NOTE** This function appears when Local Authorization is set to [**On**], Group Authorization is set to [**On**], or Guest Authorization Setting is set to [**On**]. [**Job Accounting Rules**] shows the account name set for the logged in user and the usage restrictions that are set for that account. This function appears when job accounting is set to [**On**]. For information on job accounting, refer to the following: ➡ Job Accounting Access (page 9-37)
Simple Login	When simple login is enabled, changes associated settings. 🔲 **NOTE** This function does not appear when Simple Login is set to [**Off**] or the user is not registered in Simple Login.

Item	Description
ID Card Information	Displays the ID card information of the logged in user. ![icon] **NOTE** This function is displayed when the optional ID Card Authentication Kit is activated. ➜ Optional Applications (page 11-8) This function does not appear when the server type is set to [**Ext.**] in Network Authentication, and logged in with the user account certificated in the server specified as the [**Ext.**] server type.
My Panel	Register the language and default screen for each user. Once registered, the setting will be applied simply by login. Network users are not displayed.

2 Select [**Save**].

The user information is changed.

User Login Administration for Printing

It is possible to manage the users that print on this machine from a PC.

Setting Printer Driver

To manage the users that print on this machine from a PC, the following settings are necessary in the printer driver.

1 Display the screen.

1 Click [**Start**] button on the Windows, and then click [**Devices and Printers**].

> **NOTE**
>
> In Windows 8, select [**Settings**] in charms on Desktop, and select [**Control Panel**], and then [**Devices and Printers**].

2 Right-click the printer driver icon of the machine, and click the [**Printer properties**] menu of the printer driver.

3 Click [**Administrator**] on the [**Device Settings**] tab.

2 Configure the settings.

1 Select [**User Login**] on the [**User Login**] tab.
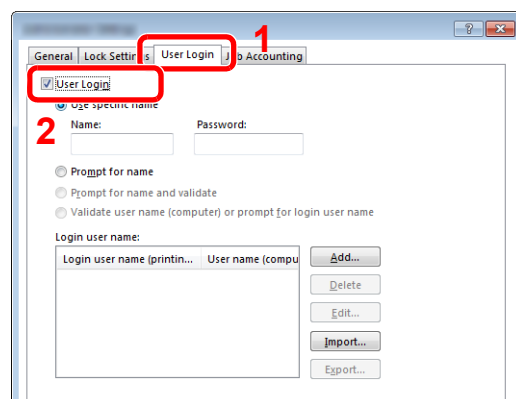
2 Set the User Login Administration.

[**Use specific name**]: This option can be used to specify a user name and password to use the same User login for every print job. If this option is selected, the user does not have to type the name and password for each print job.

[**Prompt for name**]: A screen for entering the user name and password will be displayed when attempting a printing. The user name and password must be entered each time a printing is attempted.

[**Prompt for name and validate**]: A screen for entering the user name and password will be displayed when attempting a printing. The user name and password stored in the Login user name list needs to be entered. The user name and password must be entered each time a printing is attempted.

[**Validate user name (computer) or prompt for login user name**]: When printing, the Windows user name is searched in the "Login user names" and printing is possible if the name is registered. If the name is not registered, the printing will be canceled for users with only user authority. If the user has administrator privileges, the screen to enter the user name and password will appear.

3 Click [**OK**].

> **NOTE**
>
> For other settings of job accounting, refer to the following:
>
> → **Printing System Driver User Guide**

Managing the Users to Scan Using TWAIN

It is possible to manage the users that scan using TWAIN.

Setting TWAIN Driver

To manage the users that scan using TWAIN, the following settings are necessary in the TWAIN driver.

1 Display the screen.

1 Select [**Start**] button on the Windows, [**All Programs**], [**(Brand Name)**] and then [**TWAIN Driver Setting**].

TWAIN Driver screen appears.

> **NOTE**
>
> In Windows 8, select [**Search**] in charms, [**Apps**], and then [**TWAIN Driver Setting**].

2 Select the machine, and click [**Edit**].
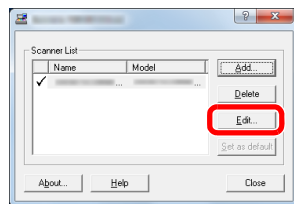
2 Configure the settings.

1 Click [**User Authentication Settings**].

2 Select the checkbox beside [**Authentication**], and enter Login User Name and Password.

3 Click [**OK**].

Managing the Users to Scan Using WIA

It is possible to manage the users that scan using WIA.

Setting WIA Driver

To manage the users that scan using WIA, the following settings are necessary in the WIA driver.

1 Display the screen.

1 Click [**Start**] button on the Windows and enter [**Scanner**] in [**Program and File Search**]. Click [**View scanners and cameras**] in the search list then the Scanners and Cameras screen appears.

> **NOTE**
>
> In Windows 8, click [**Search**] in charms, and then [**Settings**], and enter "Scanner" in the search box. Click [**View scanners and cameras**] in the search list then the Scanners and Cameras screen appears.

2 Select the same name as this machine from WIA Drivers, and press [**Properties**].
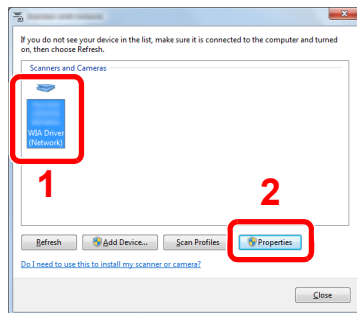
2 Configure the settings.

1 Select the checkbox beside [**Authentication**] on the [**Settings**] tab, and enter Login User Name and Password.
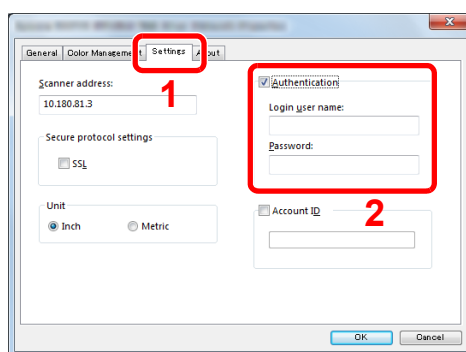
2 Click [**OK**].

Managing the Users that Send Faxes from a PC

It is possible to manage the users that send faxes from a PC.

Setting FAX Driver

To manage the users that send faxes from a PC, the following settings are necessary in the FAX driver.

1 Display the screen.

1 Click [**Start**] button on the Windows, and then click [**Devices and Printers**].

> **NOTE**
>
> In Windows 8, select [**Settings**] in charms on Desktop, and select [**Control Panel**], and then [**Devices and Printers**].

2 Right-click the printer driver icon of the machine, and click the [**Printer properties**] menu of the printer driver.

3 Click [**FAX TX Setting**] on the [**Printing Preferences**] window.

2 Configure the settings.

1 Select [**User Login**] on the [**Authentication**] tab.
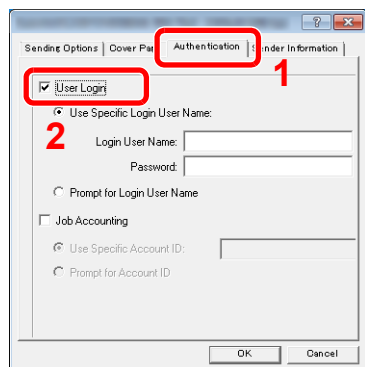
2 Set the User Login Administration.

[**Use Specific Login User Name**]: This option can be used to specify a user name and password to use the same User login for every FAX job. If this option is selected, the user does not have to type the name and password for each FAX job.

[**Prompt for Login User Name**]: A screen for entering the user name and password will be displayed when attempting a transmission. The user name and password must be entered each time a transmission is attempted.

3 Click [**OK**].

Local Authorization

Select whether or not to use Local Authorization.

> **NOTE**
>
> When using Local Authorization, the user authentication type must be set to [**Local Authentication**].
>
> → Enabling User Login Administration (page 9-3)

1 Display the screen.

1 [**System Menu**] key > [**User Login/Job Accounting**]

> **NOTE**
>
> If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login with administrator privileges.
>
> The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.
>
> | Model Name | Login User Name | Login Password |
> |---|---|---|
> | **350ci** | 3500 | 3500 |
> | **400ci** | 4000 | 4000 |

2 "User Login Setting" [**Next**] > "Local Authorization" [**Change**]

2 [Off] or [On] > [OK]

Group Authorization Settings

Set restrictions of the machine usage by each individual group registered in the authentication server.

> **NOTE**
>
> To use the group authorization settings, [**Network Authentication**] must be selected for the authentication method in "Enabling User Login Administration". Select "On" for "LDAP" in "Protocol Detail".
>
> ➡ Enabling User Login Administration (page 9-3)
> Protocol Settings (page 8-44)

Group Authorization

Use the group authorization.

1 Display the screen.

1 [**System Menu**] key > [**User Login/Job Accounting**]

> **NOTE**
>
> If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login with administrator privileges.
>
> The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.
>
> | Model Name | Login User Name | Login Password |
> |---|---|---|
> | **350ci** | 3500 | 3500 |
> | **400ci** | 4000 | 4000 |

2 "User Login Setting" [**Next**] > "Group Authorization Set." [**Next**] > "Group Authorization" [**Change**]

2 [On] > [OK]

9-21

Group List (Up to 20)

Register the groups that are restricted the machine usage. Other users and groups belong to "Others".

1 Display the screen.

1 [**System Menu**] key > [**User Login/Job Accounting**]

> **NOTE**
>
> If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login with administrator privileges.
>
> The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.
>
> | Model Name | Login User Name | Login Password |
> |---|---|---|
> | 350ci | 3500 | 3500 |
> | 400ci | 4000 | 4000 |

2 "User Login Setting" [**Next**] > "Group Authorization Set." [**Next**] > "Group List" [**Change**]

2 Configure the settings.

[**Add**] > Add information on each item > [**OK**]

Item	Descriptions
Group ID[*1]	Enter the ID displayed on the group list (between 1 and 4294967295).
Group Name	Enter the name displayed on the group list (up to 32 characters).
Access Level	Select [**Administrator**] or [**User**] for group access privileges.
Print Restriction	Select whether or not to reject usage of print functions for the printer.
Print Restriction (Color)	Select whether or not to reject usage of color print functions for the printer.
Copy Restriction	Select whether or not to reject usage of copy functions.
Copy Restriction (Color)	Select whether or not to reject usage of color copy functions.
Copy Restr. (Full Color)	Select whether or not to reject usage of only full-color print functions for copies.
Duplex Restriction	Select whether only duplex printing is allowed.
Combine Restrict.	Specify whether only Combine is allowed.
EcoPrint Restriction	Specify whether only EcoPrint is allowed.
Send Restriction	Select whether or not to reject usage of the send functions.
FAX Transmission[*2]	Select whether or not to reject usage of the FAX transmissions.

Item	Descriptions
Storing Restr. in Box	Select whether or not to reject usage of storing in the document boxes.
Storing Restr. in Memory	Select whether or not to reject usage of storing in the removable memory.

*1 For "Group ID", specify PrimaryGroupID assigned by Active Directory of Windows. If you are using Windows Server 2008, check Attribute Editor tab of user properties. If you are using Windows Server 2000/2003, check ADSIEdit. ADSIEdit is a support tool included on the installation DVD for Windows Server OS (under \SUPPORT\TOOLS).

*2 Displayed only when the optional FAX Kit is installed.

> **NOTE**
>
> For details on entering characters, refer to the following:
>
> ➡ Character Entry Method (page 11-10)

3 Register the group.

Select [**Save**].

A new group is added on the group list.

Guest Authorization Set.

When User Login Administration is enabled, set the functions that guest users who cannot log in to the machine are allowed to use.

> **NOTE**
>
> To use Guest Authorization Set., User Login Administration must be enabled in "Enabling User Login Administration".
>
> → Enabling User Login Administration (page 9-3)
>
> Cannot be used when the Key Counter option is used.

Enabling Guest Authorization

Enable the guest authorization.

1 Display the screen.

1 [**System Menu**] key > [**User Login/Job Accounting**]

> **NOTE**
>
> If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login with administrator privileges.
>
> The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.
>
> | Model Name | Login User Name | Login Password |
> |------------|-----------------|----------------|
> | **350ci** | 3500 | 3500 |
> | **400ci** | 4000 | 4000 |

2 "User Login Setting" [**Next**] > "Guest Authorization Set." [**Next**] > "Guest Authorization" [**Change**]

2 [On] > [OK]

> **NOTE**
>
> If the guest authorization setting is enabled, the [**Authentication/Logout**] key must be selected when logging in.
>
> In the guest user default settings, only monochrome copying can be used. If you wish to use a different function, log in as a user who can use that function, or change the settings in the guest properties.

Configuring Guest Property

Register guest user information and functions that are restricted.

1 Display the screen.

1 [**System Menu**] key > [**User Login/Job Accounting**]

> **NOTE**
>
> If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login with administrator privileges.
>
> The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.
>
> | Model Name | Login User Name | Login Password |
> |------------|-----------------|----------------|
> | **350ci** | 3500 | 3500 |
> | **400ci** | 4000 | 4000 |

2 "User Login Setting" [**Next**] > "Guest Authorization Set." [**Next**] > "Guest Property" [**Next**]

2 Configure the settings.

Check the settings and change or add information as needed.

Item	Descriptions
User Name	Enter the name displayed on the user list (up to 32 characters). The default setting is "Guest User".
Access Level	The authority of the user appears. This cannot be changed.
Account Name	Add an account where the user belongs. If the user does not belong to any account, select [**Other Account**].
Authorization Rules	Set usage authority for each user. The items you can restrict the access level with are as follows. **Print Restriction:** Select whether or not use of the print function of the printer is prohibited. **Print Restriction (Color):** Select whether or not use of the print function (color) of the printer is prohibited. **Copy Restriction:** Select whether or not use of the copy print function is prohibited. **Copy Restriction (Full Color):** Select whether or not use of the copy print function (full color) is prohibited. **Duplex Restriction:** Select whether only duplex printing is allowed. **Combine Restrict.:** Specify whether only Combine is allowed. **EcoPrint Restriction:** Specify whether only EcoPrint is allowed. **Send Restriction:** Select whether or not use of the send function is prohibited. **FAX TX Restriction[*1]:** Select whether or not use of the fax send function is prohibited. **Storing Restr. in Box:** Select whether or not use of the box store function is prohibited. **Storing Restr. in Memory:** Select whether or not use of the removable memory store function is prohibited.

*1 Displayed only when the optional FAX Kit is installed.

3 Register the group.

Select [**Save**].

Obtain NW User Property

Set the required information to obtain the network user property from the LDAP server. The user name and E-mail address obtained with this setting is shown in the user information, the status confirmation screen, and the header of E-mail.

> **NOTE**
>
> To obtain the network user property from the LDAP server, [**Network Authentication**] must be selected for the authentication method in "Enabling User Login Administration". Select "On" for "LDAP" in "Protocol Detail".
>
> → Enabling User Login Administration (page 9-3)
> Protocol Settings (page 8-44)

1 Display the screen.

1 [**System Menu**] key > [**User Login/Job Accounting**]

> **NOTE**
>
> If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login with administrator privileges.
>
> The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Model Name	Login User Name	Login Password
350ci	3500	3500
400ci	4000	4000

2 [**User Login Setting**] > [**Obtain NW User Property**] > [**On**]

2 Configure the settings.

[**On**] > Add information on each item > [**OK**]

Item	Descriptions
Server Name[*1]	Enter the LDAP server name or the IP address (up to 64 characters). If a server name is not entered, user information will be acquired from the server set for Network Authentication.
Port	Port number for LDAP server. The default port number is 389.
Name 1[*2]	Enter the LDAP Attribute to obtain the user name to be displayed from the LDAP server (up to 32 characters).
Name 2[*3]	Enter the LDAP Attribute to obtain the user name to be displayed from the LDAP server (up to 32 characters).
E-mail Address[*4]	Enter the LDAP Attribute to obtain the E-mail address from the LDAP server (up to 32 characters).
Authentic at Type[*5]	Set the authentication method. Select [**Simple**] or [**SASL**]. After changing the setting, restart the system or turn the power off and then on.

Item	Descriptions
Search Timeout	Set the amount of time to wait before time-out in seconds (from 5 to 255 seconds).
LDAP Security	Select the type of encryption according to the type of security employed by the LDAP server. The value is [**Off**], [**SSL/TLS**] or [**STARTTLS**].

*1 If using Active Directory of Windows, the server name may be the same as the server name entered in the network authentication.

*2 If using Active Directory of Windows, displayName of Attribute may be used as "Name 1".

*3 "Name 2" can be left out. When you assign displayName in "Name 1" and department in "Name 2", and if the value of displayName is "Mike Smith" and the value of department is "Sales" in Active Directory of Windows, the user name appears as "Mike Smith Sales".

*4 If using Active Directory of Windows, mail of Attribute may be used as E-mail Address.

*5 Appears when the server type is set to "Kerberos" in "Network Authentication".

Simple Login Settings

The simple login function allows users to log in simply by selecting a user name. Users must be registered in advance to use this functionality.

> **NOTE**
>
> • For user registration, refer to the following:
>
> ➡ Adding a User (Local User List) (page 9-8)
>
> • To use Simple Login, User Login Administration must be enabled in "Enabling User Login Administration".
>
> ➡ Enabling User Login Administration (page 9-3)
>
> • When the guest authorization setting is enabled, the Simple Login screen is not displayed.

Enabling Simple Login

Select whether or not simple login is enabled.

1 Display the screen.

1 [**System Menu**] key > [**User Login/Job Accounting**]

> **NOTE**
>
> If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login with administrator privileges.
>
> The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Model Name	Login User Name	Login Password
350ci	3500	3500
400ci	4000	4000

2 "User Login Setting" [**Next**] > "Simple Login Settings" [**Next**] > "Simple Login" [**Change**]

2 [On] or [Off] > [OK]

Simple Login Key

Register users to use simple login. You can add up to 20 users.

1 Display the screen.

1 [**System Menu**] key > [**User Login/Job Accounting**]

> **NOTE**
>
> If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login with administrator privileges.
>
> The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.
>
> | Model Name | Login User Name | Login Password |
> |---|---|---|
> | **350ci** | 3500 | 3500 |
> | **400ci** | 4000 | 4000 |

2 "User Login Setting" [**Next**] > "Simple Login Settings" [**Next**] > "Simple Login Key" [**Next**]

2 Enter the user information.

1 Select the key to which you want to register a user.

2 Select [**Add/Edit**].

3 "Display Name" [**Change**] > Enter the user name to be displayed > [**OK**]

> **NOTE**
>
> For details on entering characters, refer to the following:
>
> ➡ Character Entry Method (page 11-10)

4 Select "User" [**Change**].

5 To specify the user from local users, select [**Local User**]. To specify from network users, select [**Network User**].

The procedure differs depending on the transmission method selected.

Specifying the user from local users

Select the user to be set for simple login.

> **NOTE**
>
> • Select [**Name**] or [**ID**] from the "Sort" to sort the account list.
>
> • Select [**Search(Name)**] or [**Search(ID)**] to search by account name or account ID.

Specifying the user from network users

```
Simple Login Key:  - User
 [i]   Enter login user name and password.

           Domain:       domain 1      [⌄]

        Login
        User Name      0099

                                            # Keys

        Login
        Password       **********

                                            # Keys

                   Cancel         Back        [↵]  OK
```

Select [**Login User Name**] and [**Login Password**], enter the information of the user to be registered, and select [**OK**].

If you are specifying a user for whom a domain is set in network authentication, select the "Domain" and select the domain where the user is registered.

> **NOTE**
>
> For details on entering characters, refer to the following:
>
> ➡ Character Entry Method (page 11-10)

6   "Password" [**Change**] > [**On**] or [**Off**] > [**OK**] > "Icon" [**Change**]

7   Select the user icon to be displayed and select [**OK**].

3 Register the user.

Select [**Save**].

9-31

ID Card Settings

If ID card authentication is enabled, select the authentication type.

> **NOTE**
>
> This functions appears when the Card Authentication kit is activated.
>
> ➡ Optional Applications (page 11-8)
>
> This function does not appear when the user logs in as a network authentication user.

1 Display the screen.

1 [**System Menu**] key > [**User Login/Job Accounting**]

> **NOTE**
>
> If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login with administrator privileges.
>
> The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.
>
> | Model Name | Login User Name | Login Password |
> |---|---|---|
> | **350ci** | 3500 | 3500 |
> | **400ci** | 4000 | 4000 |

2 "User Login Setting" [**Next**] > "ID Card Settings" [**Next**]

2 Configure the settings.

The following settings can be selected.

Item	Descriptions
Keyboard Login	When ID card authentication is enabled, select whether or not login by keyboard is allowed. **Value: Permit, Prohibit**
Additional Authentication[*1]	Select whether or not to require password entry after authenticating by ID card. **Value: Off, Use Password, Use PIN Code**

*1 This function does not appear when the server type is set to [**NTLM**] or [**Kerberos**] in "Network Authentication".

PIN Code Authorization

Select whether or not to use PIN Code Authorization.

> **NOTE**
>
> When using PIN Code Authorization, the network authentication must be enabled and [**Ext.**] must be selected for server type.
>
> ➡ Enabling User Login Administration (page 9-3)

1 Display the screen.

1 [**System Menu**] key > [**User Login/Job Accounting**]

> **NOTE**
>
> If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login with administrator privileges.
>
> The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Model Name	Login User Name	Login Password
350ci	3500	3500
400ci	4000	4000

2 "User Login Setting" [**Next**] > "PIN Code Authorization" [**Change**]

2 [Off] or [On] > [OK]

Using User Login Administration

This section explains procedures while setting job accounting.

Login/Logout

If user login administration is enabled, the login user name and login password entry screen appears each time you use this machine.
Use the procedure below to login and logout.

Login

If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, log in by referring to the following:

➡

Logout

When the operations are complete, select the [**Authentication/Logout**] key to return to the login user name and login password entry screen.

Overview of Job Accounting

Job accounting manages the copy/print/scan/FAX count accumulated by individual accounts by assigning an ID to each account.

1 Enable job accounting. ([page 9-36](#))

2 Setting an account. ([page 9-38](#))

3 Enter the assigned account ID when performing the job. ([page 9-34](#))

A: 00000001

4 Count the number of pages copied, printed, scanned and faxed.

A 100 B 400 C 200
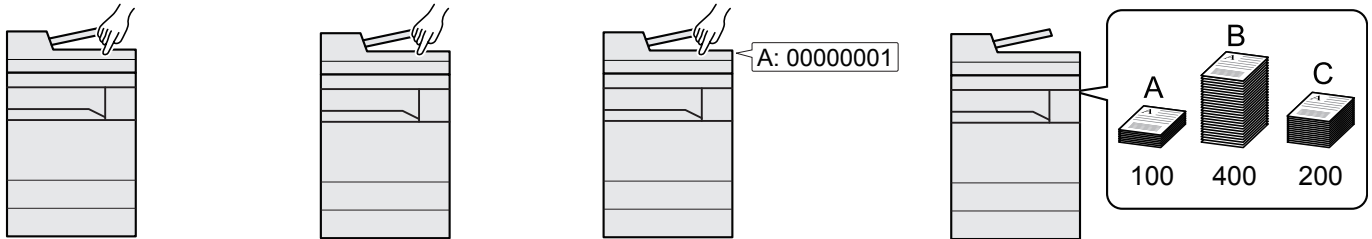
To Manage the Number of Sheets Used on Jobs Printed from a PC

To manage the number of jobs to be printed from the PC on the network, you need to configure settings by using the printer driver on the PC.

1 Set Job Accounting for the PC on the network by using the printer driver. ([page 9-42](#))

2 Execute printing.

3 Count the number of pages printed.

A: 00000001
B: 00000002
C: 00000003

A 100 B 400 C 200
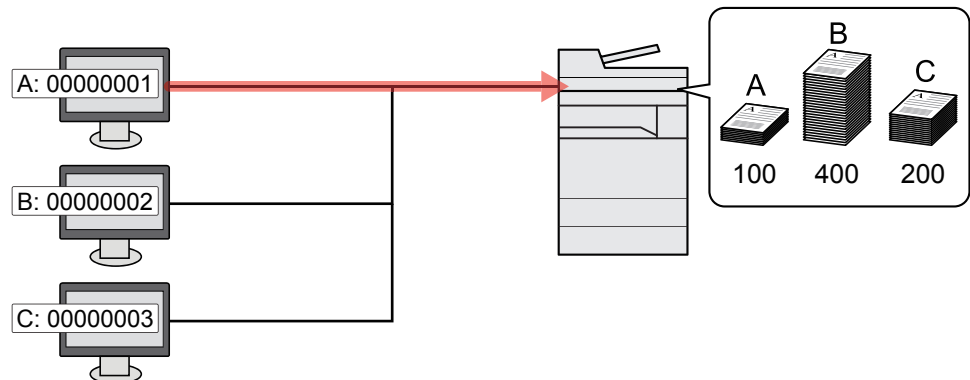
Managing the Scan Job Account by Using TWAIN

To manage the scan job account by using TWAIN, you need to configure the TWAIN driver settings on the computer connected to the machine.

➡ Job Accounting for Scan Using TWAIN (page 9-43)

Managing the Scan Job Account by Using WIA

To manage the scan job account by using WIA, you need to configure the WIA driver settings on the computer connected to the machine.

➡ Job Accounting for Scan Using WIA (page 9-44)

Managing the FAX Job Transmitted from a PC

To manage the number of FAX jobs transmitted from the PC, you need to configure the settings by using the FAX Driver on the PC.

➡ Job Accounting for the FAX Transmitted from a Computer (page 9-45)

The optional FAX Kit is required in order to make use of fax functionality.

Enabling Job Accounting

Enable job accounting. Use the procedure below.

1 Display the screen.

1 [**System Menu**] key > [**User Login/Job Accounting**]

> **NOTE**
>
> If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login with administrator privileges.
>
> The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Model Name	Login User Name	Login Password
350ci	3500	3500
400ci	4000	4000

2 "Job Accounting Settings" [**Next**] > "Job Accounting" [**Change**]

2 Configure the settings.

[**On**] > [**OK**]

> **NOTE**
>
> • To disable job accounting, select [**Off**].
>
> • When the display returns to System Menu default screen, logout is automatically executed and the screen to enter the Account ID appears. To continue the operation, enter the Account ID.

Job Accounting Access

Set the job accounting access.

1 Display the screen.

1 [**System Menu**] key > [**User Login/Job Accounting**]

> **NOTE**
>
> If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login with administrator privileges.
>
> The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Model Name	Login User Name	Login Password
350ci	3500	3500
400ci	4000	4000

2 [**Job Accounting Settings**] > [**Job Accounting Access**]

2 Configure the settings.

[**Local**] or [**Network**] > [**OK**]

> **NOTE**
>
> To select [**Network**], network authentication must be enabled and [**Ext.**] must be selected for server type.

Job Accounting (Local)

You can add, change and delete an account and set the restriction for each account.

Adding an Account

Up to 1000 individual accounts can be added. The following entries are required.

Item	Descriptions
Account Name	Enter the account name (up to 32 characters).
Account ID	Enter the account ID as many as eight digits (between 0 and 99999999).
Restriction	This prohibits printing/scanning or restricts the number of sheets to load.
	➡ Restricting the Use of the Machine (page 9-39)

1 Display the screen.

1 [**System Menu**] key > [**User Login/Job Accounting**]

> **NOTE**
>
> If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login with administrator privileges.
>
> The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.
>
> | Model Name | Login User Name | Login Password |
> |------------|-----------------|----------------|
> | **350ci** | 3500 | 3500 |
> | **400ci** | 4000 | 4000 |

2 "Job Accounting Settings" [**Next**] > "Job Accounting (Local)" [**Next**] > "Accounting List" [**Add/Edit**] > [**Add**]

2 Enter the account information.

1 "Account Name" [**Change**] > Enter the account name > [**OK**]

> **NOTE**
>
> For details on entering characters, refer to the following:
>
> ➡ Character Entry Method (page 11-10)

2 "Account ID" [**Change**] > Enter the account ID > [**OK**]

> **NOTE**
>
> Any "Account ID" that has already registered cannot be used. Enter any other account ID.

3 Activate or deactivate restriction.

➡ Restricting the Use of the Machine (page 9-39)

4 Select [**Save**].

A new account is added on the Account List.

Restricting the Use of the Machine

This section explains how to restrict the use of the machine by account or the number of sheets available.

The items that can be restricted differ depending on whether "Individual" or "Total" is selected for "Copy/Print Count".

→ Copier/Printer Count (page 9-54)

Restriction Items

"Individual" selected for Copy/Printer Count"Split" selected for Copy/Printer Count

Item	Descriptions
Copy Restriction (Total)	Limits the number of sheets used for copying.
Copy Restr. (Full Color)	Limits the number of pages used for full-color copying.
Copy Restr. (SingleColor)	Limits the number of pages used for single-color copying.
Print Restriction (Total)	Limits the number of sheets used for printing.
Print Restr. (Full Color)	Limits the number of pages used for full-color printing.
Scan Restriction (Others)	Limits the number of sheets scanned (excludes copying).
FAX TX Restriction	Limits the number of sheets sent by fax. This is displayed when the optional FAX Kit is installed.
FAX Port Restriction	Restricts the ports used for faxing. This is displayed when two optional FAX Kits are installed.

"Total" selected for Copy/Printer Count

Item	Descriptions
Print Restriction (Total)	Limits the total number of sheets used for copying and printing.
Print Restr. (Full Color)	Limits the number of pages used for full-color printing.
Print Restr. (SingleCol.)	Limits the number of sheets used for single-color printing.
Scan Restriction (Others)	Limits the number of sheets scanned (excludes copying).
FAX TX Restriction	Limits the number of sheets sent by fax. This is displayed only on products with the fax function installed.
FAX Port Restriction	Restricts the ports used for faxing. This is displayed when two optional FAX Kits are installed.

> **✓ IMPORTANT**
>
> **Select [Off], [Use Port 1 Only] or [Use Port 2 Only] as the "FAX Port Restriction" setting.**

Applying Restriction

Restriction can be applied in the following modes:

Item	Descriptions
Off	No restriction is applied.
Counter Limit	Restricts the print counter in one-page increments up to 9,999,999 copies.
Reject Usage	Restriction is applied.

Editing an Account

This changes the registered account information.

1 Display the screen.

1 [**System Menu**] key > [**User Login/Job Accounting**]

> **NOTE**
>
> If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login with administrator privileges.
>
> The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.
>
> | Model Name | Login User Name | Login Password |
> |---|---|---|
> | **350ci** | 3500 | 3500 |
> | **400ci** | 4000 | 4000 |

2 "Job Accounting Settings" [**Next**] > "Job Accounting (Local)" [**Next**] > "Accounting List" [**Add/Edit**]

2 Edit an account.

1 Select [**Detail**] for the account name you wish to edit.

> **NOTE**
>
> • Select [**Name**] or [**ID**] from the "Sort" to sort the account list.
>
> • Select [**Search(Name)**] or [**Search(ID)**] to search by account name or account ID.

2 Select the account information to be changed and change the account information.

3 [**Save**] > [**Yes**]

The account information is changed.

Deleting an Account

This deletes the account.

1 Display the screen.

1 [**System Menu**] key > [**User Login/Job Accounting**]

> **NOTE**
>
> If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login with administrator privileges.
>
> The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Model Name	Login User Name	Login Password
350ci	3500	3500
400ci	4000	4000

2 "Job Accounting Settings" [**Next**] > "Job Accounting (Local)" [**Next**] > "Accounting List" [**Add/Edit**]

2 Delete an account.

1 Select the account name you wish to delete.

2 [**Delete**] > [**Yes**]

The account is deleted.

Job Accounting for Printing

The number of jobs to be printed from the computer can be managed by Job Accounting.

Setting Printer Driver

To manage the number of jobs to be printed from the PC on the network, you need configure the following settings by using the printer driver on the PC.

1 Display the screen.

1 Click [**Start**] button on the Windows, and then click [**Devices and Printers**].

> **NOTE**
>
> In Windows 8, select [**Settings**] in charms on Desktop, and select [**Control Panel**], and then [**Devices and Printers**].

2 Right-click the printer driver icon of the machine, and click the [**Printer properties**] menu of the printer driver.

3 Click [**Administrator**] on the [**Device Settings**] tab.

2 Configure the settings.

1 Select [**Job accounting**] on the [**Job Accounting**] tab.
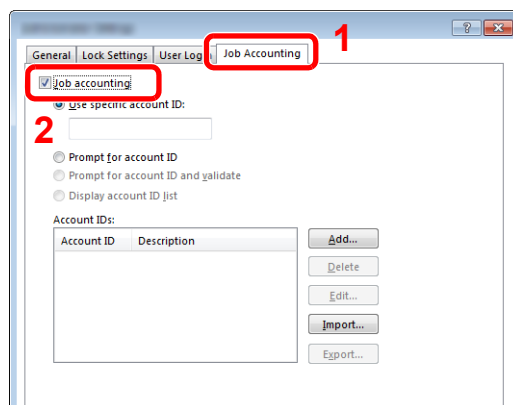
2 Set the Account ID.

[**Use specific account ID**]: Enter the Account ID. Printing will be performed using the entered Account ID. If this option is selected, the user does not have to enter the Account ID for each print job.

[**Prompt for account ID**]: A screen for entering the Account ID will be displayed when attempting a printing. The Account ID must be entered each time a printing is attempted.

[**Prompt for account ID and validate**]: A screen for entering the Account ID will be displayed when attempting a printing. The Account ID stored in the Account ID list needs to be entered. The Account ID must be entered each time a printing is attempted.

[**Display account ID list**]: The Account ID list is displayed when printing. The Account ID to be used needs to be selected from the list.

3 Click [**OK**].

> **NOTE**
>
> For other settings of job accounting, refer to the following:
>
> ➡ **Printing System Driver User Guide**

Job Accounting for Scan Using TWAIN

The number of jobs scanned by using TWAIN can be managed by Job Accounting.

Setting TWAIN Driver

To manage the number of jobs scanned by using TWAIN, you need to configure the following settings by using the TWAIN Driver on the computer.

1 Display the screen.

1 Select [**Start**] button on the Windows, [**All Programs**], [**(Brand Name)**] and then [**TWAIN Driver Setting**].

TWAIN Driver screen appears.

> **NOTE**
>
> In Windows 8, select [**Search**] in charms, [**Apps**], and then [**TWAIN Driver Setting**].

2 Select the machine, click [**Edit**].
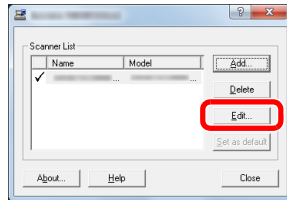
2 Configure the settings.

1 Click [**User Authentication Settings**].

2 Select the checkbox beside [**Account**], and enter the account ID.
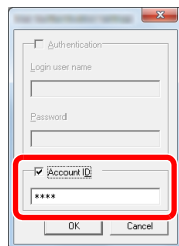
3 Click [**OK**].

Job Accounting for Scan Using WIA

The number of jobs scanned by using WIA can be managed by Job Accounting.

Setting WIA Driver

To manage the number of jobs scanned by using WIA, you need to configure the following settings by using the WIA Driver on the computer.

1 Display the screen.

1 Click [**Start**] button on the Windows and enter [**Scanner**] in [**Program and File Search**]. Click [**View scanners and cameras**] in the search list then the Scanners and Cameras screen appears.

> **NOTE**
>
> In Windows 8, click [**Search**] in charms, and then [**Settings**], and enter "Scanner" in the search box. Click [**View scanners and cameras**] in the search list then the Scanners and Cameras screen appears.

2 Select the same name as this machine from WIA Drivers, and press [**Properties**].
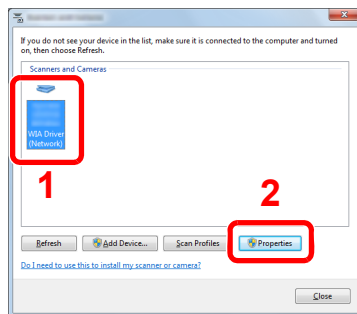
2 Configure WIA Driver.

1 Select the checkbox beside [**Account ID**] on the [**Settings**] tab, and enter the Account ID.
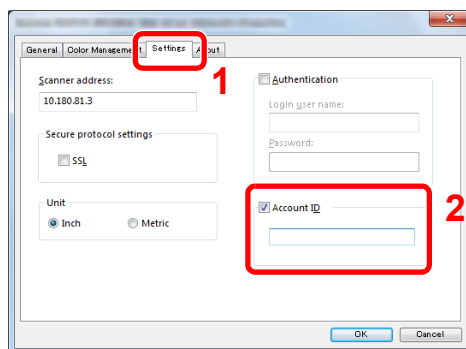
2 Click [**OK**].

Job Accounting for the FAX Transmitted from a Computer

The number of FAX jobs transmitted from the computer can be managed by Job Accounting.

> **NOTE**
> FAX functions are available only on products with the fax function installed.

Setting FAX Driver

To manage the number of FAX jobs transmitted from the computer, you need to configure the following settings by using the FAX Driver on the computer.

1 Display the screen.

1 Click [**Start**] button on the Windows, and then click [**Devices and Printers**].

> **NOTE**
> In Windows 8, select [**Settings**] in charms on Desktop, and select [**Control Panel**], and then [**Devices and Printers**].

2 Right click the name of the machine to be used as the FAX Driver and select [**Printing preferences**] from the resulting pull-down menu.

3 Click [**FAX TX Setting**] in the [**Printing Preferences**] window.

2 Configure the settings.

1 Select [**Job Accounting**] on the [**Authentication**] tab.
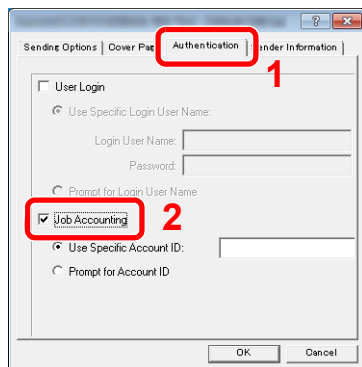
2 Set the Job Accounting.

[**Use Specific Account ID**]: This option can be used to specify an account ID to use the same Account ID for every FAX job. If this option is selected, the user does not have to enter the Account ID for each FAX job.

[**Prompt for Account ID**]: A screen for entering the Account ID will be displayed when attempting a transmission. The Account ID must be entered each time a transmission is attempted.

3 Click [**OK**].

Configuring Job Accounting

Default Setting

Select the default value for usage limit, and whether or not to enable counting by paper size.

1 Display the screen.

1 [**System Menu**] key > [**User Login/Job Accounting**]

> **NOTE**
>
> If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login with administrator privileges.
>
> The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.
>
> | Model Name | Login User Name | Login Password |
> |------------|-----------------|----------------|
> | **350ci** | 3500 | 3500 |
> | **400ci** | 4000 | 4000 |

2 "Job Accounting Settings" [**Next**] > "Job Accounting (Local)" [**Next**] > "Default Setting" [**Next**] > "Default Counter Limit" [**Next**]

2 Configure the settings.

1 Select [**Change**] for the item you want to modify and then select [**+**], [**-**] or use the numeric keys to enter the default restriction on the number of sheets.

2 Select [**OK**].

Item	Description
Counter Limit	When you add a new account, you can change the default restrictions on the number of sheets used. You can set any number from 1 to 9,999,999. The items that can be set differ depending on whether [**Individual**] or [**Total**] is selected for [**Copy/Print Count**]. → Copier/Printer Count (page 9-54)
[Individual] selected for Copy/Printer Count	
Copy Restriction (Total)	Sets the default restriction on the number of sheets used for copying.
Copy Restr. (Full Color)	Sets the default restriction on the number of sheets used for full-color copying.
Copy Restr. (SingleColor)	Sets the default restriction on the number of sheets used for single-color copying.
Print Restriction (Total)	Sets the default restriction on the number of sheets used for printing.
Print Restr. (Full Color)	Sets the default restriction on the number of sheets used for full-color printing.
Scan Restriction (Others)	Sets the default restriction on the number of sheets used for scanning (excludes copying).
FAX TX Restriction[*1]	Sets the default restriction on the number of sheets used for sending faxes.
[Total] selected for Copy/Printer Count	
Print Restriction (Total)	Sets the default restriction on the total number of sheets used for copying and printing.
Print Restr. (Full Color)	Sets the default restriction on the number of sheets used for full-color printing.
Print Restr. (SingleCol.)	Sets the default restriction on the number of sheets used for single-color printing.
Scan Restriction (Others)	Sets the default restriction on the number of sheets used for scanning (excludes copying).
FAX TX Restriction[*1]	Sets the default restriction on the number of sheets used for sending faxes.

*1 Displayed only when the optional FAX Kit is installed.

Count by Paper Size

This counts the number of pages by paper size (e.g. Letter).

> **NOTE**
>
> Paper size is available in four types, 1 to 4. These types are specified in accounting reports.
>
> ➡ Print Accounting Report (page 9-51)

In addition to paper size, media type can also be specified (e.g. count the letter-size color paper used). If you do not specify the media type, the number of used sheets will be counted for the specified sheet size, regardless of the media type.

1 Display the screen.

1 [**System Menu**] key > [**User Login/Job Accounting**] > "Job Accounting Settings" [**Next**]

> **NOTE**
>
> If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login with administrator privileges.
>
> The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.
>
> | Model Name | Login User Name | Login Password |
> |---|---|---|
> | **350ci** | 3500 | 3500 |
> | **400ci** | 4000 | 4000 |

2 "Job Accounting (Local)" [**Next**] > "Default Setting" [**Next**] > "Count by Paper Size" [**Next**]

2 Configure the settings.

1 Select [**On**].

2 Select the paper size.

3 Select [**Media Type**] to specify media type.

4 Select the media type and select [**OK**].

5 Select [**OK**].

Counting the Number of Pages Printed

This counts the number of pages printed. Counts are classified into Total Job Accounting and Each Job Accounting. A new count can also be started after resetting the count data which was stored for a certain period of time.

1 Display the screen.

1 [**System Menu**] key > [**User Login/Job Accounting**] > "Job Accounting Settings" [**Next**]

2 "Job Accounting (Local)" [**Next**] > "Total Job Accounting" [**Next**] or "Each Job Accounting" [**Check**]

2 Configure the settings.

The table below lists the item you can view.

Item		Descriptions
Printed Pages		Displays the number of pages copied and printed, and the total number of pages used. You can also use [**FAX**][*1], [**Count by Paper Size**], [**by Duplex**] and [**by Combine**] to check the number of pages used.
	Copy (B & W)	Displays the number of pages used for black and white copying.
	Copy (Full Color)	Displays the number of pages used for full-color copying.
	Copy (Color)	Displays the number of pages used for color copying.
	Copy (Total)	Displays the number of pages copied.
	Printer (B & W)	Displays the number of pages used for black and white printing.
	Printer (Full Color)	Displays the number of pages used for color printing.
	Printer (Total)	Displays the number of pages printed.
	Copy/Printer (B/W)	Displays the total number of pages used for black-and-white copying and printing.
	Copy/Print. (Color)	Displays the total number of pages used for full-color copying and printing.
	Copy/Print. (Total)	Displays the total number of pages used for copying and printing.
	FAX[*1]	Displays the number of pages received.
	Total	Displays the total number of pages used.
	Count by Paper Size	Displays the number of pages used in the selected paper size as well as the number of pages used in other paper sizes.
	Count by Duplex/ Combine	Displays the number of pages used in Duplex (1-sided) mode, Duplex (2-sided) mode and the total for both, as well as the pages used in Combine (None) mode, Combine (2in1) mode, Combine (4in1) mode and the total for all three.
Scanned Pages		Displays the number of pages scanned for copying, faxing and other functions, as well as the total number of pages scanned.
FAX TX Pages[*1]		Displays the number of pages faxed.
FAX TX Time[*1]		Displays the total duration of FAX transmissions.
Counter Reset		Resets the counter. Select [**Yes**] in the confirmation screen.

*1 Displayed only when the optional FAX Kit is installed.

Total Accounting

This counts the number of pages for all accounts and resets the counts for those accounts together at the same time.

1 Check the number of pages.

1 Select [**Check**] at the function to check the count.

The results will be displayed.

2 Confirm the count and select [**Close**].

Each Job Account

This counts the number of pages for each account and resets the counts by account. When checking Each Job Accounting, select the account for which you want to check the count.

1 Check the number of pages.

1 Select the account to check the count.

2 Select [**Detail**].

> **NOTE**
> • Select [**Name**] or [**ID**] from the "Sort" to sort the account names.
> • Select [**Search(Name)**] or [**Search(ID)**] to search by account name or account ID. To display an account other than your own account, select [**Other Account**].

3 Select [**Check**] at the function to check the count.

The results will be displayed.

4 Confirm the count and select [**Close**].

Print Accounting Report

The total pages counted of all relevant accounts can be printed as an accounting report.

Reports have different formats depending on how the count of copiers and printers is administered.

When "Individual" is selected for Managing the Copy/Printer Count.

ACCOUNT. REPORT

Firmware Version
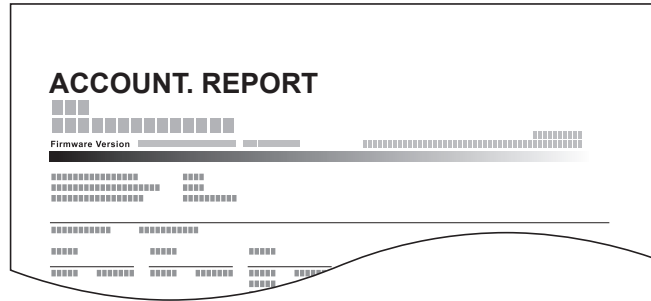
Use the procedure below to print a job accounting report.

1 Prepare paper.

Check that A4 or Letter paper is loaded in the cassette.

2 Display the screen.

[**System Menu**] key > [**User Login/Job Accounting**] > [**Job Accounting Settings**]

> **NOTE**
>
> If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login with administrator privileges.
>
> The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Model Name	Login User Name	Login Password
350ci	3500	3500
400ci	4000	4000

3 Print the report.

[**Print Accounting Report**] > [**Yes**]

Accounting report is printed.

Using Job Accounting

This section explains procedures while setting job accounting.

Login/Logout

If job accounting is enabled, an account ID entry screen appears each time you use this machine.

Use the procedure below to login and logout.

Login

> **1** In the account ID entry screen, enter the account ID using the numeric keys and select [**Login**].

> > **NOTE**
> > • If you entered a wrong character, select the [**Clear**] key and enter the account ID again.
> > • If the entered account ID does not match the registered ID, a warning beep will sound and login will fail. Enter the correct account ID.
> > • By selecting [**Check Counter**], you can refer to the number of pages printed and the number of pages scanned.

> **When the screen to enter the login user name and password appears**

> If user login administration is enabled, the screen to enter the login user name and password appears. Enter a login user name and password to login. If the user has already registered the account information, the account ID entry would be skipped.

> ➡ Adding a User (Local User List) (page 9-8)

> **2** Proceed to complete the rest of the steps.

Logout

When the operations are complete, select the [**Authentication/Logout**] key to return to the account ID entry screen.

Apply Limit

This specifies how the machine behaves when the counter has reached the limit of restriction. The table below describes the action taken.

Item	Descriptions
Immediately[*1]	Job stops when the counter reaches its limit.
Subsequently	Printing/scanning of the job continues but the subsequent job will be rejected.
Alert Only	Job continues while displaying an alert message.

*1 The next job will be prohibited in sending or in storing in the box.

1 Display the screen.

1 [**System Menu**] key > [**User Login/Job Accounting**] > "Job Accounting Settings" [**Next**]

> **NOTE**
>
> If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login with administrator privileges.
>
> The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.
>
> | Model Name | Login User Name | Login Password |
> |---|---|---|
> | **350ci** | 3500 | 3500 |
> | **400ci** | 4000 | 4000 |

2 Select "Apply Limit" [**Change**].

2 Configure the settings.

Select [**Immediately**], [**Subsequently**], or [**Alert Only**] > [**OK**]

Copier/Printer Count

You can select how the copying and printing page counts are shown - either the total of both or each of copying and printing individually. The selection may influence restriction on the count and count method. For details, refer to the following:

➡

1 Display the screen.

1 [**System Menu**] key > [**User Login/Job Accounting**] > "Job Accounting Settings" [**Next**]

> **NOTE**
>
> If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login with administrator privileges.
>
> The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.
>
> | Model Name | Login User Name | Login Password |
> |---|---|---|
> | **350ci** | 3500 | 3500 |
> | **400ci** | 4000 | 4000 |

2 Select "Copy/Printer Count" [**Change**].

2 Configure the settings.

Select [**Total**] or [**Individual**] > [**OK**]

Unknown ID Job

This specifies the behavior for handling the jobs sent with unknown or unsent login user names or User ID. If the User Login is set to invalid and Job Accounting is set to valid, follow the procedure when the Account ID is unknown.

The setting items are as follows.

Item	Descriptions
Permit	The job is permitted to be printed.
Reject	The job is rejected (not printed).

1 Display the screen.

1 [**System Menu**] key > [**User Login/Job Accounting**]

> **NOTE**
>
> If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login with administrator privileges.
>
> The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.
>
> | Model Name | Login User Name | Login Password |
> |---|---|---|
> | **350ci** | 3500 | 3500 |
> | **400ci** | 4000 | 4000 |

2 Select [**Unknown ID Job**].

2 Configure the settings.

Select [**Permit**] or [**Reject**].

10 Troubleshooting

This chapter explains the following topics:

Regular Maintenance

Cleaning

Clean the machine regularly to ensure optimum printing quality.

> ⚠️ **CAUTION**
> **For safety, always unplug the power cord before cleaning the machine.**

Cleaning Glass Platen

Wipe the inside of the document processor and the glass platen with a soft cloth dampened with alcohol or mild detergent.

> ✅ **IMPORTANT**
> **Do not use thinner or other organic solvents.**
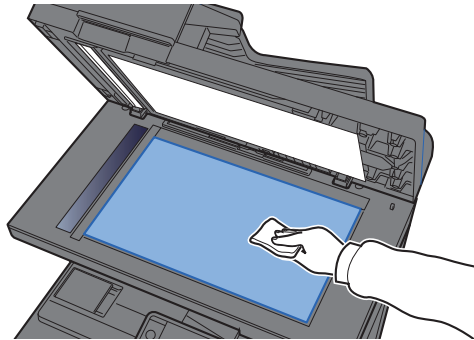
Cleaning inside of the Document Processor

When using the document processor that features dual scanning, clean the dual scanning unit.

> ✅ **IMPORTANT**
> **Do not use thinner or other organic solvents.**
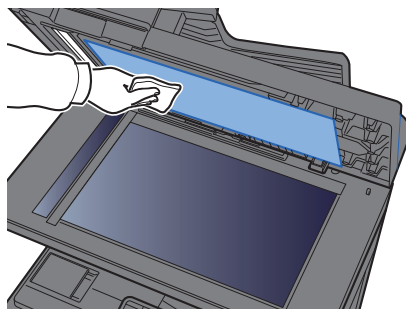
Dual scanning area

When using the document processor that features dual scanning, clean the dual scanning unit.
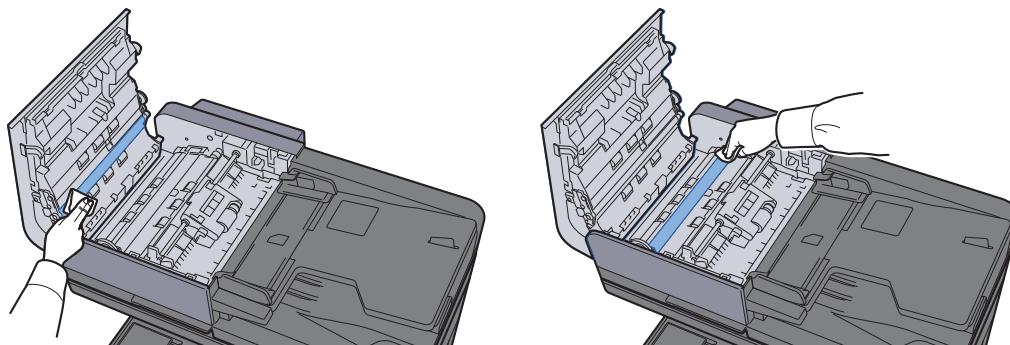
Cleaning Slit Grass

When using the document processor, clean the slit glass surface and the reading guide with the dry cloth.

> **IMPORTANT**
>
> **Do not use water, soap or solvents for cleaning.**

> **NOTE**
>
> Dirt on the slit glass or the reading guide may cause black streaks to appear in the output.
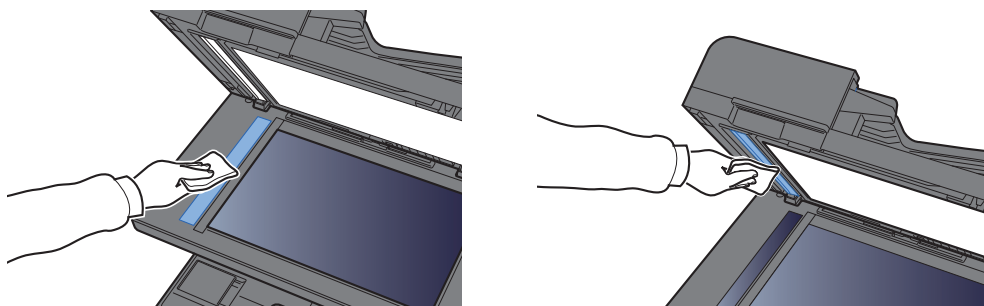
Toner Container Replacement

When toner runs low, "Toner is low. [C][M][Y][K] (Replace when empty.)" appears in the touch panel. Make sure you have a new toner container available for replacement.

When the touch panel displays "Toner [C][M][Y][K] are empty.", replace the toner.

> **NOTE**
> - For the toner container, always use a genuine toner container. Using a toner container that is not genuine may cause image defects and product failure.
> - The memory chip in the toner container of this product stores information necessary for improving customer convenience, operation of the recycling system for used toner containers, and planning and development of new products. The stored information does not include information that makes it possible to identify individuals, and is only used anonymously for the above purposes.

> ⚠ **CAUTION**
> **Do not attempt to incinerate parts which contain toner. Dangerous sparks may cause burns.**

Installation procedures of the toner container is same for every color. Here, we'll explain the procedures for the yellow toner container, as an example.

1 Open the front cover.
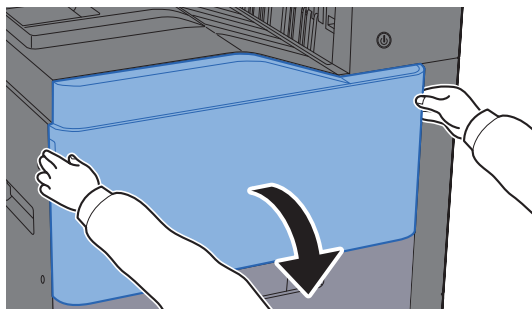
2 Unlock the toner container.
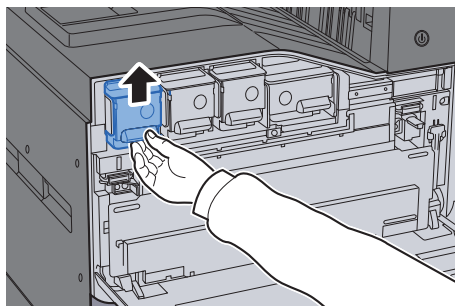
3 **Remove the toner container.**
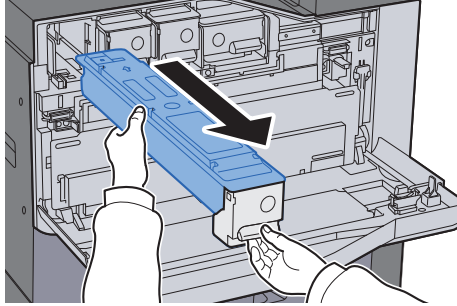
4 **Put used toner container into the plastic waste bag.**
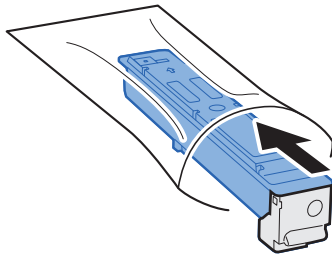
5 **Remove the new toner container from the box.**
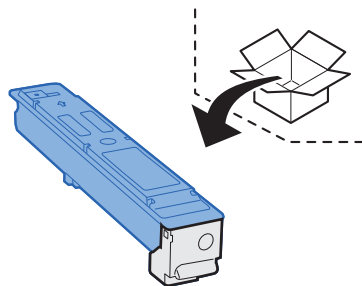
✔ **IMPORTANT**

Do not touch the points shown below.
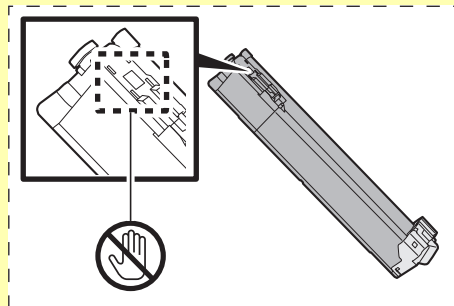
6 Tap the toner container.
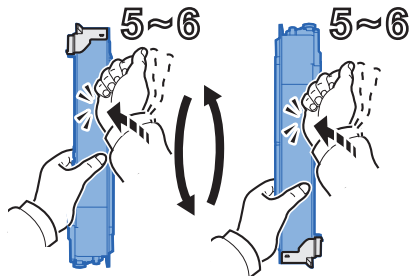
7 Shake the toner container.
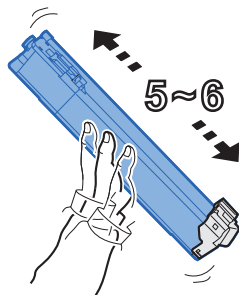
8 Install the toner container.

CLICK!
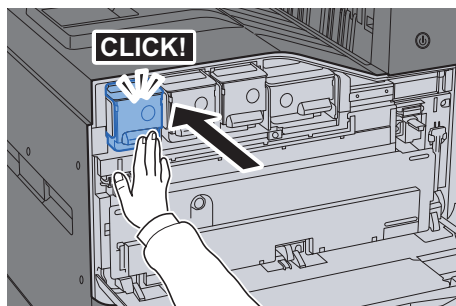
9 Close the front cover.
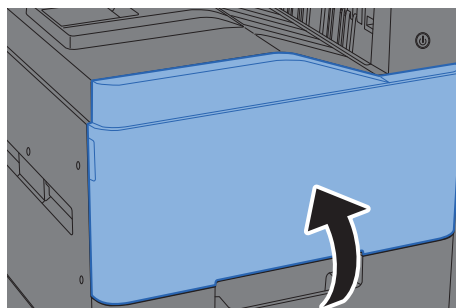
> **NOTE**
> • If the front cover does not close, check that the new toner container is installed correctly.
> • Return the exhausted toner container to your dealer or service representative. The collected toner container will be recycled or disposed in accordance with the relevant regulations.

Replace the Waste Toner Box

When the touch panel shows "Replace the waste toner box.", immediately replace the waste toner box.

> ⚠️ **CAUTION**
> **Do not attempt to incinerate parts which contain toner. Dangerous sparks may cause burns.**

350ci

1 **Open the front cover.**
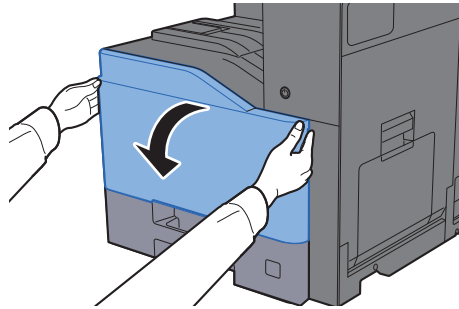
2 **Remove the Waste Toner Box and put it on the flat surface.**
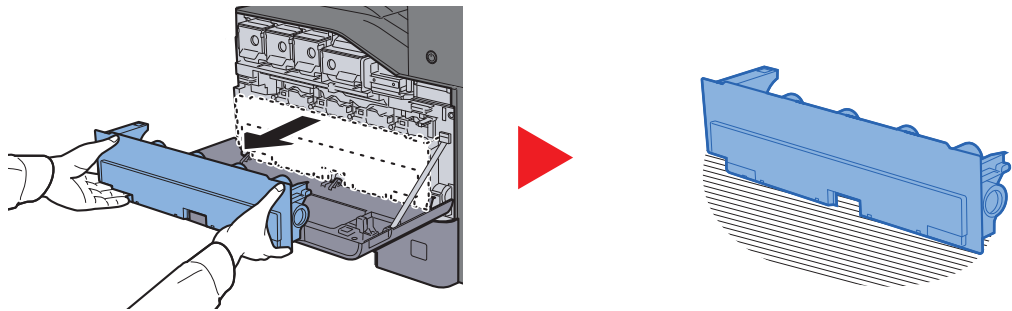
3 **Unpack the caps inside the carton box.**
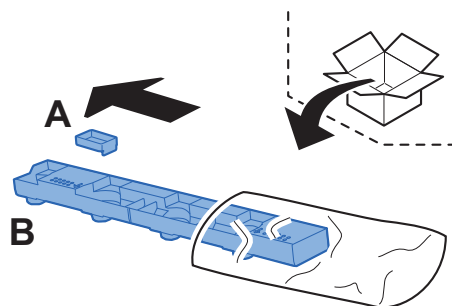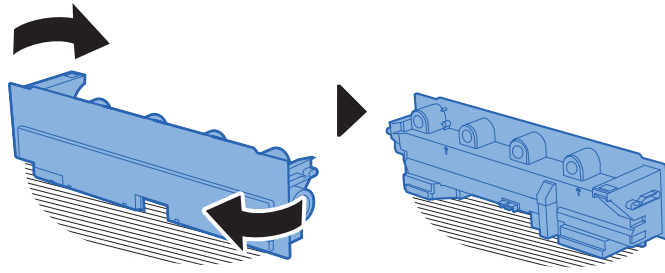
A

B

4   **Change the direction of the used Waste Toner Box as show below.**

5   **Attach the Cap A.**

6   **Change the direction of the used Waste Toner Box as show below.**
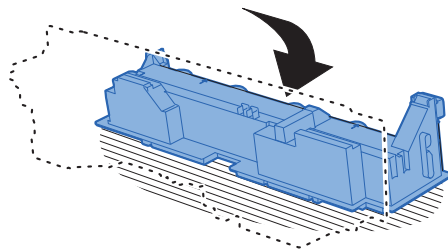
7   **Attach the Cap B.**
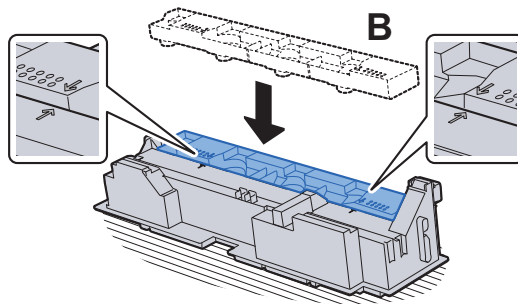
8 **Put the used Waste Toner Box into the plastic waste bag.**
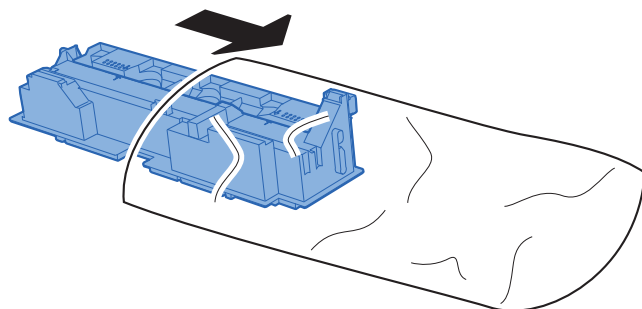
9 **Unpack the new Waste Toner Box.**
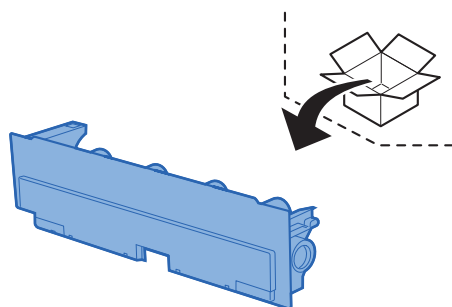
10 **Install the new Waste Toner Box.**
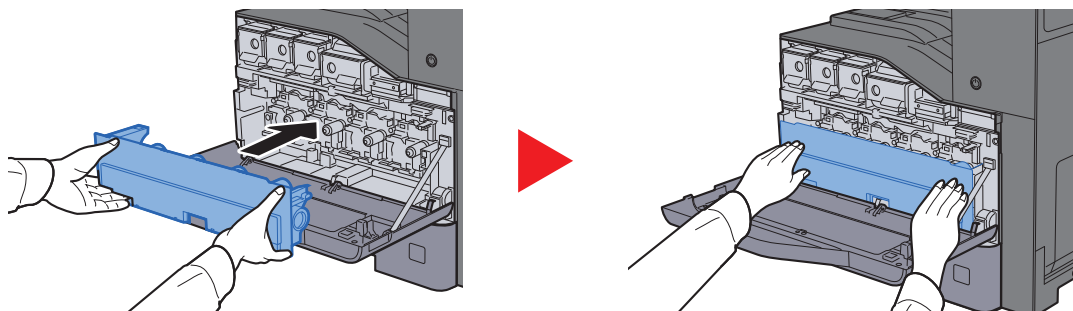
11 **Close the front cover.**
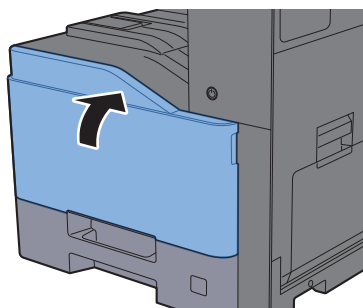
> **NOTE**
>
> Return the exhausted waste toner box to your dealer or service representative. The collected waste toner box will be recycled or disposed in accordance with the relevant regulations.

400ci

1 **Open the front cover.**
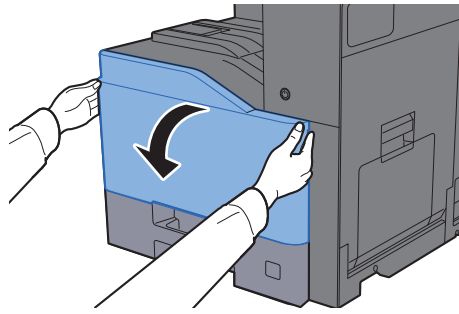
2 **Remove the Waste Toner Box and put it on the flat surface.**
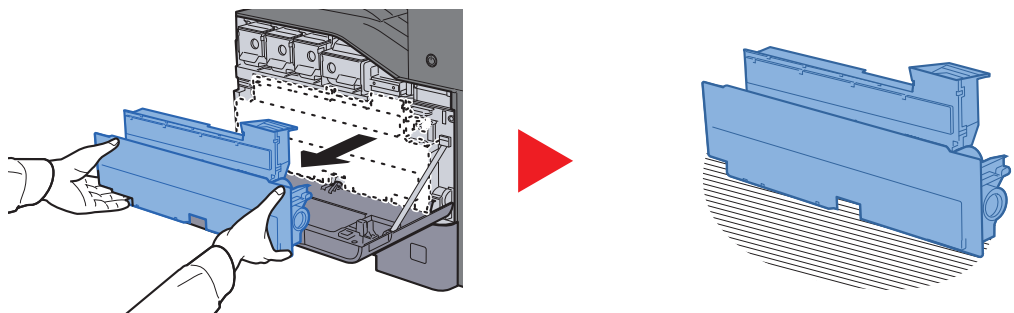
3 **Remove the caps inside.**
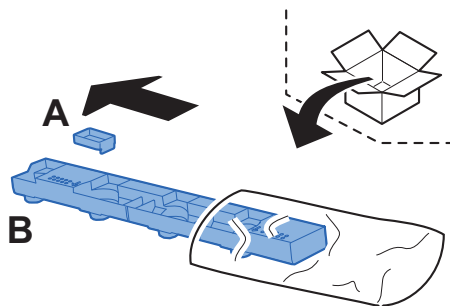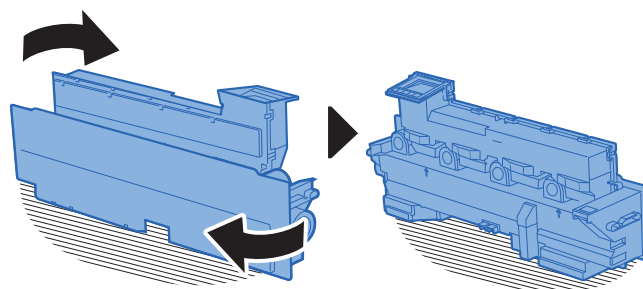
A

B

4 **Change the direction of the used Waste Toner Box as show below.**

5 **Attach the Cap A.**

6 **Change the direction of the used Waste Toner Box as show below.**
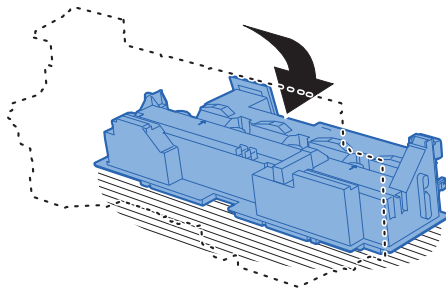
7 **Attach the Cap B.**
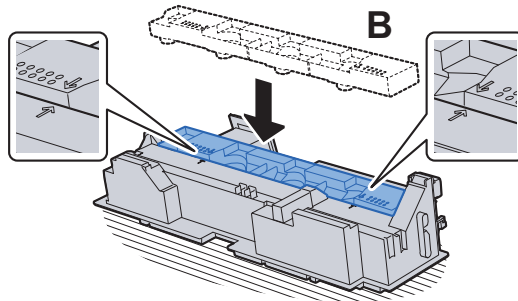
8 **Put the used Waste Toner Box into the plastic waste bag.**
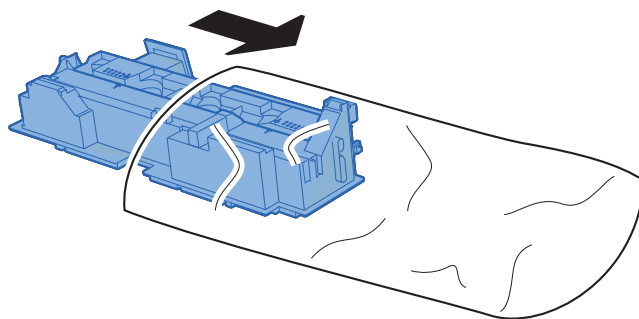
9 **Unpack the new Waste Toner Box.**
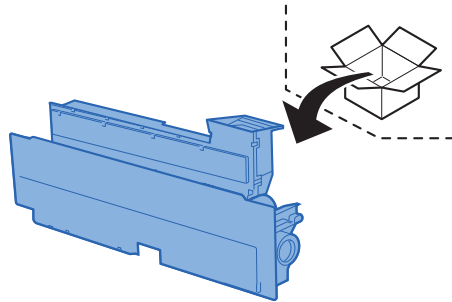
10 **Install the new Waste Toner Box.**
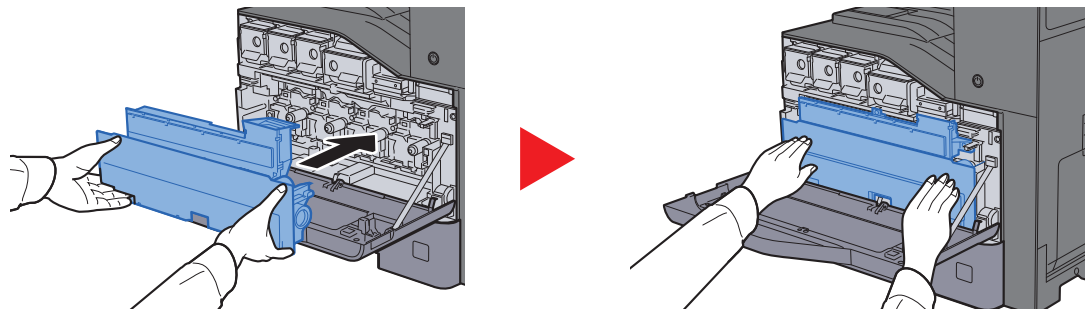
11 **Close the front cover.**
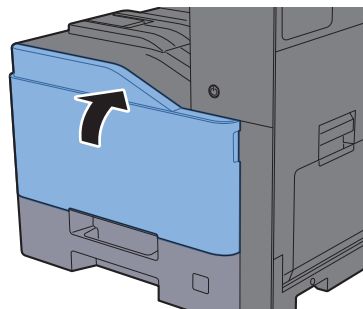
🔍 **NOTE**

Return the exhausted waste toner box to your dealer or service representative. The collected waste toner box will be recycled or disposed in accordance with the relevant regulations.

Loading Paper

When Cassette # runs out of paper, the following messages will be displayed.

"Add paper in cassette #."

"Add paper in Multi Purpose tray."

➡ Loading in the Cassettes (page 3-4)

Loading Paper in the Multi Purpose Tray (page 5-6)

Replacing Staples (Inner Finisher)

When the touch panel shows "Staple is empty.", the staple cartridge holder need to be replenished with staples.

> **NOTE**
> If the Staple Unit runs out of staples, contact your dealer or service representative.

1 **Open the inner finisher unit.**
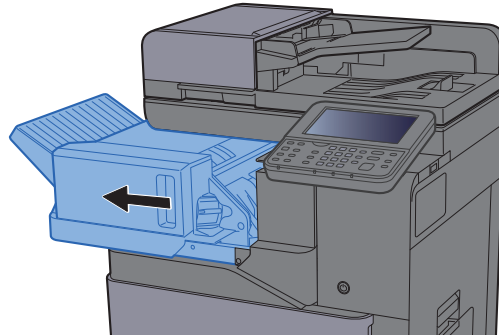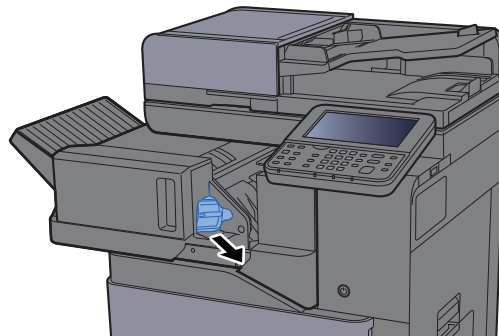
2 **Remove the Staple Cartridge Holder.**

3 **Replace the staples.**
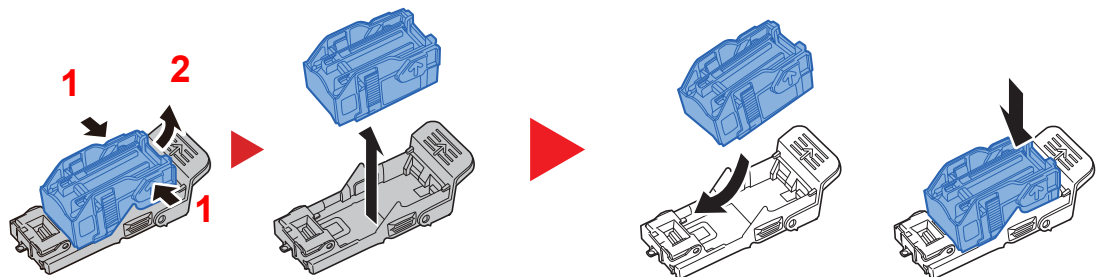
4 **Install the Staple Cartridge Holder.**
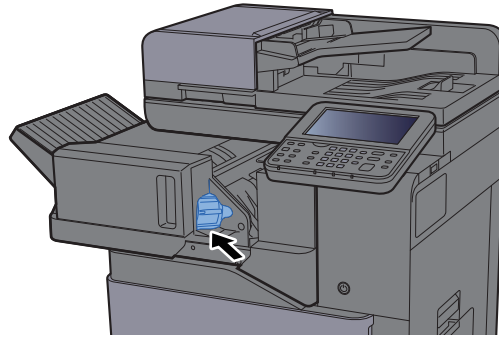
5 **Return the unit to the original position.**
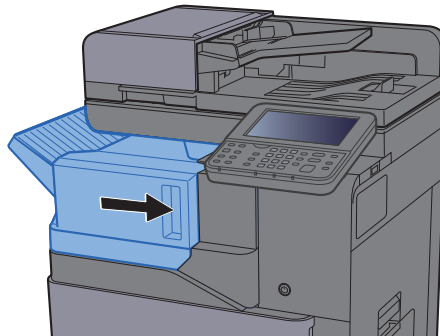
Replacing Staples (1,000-Sheet Finisher)

When the touch panel shows "Staple is empty.", the staple cartridge holder need to be replenished with staples.

> **NOTE**
>
> If the Staple Unit runs out of staples, contact your dealer or service representative.

1 **Open the 1000-sheet Finisher.**
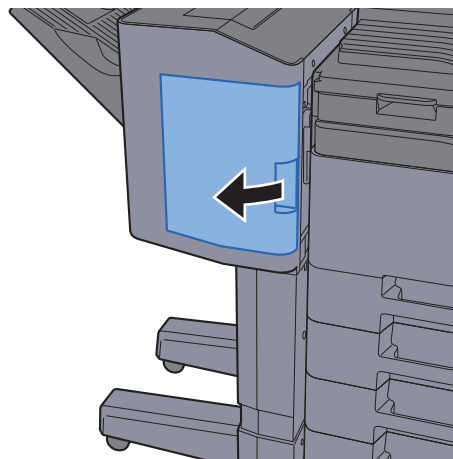
2 **Remove the Staple Cartridge Holder.**
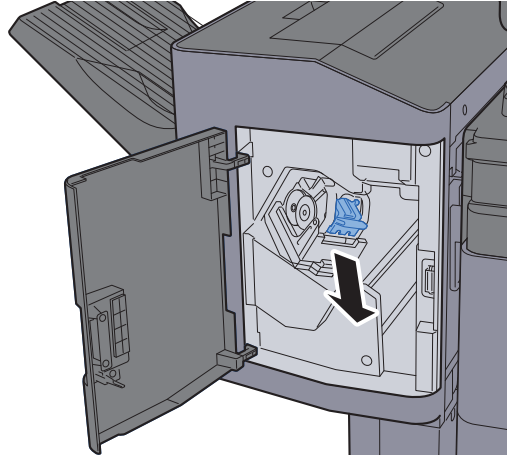
3 **Replace the staples.**
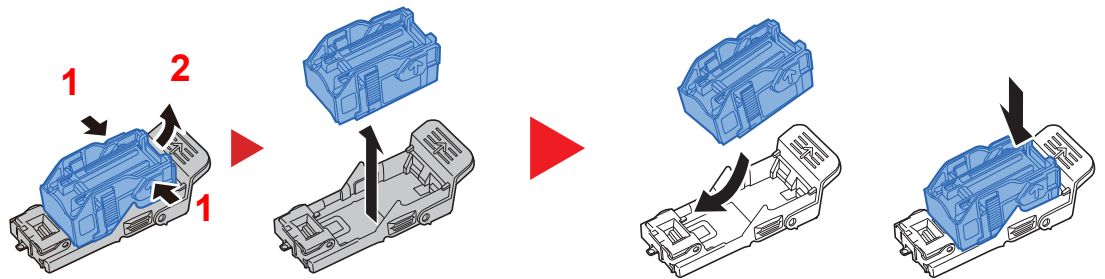
4 **Install the Staple Cartridge Holder.**
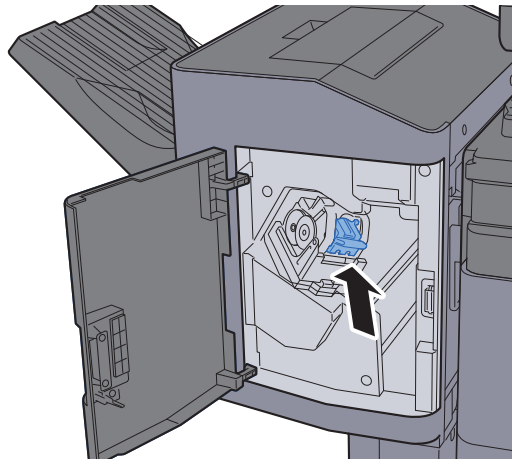
5 **Close the cover.**
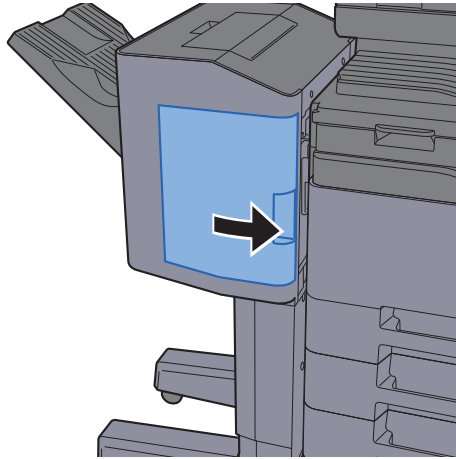
Replacing Staples (3,000-Sheet Finisher)

When the touch panel shows "Staple is empty.", the staple cartridge holder need to be replenished with staples.

> **NOTE**
>
> If the Staple Unit runs out of staples, contact your dealer or service representative.

1 **Open the 3000-sheet Finisher.**
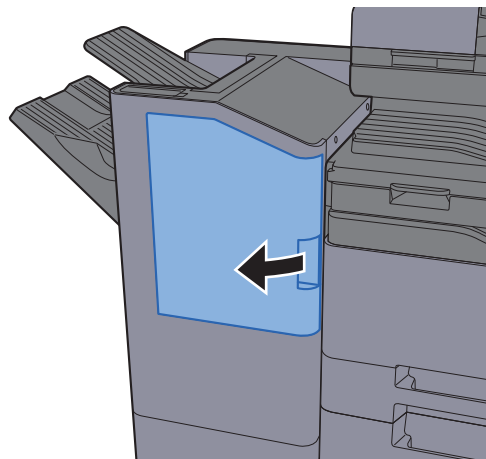
2 **Remove the Staple Cartridge Holder.**
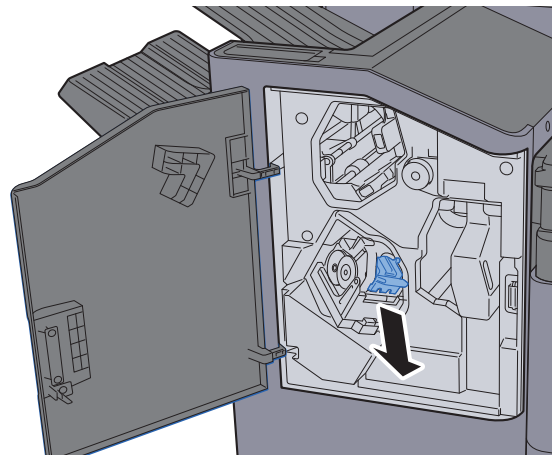
3 **Replace the staples.**
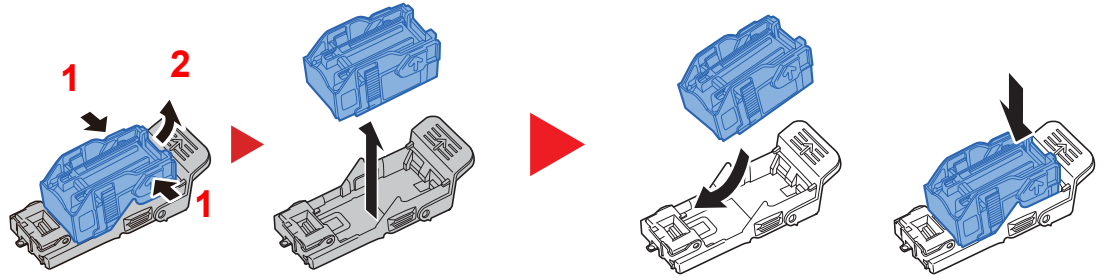
4 **Install the Staple Cartridge Holder.**
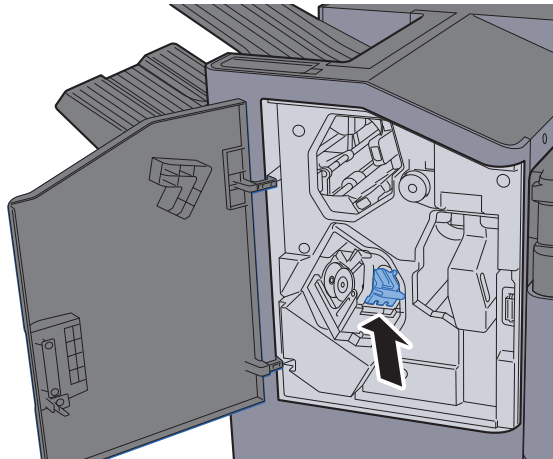
5 **Close the cover.**
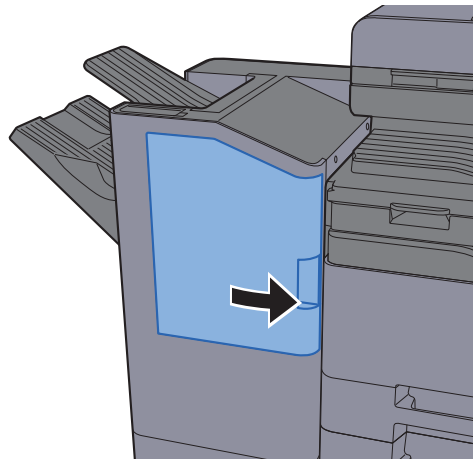
Disposing of the punch waste

If a message is displayed on the machine operation panel indicating that the waste punch box is full, be sure to empty the scraps in the punch waste box.

"Empty the punch waste box."

Leave the power switch on the machine switched ON while performing this procedure.

1,000-Sheet Finisher

1 **Open the 1000-sheet Finisher.**
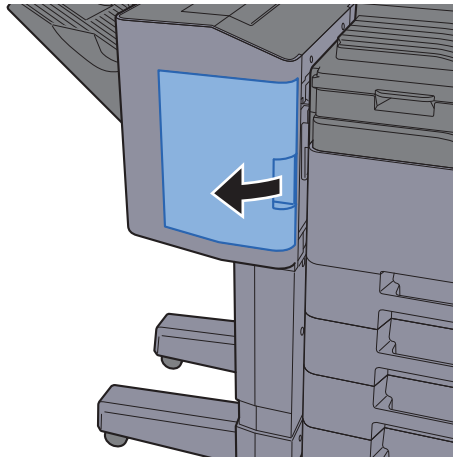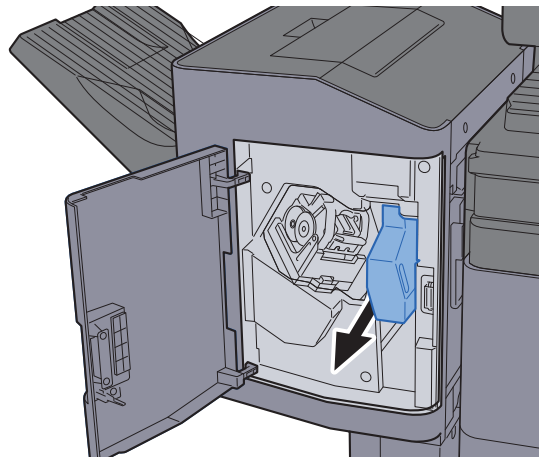
2 **Remove the Punch Waste Box.**

> 📀 **NOTE**
> Take care not to spill the waste hole punch scraps when removing the box.

3 **Empty the Punch Waste Box.**
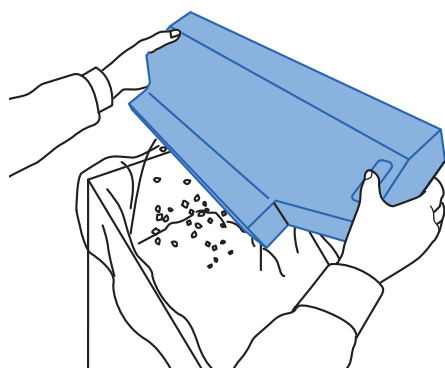
4 **Install the Punch Waste Box.**
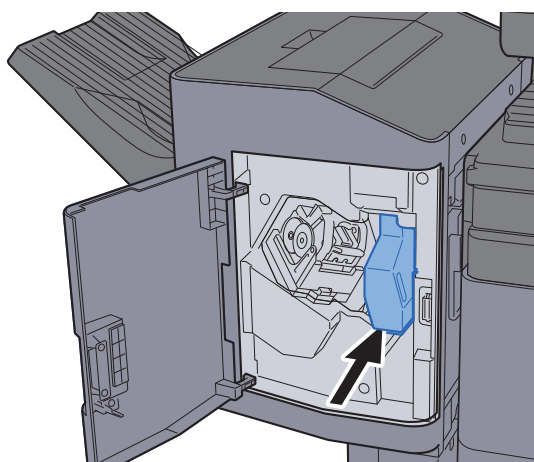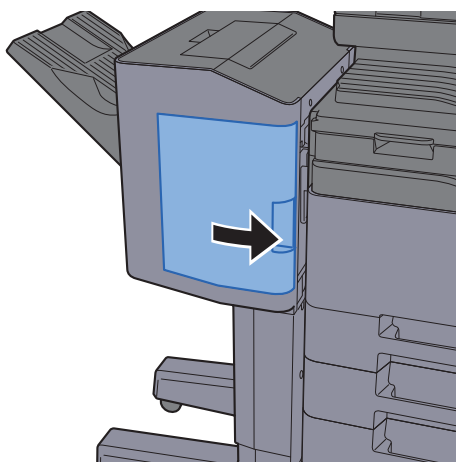
5 **Close the cover.**

3,000-Sheet Finisher

1 Open the 3000-sheet Finisher.
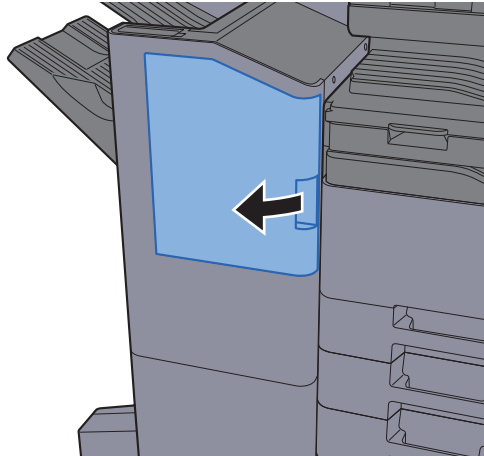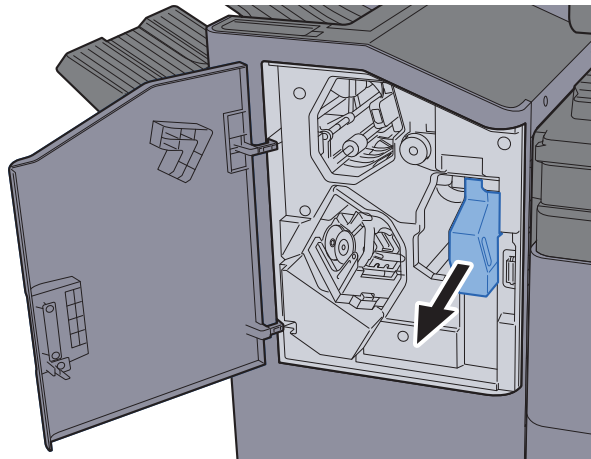
2 Remove the Punch Waste Box.

> **NOTE**
> Take care not to spill the waste hole punch scraps when removing the box.

3 Empty the Punch Waste Box.
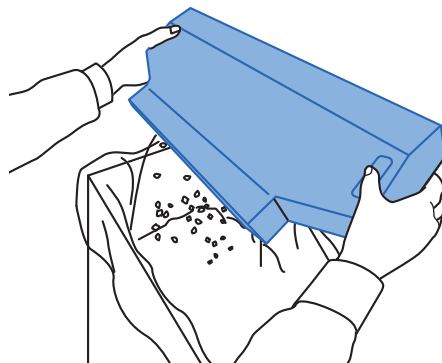
4 **Install the Punch Waste Box.**
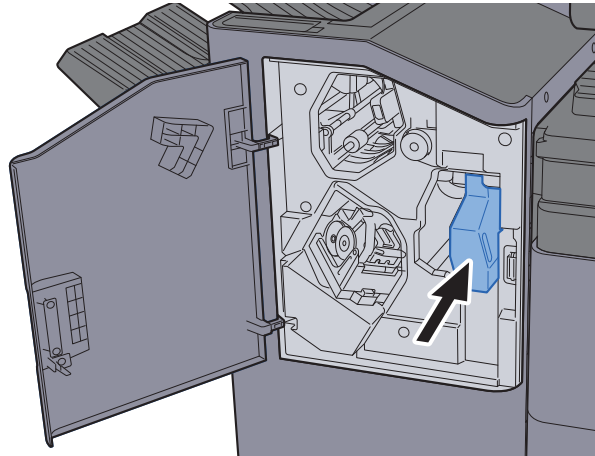
5 **Close the cover.**
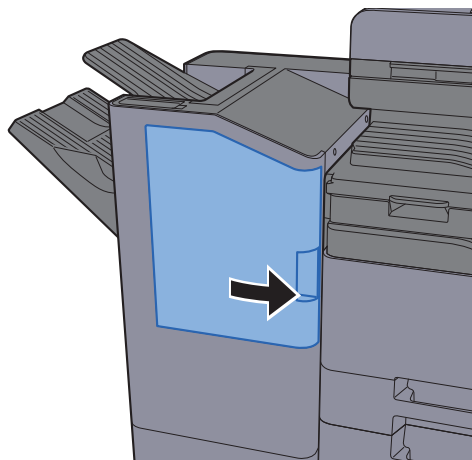
Troubleshooting

Solving Malfunctions

The table below provides general guidelines for problem solving.

If a problem occurs with your machine, look into the checkpoints and perform procedures indicated on the following pages. If the problem persists, contact your Service Representative.
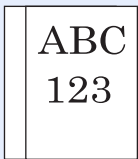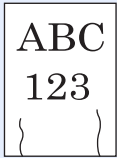
> **NOTE**
> When contacting us, the serial number will be necessary.
> To check the serial number, refer to the following:
>
> → Display for Device Information (page 2-16)

Machine Operation Trouble

When the following machine operation troubles occur, implement appropriate procedures.

Symptom	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
An application does not start.	Is the Auto Panel Reset time short?	Set the Auto Panel Reset time to 30 seconds or more.	page 8-53
The screen does not respond when the power switch is turned on.	Check the power cord.	Connect both ends of the power cord securely.	page 2-8
Pressing the [**Start**] key does not produce copies.	Is there a message on the screen?	Determine the appropriate response to the message and respond accordingly.	page 10-30
	Is the machine in Sleep mode?	Select any key on the operation panel to recover the machine from Sleep mode.	page 2-29
Blank sheets are ejected.	Are the originals loaded correctly?	When placing originals on the platen, place them face-down and align them with the original size indicator plates.	page 5-2
		When placing originals in the document processor, place them face-up.	page 5-3
	—	Check that the settings of the application software.	—
Paper often jams.	Is the paper loaded correctly?	Load the paper correctly.	page 3-4
	—	Turn the orientation 180 degrees around in which the paper is positioned.	page 3-4
	Is the paper of the supported type? Is it in good condition?	Remove the paper, turn it over, and reload it.	page 3-4
	Is the paper curled, folded or wrinkled?	Replace the paper with new paper.	page 3-4
	Are there any loose scraps or jammed paper in the machine?	Remove any jammed paper.	page 10-51

Symptom	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
2 or more sheets are overlaps when ejected. (multi feed) ABC 123	—	Load the paper correctly.	page 3-2
Printouts are wrinkled. ABC 123	Is the paper loaded correctly?	Load the paper correctly.	page 3-4
	—	Turn the orientation 180 degrees around in which the paper is positioned.	page 3-4
	Is the paper damp?	Replace the paper with new paper.	page 3-4
Printouts are curled. ABC 123	Is the paper damp?	Replace the paper with new paper.	page 3-4
Cannot print.	Is the machine plugged in?	Plug the power cord into an AC outlet.	—
	Is the machine powered on?	Turn on the power switch.	page 2-9
	Are the USB cable and network cable connected?	Connect the correct USB cable and network cable securely.	page 2-7
	Is the print job paused?	Resume printing.	page 7-11
Cannot print with USB memory. USB memory not recognized.	Is the USB host blocked?	Select [**Unblock**] in the USB host settings.	page 8-49
	—	Check that the USB memory is securely plugged into the machine.	—
While "Auto-IP" is set to [**On**], the IP address is not assigned automatically.	Is a value other than "0.0.0.0" entered for the IP address of TCP/IP(v4)?	Enter "0.0.0.0" for the IP address of TCP/IP(v4).	page 2-27
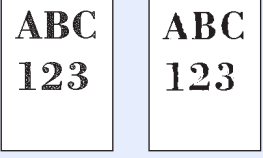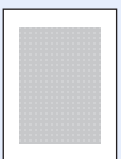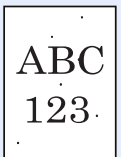
Symptom	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Cannot send via SMB.	Is the network cable connected?	Connect the correct network cable securely.	page 2-7
	Have the network settings for the equipment been configured properly?	Configure the TCP/IP settings properly.	page 8-42
	Have the folder sharing settings been configured properly?	Check sharing settings and access privileges under the folder properties.	page 3-14
	Has the SMB protocol been set to [**On**]?	Set the SMB protocol setting to [**On**].	page 8-44
	Has [**Host Name**] been entered properly? *1	Check the name of the computer to which data is being sent.	page 5-23
	Has [**Path**] been entered properly?	Check the share name for the shared folder.	page 5-23
	Has [**Login User Name**] been entered properly? *1 *2	Check the domain name and login user name.	page 5-23
	Has the same domain name been used for [**Host Name**] and [**Login User Name**]?	Delete the domain name and backslash ("/") from [**Login User Name**].	page 5-23
	Has [**Login Password**] been entered properly?	Check the login password.	page 5-23
	Have exceptions for Windows Firewall been configured properly?	Configure exceptions for Windows Firewall properly.	page 3-18
	Do the time settings for the equipment, domain server, and data destination computer differ?	Set the equipment, domain server, and data destination computer to the same time.	—
	Is the screen displaying Send error?	Refer to Responding to Send Error.	page 10-40
Cannot send via the e-mail.	Is the E-mail send size limit set in the SMTP server registered on the machine?	Check the limit value is entered to "E-mail Size Limit" of [**E-mail**] setting in Embedded Web Server RX and change the value as necessary.	page 2-55
The machine is emitting steam in the area around the paper ejection slot.	Check the room temperature to see if it is low, or if damp paper was used.	Depending on the printing environment and the paper's condition, the heat generated during printing will cause the moisture in the paper to evaporate, and the steam emitted may look like smoke. This is not a problem, and you can continue printing. If the steam concerns you, raise the room temperature, or replace the paper with a newer, dryer paper.	—
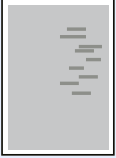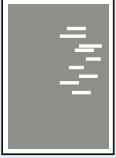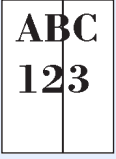
*1 You can also enter a full computer name as the host name (for example, pc001.abcdnet.com).
*2 You can also enter login user names in the following formats:
Domain_name/user_name (for example, abcdnet/james.smith)
User_name@domain_name (for example, james.smith@abcdnet)
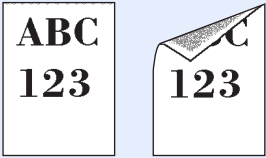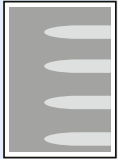
Printed Image Trouble

When the following printed image trouble occurs, implement appropriate procedures.

Symptom	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Printouts are totally too light. ABC 123 ABC 123	Is the paper damp?	Replace the paper with new paper.	page 3-2
	Have you changed the density?	Select appropriate density level.	page 6-24 page 8-56
	Is the toner distributed evenly within the toner container?	Shake the toner container from side to side several times.	page 10-4
	Is EcoPrint mode enabled?	Disable [**EcoPrint**] mode.	page 8-18
	—	Run [**Developer Refresh**].	page 10-50
	—	Run [**Laser Scanner Cleaning**].	page 10-50
	—	Make sure the paper type setting is correct for the paper being used.	page 8-13
Printouts are too dark even though the background of the scanned original is white. ABC 123	Have you changed the density?	Select appropriate density level.	page 6-24 page 8-56
	—	Run [**Calibration**].	page 10-50
Copies have a moire pattern (dots grouped together in patterns and not aligned uniformly).	Is the original a printed photograph?	Set the original image to [**Printer Output**] or [**Book/Magazine**] in [**Photo**].	page 6-24
Texts are not clearly printed. ABC 123	Did you choose appropriate image quality for the original?	Select appropriate image quality.	page 6-24
Black or color dots appear on the white background when white original is scanned. ABC 123	Is the original holder or the glass platen dirty?	Clean the original holder or the glass platen.	page 10-2
	—	Run [**Developer Refresh**].	page 10-50

Symptom	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Printouts are fuzzy. Printouts are cut off. ABC 123	Is the device used in an environment with high humidity or where the temperature or humidity changes suddenly?	Use in an environment that has suitable humidity.	—
	—	Run [**Drum Refresh**].	page 10-49
Images are skewed. ABC 123	Are the originals placed correctly?	When placing originals on the platen, align them with the original size indicator plates.	page 5-2
		When placing originals in the document processor, align the original width guides securely before placing the originals.	page 5-3
	Is the paper loaded correctly?	Check the position of the paper width guides.	page 3-4
Irregular horizontal lines appear in the image.	—	350ci: Select the [**System Menu**] key > [**Adjustment/Maintenance**] > [**MC**] and increase the adjustment value. Increase the adjustment value 1 level at a time from the current value. If there is no improvement after the value is increased by 1 level, increase by 1 level again. If there is still no improvement, return the setting to the original value. 400ci: Contact your service representative.	—
The altitude is 1000 m or higher and irregular horizontal white lines appear in the image.	—	Select the [**System Menu**] key > [**Adjustment/Maintenance**] > [**Altitude Adjustment**], and set to an elevation one level higher than the current setting.	—
The altitude is 1000 m or higher and dots appear in the image. ABC 123	—	Select the [**System Menu**] key > [**Adjustment/Maintenance**] > [**Altitude Adjustment**], and set to an elevation one level higher than the current setting.	—
Printouts have vertical lines. ABC 123	Is the slit glass dirty?	Clean the slit glass.	page 10-3
	—	Run [**Laser Scanner Cleaning**].	page 10-50

Symptom	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Dirt on the top edge or back of the paper. ABC 123	Is the interior of the machine dirty?	Open the right cover. If the machine interior is dirty with toner, clean it using soft, dry, lint-free cloth.	page 10-2
Part of the image is periodically faint or shows white lines.	—	Open and then close the right cover.	—
	—	350ci: Select the [**System Menu**] key > [**Adjustment/Maintenance**] > [**MC**] and increase the adjustment value. Increase the adjustment value 1 level at a time from the current value. If there is no improvement after the value is increased by 1 level, increase by 1 level again. If there is still no improvement, return the setting to the original value.	—
	—	Run [**Drum Refresh**].	page 10-49
	—	Run [**Developer Refresh**].	page 10-50
Print on the back of the sheet is visible on the front. ABC 123	—	Set [**Prevent Bleed-through**] to [**On**].	page 6-32 page 8-17
The previous image remains and lightly printed. AB AB	—	350ci: Select the [**System Menu**] key > [**Adjustment/Maintenance**] > [**MC**] and increase the adjustment value. Increase the adjustment value 1 level at a time from the current value. If there is no improvement after the value is increased by 1 level, increase by 1 level again. If there is still no improvement, return the setting to the original value. 400ci: Contact your service representative.	—

Color printing trouble

When the following color printing trouble occurs, implement appropriate procedures.

Symptom	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Skewed-color printout.	—	Run [**Calibration**].	page 10-50
	—	Run [**Color Registration**].	page 10-43
Colors appear different than you anticipated.	Did you choose appropriate image quality for the original?	Select appropriate image quality.	page 6-24
	Have you loaded color copy paper into the paper tray?	Load color copy paper into the paper tray.	—
	—	Run [**Calibration**].	page 10-50
	—	Run [**Tone Curve Adjustment**].	page 10-48
	—	**When making copies** Adjust the color balance.	page 6-26
	—	**When printing from a computer** Adjust the color using the printer driver.	—
Perform Tone Curve Adjustment in the System Menu. is displayed.	Over long periods of use, the effects of the ambient temperature and humidity can cause color output hues to vary slightly.	Run [**Tone Curve Adjustment**]	page 10-48
The color toner is empty.	Do you want to continue printing in black and white?	If the black toner is remained, the machine continues printing in black and white by selecting [**Print in Black and White**] of [**Color Toner Empty Action**].	page 8-16

10-29

Responding to Messages

If the touch panel or the computer displays any of these messages, follow the corresponding procedure.

> **NOTE**
>
> When contacting us, the serial number will be necessary. To check the serial number, refer to the following:
>
> → Display for Device Information (page 2-16)

A

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Acceptable staple count exceeded.[*1]	Is the acceptable number of sheets exceeded?	Select [**Continue**] to print without using Staple. Select [**Cancel**] to cancel the job.	—
Activation error.	—	Failed to activate the application. Contact administrator.	—
	—	Expansion Authentication is disabled. Turn the power switch off and on. If the error exists, contact administrator.	—
Add paper in cassette #.	Is the indicated cassette out of paper?	Load paper. Select the available paper. Select [**Continue**] to print.	page 3-2
Add paper in Multi Purpose tray.	Is the paper of the selected size loaded in the multi purpose tray?	Load paper. Select the available paper. Select [**Continue**] to print.	page 5-6
Adjusting Scanner.	—	The machine is under the adjustment to maintain its quality. Please wait.	—

*1 When Auto Error Clear is set to [**On**], processing resumes automatically after a set amount of time elapses. For details on Auto Error Clear, refer to the following:
   → Auto Error Clear (page 8-53)

B

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Box is not found.	—	The specified box cannot be found. Job is canceled. Select [**End**].	—
Box limit exceeded.[*1]	Is [End] displayed on the screen?	The specified box is full, and no further storage is available. Job is canceled. Select [**End**]. Try to perform the job again after printing or deleting data from the box.	—
	—	Repeat Copy box is full, and no further repeat copy is available. Select [**Continue**] to print scanned pages. Select [**Cancel**] to cancel the job.	—

*1 When Auto Error Clear is set to [**On**], processing resumes automatically after a set amount of time elapses. For details on Auto Error Clear, refer to the following:

➤ Auto Error Clear (page 8-53)

C

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Calibrating...	—	The machine is under the adjustment to maintain its quality. Please wait.	—
Cannot Banner Print.	—	System stamp is set up. Banner print cannot be carried out. Job is canceled. Select [**End**].	—
Cannot connect to Authentication Server.[*1]	—	Set machine time to match the server's time.	page 2-26
	—	Check the domain name.	page 9-2
	—	Check the host name.	page 9-2
	—	Check the connection status with the server.	—
Cannot connect to Server.	—	Check the connection status with the server.	—
Cannot duplex print on this paper.[*1]	Did you select a paper size/type that cannot be duplex printed?	If the selected paper is not changed and [**Continue**] is selected, duplex is released. Select the available paper. Select [**Continue**] to print.	page 6-39

10-31

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Cannot find the destination computer. Check the computer.	Is the machine and the PC to which the scanned image is to be sent connected to the network?	Check the network and SMB settings. • The network cable is connected. • The hub is not operating properly. • The server is not operating properly. • Host name and IP address • Port number	page 2-6
	Is the account information (user ID, password) used to access the shared folder to which the scanned image is to be sent incorrect?	Check the following settings of the PC to which the scanned image is to be sent. • Host name • Path • Login user name **NOTE** If the sender is a domain user, specify the domain name. [Login User ID]@[Domain Name] Example: sa720XXXX@km • Login password • Folder share permissions of the recipient	—
Cannot offset this paper.[*1]	Did you select a paper size/type that cannot be offset?	If the selected paper is not changed and [**Continue**] is selected, offset is released. Select the available paper. Select [**Continue**] to print.	page 6-19
Cannot perform remote printing.	—	The job is canceled. Select [**End**].	page 8-26
Cannot print the specified number of copies.[*1]	—	Only one copy is available. Select [**Continue**] to continue printing. Select [**Cancel**] to cancel the job.	—
Cannot process this job.[*1]	—	Restricted by Authorization settings. The job is canceled. Select [**End**].	—
	—	Restricted by Job Accounting. The job is canceled. Select [**End**].	page 9-36
Cannot punch at the specified position.	Have you selected a position that cannot be punched?	If the selected paper is not changed and [**Continue**] is selected, punch is released. Select the available paper. Select [**Continue**] to print.	page 6-21
Cannot punch this paper.	Did you select a paper size/type that cannot be punched?	If the selected paper is not changed and [**Continue**] is selected, punch is released. Select the available paper. Select [**Continue**] to print.	page 6-21

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Cannot staple at the specified position.	Have you selected a position that cannot be stapled?	If the selected paper is not changed and [**Continue**] is selected, staple is released. Select the available paper. Select [**Continue**] to print.	page 6-20
Cannot staple this paper.[*1]	Did you select a paper size/type that cannot be stapled?	If the selected paper is not changed and [**Continue**] is selected, staple is released. Select the available paper. Select [**Continue**] to print.	page 6-20
Cannot use #### due to a failure.	—	Call service.	—
Check the document processor.	Is the top cover of the document processor open?	Close the document processor cover.	—
	Is the document processor open?	Close the document processor.	—
Check the paper in the multi purpose tray.	—	The paper size is different. Set selected size paper and select [**Continue**].	page 5-6
Cleaning the laser scanner…	—	The machine is under the adjustment to maintain its quality. Please wait.	—

*1 When Auto Error Clear is set to [**On**], processing resumes automatically after a set amount of time elapses. For details on Auto Error Clear, refer to the following:
➤ Auto Error Clear (page 8-53)

E

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Empty the punch waste box.	Is the punch waste box full?	Follow the instructions on the screen. and empty the punch waste box.	page 10-19
Error occurred at cassette #.	—	Open the cassette. Check inside the machine and remove the paper.	—

F

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Failed to specify Job Accounting.[*1]	—	Failed to specify Job Accounting when processing the job externally. The job is canceled. Select [**End**].	—
Failed to store job retention data.	—	The job is canceled. Select [**End**].	—
Finisher tray is full of paper.	Is the acceptable storage capacity exceeded?	Remove the paper. Printing then resumes.	—

*1 When Auto Error Clear is set to [**On**], processing resumes automatically after a set amount of time elapses. For details on Auto Error Clear, refer to the following:
➤ Auto Error Clear (page 8-53)

H

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Hard Disk error.	—	An error has occurred on the hard disk. Job is canceled. Select [**End**]. The possible error codes and their descriptions are as follows. 01: The amount of data that can be saved at once has been exceeded. Restart the system or turn the power OFF/ON. If the error still occurs, divide the file into smaller files. If the error occurs after the file is divided, the hard disk is damaged. Execute [**System Initialization**]. 04: Insufficient space on the hard disk to complete this operation. Move data or delete unneeded data.	—

I

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Incorrect account ID.[1]	—	The account ID was incorrect when processing the job externally. The job is canceled. Select [**End**].	—
Incorrect box password.	—	The box password was incorrect when processing the job externally. The job is canceled. Select [**End**].	—
Incorrect Login User Name or Password.[1]	—	The login user name or password was incorrect when processing the job externally. The job is canceled. Select [**End**].	—
Install the punch waste box.	—	Follow the instructions on the screen. and install the punch waste box.	page 10-19
Install the waste toner box.	—	The waste toner box is not installed correctly. Set it correctly.	page 10-7

[1] When Auto Error Clear is set to [**On**], processing resumes automatically after a set amount of time elapses. For details on Auto Error Clear, refer to the following:
➤ Auto Error Clear (page 8-53)

J

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Job Accounting restriction exceeded.[*1]	Is the acceptable printing count restricted by Job Accounting exceeded?	The printing count exceeded the acceptable count restricted by Job Accounting. Cannot print any more. The job is canceled. Select [**End**].	—
Job separator tray is full of paper.	Is the acceptable storage capacity exceeded?	Remove the paper and select [**Continue**]. Printing then resumes.	—

*1 When Auto Error Clear is set to [**On**], processing resumes automatically after a set amount of time elapses. For details on Auto Error Clear, refer to the following:
➡ Auto Error Clear (page 8-53)

K

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
KPDL error. [*1]	—	PostScript error has occurred. The job is canceled. Select [**End**].	—

*1 When Auto Error Clear is set to [**On**], processing resumes automatically after a set amount of time elapses. For details on Auto Error Clear, refer to the following:
➡ Auto Error Clear (page 8-53)

M

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Machine failure.	—	Internal error has occurred. Make a note of the error code displayed on the screen. Call service.	—
Mailbox tray is full of paper.	Is the acceptable storage capacity exceeded?	Remove the paper. Printing then resumes.	—
Main unit inner tray is full of paper.	Is the acceptable storage capacity exceeded?	Remove the paper. Printing then resumes.	—
Maximum number of scanned pages.	Is the acceptable scanning count exceeded?	Cannot scan pages any more. Follow the instructions on the screen.	—
Memory is full.[*1]	—	The memory is full and the job cannot be continued. Select [**Continue**] to print the scanned pages. The print job cannot be processed completely. Select [**Cancel**] to cancel the job.	—
	—	The process cannot be performed due to insufficient memory. If only [**End**] is available, select [**End**]. The job will be canceled.	—

*1 When Auto Error Clear is set to [**On**], processing resumes automatically after a set amount of time elapses. For details on Auto Error Clear, refer to the following:
➡ Auto Error Clear (page 8-53)

P

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Paper jam.	—	If a paper jam occurs, the machine will stop and the location of the jam will be indicated on the screen. Leave the machine on and follow the instructions to remove the jammed paper.	page 10-51
Paper left.	—	Remove paper from the document finisher.	—
	—	Remove the paper from the finisher process tray.	—
Performing Drum Refresh…	—	The machine is under the adjustment to maintain its quality. Please wait.	—
Perform Tone Curve Adjustment in the System Menu.	Over long periods of use, the effects of the ambient temperature and humidity can cause output hues to vary slightly.	Run [**Tone Curve Adjustment**].	page 10-48
Preparing to print.	—	The machine is under the adjustment to maintain its quality. Please wait.	—

R

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Regulating the temperature…	—	The machine is under the adjustment to maintain its quality. Please wait.	—
Removable memory error.[1]	Is writing to a removable memory prohibited?	An error occurred in the removable memory. The job stopped. Select [**End**]. The possible error codes and their descriptions are as follows. 01: Connect a removable memory that can be written to.	—

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Removable memory error.[*1]	—	An error occurred in the removable memory. The job stopped. Select [**End**]. The possible error codes and their descriptions are as follows. 01: The amount of data that can be saved at once has been exceeded. Restart the system or turn the power OFF/ON. If the error still occurs, divide the file into smaller files. If the error still occurs, the removable memory is not compatible with the machine. Use the removable memory formatted by this machine. If the removable memory cannot be formatted, it is damaged. Connect a compatible removable memory.	page 5-63
Removable Memory is full.[*1]	—	The job is canceled. Select [**End**]. Insufficient free space in the removable memory. Delete unneeded files.	—
Remove originals in the document processor.	Are there any originals left in the document processor?	Remove originals from the document processor.	—
Replace all originals and press [Continue].	—	Remove originals from the document processor, put them back in their original order, and place them again. Select [**Continue**] to resume printing. Select [**Cancel**] to cancel the job.	—
Replace the waste toner box.	Is the waste toner box full?	Replace the waste toner box.	page 10-7
Running security function...	—	Running security function. Please wait.	—

*1 When Auto Error Clear is set to [**On**], processing resumes automatically after a set amount of time elapses. For details on Auto Error Clear, refer to the following:
➤ Auto Error Clear (page 8-53)

S

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Scanner memory is full.[*1]	—	Scanning cannot be performed due to insufficient memory of the scanner. Follow the instructions on the screen.	—
Send Error.[*1]	—	An error has occurred during transmission. The job is canceled. Select [**End**]. Refer to Responding to Send Error for the error code and corrective actions.	page 10-40

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Shake the toner container.	—	Open the main unit front cover and remove the toner container. Shake carefully and replace.	page 10-4
Staple is empty. [*1]	Has the staple cartridge holder run out of staples?	If the staples are depleted, the machine will stop and the location of staple depletion will be indicated on the screen. Leave the machine on and follow the instructions to replace the staple case. Select [**Continue**] to print without stapling. Select [**Cancel**] to cancel the job.	page 10-14 page 10-15 page 10-17
Staple jam.	—	If a staple jam occurs, the machine will stop and the location of the jam will be indicated on the screen. Leave the machine on and follow the instructions to remove the jammed staple.	page 10-79
System error.	—	System error has occurred. Follow the instructions on the screen.	—

*1 When Auto Error Clear is set to [**On**], processing resumes automatically after a set amount of time elapses. For details on Auto Error Clear, refer to the following:

➧ Auto Error Clear (page 8-53)

T

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
The cover is open.	Is there any cover which is open?	Close the cover indicated on the screen.	—
The password does not meet password policy.	Is the password expired?	Change the login password. The job is canceled. Select [**End**].	page 9-6 page 9-8
	Is the password policy requirement (such as password length or required characters) changed?	Confirm the password policy requirements and change the login password. The job is canceled. Select [**End**].	page 9-6 page 9-8
The removable memory is not formatted.	Is the removable memory formatted by this machine?	Perform [**Format**] on this machine.	—
The slit glass requires cleaning.	—	Clean the slit glass using the cleaning cloth supplied with the document processor.	page 10-3
This user account is locked out.	—	Contact administrator. The job is canceled. Select [**End**].	—
Toner [C][M][Y][K] are empty.	—	Replace the toner container to our specified toner container. 🔍 **NOTE** If the color toner is empty but the black toner is remained, the machine continues printing in black and white by selecting [**Print in Black and White**] of Color Toner Empty Action.	page 10-4

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Toner is low. [C][M][Y][K](Replace when empty.)	—	It is almost time to replace the toner container. Obtain a new toner container.	—
Tray # is full of paper.	Is the acceptable storage capacity exceeded?	Remove the paper. Printing then resumes.	—

U

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Unknown toner installed.	Is the installed toner container our own brand?	We will not be liable for any damage caused by the use of third party supplies in this machine.	—
Unknown Toner Installed. PC [C][M][Y][K]	Does the installed toner container's regional specification match the machine's?	Install the specified container.	—

W

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Warning for high temperature. Adjust the room temperature.	—	Print quality may be deteriorated. Adjust the temperature and the humidity of your room.	—
Warning for low temperature. Adjust the room temperature.	—	Print quality may be deteriorated. Adjust the temperature and the humidity of your room.	—
Warning low memory.	—	Cannot start the job. Try again later.	—
Waste toner box almost full.	—	It is almost time to replace the waste toner box. Obtain a new waste toner box.	—

Y

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
You cannot use this box.	—	You cannot use the specified box. Job is canceled. Select [**End**].	—

Responding to Send Error

Error Code	Message	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
1101	Failed to send the e-mail.	Check the host name of the SMTP server on the Embedded Web Server RX.	page 2-55
	Failed to send via FTP.	Check the host name of FTP.	page 5-26
	Failed to send via SMB.	Check the host name of SMB.	page 5-23
1102	Failed to send via SMB.	Check the SMB settings. • Login user name and login password **NOTE** If the sender is a domain user, specify the domain name. • Host name • Path	page 5-23
	Failed to send the e-mail.	Check the following on the Embedded Web Server RX. • SMTP login user name and login password • POP3 login user name and login password • E-mail size limit	page 2-55
	Failed to send via FTP.	Check the FTP settings. • Login user name and login password **NOTE** If the sender is a domain user, specify the domain name. • Path • Folder share permissions of the recipient	page 5-26
1103	Failed to send via SMB.	Check the SMB settings. • Login user name and login password **NOTE** If the sender is a domain user, specify the domain name. • Path • Folder share permissions of the recipient	page 5-23
	Failed to send via FTP.	Check the FTP settings. • Path • Folder share permissions of the recipient	page 5-26
1104	Failed to send the e-mail.	Check the e-mail address. **NOTE** If the address is rejected by the domain, you cannot send the email.	page 5-22

10-40

Error Code	Message	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
1105	Failed to send via SMB.	Check the following settings. [**System Menu**] key > [**System/Network**] > [**Network**] > [**TCP/IP Settings**] > [**Protocol Detail**] > [**SMB Client (Transmission)**]	page 8-42
	Failed to send the e-mail.	Select [**On**] of the SMTP settings on the Embedded Web Server RX.	page 2-55
	Failed to send via FTP.	Check the following settings. [**System Menu**] key > [**System/Network**] > [**Network**] > [**TCP/IP Settings**] > [**Protocol Detail**] > [**FTP Client (Transmission)**]	page 8-42
1106	Failed to send the e-mail.	Check the sender address of SMTP on the Embedded Web Server RX.	page 2-55
1131	Failed to send via FTP.	Enable the SSL. [**System Menu**] key > [**System/Network**] > [**Network**] > [**Secure Protocol**] > [**SSL**]	page 8-45
1132	Failed to send the e-mail.	Check the following of the SMTP server. • Is SMTP over SSL available? • Is the encryption available?	Refer to the **Embedded Web Server RX User Guide**.
	Failed to send via FTP.	Check the following of the FTP server. • Is FTPS available? • Is the encryption available?	—
2101	Failed to send via SMB.	Check the network and SMB settings. • The network cable is connected. • The hub is not operating properly. • The server is not operating properly. • Host name and IP address • Port number	—
	Failed to send via FTP.	Check the network and FTP settings. • The network cable is connected. • The hub is not operating properly. • The server is not operating properly. • Host name and IP address • Port number	—
	Failed to send the e-mail.	Check the network and Embedded Web Server RX. • The network cable is connected. • The hub is not operating properly. • The server is not operating properly. • POP3 server name of the POP3 user • SMTP server name	page 2-55

Error Code	Message	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
2102 **2103**	Failed to send via FTP.	Check the network. • The network cable is connected. • The hub is not operating properly. • The server is not operating properly.	—
		Check the following of the FTP server. • Is FTP available? • The server is not operating properly.	—
	Failed to send the e-mail.	Check the network. • The network cable is connected. • The hub is not operating properly. • The server is not operating properly.	—
2201 **2202** **2203** **2231**	Failed to send the e-mail. Failed to send via FTP. Failed to send via SMB.	Check the network. • The network cable is connected. • The hub is not operating properly. • The server is not operating properly.	—
2204	Failed to send the e-mail.	Check the e-mail size limit of the SMTP settings on the Embedded Web Server RX.	page 2-55
3101	Failed to send the e-mail.	Check the authentication methods of both the sender and the recipient.	—
	Failed to send via FTP.	Check the network. • The network cable is connected. • The hub is not operating properly. • The server is not operating properly.	—
3201	Failed to send the e-mail.	Check the SMTP user authentication method of the recipient.	—
0007 **4201** **4701** **5101** **5102** **5103** **5104** **7101** **7102** **7103** **720f**	—	Turn the power switch off and back on. If this error occurs several times, make a note of the displayed error code and contact your service representative.	page 2-9
9181	—	The scanned original exceeds the acceptable number of pages of 999. Send the excess pages separately.	—

10-42

Adjustment/Maintenance

Overview of Adjustment/Maintenance

If there is an image problem and the message to run adjustment or maintenance menu appears, run Adjustment/Maintenance in the system menu.

The table below lists the item you can carry out.

Item	Description	Reference Page
Color Registration Procedure	Correct the color position to resolve color drift.	page 10-43
Tone Curve Adjustment	The printed output tone may differ from the original. Perform this function to ensure consistency with the original tone.	page 10-48
Drum Refresh	Remove image blur and white dots from the printout.	page 10-49
Calibration	Adjust color drift or hue of printed image in the most appropriate color.	page 10-50
Laser Scanner Cleaning	Adjust the printed image that is too light or incomplete, even though there is enough toner.	page 10-50
Developer Refresh	Adjust the printed image that is too light or incomplete, even though there is enough toner.	page 10-50
Altitude Adjustment	Adjusts the altitude.	page 10-50

Color Registration Procedure

When first installing the machine or moving it to a new location, color drift during printing may occur. Use this function to correct the color position of each of cyan, magenta and yellow to resolve color drift.
Auto registration and manual registration are available for Color Registration. Color drift can be largely corrected through auto registration. However, if it is not resolved or to perform more detailed settings, use the manual registration.

> **IMPORTANT**
> **Before performing color registration, be sure to perform Calibration. If color drift remains, perform color registration. By performing color registration without performing Calibration, the color drift will be resolved once, however, it may cause the serious color drift later.**
>
> ➡ **Calibration on page 10-50**

Auto Correction

1 Load paper.
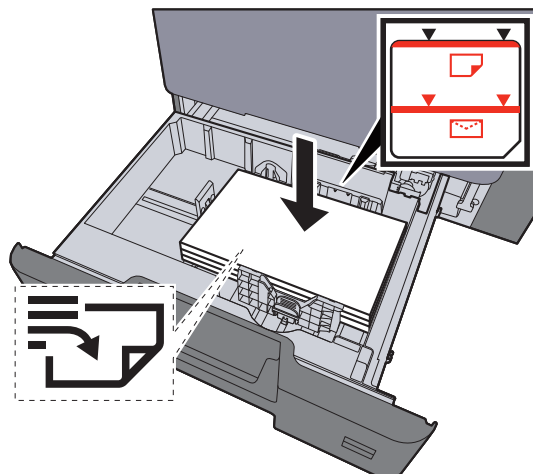
> **⊘ IMPORTANT**
>
> - **Load the paper with the print side facing up.**
>
> - **After removing new paper from its packaging, fan the paper before loading it in the cassettes.**
>
>   ➡ Loading in the Cassettes (page 3-4)
>
> - **Before loading the paper, be sure that it is not curled or folded. Paper that is curled or folded may cause paper jams.**
>
> - **Ensure that the loaded paper does not exceed the level indicator (see illustration above).**
>
> - **If paper is loaded without adjusting the paper length guide and paper width guide, the paper may skew or become jammed.**

2 Display the screen.

[**System Menu**] key > [**Adjustment/Maintenance**] > "Color Registration" [**Next**] > "Auto" [**Next**]

3 Print the chart.

Select [**Start**].

A chart is printed.

Chart Example
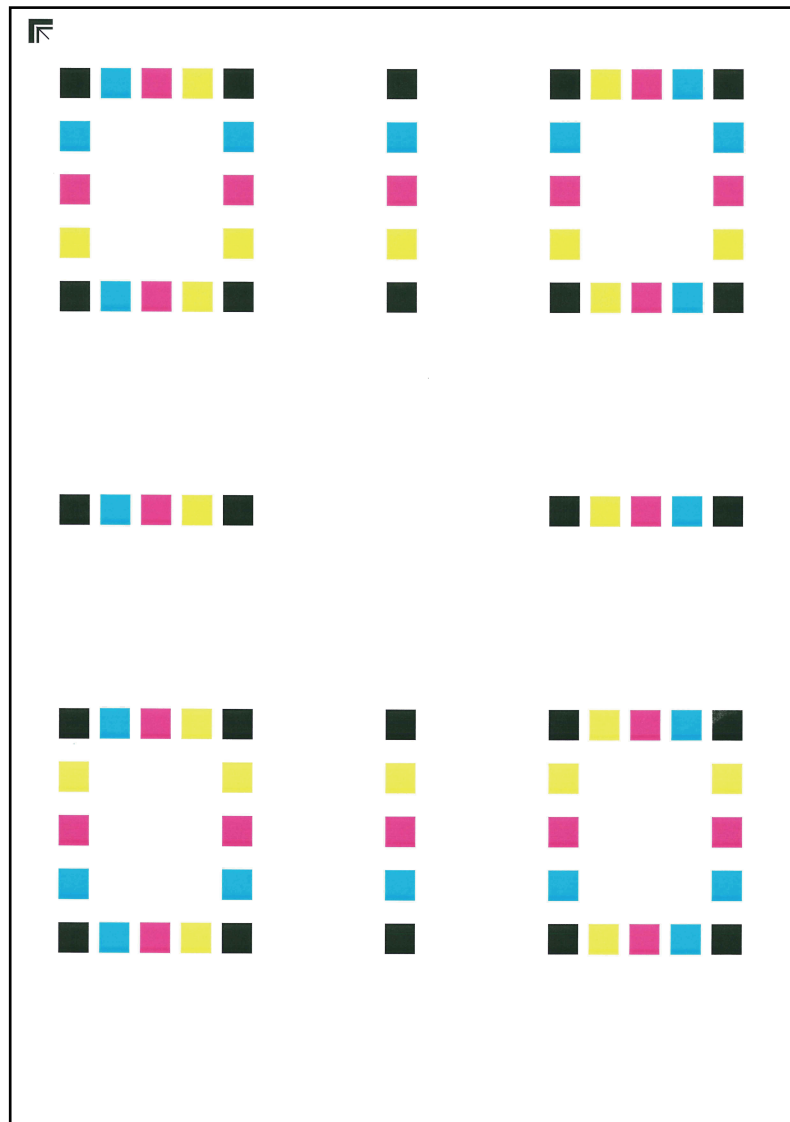
4 **Perform the color registration.**

1 As shown in the illustration, place the printed side down on the platen with the edge with the arrows toward the back.
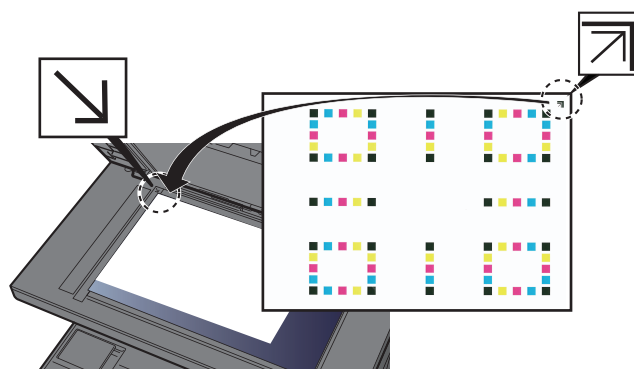
2 Select [**Start**] to scan the chart.

When scanning is finished, color printing position correction starts.

3 When color printing position correction ends, select [**OK**].

Manual Correction

1 **Load paper.**
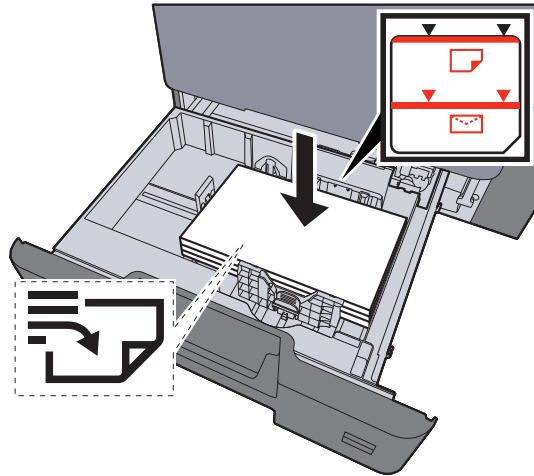
> **IMPORTANT**
>
> • **Load the paper with the print side facing up.**
>
> • **After removing new paper from its packaging, fan the paper before loading it in the cassettes.**
>
> ➤ Loading in the Cassettes (page 3-4)
>
> • **Before loading the paper, be sure that it is not curled or folded. Paper that is curled or folded may cause paper jams.**
>
> • **Ensure that the loaded paper does not exceed the level indicator (see illustration above).**
>
> • **If paper is loaded without adjusting the paper length guide and paper width guide, the paper may skew or become jammed.**

2 **Display the screen.**

[**System Menu**] key > [**Adjustment/Maintenance**] > "Color Registration" [**Next**] > "Manual" [**Next**]

3 **Print the chart.**

Select [**Print Chart**].

A chart is printed. On the chart, for each of M (magenta), C (cyan) and Y (yellow), charts for H-1 to 5 and V-1 to 5 are printed.

Chart Example
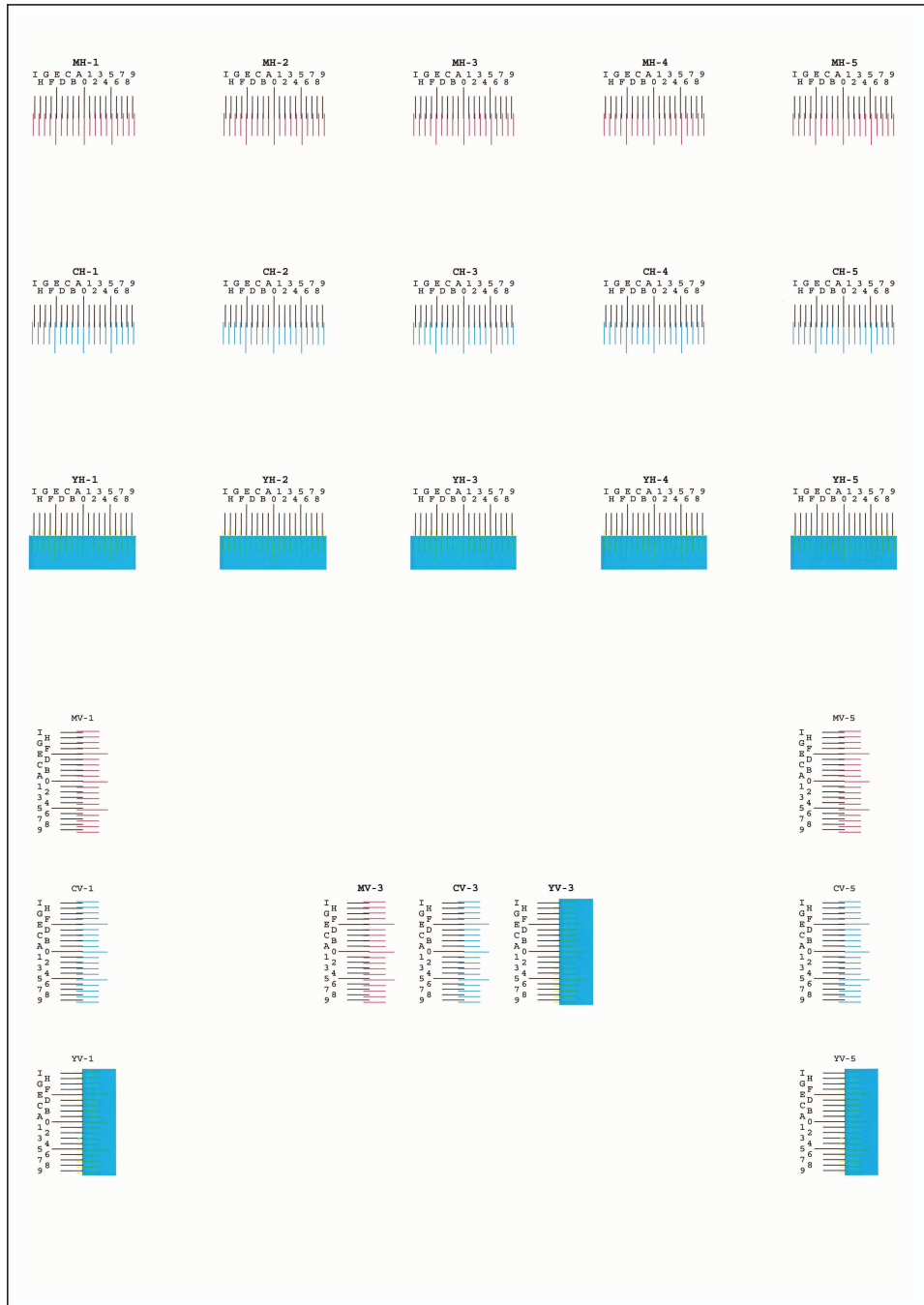
4 **Enter the appropriate value.**

1 Find the location on each chart where 2 lines most closely match. If this is the 0 position, registration for that color is not required. For the illustration, B is the appropriate value.
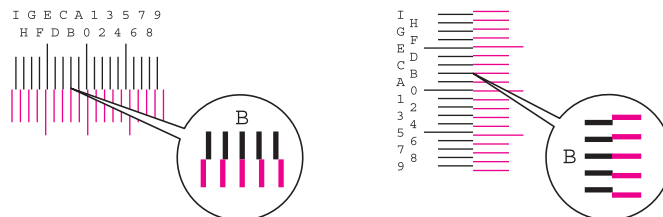
From charts H-1 to H-5, read the values from H-1 to H-5.

From charts V-1 to V-5, read only the values from V-3 (center).

2 Select the chart to be corrected.

3 Select [+] or [-] to enter the values read from the chart.

Select [+] to increase the value from 0 to 9. To decrease, select [-].

By selecting [-], the value changes from 0 to alphabetic letters, going from A to I. To move in the reverse direction, select [+].

You cannot use the numeric keys to enter these values.

4 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to enter the registration values for each chart.

5 Select [**Start**] after all values have been entered. Color registration begins.

6 Select [**OK**] after color registration is complete.

Tone Curve Adjustment

After prolonged use, or from the effects of surrounding temperature or humidity, the printed output tone may differ from the original. Perform this function to ensure consistency with the original tone. Before executing Tone Curve Adjustment, execute calibration. If calibration does not improve the tones, perform Tone Curve Adjustment.

➧

A total of 3 pattern pages (No. 1 to 3) are printed during adjustment. The printed patterns are read sequentially during the adjustment.

1 **Load paper.**
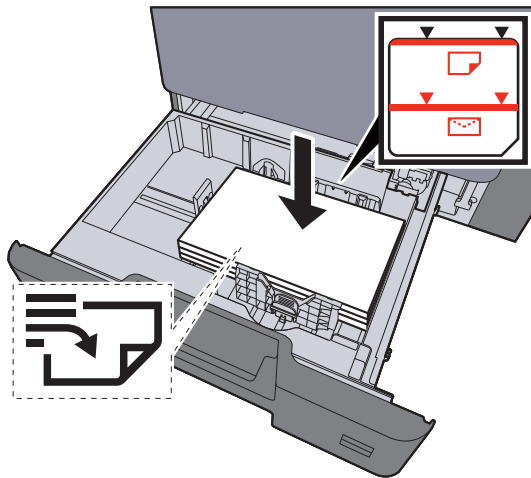
> ✓ **IMPORTANT**
> • **Load the paper with the print side facing up.**
> • **After removing new paper from its packaging, fan the paper before loading it in the cassettes.**
> ➧
> • **Before loading the paper, be sure that it is not curled or folded. Paper that is curled or folded may cause paper jams.**
> • **Ensure that the loaded paper does not exceed the level indicator (see illustration above).**
> • **If paper is loaded without adjusting the paper length guide and paper width guide, the paper may skew or become jammed.**

2 Display the screen.

1 [**System Menu**] key > [**Adjustment/Maintenance**] > "Tone Curve Adjustment" [**Next**]

2 Select [**Next**] of "Copy/Print (600dpi)" or "Print (1200dpi)" .

> **NOTE**
>
> Select "Print (1200dpi)" if you want to adjust the printed output tone in printer resolution 1200 dpi.

3 Adjust the tone curve.

1 Select [**Start**]. A pattern is printed.

Check that the number "1" is printed at the bottom of the pattern.

2 As shown in the illustration, place the printed side down on the platen with the edge with the arrows toward the back.
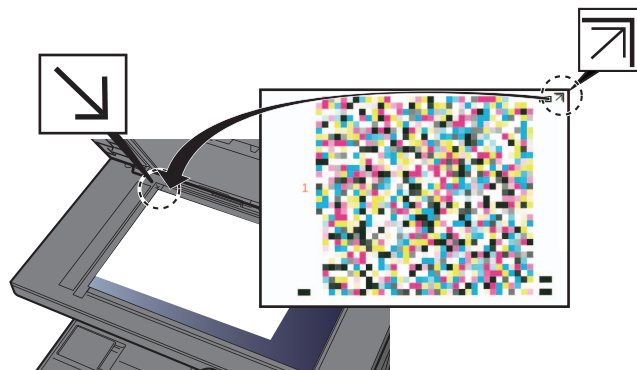
3 Select [**Start**]. The pattern is read and adjustment begins.

The second pattern is output.

4 Check that the number "2" (to "3") is printed at the bottom of the pattern and repeat steps 2 to 3 twice to read patterns 2 and 3 in sequence.

5 Select [**OK**] in the adjustment end confirmation screen.

Drum Refresh

Remove image blur and white dots from the printout.

> **NOTE**
>
> Drum Refresh cannot be performed while printing. Execute Drum Refresh after the printing is done.

1 Display the screen.

[**System Menu**] key > [**Adjustment/Maintenance**] > "Drum Refresh" [**Next**]

2 Perform the drum refresh.

Select [**Start**]. "Drum Refresh" begins.

Calibration

Using this function enables printing in the most appropriate color by adjusting hue and color drift in detail.
When the hue and color drift are not enhanced even after performing calibration, refer to the following:

➡ Color Registration Procedure (page 10-43)

1 Display the screen.

[**System Menu**] key > [**Adjustment/Maintenance**] > "Calibration" [**Next**]

2 Perform the calibration.

Select [**Start**]. "Calibration" begins.

Laser Scanner Cleaning

Remove vertical lines from the printout.

1 Display the screen.

[**System Menu**] key > [**Adjustment/Maintenance**] >
"**Laser Scanner Cleaning**" [**Next**]

2 Perform the laser scanner cleaning.

Select [**Start**]. "Laser Scanner Cleaning" begins.

Developer Refresh

Adjust the printed image that is too light or incomplete, even though there is enough toner. In addition, Black or color
dots appear on the white background when white original is scanned can be removed.

1 Display the screen.

[**System Menu**] key > [**Adjustment/Maintenance**] > "Developer Refresh" [**Next**]

2 Perform the Developer Refresh.

Select [**Start**]. "Developer Refresh" begins.

> **NOTE**
> Waiting time may be longer when the toner is refilled during developer refresh.

Altitude Adjustment

Adjusts the altitude.

1 Display the screen.

[**System Menu**] key > [**Adjustment/Maintenance**] >"Adjusts the altitude" [**Next**]

2 Adjust the Altitude.

Select the altitude > [**OK**]

Clearing Paper Jams

If a paper jam occurs, the touch panel will display "Paper Jam." and the machine will stop. Refer to these procedures to remove the jammed paper.

Jam Location Indicators
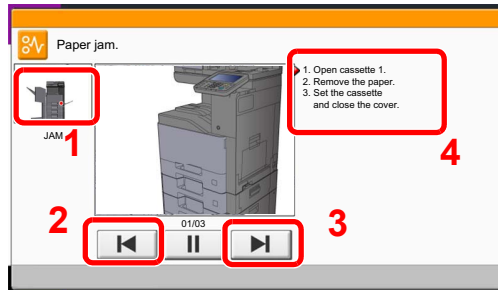
1   Shows the location of a paper jam.

2   Shows the previous step.

3   Shows the next step.

4   Shows the removal procedure.

If a paper jam occurs, the location of the jam will be displayed on the touch panel as well as the clearing instructions.
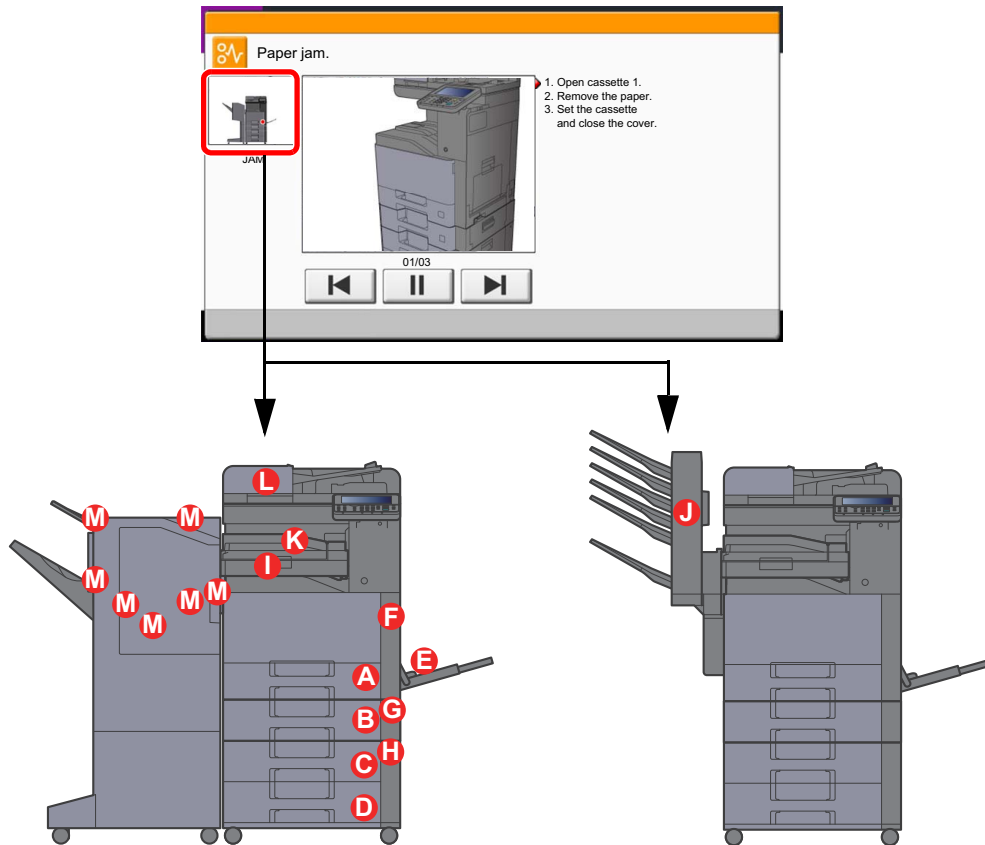
Paper Jam Location Indicator	Paper Jam Location	Reference Page
A	Cassette 1	page 10-52
B	Cassette 2	page 10-52
C	Cassette 3 (500-sheet x 2)	page 10-54
	Cassette 3 (2000-sheet x 1)	page 10-56
D	Cassette 4 (500-sheet x 2)	page 10-58
E	Multi Purpose Tray	page 10-60
F	Right Cover 1	page 10-61
G	Right Cover 2	page 10-64

10-51

Paper Jam Location Indicator	Paper Jam Location	Reference Page
H	Right Cover 3	page 10-65
		page 10-66
I	Bridge Unit	page 10-67
J	Mailbox	page 10-68
K	Inner Finisher	page 10-69
L	Document Processor	page 10-70
M	1,000-Sheet Finisher	page 10-73
	3,000-Sheet Finisher (Tray A)	page 10-75
	3,000-Sheet Finisher (Tray B)	page 10-77

After you remove the jam, the machine will warm up again and the error message will be cleared. The machine resumes with the page that was printing when the jam occurred.

Remove any jammed paper in Cassette 1 and 2

Procedures for handling a paper jam in Cassettes 1 and 2 are all the same. Here, we'll explain the procedures for cassette 1, as an example.

> ⚠ **CAUTION**
> - **Do not reuse jammed papers.**
> - **If the paper tears during removal, be sure to remove any loose scraps of paper from inside the machine. Scraps of paper left in the machine could cause subsequent jamming.**

1 **Pull Cassette 1 out toward you until it stops.**
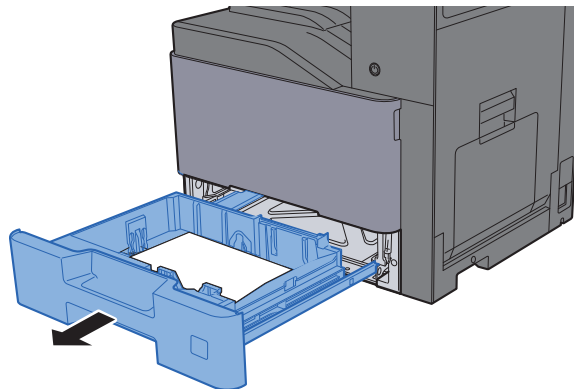
2 **Remove any jammed paper.**
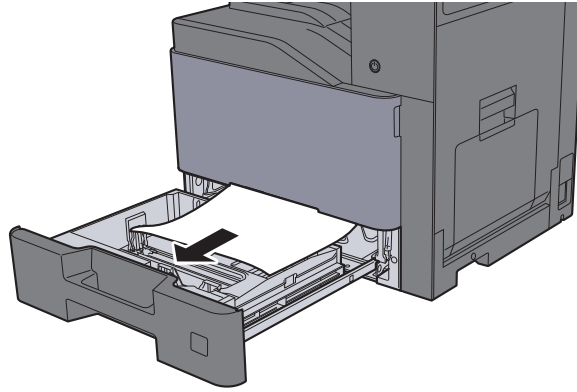
> 🔍 **NOTE**
>
> To remove paper which is difficult to get access to, the cassette can be removed.
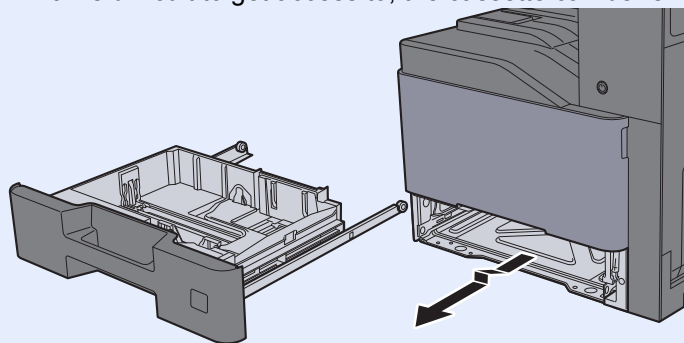
3 **Push Cassette 1 back in.**
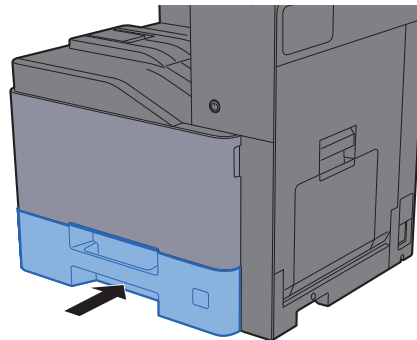
Remove any jammed paper in Cassette 3 (500-sheet x 2)

See the explanation for Cassette 3 below.

> ⚠️ **CAUTION**
> - **Do not reuse jammed papers.**
> - **If the paper tears during removal, be sure to remove any loose scraps of paper from inside the machine. Scraps of paper left in the machine could cause subsequent jamming.**
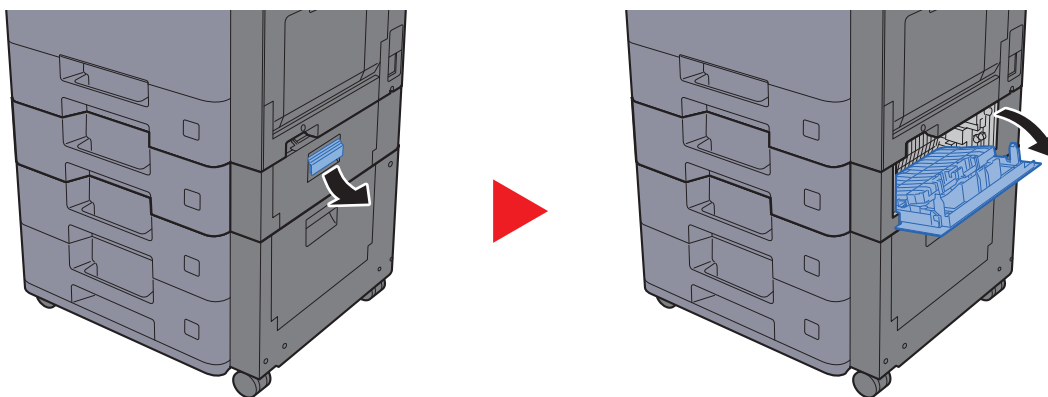
1 **Open Right Cover 2.**

2 **Remove any jammed paper.**
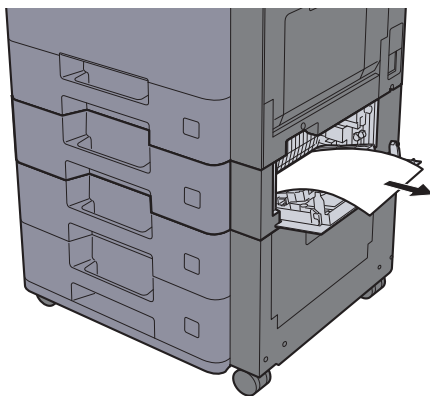
3 **Pull Cassette 3 out toward you until it stops.**
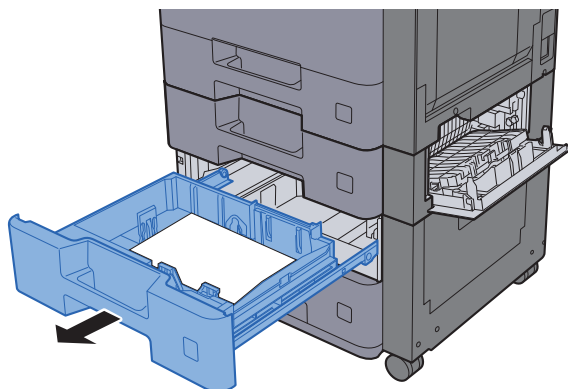
4 **Remove any jammed paper.**
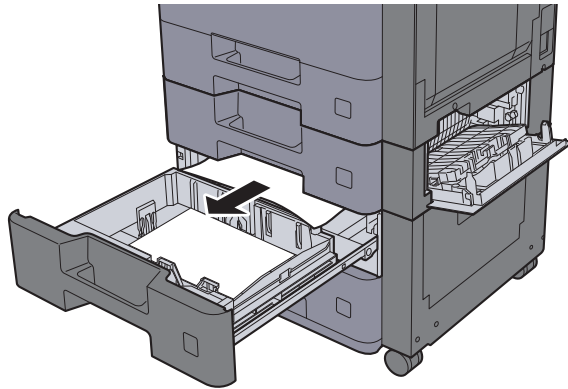
> **NOTE**
>
> To remove paper which is difficult to get access to, the cassette can be removed.
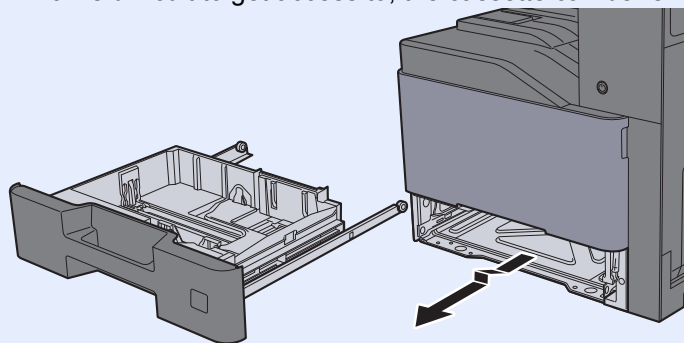
5 **Push Right Cover 2 and Cassette 3 back in.**
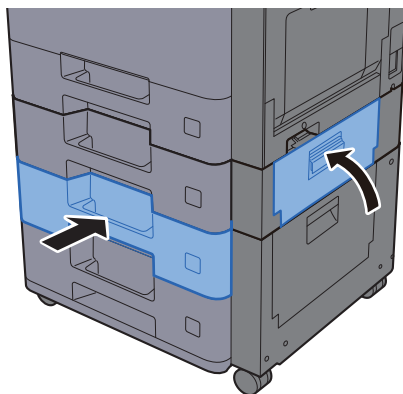
Remove any jammed paper in Cassette 3 (2000-sheet x 1)

See the explanation for Cassette 3 below.

> ⚠️ **CAUTION**
> - **Do not reuse jammed papers.**
> - **If the paper tears during removal, be sure to remove any loose scraps of paper from inside the machine. Scraps of paper left in the machine could cause subsequent jamming.**
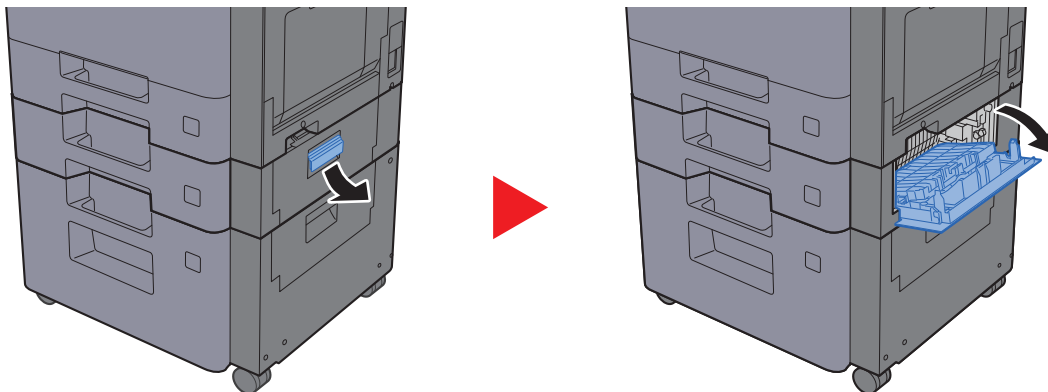
1 **Open Right Cover 2.**

2 **Remove any jammed paper.**
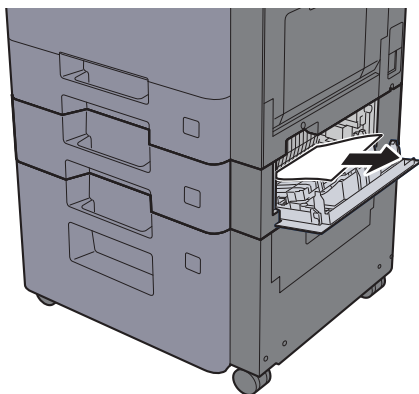
3 **Pull Cassette 3 out toward you until it stops.**
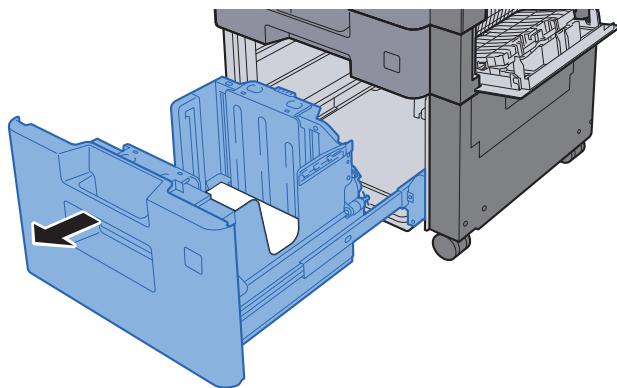
4   **Remove any jammed paper.**
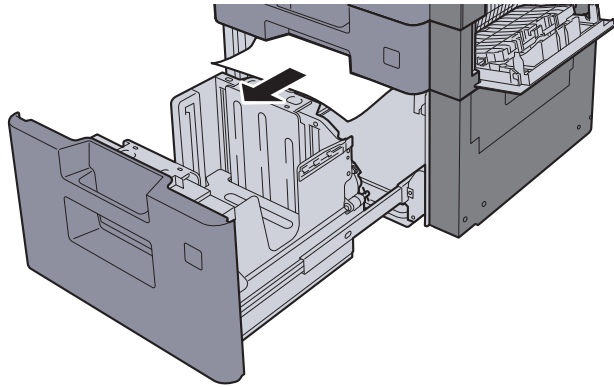
5   **Push Right Cover 2 and Cassette 3 back in.**
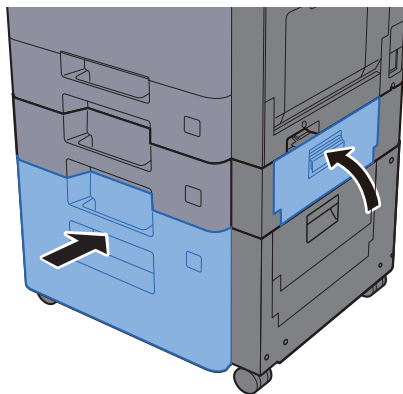
Remove any jammed paper in Cassette 4 (500-sheet x 2)

See the explanation for Cassette 4 below.

> ⚠️ **CAUTION**
> - **Do not reuse jammed papers.**
> - **If the paper tears during removal, be sure to remove any loose scraps of paper from inside the machine. Scraps of paper left in the machine could cause subsequent jamming.**
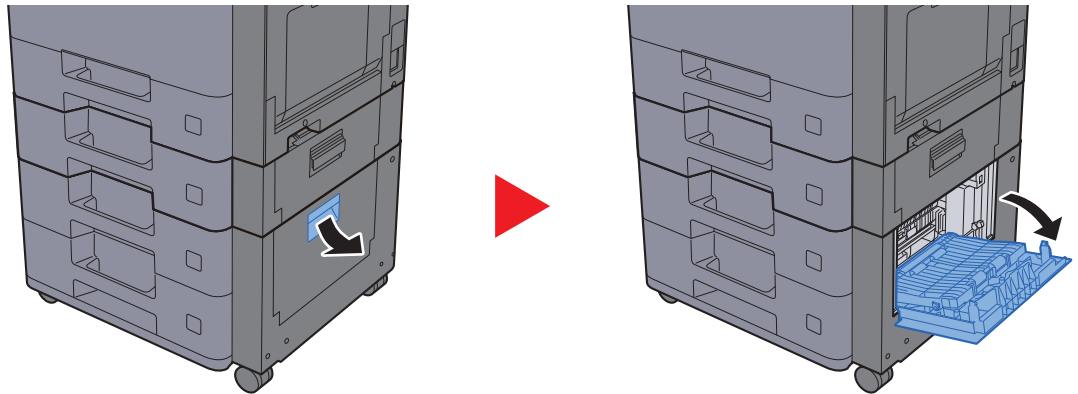
1 **Open Right Cover 3.**

2 **Remove any jammed paper.**
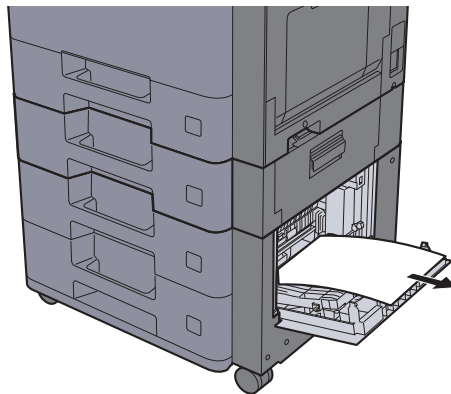
3 **Pull Cassette 4 out toward you until it stops.**
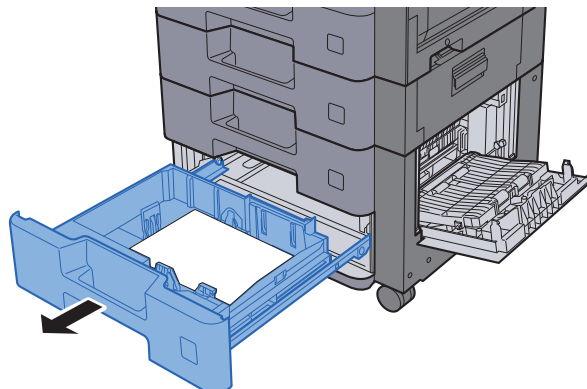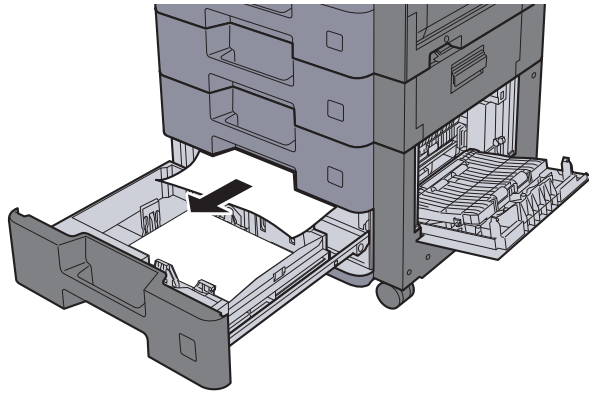
4 **Remove any jammed paper.**

> 💿 **NOTE**
>
> To remove paper which is difficult to get access to, the cassette can be removed.
>
>
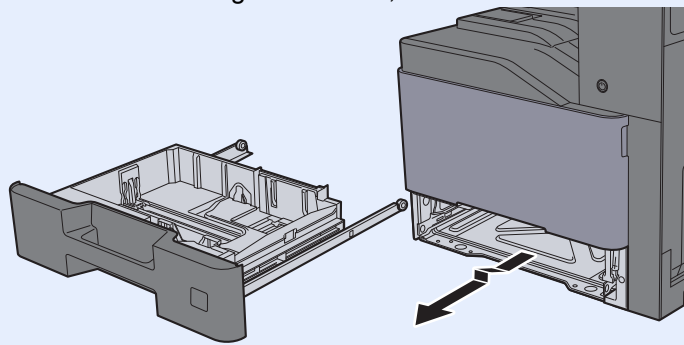
5 **Push Right Cover 3 and Cassette 4 back in.**
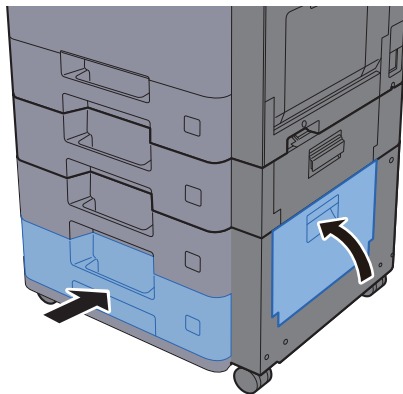
Remove any jammed paper in the Multi Purpose Tray

See the explanation for the Multi Purpose Tray below.

> ⚠️ **CAUTION**
> - **Do not reuse jammed papers.**
>
> - **If the paper tears during removal, be sure to remove any loose scraps of paper from inside the machine. Scraps of paper left in the machine could cause subsequent jamming.**

1 **Remove any jammed paper.**
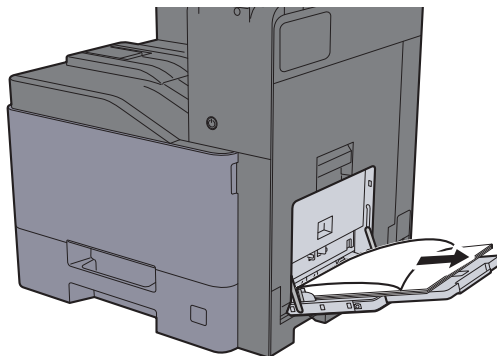
2 **Remove all the paper.**
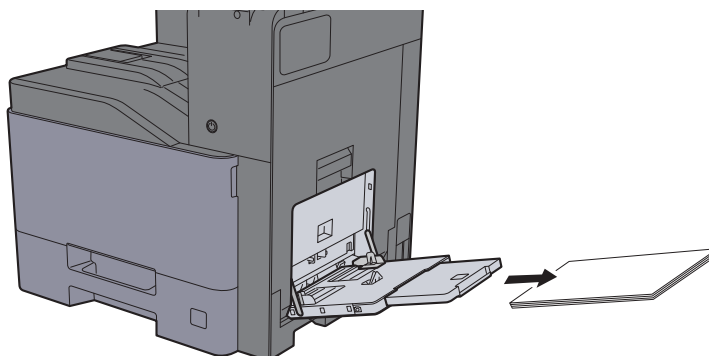
3 **Reload the paper.**
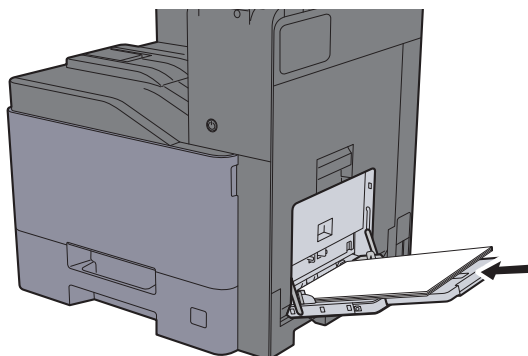
Remove any jammed paper in Right Cover 1

See the explanation for Right Cover 1 below.

> ⚠️ **CAUTION**
>
> **The fixing unit is extremely hot. Take sufficient care when working in this area, as there is a danger of getting burned.**

1 Open Right Cover 1.
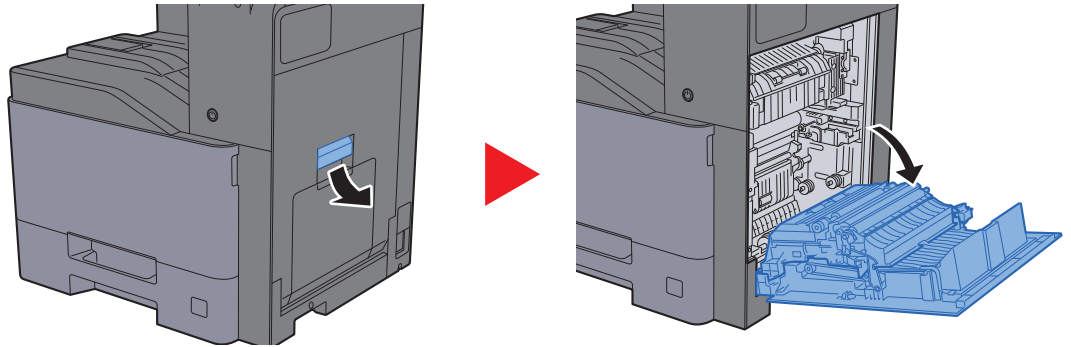
2 Remove any jammed paper.
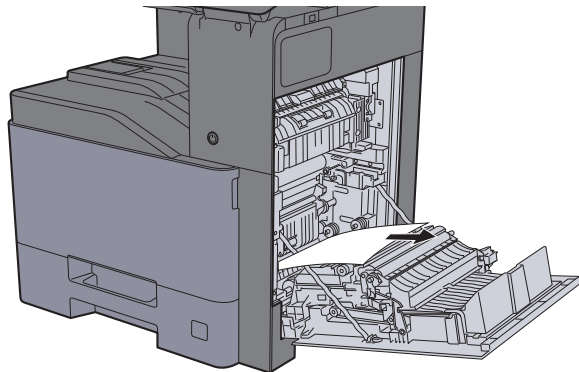
3 Open the cover (A1).

A1
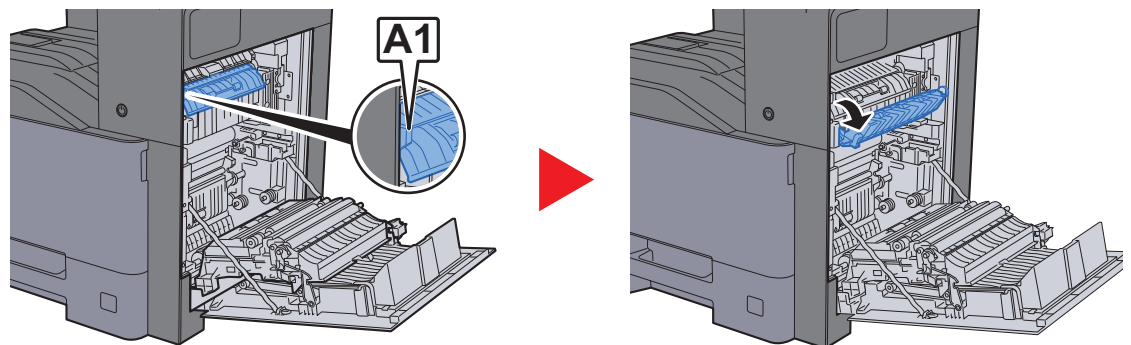
4 **Remove any jammed paper.**
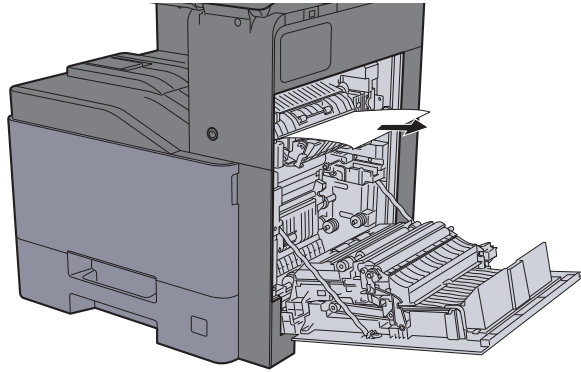
5 **Open the cover (A2).**
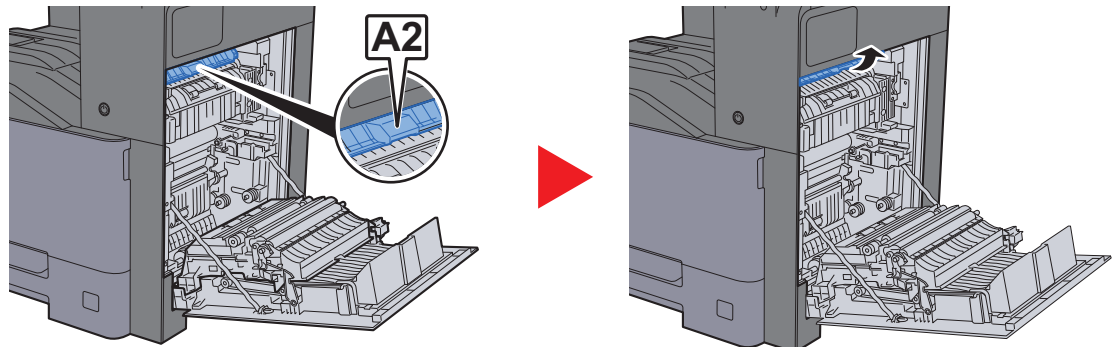
6 **Remove any jammed paper.**
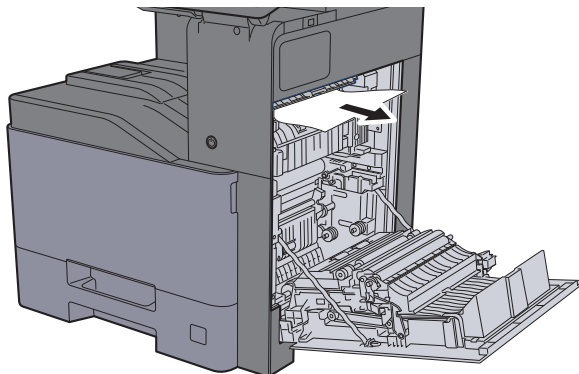
7 **Open the duplex unit (A3).**
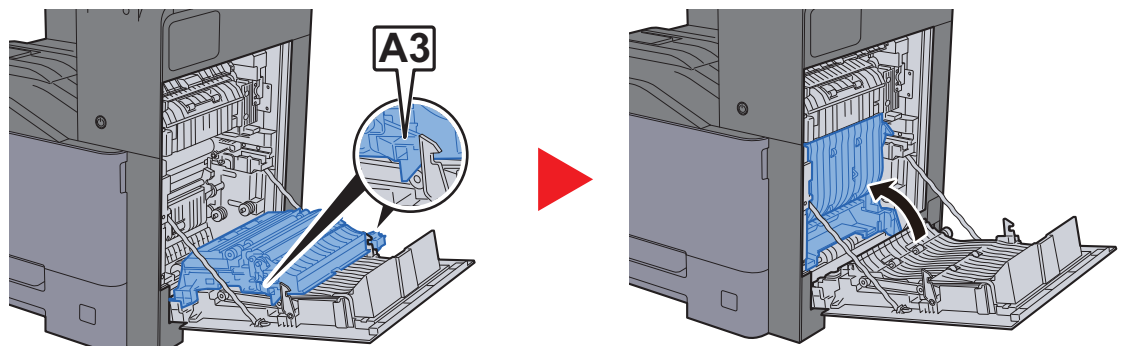
8 **Remove any jammed paper.**
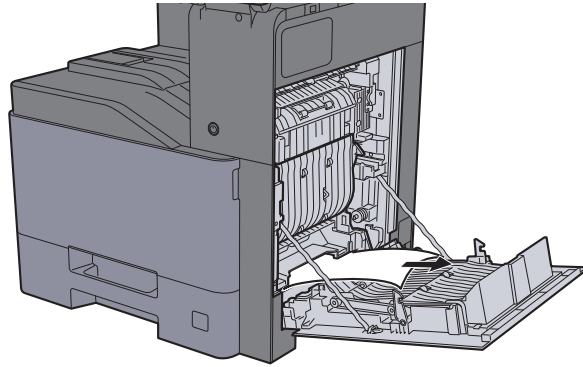
9 **Push Right Cover 1.**
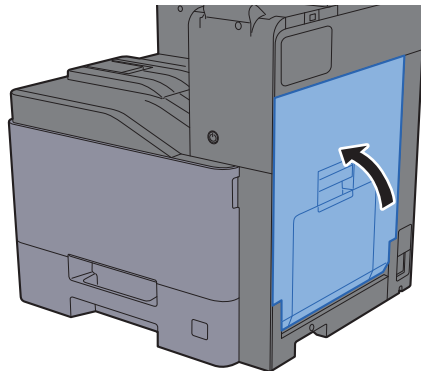
Remove any jammed paper in Right Cover 2

See the explanation for Right Cover 2 below.

> ⚠️ **CAUTION**
> - **Do not reuse jammed papers.**
>
> - **If the paper tears during removal, be sure to remove any loose scraps of paper from inside the machine. Scraps of paper left in the machine could cause subsequent jamming.**
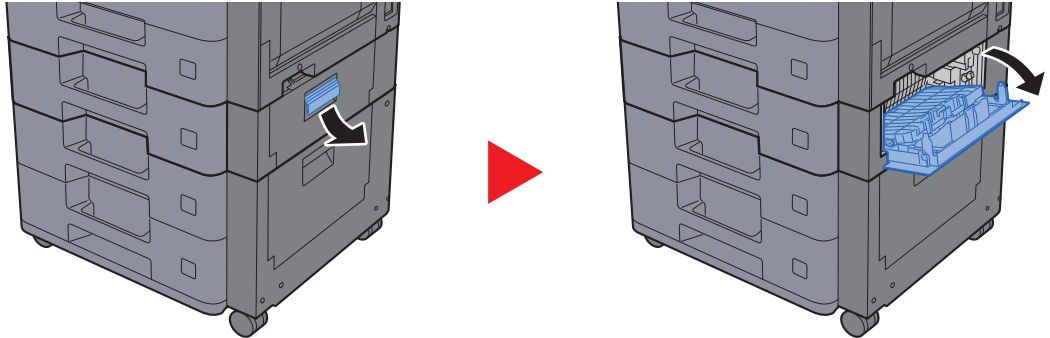
1 **Open Right Cover 2.**

2 **Remove any jammed paper.**
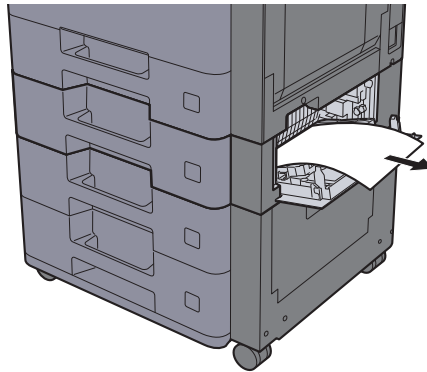
3 **Push Right Cover 2.**
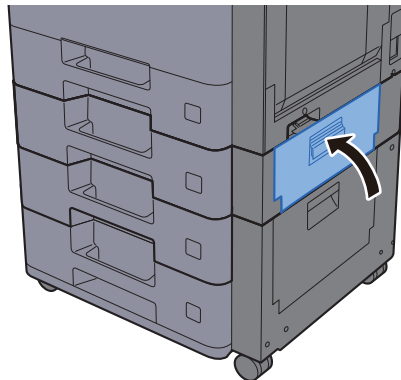
Remove any jammed paper in Right Cover 3 (500-sheet x 2)

See the explanation for Right Cover 3 below.

> ⚠️ **CAUTION**
> - **Do not reuse jammed papers.**
> - **If the paper tears during removal, be sure to remove any loose scraps of paper from inside the machine. Scraps of paper left in the machine could cause subsequent jamming.**
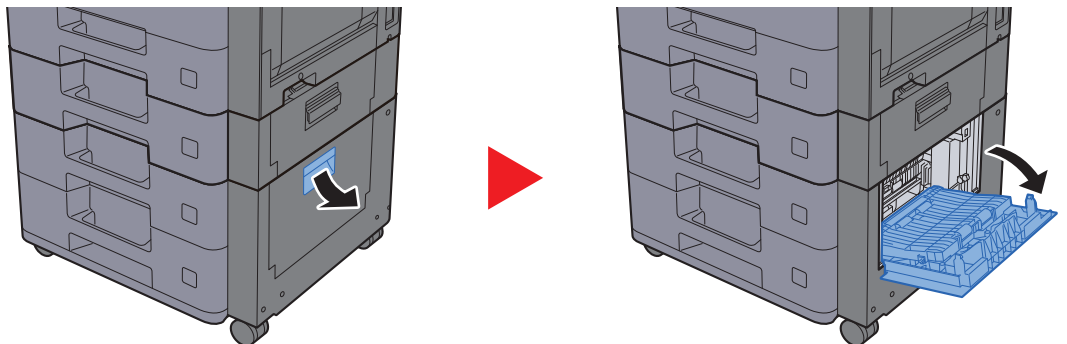
1 **Open Right Cover 3.**

2 **Remove any jammed paper.**
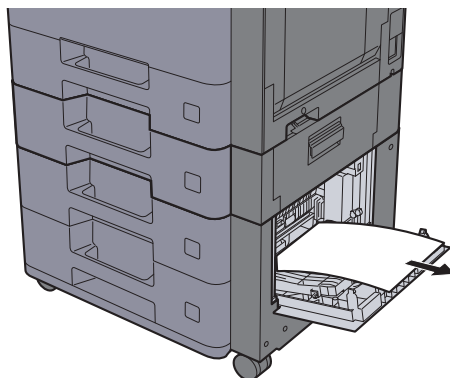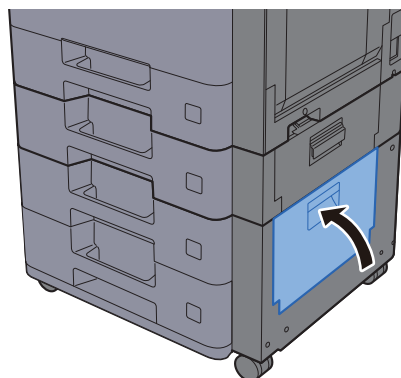
3 **Push Right Cover 3.**

Remove any jammed paper in Right Cover 3 (2000-sheet x 1)

See the explanation for Right Cover 3 below.

> ⚠ **CAUTION**
> - **Do not reuse jammed papers.**
> - **If the paper tears during removal, be sure to remove any loose scraps of paper from inside the machine. Scraps of paper left in the machine could cause subsequent jamming.**
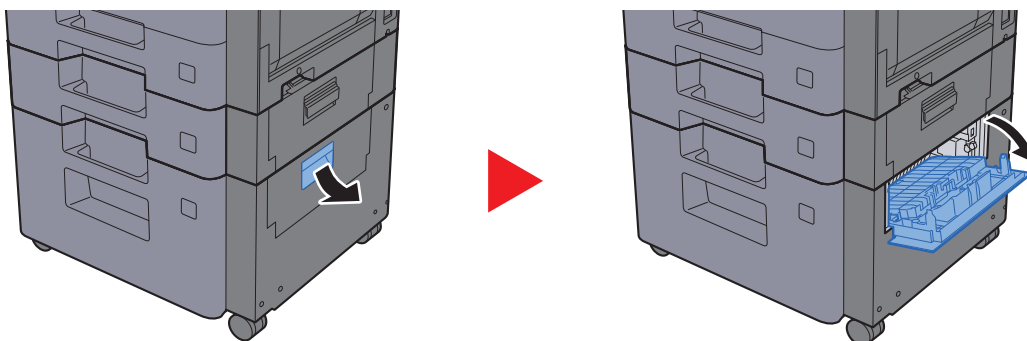
1 **Open Right Cover 3.**

2 **Remove any jammed paper.**
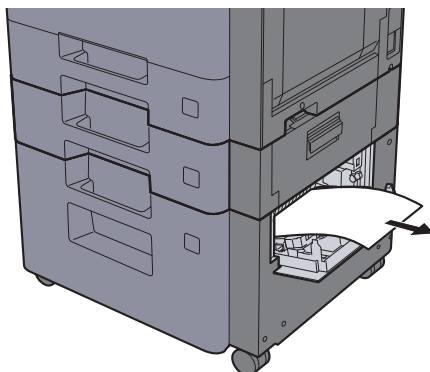
3 **Push Right Cover 3.**
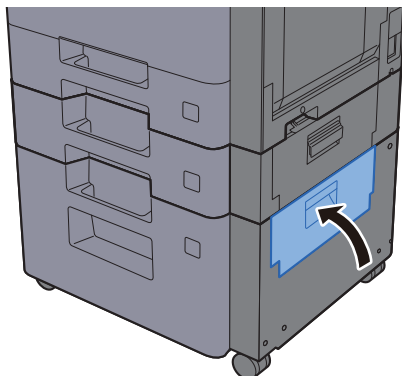
Remove any jammed paper in the Bridge Unit

See the explanation for Bridge Unit below.

> ⚠️ **CAUTION**
> - **Do not reuse jammed papers.**
> - **If the paper tears during removal, be sure to remove any loose scraps of paper from inside the machine. Scraps of paper left in the machine could cause subsequent jamming.**
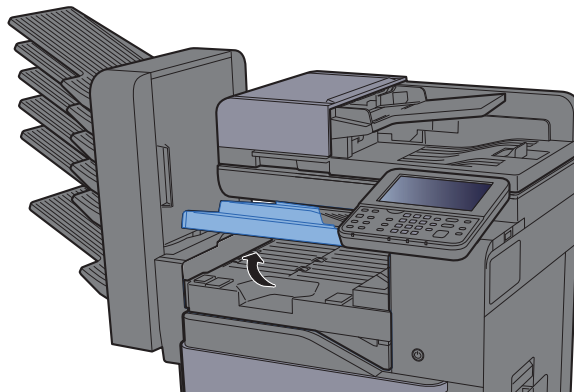
1 Open the cover.

2 Remove any jammed paper.
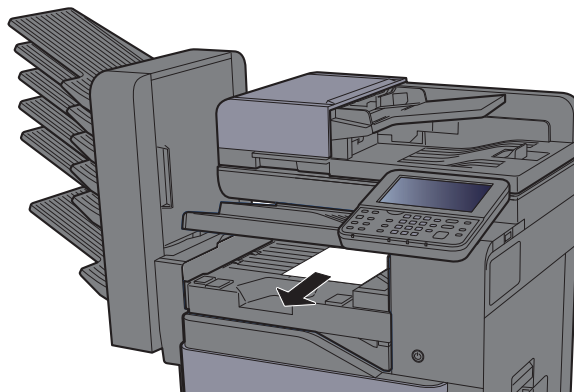
3 Close the cover.
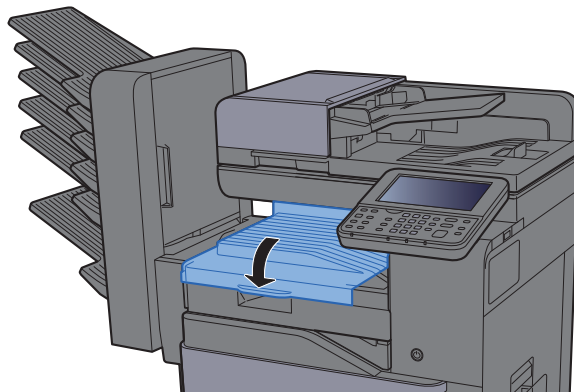
Remove any jammed paper in the Mailbox

See the explanation for the Mailbox below.

> ⚠️ **CAUTION**
> - Do not reuse jammed papers.
> - If the paper tears during removal, be sure to remove any loose scraps of paper from inside the machine. Scraps of paper left in the machine could cause subsequent jamming.
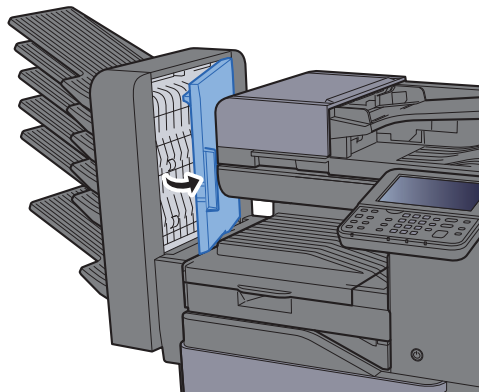
1 Open the cover.

2 Remove any jammed paper.
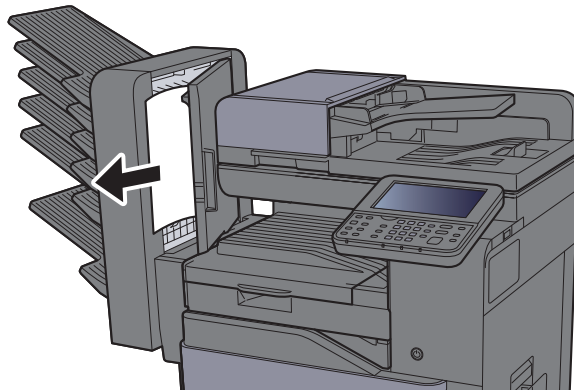
3 Close the cover.
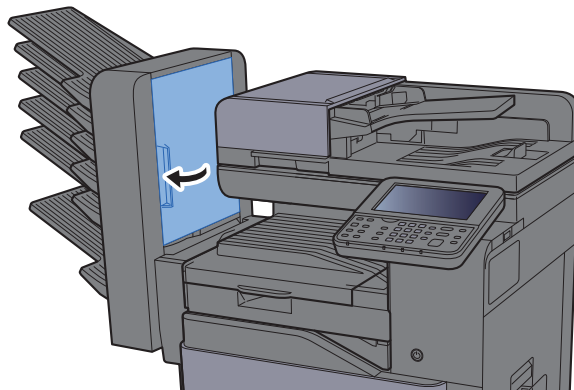
Remove any jammed paper in the Inner Finisher

See the explanation for the Inner Finisher below.

> ⚠️ **CAUTION**
> - **Do not reuse jammed papers.**
> - **If the paper tears during removal, be sure to remove any loose scraps of paper from inside the machine. Scraps of paper left in the machine could cause subsequent jamming.**

1 **Open the inner finisher unit.**
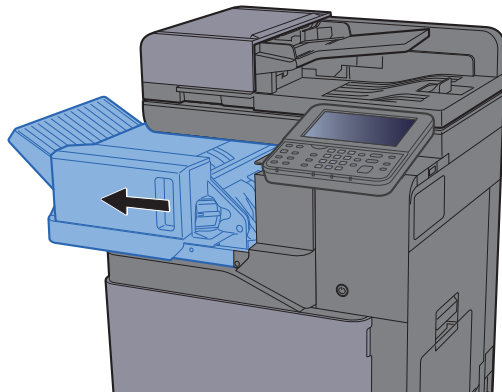
2 **Remove any jammed paper.**
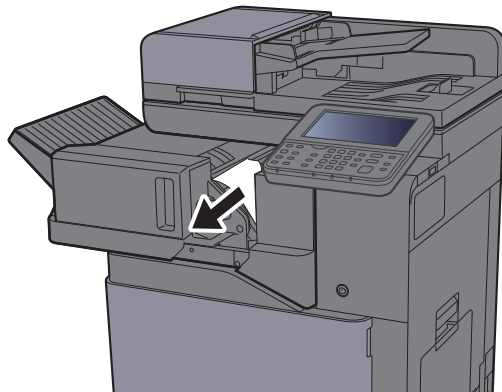
3 **Return the unit to the original position.**

10-69
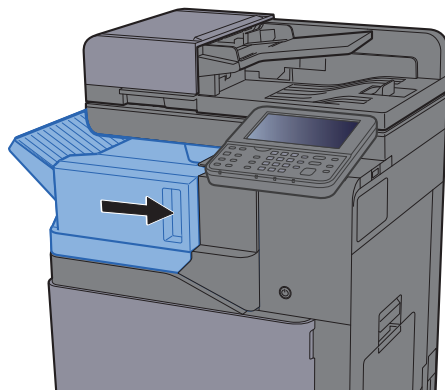
Remove any jammed paper in the Document Processor (Reverse Automatic)

See the explanation for the Document Processor (Reverse Automatic) below.

> ⚠ **CAUTION**
> - **Do not reuse jammed papers.**
> - **If the paper tears during removal, be sure to remove any loose scraps of paper from inside the machine. Scraps of paper left in the machine could cause subsequent jamming.**

1 **Remove the originals from the Original Table.**
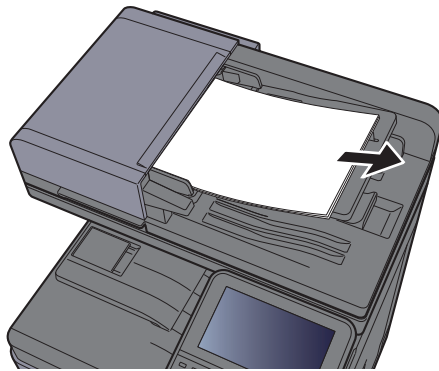
2 **Open the front cover and remove any jammed paper.**
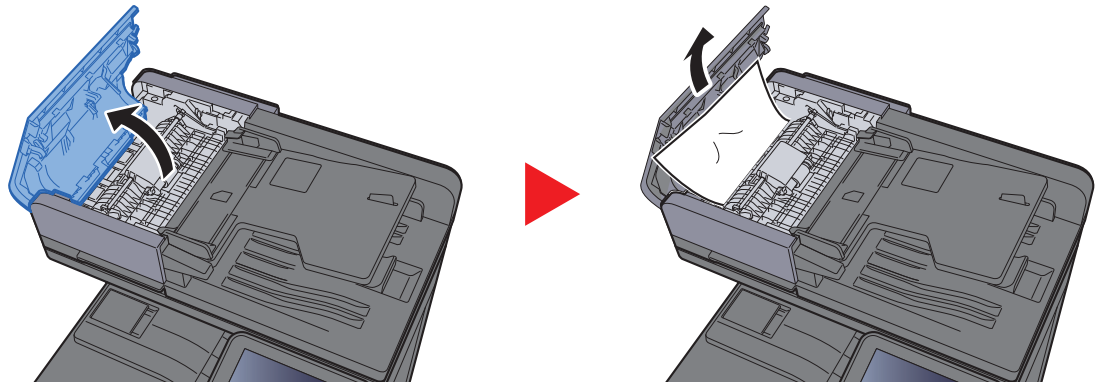
3 **Open Reverse Unit (F) and remove any jammed paper from Original Eject Table.**
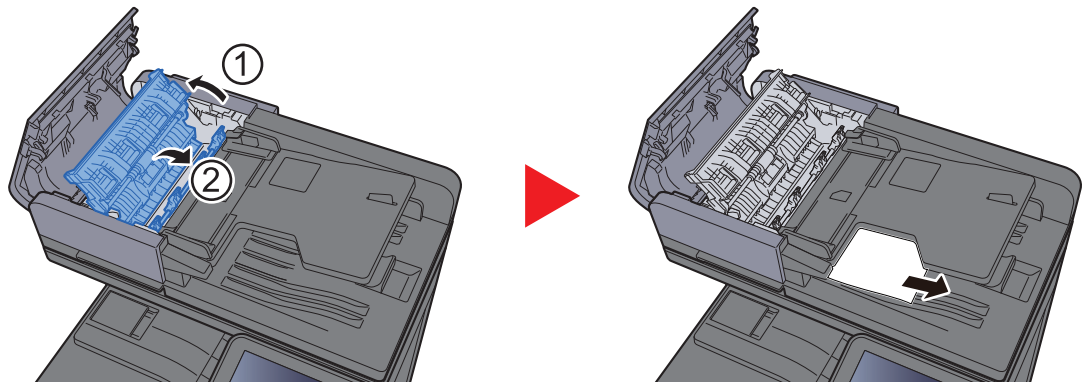
4 **Remove the originals from the reverse unit.**
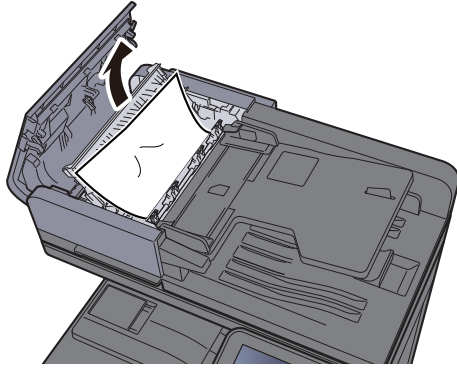
5 **Remove originals inside the document processor.**
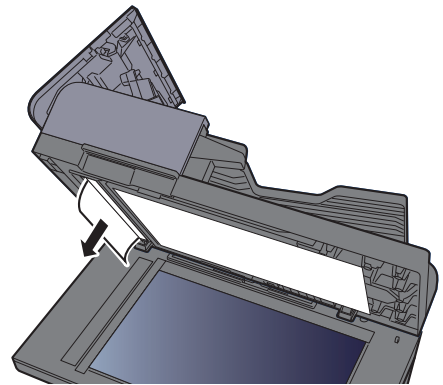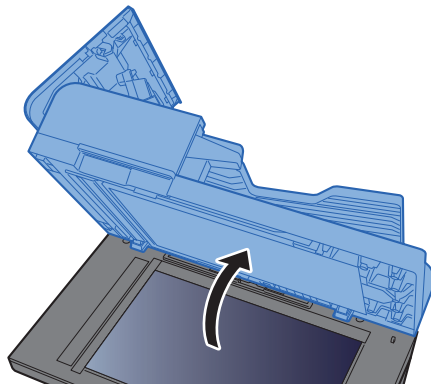
6 **Push the cover.**
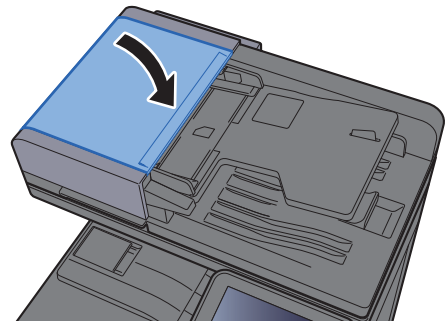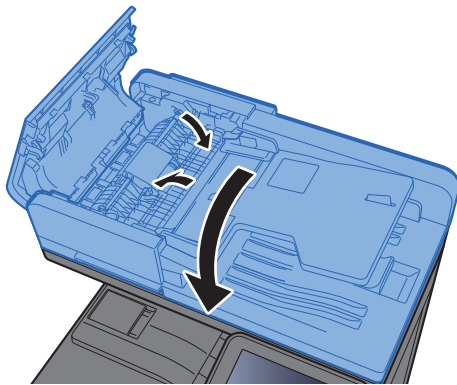
Remove any jammed paper in the Document Processor (Dual Scan)

See the explanation for Document Processor (Dual Scan) below.

> **⚠ CAUTION**
> • **Do not reuse jammed papers.**
> • **If the paper tears during removal, be sure to remove any loose scraps of paper from inside the machine. Scraps of paper left in the machine could cause subsequent jamming.**

1 **Remove the originals from the Original Table.**
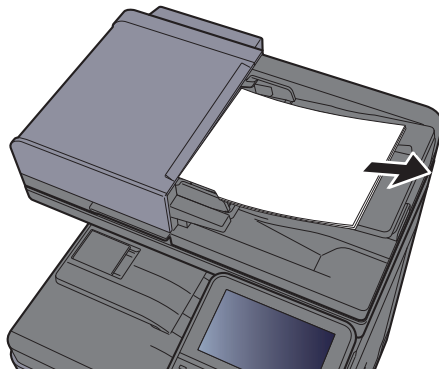
2 **Open the front cover and remove any jammed paper.**
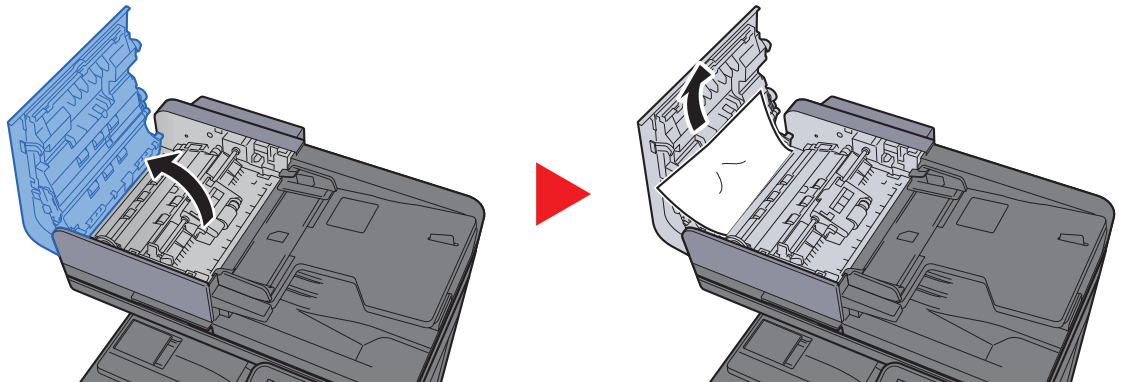
3 **Turn dial (C) clockwise and remove any jammed originals.**
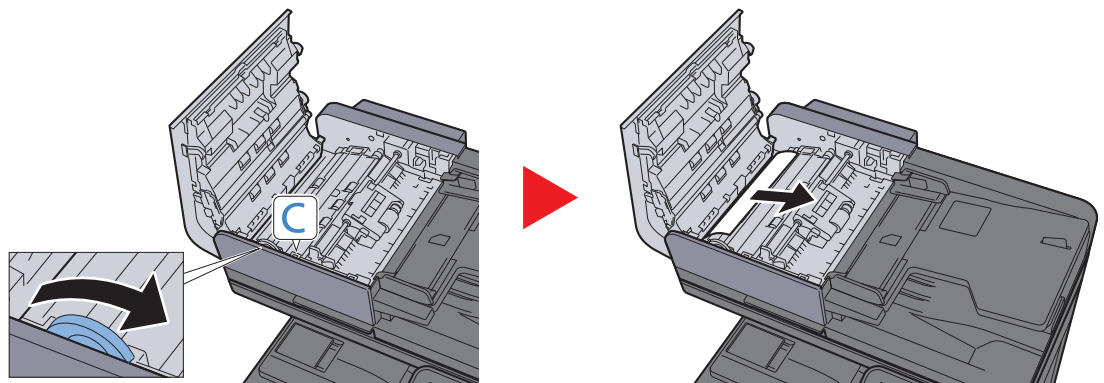
4 **Push the cover.**
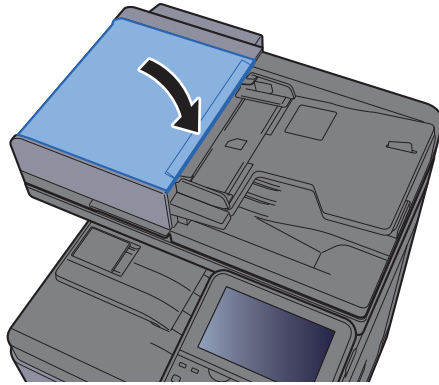
Remove any jammed paper in the 1,000-Sheet Finisher

See the explanation for the 1,000-Sheet Finisher below.

> ⚠️ **CAUTION**
> * **Do not reuse jammed papers.**
> * **If the paper tears during removal, be sure to remove any loose scraps of paper from inside the machine. Scraps of paper left in the machine could cause subsequent jamming.**

1 **Remove any jammed paper.**
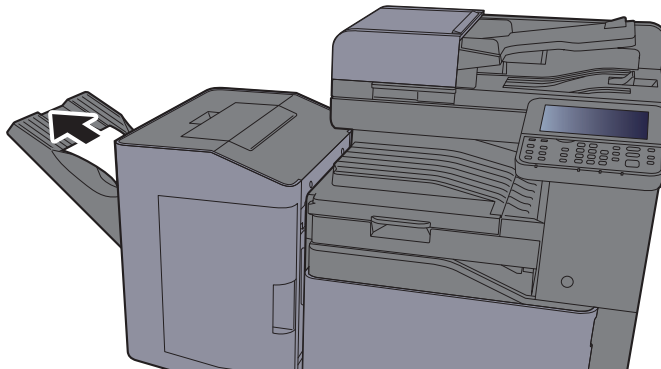
2 **Open the top cover.**
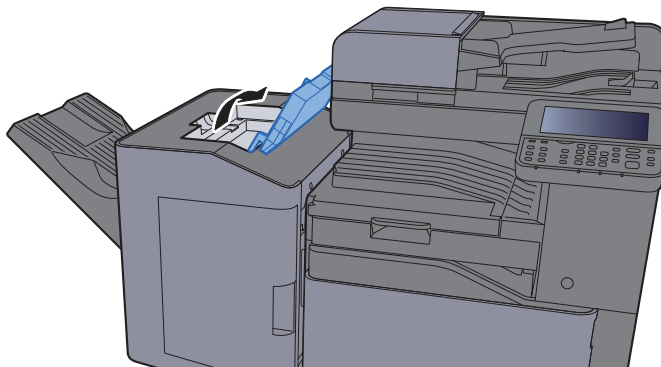
3   **Open Conveyor Guide (D).**
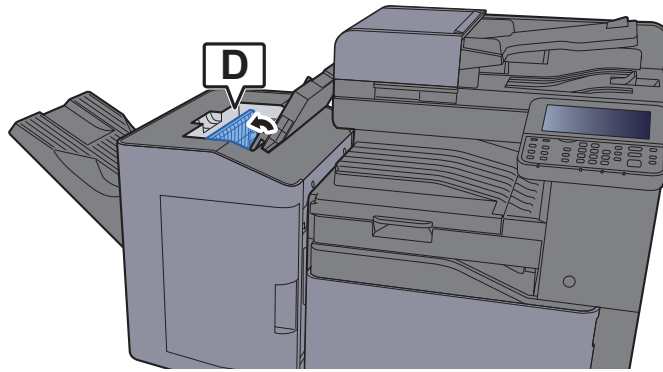
4   **Remove any jammed paper.**
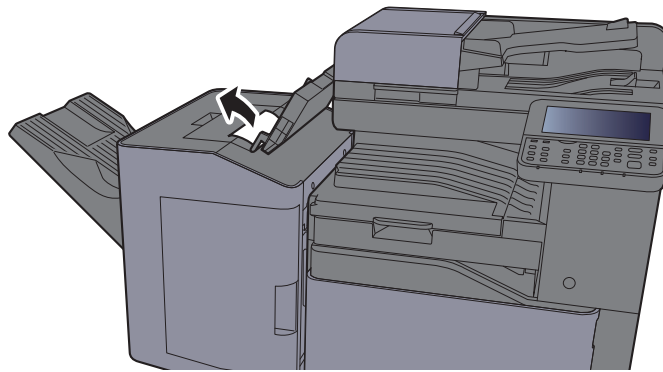
5   **Return Conveyor Guide (D) to the original position.**
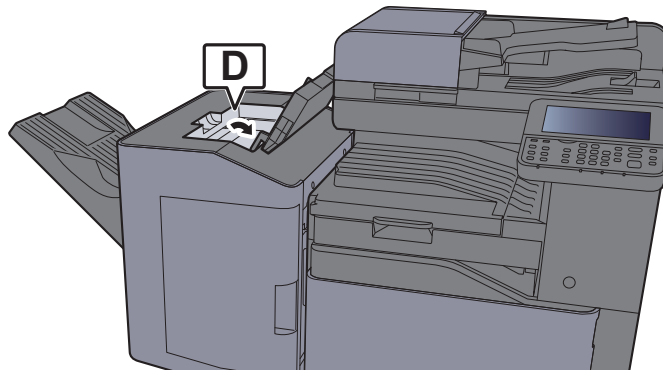
6   **Push the top cover.**
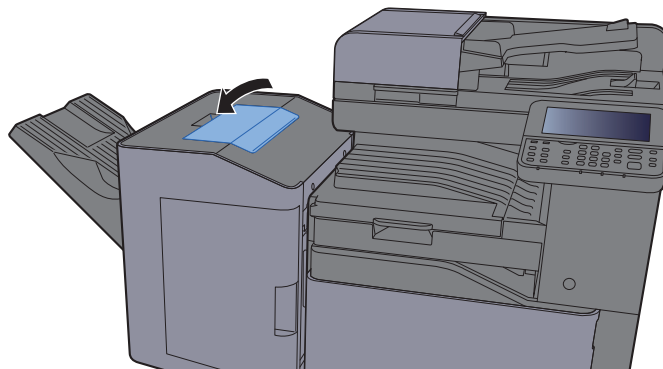
Remove any jammed paper in 3,000-sheet Finisher (Tray A)

See the explanation for 3,000-Sheet (Tray A) Finisher below.

> ⚠ **CAUTION**
> - **Do not reuse jammed papers.**
> - **If the paper tears during removal, be sure to remove any loose scraps of paper from inside the machine. Scraps of paper left in the machine could cause subsequent jamming.**

1 Remove any jammed paper.
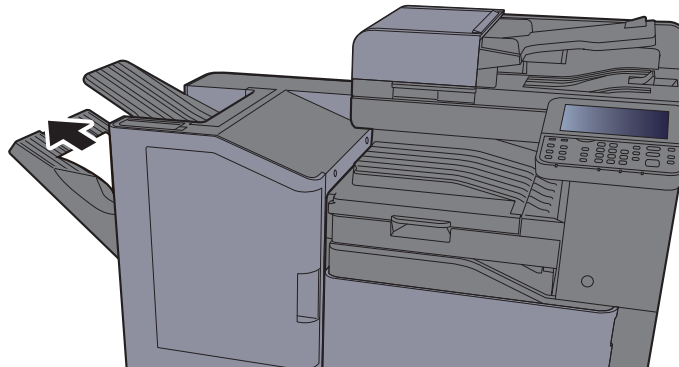
2 Open the front cover.
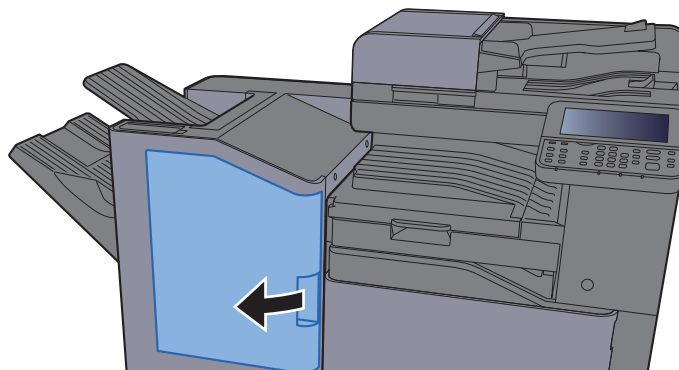
3 Open Conveyor Guide (D2).
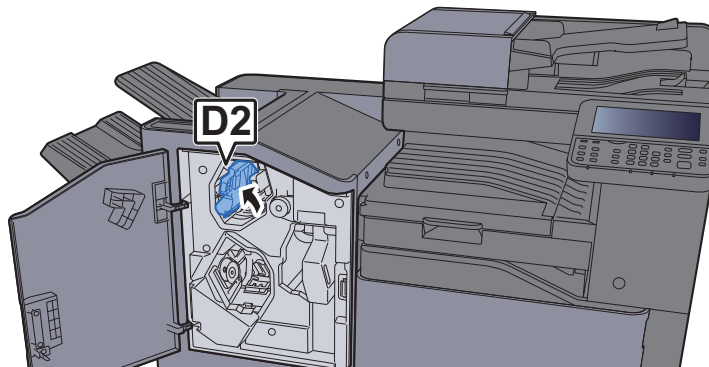
4 **Turn Conveyor Knob (D3) clockwise.**
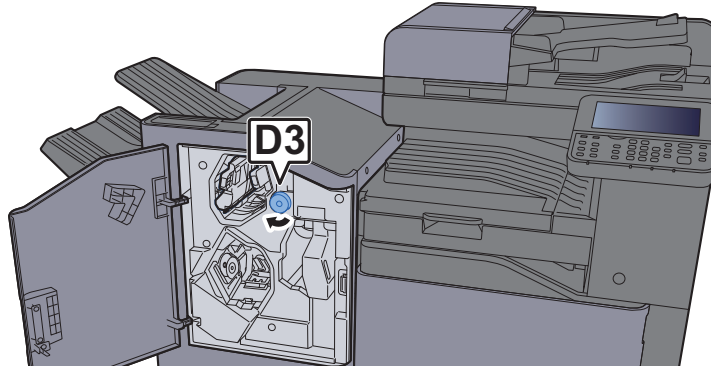
5 **Remove any jammed paper.**
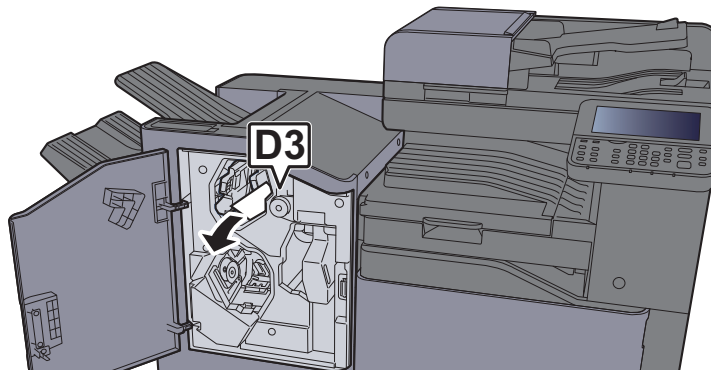
6 **Return Conveyor Guide (D2) to the original position.**
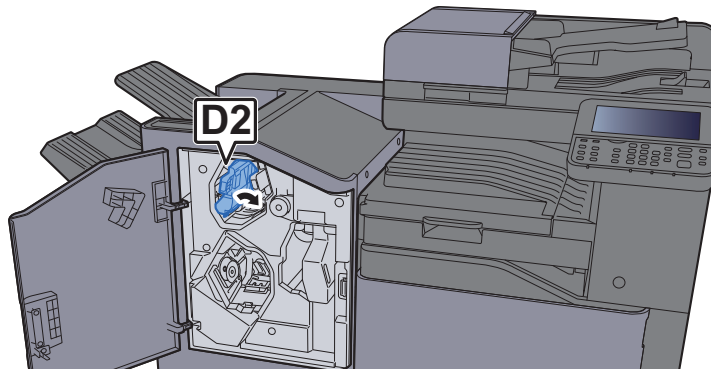
7 **Close the front cover.**
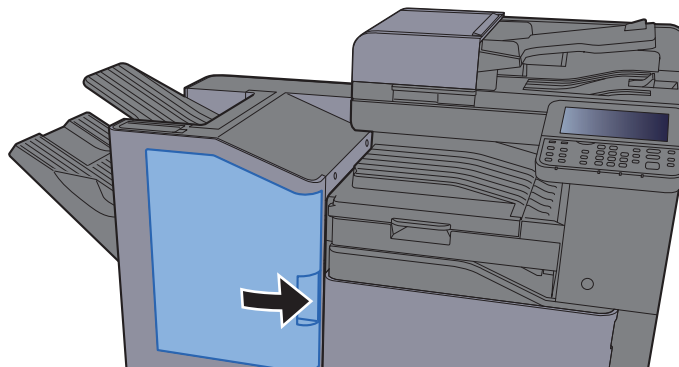
Remove any jammed paper in 3000-sheet Finisher (Tray B)

See the explanation for 3,000-Sheet (Tray B) Finisher below.

> ⚠️ **CAUTION**
> - **Do not reuse jammed papers.**
> - **If the paper tears during removal, be sure to remove any loose scraps of paper from inside the machine. Scraps of paper left in the machine could cause subsequent jamming.**

1 Remove any jammed paper.
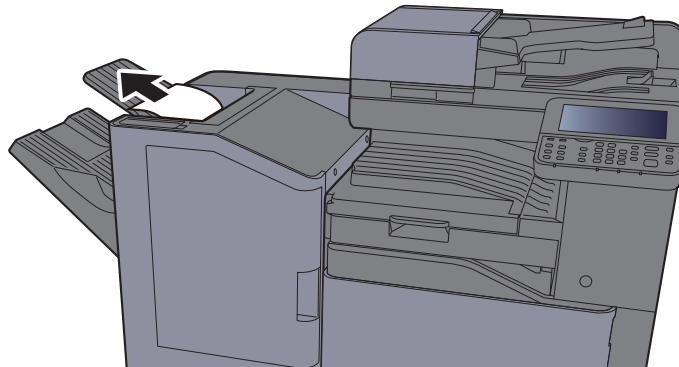
2 Open the front cover.
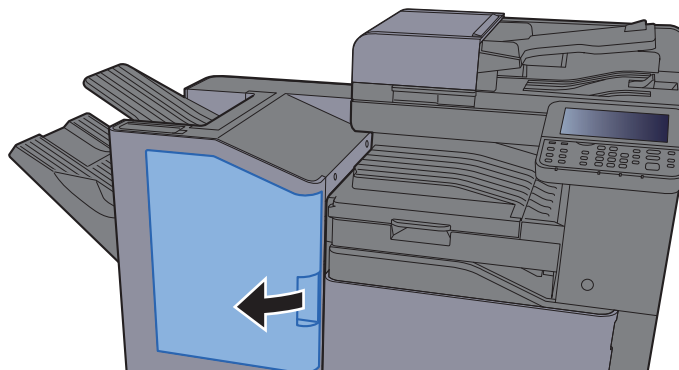
3 Open Conveyor Guide (D1).
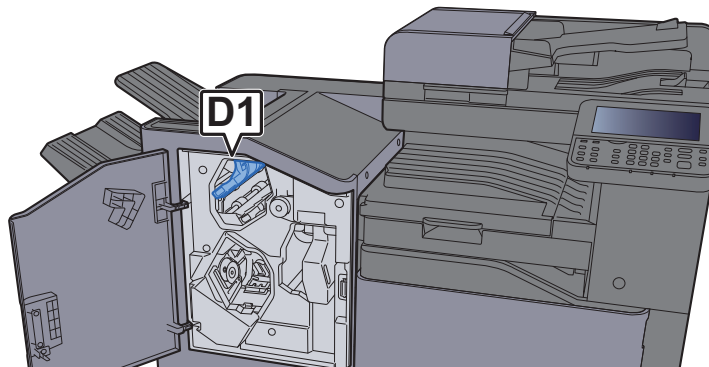
4 **Turn Conveyor Knob (D3) clockwise.**
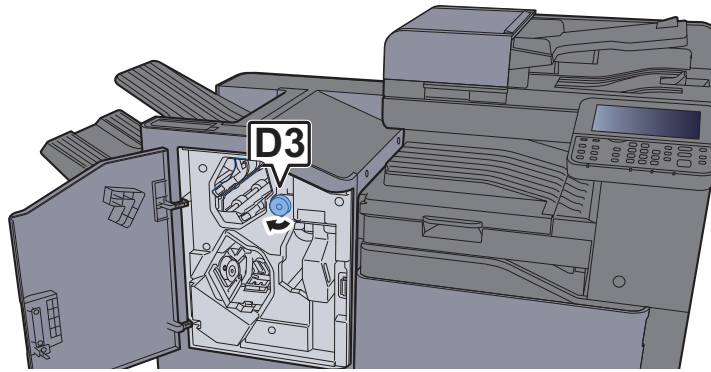
5 **Remove any jammed paper.**
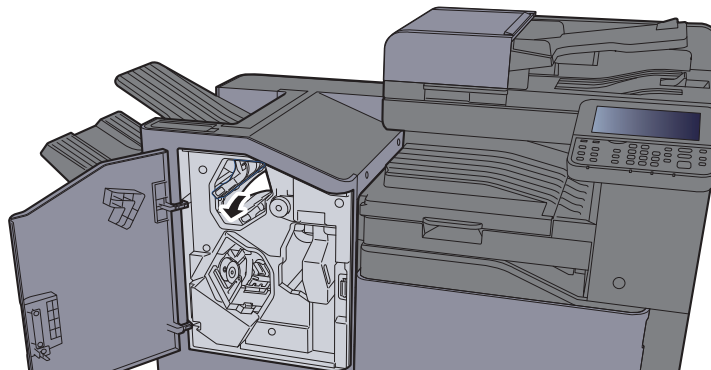
6 **Return Conveyor Guide (D1) to the original position.**
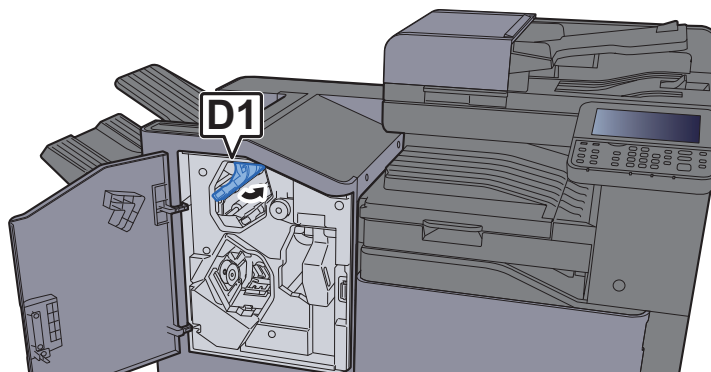
7 **Close the front cover.**
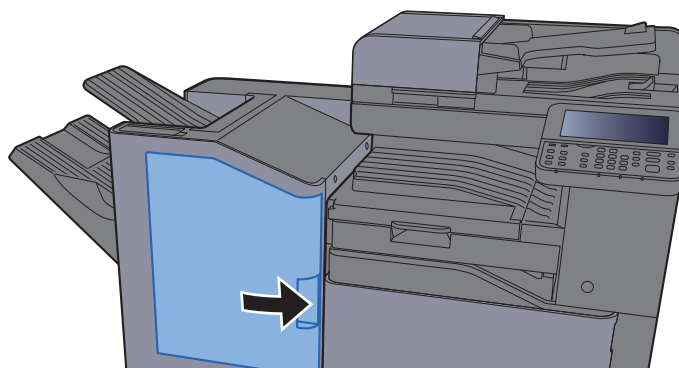
Clearing a Staple Jam

Clearing a staple jam of the Inner Finisher

1 Open the inner finisher unit.
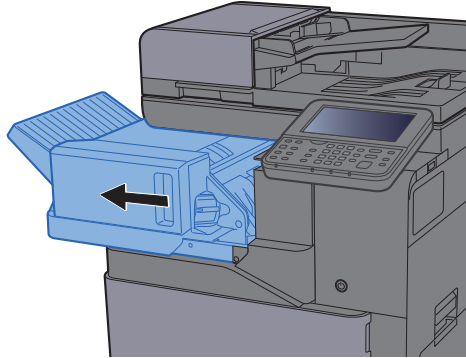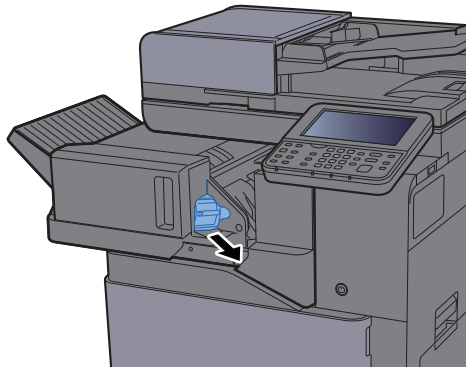
2 Remove the Staple Cartridge Holder.

3 Remove the jammed staple.
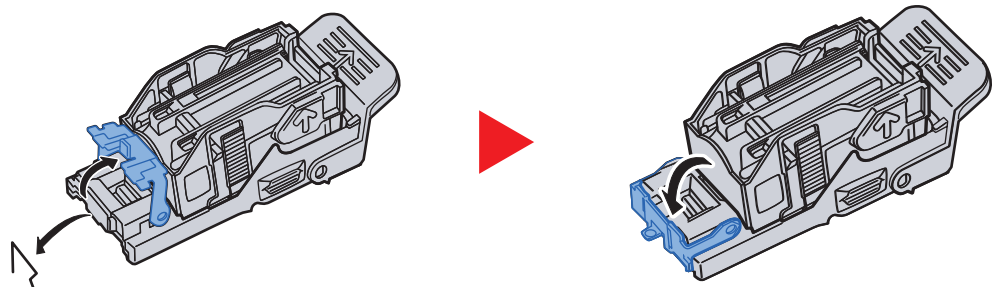
4 **Install the Staple Cartridge Holder.**
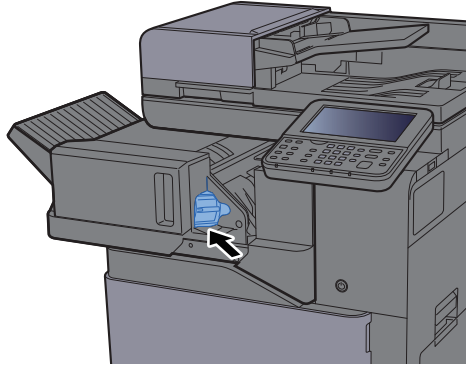
5 **Return the unit to the original position.**
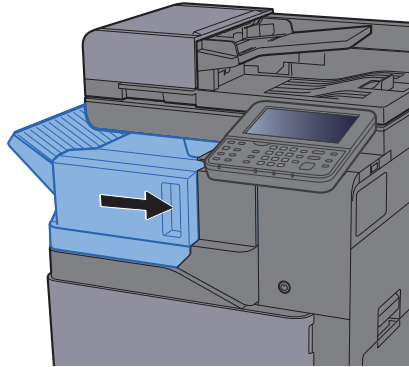
Clearing a staple jam of the 1,000-Sheet Finisher
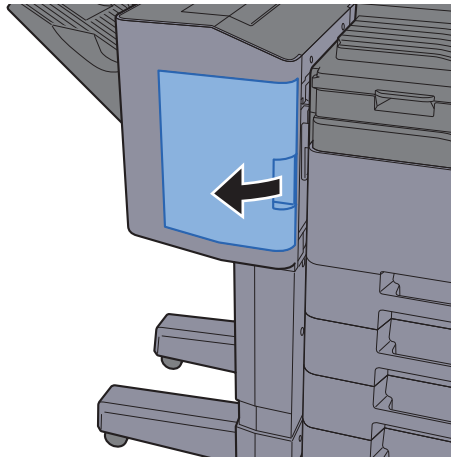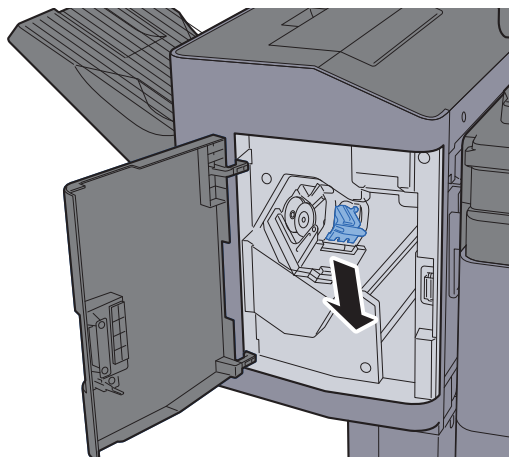
1 **Open the front cover.**

2 **Remove the Staple Cartridge Holder.**

3 **Remove the jammed staple.**
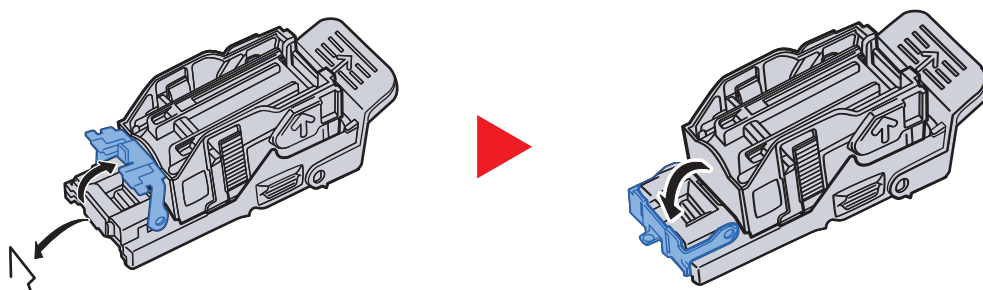
4 **Install the Staple Cartridge Holder.**
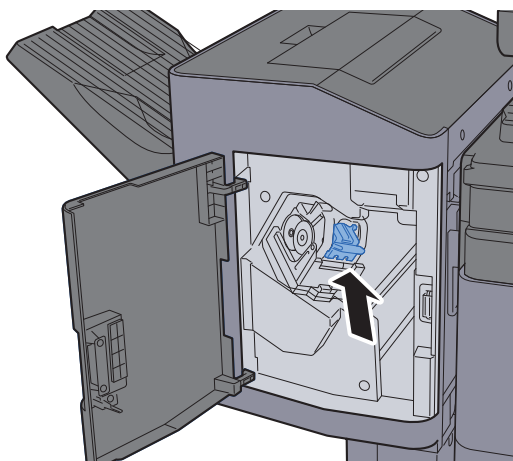
5   **Close the front cover.**
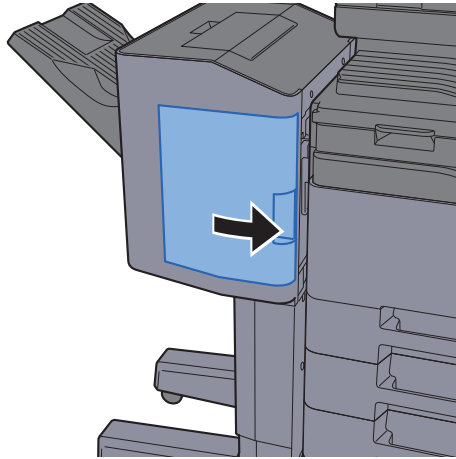
Clearing a staple jam of the 3,000-sheet Finisher
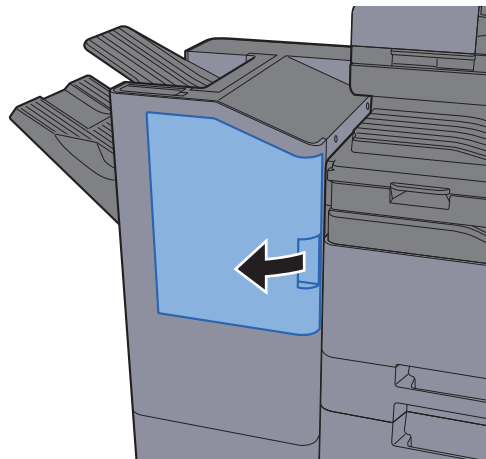
1   **Open the front cover.**

2   **Remove the Staple Cartridge Holder.**
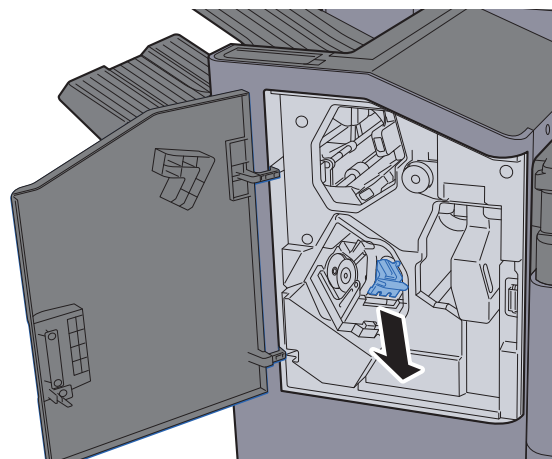
3 **Remove the jammed staple.**
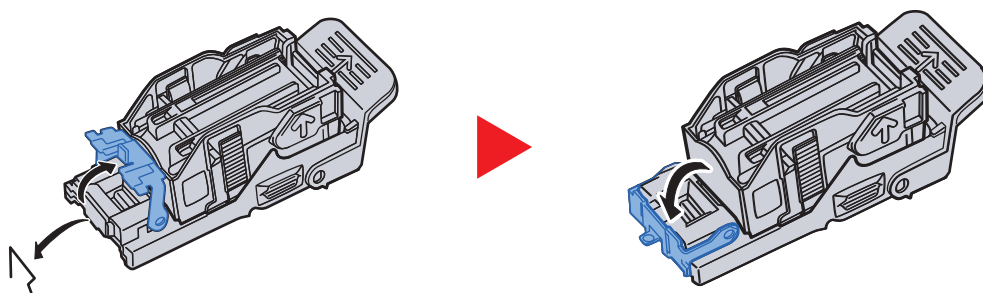
4 **Install the Staple Cartridge Holder.**
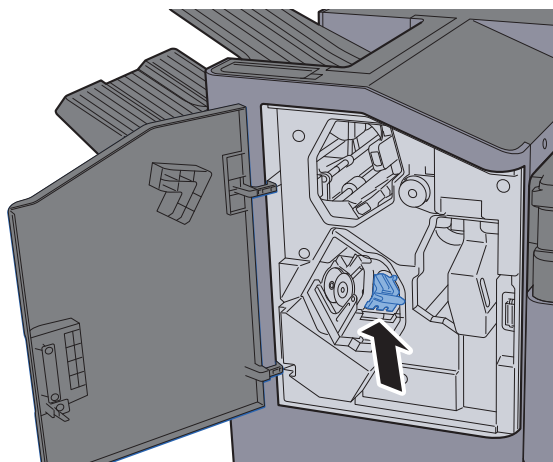
5 **Close the front cover.**
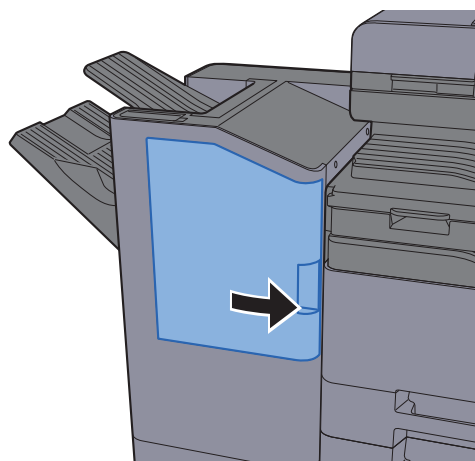
11 Appendix

This chapter explains the following topics:

Optional Equipment

Overview of Optional Equipment

The following optional equipment is available for the machine.

(2) MT-5100

(10) PH-5100
PH-5110

(3) DF-5110

(4) DF-5120

(1) DP-5100

(1) DP-5110

(9) DF-5100

(8) JS-5100

(7) PF-5120
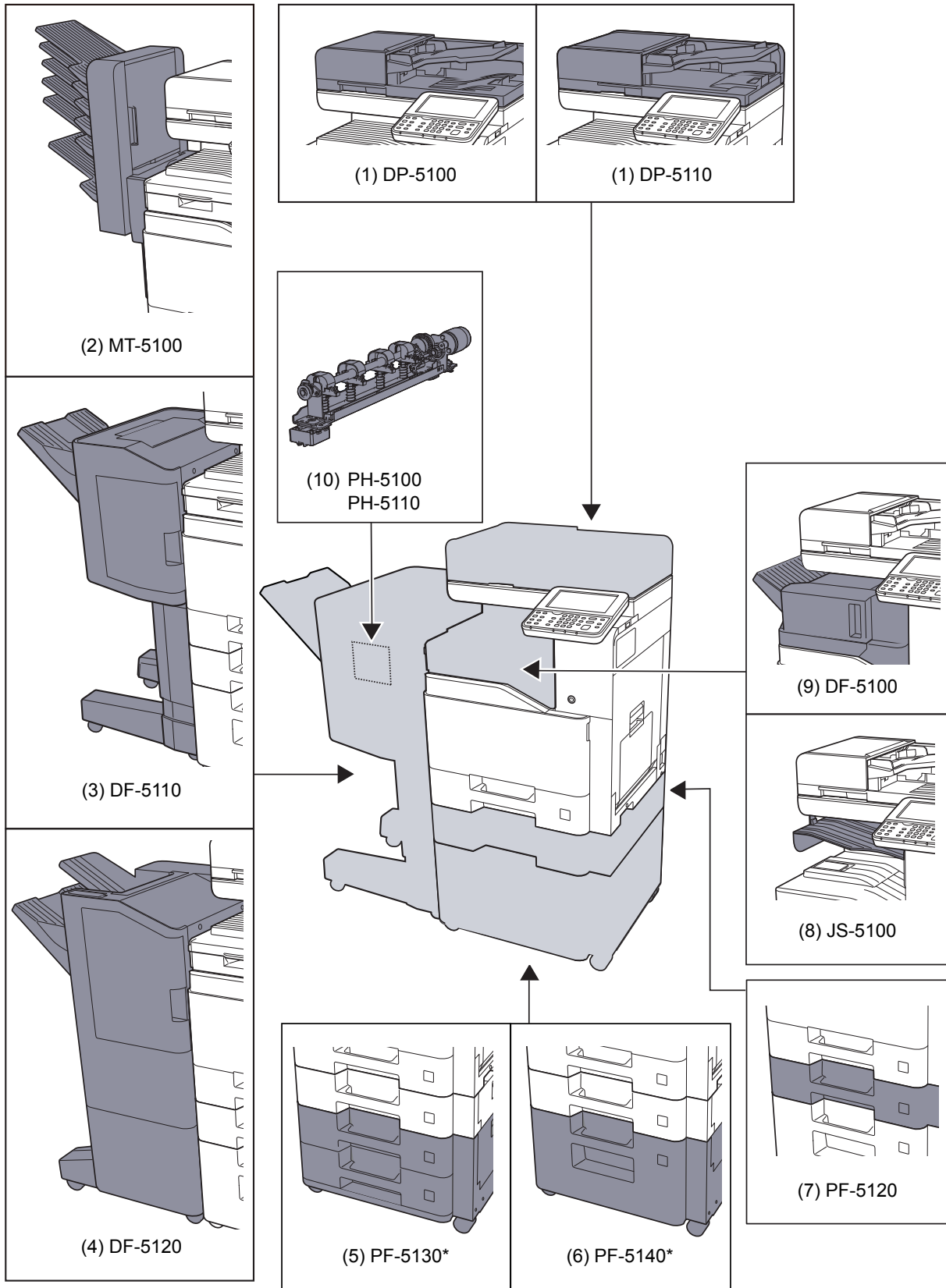
(5) PF-5130*

(6) PF-5140*

*   If PF-5130 or PF-5140 is installed, toppling prevention kit must be installed.

(11) FAX System 10

(12) IB-50

(13) IB-51

(14) MM-16-128

(15) HD-11

(16) DT-5100

(17) Key Counter

(18) Card Authentication Kit(B)
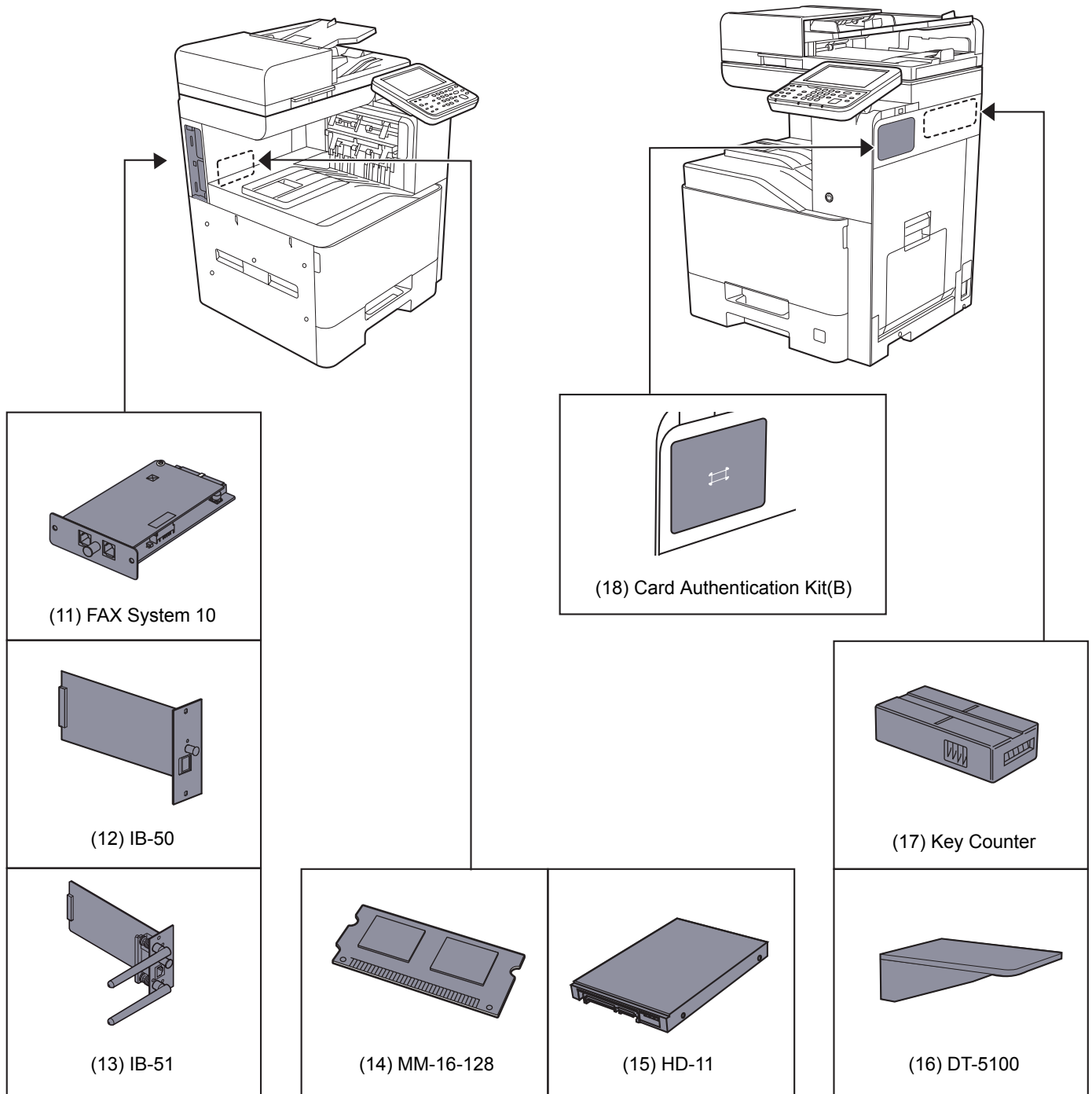
Software option
(19) Internet FAX Kit(A)
(20) Data Security kit(E)
(21) UG-33
(22) UG-34
(23) Scan extension kit(A)

(24) USB Keyboard
(25) SD/SDHC Memory Card

(1) DP-5100 "Document Processor (Reverse Automatic)"
DP-5110 "Document Processor (Dual Scan)"

Automatically scans originals. Also you can perform duplex copying and split copying.

For document processor operation, refer to the following:

➡ Loading Originals in the Document Processor (page 5-3)

When the document processor is not used, please use the PLATEN COVER TYPE E.

(2) MT-5100 "Mailbox"

Makes it easy to sort output into separate trays. Installing this option adds 6 output trays. When multiple computer users share the printer, each user can print to a specified tray.

> **NOTE**
>
> To deliver output to the mail box, change the Paper Output selection on the operation panel or in the printer driver, or change in the default settings.
>
> ➡ Paper Output (page 6-23)

(3) DF-5110 "1,000-Sheet Finisher"

This is a document finisher capable of holding large print runs and of separating and offsetting multiple copies of a printout into individual copies. It can also staple or hole-punch (optional) the offset printouts.

(4) DF-5120 "3,000-Sheet Finisher"

This is a large-capacity 3,000-Sheet Finisher capable of holding large print runs and of separating and offsetting multiple copies of a printout into individual copies. It can also staple or hole-punch the offset printouts.

(5) PF-5130 "Paper Feeder (500-sheet x2)"

Two additional cassettes identical to the printer's cassette can be installed in the printer. Paper capacity and loading method are the same as the standard cassettes.

➡ Loading in the Cassettes (page 3-4)

(6) PF-5140 "Large Capacity Feeder (2,000-sheet)"

In addition to the printer's cassettes, you can also install an optional large capacity feeder (2,000-sheet) capable of holding up to 2,000 sheets of A4, B5 or Letter paper.

➡ Loading in the Large Capacity Feeder (page 3-8)

(7) PF-5120 "Paper Feeder (500-sheet)"

One additional cassettes identical to the printer's cassette can be installed in the printer. Paper capacity and loading method are the same as the standard cassettes.

➡ Loading in the Cassettes (page 3-4)

(8) JS-5100 "Job Separator"

Separate paper according to output tray for easier sorting. Specify as the output tray for copy or print jobs. Or, specify as the default output tray for printing from the copy or Document Box screen, printing from the PC, and printing of the received fax data.

> **NOTE**
>
> To ensure that paper is delivered to the Job Separator, select the output destination or change the default setting.
>
> ➡ Paper Output (page 6-23)

(9) DF-5100 "Inner Finisher"

This is a document finisher capable of holding large print runs and of separating and offsetting multiple copies of a printout into individual copies. It can also staple the offset printouts.

(10) PH-5100, 5110 "Punch Unit"

Attaches to the 1,000-Sheet Finisher and is used to punch holes.

(11) FAX System 10 "FAX Kit"

By installing the FAX kit, fax send/receive is enabled. Also, it is possible to use it as a network fax, by using it with a computer. When two FAX kits are installed, the units can be connected to two different telephone lines which will enable quicker message transmission to a number of recipients. If one of the lines is dedicated to receiving, the busy line time can be reduced.

➡ **FAX Operation Guide**

(12) IB-50 "Network Interface Kit"

The Network Interface Kit provides a high-speed connection for the Gigabit-per-second interface. Settings are possible for a variety of OS and network protocols.

➡ **IB-50 User's Manual**

(13) IB-51 "Wireless Network Interface Kit"

This is a wireless LAN interface card which supports the wireless LAN specifications IEEE802.11n (Max 300 Mbps) and 11 g/b.

With the utilities supplied, settings are possible for a variety of OS and network protocols.

➡ **IB-51 User's Manual**

(14) MM-16-128 "FAX Expansion Memory"

Image storage memory (128 MB) that allows the machine to receive more pages of incoming faxed originals. Expansion memory should only be installed or removed by the service representative.

(15) HD-11 "Hard Disk" (Option for 350ci)

With Hard Disk installed in the machine, received data can be rasterized and stored on this Hard Disk. This enables high-speed printing of multiple copies using an electric sort function. Also, you can use the Document Box functions. HD-11 is standard in South America and North America.

➡ Printing Documents in Custom Box (page 5-54)

(16) DT-5100 "Document Table"

Place original or other documents when using the machine.

(17) Key Counter "Key Counter"

Use the key counter to monitor machine usage. The key counter offers a convenient solution for centralized management of copy volume for different departments in a large company.

Inserting the Key Counter
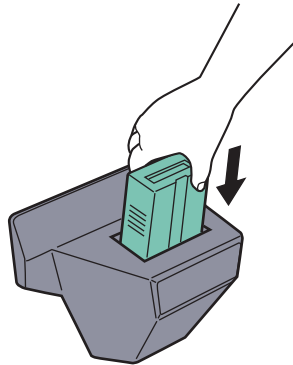
Insert the key counter securely into the key counter slot.

> **NOTE**
>
> When the key counter function is activated, copies can only be made when a key counter is inserted. If the key counter is not inserted, "Insert the key counter." will be displayed.

(18) Card Authentication Kit(B) "Card Authentication Kit"

User login administration can be performed using ID cards. To do so, it is necessary to register ID card information on the previously registered local user list. For more information about how to register this information, refer to the following:

➡ **Card Authentication Kit(B) Operation Guide**

(19) Internet FAX Kit(A) "Internet FAX Kit"

Activating the Internet FAX Kit sends and receives faxes via the Internet without using a phone line. It can only be added when the FAX Kit is installed.

(20) Data Security Kit(E) "Data Security Kit"

The Data Security Kit overwrites all unnecessary data in the storage area of the hard disk so that it cannot be retrieved. The Data Security Kit encrypts data before storing it in the hard disk. It guarantees higher security because no data cannot be decoded by ordinary output or operations.

(21) UG-33 "ThinPrint Option"

This application allows print data to be printed directly without a print driver.

(22) UG-34 "Emulation Upgrade Kit"

Enables emulation whereby the machine operates using commands for other printers. Installing this option enables IBM Proprinter, Line Printer, and EPSON LQ-850 emulation.

(23) Scan extension kit(A) "OCR Scan Activation Kit"

This option enables the use of the OCR function in the applications of the machine.

(24) USB Keyboard "USB Keyboard"

A USB keyboard can be used to enter information into the text fields on the operation panel. A special mount is also available to install the keyboard on the machine. Please contact your dealer or service representative for information on keyboards that are compatible with your machine before you purchase one.

(25) "SD/SDHC Memory Card"

An SD/SDHC memory card is useful for storing fonts, macros, and overlays. The machine is equipped with a slot for an SDHC memory card with a maximum size of 32 GB, and an SD memory card with a maximum size of 2 GB.

Optional Applications

Overview of the Applications

The applications listed below are installed on this machine.

Application
Data Security Kit
Internet FAX Kit
Card Authentication Kit
ThinPrint Option*
Emulation Upgrade Kit
OCR Scan Activation Kit*

* This can be used on a trial basis for a limited time.

> **NOTE**
>
> Restrictions such as the number of times the application can be used during the trial period differ depending on the application.
>
> If you change the date/time while using the trial version of an application, you will no longer be able to use the application.

Starting Application Use

Use the procedure below to start using an application.

1 [**System Menu**] key > [**System/Network**] > "Optional Function" [**Next**]

> **NOTE**
>
> If the user authentication screen appears, enter your login user name and login password and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login with administrator privileges. The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.
>
> | Model Name | Login User Name | Login Password |
> |---|---|---|
> | **350ci** | 3500 | 3500 |
> | **400ci** | 4000 | 4000 |

2 Select the desired application > [**Activate**]

You can view detailed information on the selected application by selecting [**Detail**].

3 Select [**Official**] in the license key entry screen.

Some applications do not require you to enter a license key. If the license key entry screen does not appear, go to Step 5.

To use the application as a trial, select [**Trial**] without entering the license key.

4 Select [**Yes**] in the confirmation screen.

> **NOTE**
>
> Icons of activated application are displayed in the Home screen.

11-8

Checking Details of Application

Use the procedure below to check the details of application.

> **1** [**System Menu**] key > [**System/NetWork**] > "Optional Function" [**Next**]

> **NOTE**
>
> If the user authentication screen appears, enter your login user name and login password and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login with administrator privileges. The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.
>
> | Model Name | Login User Name | Login Password |
> | --- | --- | --- |
> | **350ci** | 3500 | 3500 |
> | **400ci** | 4000 | 4000 |

> **2** Select the desired application and select [**Detail**].
>
> You can view detailed information on the selected application.
>
> The table below lists the item you can view.
>
> | Item |
> | --- |
> | Function Name |
> | License |
> | Remaining Counts |
> | Expiration Date |
> | Status |
>
> **Extend the trial period.**
>
> [**Extend**] > [**Yes**]
>
> The trial period is extended.

Character Entry Method

To enter characters for a name, use the on-display keyboard in the touch panel following the steps as explained below.

> **NOTE**
> **Keyboard Layout**
> "QWERTY", "QWERTZ" and "AZERTY" are available as keyboard layouts the same as a PC keyboard. Select the [**System Menu**] key, [**Common Settings**] and then [**Keyboard Layout**] to choose the desired layout. "QWERTY" layout is used here as an example. You may use another layout following the same steps.

Entry Screens

Lower-case Letter Entry Screen
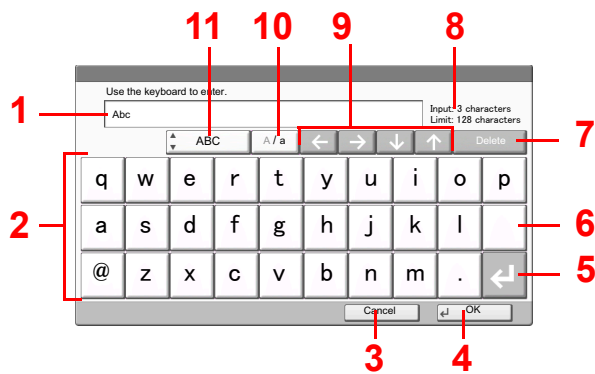
No.	Display/Key	Description
1	Display	Displays entered characters.
2	Keyboard	Select the character to enter.
3	[**Cancel**]	Select to cancel entered characters and return to the screen before the entry was made.
4	[**OK**]	Select to save the entered characters and move to the next screen.
5	Enter Key	Select to enter a line break.
6	Space Key	Select to insert a space.
7	[**Delete**]	Select to delete a character to the left of the cursor.
8	[**Input**] / [**Limit**] Display	Displays maximum number of characters and the number of characters entered.
9	Cursor Key	Select to move the cursor on the display.
10	[**A**/a] / [**A/a**]	Select to switch between upper case and lower case.
11	[**ABC**] / [**Symbol**]	Select the characters that are entered. To enter symbols or numbers, select [**Symbol**].

Upper-case Letter Entry Screen
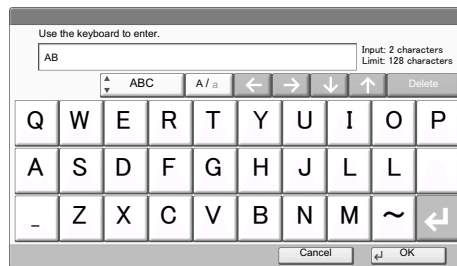
Number/Symbol Entry Screen
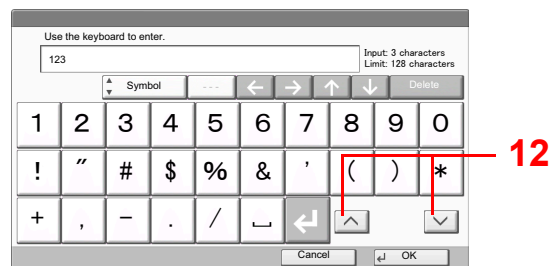
No.	Display/Key	Description
12	[∧]/[∨]	To enter a number or symbol not shown in the keyboard, select the cursor key and scroll the screen to view other numbers or symbols to enter.

Entering Characters

Follow the steps below to enter 'List A-1' for an example.

1 Enter 'List', (space).
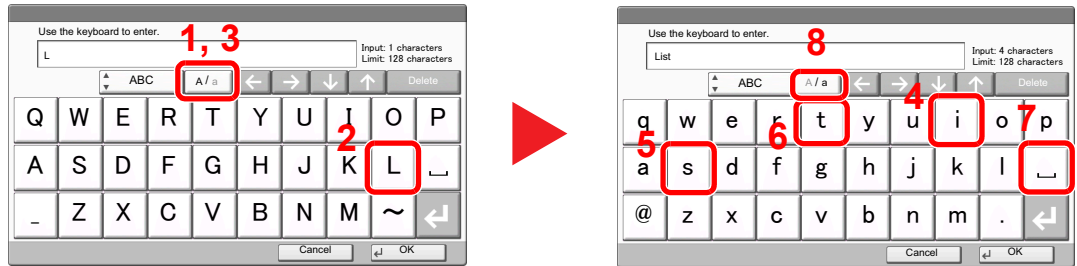
To shift from lower case to upper case letters, select [A/a]. To shift from upper case to lower case letters, select [A/a].

2 Enter 'A-1'.
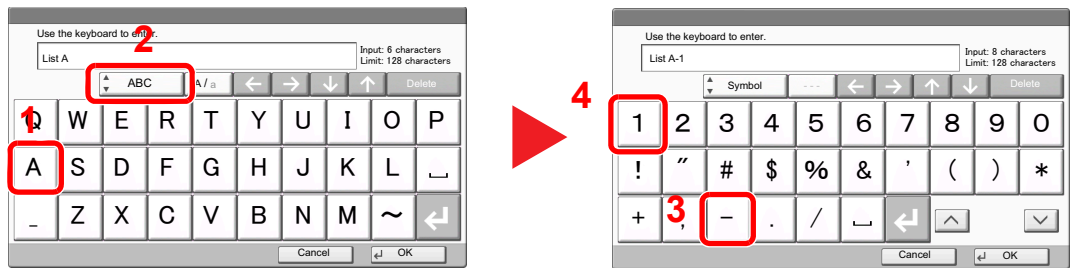
To enter numbers or symbols, select [ABC] to display [Symbol].

3 Check that the entry is correct.
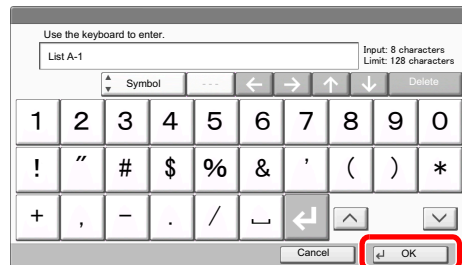
Check that the entry is correct. Select [OK].

11-12

Paper

This section explains the paper sizes and types that can be used in the paper source.

For details on the sizes, types, and number of sheets of paper that can be loaded in each paper tray, refer to the following:

→ Specifications (page 11-21)

Basic Paper Specifications

This machine is designed to print on standard copy paper as used in regular ('dry') copiers and page printers such as laser printers. It also supports a variety of other types of paper that conform to the specifications given in this appendix.

Be careful when choosing paper. Paper unsuitable for the machine may cause jams or may be wrinkled.

Supported Paper

Use standard copy paper for regular copiers or laser printers. The printing quality will be affected by the quality of paper. Poor quality paper may result in unsatisfactory output.

Basic Paper Specifications

The following table lists the specifications of paper that is supported with this machine. Refer to the subsequent sections for further details.

Criteria	Specifications
Weight	Cassettes: 60 to 220 g/m^2
	Multi purpose tray: 60 to 220 g/m^2, 230 g/m^2 (Cardstock)
Dimensional accuracy	±0.7 mm
Squareness of corners	90° ±0.2°
Moisture content	4 to 6%
Pulp content	80% or more

NOTE

Some recycled paper does not meet requirements for use with this machine as listed in the Basic Paper Specifications shown below, such as moisture or pulp content. For this reason, we recommend purchasing a small amount of recycled paper as a sample for testing prior to use. Choose recycled paper that gives the best printing results and contains low levels of paper dust.

We are not responsible for the problems occurred from the use of paper that does not conform to our specifications.

Choosing the Appropriate Paper

This section describes guidelines for choosing paper.

Condition

Avoid using paper with bent corners or that is curled, dirty, or torn. Do not use paper that has a rough surface or paper fiber lint, or that is especially delicate. Use of paper in any of these conditions will not only deliver poor copies but may also cause jams and shorten the useful life of the machine. Choose paper with a smooth and even surface; however, avoid coated paper or paper with a treated surface as it may damage the drum or fusing unit.

Ingredients

Do not use paper such as paper that has been coated or surface-treated or paper that contains plastic or carbon. Those types of paper may produce harmful fumes from the heat of printing and may damage the drum.

Be sure to use the standard paper that contains at least 80% pulp, i.e., not more than 20% of the total paper content consists of cotton or other fibers.

Supported Paper Sizes

Paper of the following sizes is supported by the machine.

Measurements in the table take into account a ±0.7 mm dimensional accuracy for length and width. Corner angles must be 90° ± 0.2°.

Multi Purpose Tray

- Hagaki (Cardstock) (100 × 148 mm)
- Oufuku hagaki (Return postcard) (148 × 200 mm)
- Custom (70 × 148 to 216 × 356 mm)

Cassettes or Multi Purpose Tray

- Envelope Monarch (3-7/8 × 7-1/2")
- Envelope #10 (4-1/8 × 9-1/2")
- Envelope DL (110 × 220 mm)
- Envelope C5 (162 × 229 mm)
- Executive (7-1/4 × 10-1/2")
- Letter
- Legal
- A4 (297 × 210 mm)
- B5 (257 × 182 mm)
- A5 (210 × 148 mm)
- A6 (148 × 105 mm)
- B6 (182 × 128 mm)
- Envelope #9 (3-7/8 × 8-7/8")
- Envelope #6 (3-5/8 × 6-1/2")
- ISO B5 (176 × 250 mm)
- Oficio II
- 216 × 340 mm
- 16K (273 × 197 mm)

- Statement

- Folio (210 × 330 mm)

- Youkei 4 (105 × 235 mm)

- Youkei 2 (114 × 162 mm)

- Custom (Cassette: 92 × 148 to 216 × 356 mm, Multi Purpose Tray: 70 × 148 to 216 × 356 mm)

Smoothness

The paper surface should be smooth, but it must be uncoated. With paper that is too smooth and slippery, several sheets may accidentally be supplied at once, causing jams.

Basis Weight

In countries that use the metric system, basis weight is the weight in grams of one sheet of paper one square meter in area. In the United States, basis weight is the weight in pounds of one ream (500 sheets) of paper cut to the standard size (or trade size) for a specific grade of paper. Paper that is too heavy or too light may be supplied incorrectly or cause paper jams, which may cause excessive wear of the machine. Mixed paper weight (i.e., thickness) may cause several sheets to be supplied at once accidentally and may also cause blurring or other printing problems if the toner fails to adhere correctly.

Moisture Content

Paper moisture content is the ratio of moisture to dryness expressed as a percentage. Moisture affects how the paper is supplied, the electrostatic chargeability of the paper, and how the toner adheres.

Paper moisture content varies depending on the relative humidity in the room. High relative humidity causes paper to become damp, making the edges expand so it appears wavy. Low relative humidity causes paper to lose moisture, making the edges tighten and weakening print contrast.

Wavy or tight edges may cause the paper to slip when it is supplied. Try to keep the moisture content between 4 to 6%.

To maintain the right level of moisture content, bear in mind the following considerations.

- Store paper in a cool, well-ventilated place.

- Store paper flat and unopened in the package. Once the package is opened, reseal it if the paper is not to be used for a while.

- Store paper sealed in the original package and box. Put a pallet under the carton to keep it raised above the floor. Especially during rainy seasons keep the paper a sufficient distance away from wooden or concrete floors.

- Before using paper that has been stored, keep it at the proper moisture level for at least 48 hours.

- Do not store paper where it is exposed to heat, sunlight, or dampness.

Other Paper Specifications

Porosity: The density of the paper fibers.

Stiffness: Paper must be stiff enough or it may buckle in the machine, causing jams.

Curl: Most paper naturally tends to curl after the package is opened. When paper passes through the fixing unit, it curls upward slightly. To deliver flat printouts, load the paper so that the curl faces towards the bottom of the paper tray.

Static electricity: During printing, paper is electrostatically charged so that the toner adheres. Choose paper that can be discharged quickly so that copies do not cling together.

Whiteness: Paper whiteness affects print contrast. Use whiter paper for sharper, brighter copies.

Quality: Machine problems may occur if sheet sizes are not uniform or if corners are not square, edges are rough, sheets are uncut, or edges or corners are crushed. In order to prevent these problems, be especially careful when you cut the paper yourself.

Packaging: Choose paper that is properly packaged and stacked in boxes. Ideally, the packaging itself should have been treated with a coating to inhibit moisture.

Specially treated paper: We do not recommend printing onto the following types of paper, even if it conforms to the basic specifications. When you use these kinds of paper, purchase a small amount first as a sample to test.

- Glossy paper
- Watermarked paper
- Paper with an uneven surface
- Perforated paper

Special Paper

This section describes printing onto special paper and print media.

The following paper and media can be used.

- Transparencies
- Preprinted paper
- Bond paper
- Recycled paper
- Thin paper
- Letterhead
- Colored paper
- Prepunched paper
- Envelopes
- Hagaki (Cardstock)
- Thick paper
- Labels
- Coated
- High-quality paper

When using these paper and media, choose those that are designed specifically for copiers or page printers (such as laser printers). Use the multi purpose tray for transparencies, envelopes, cardstocks, and label paper.

Choosing Special Paper

Although special paper that meets the following requirements can be used with the machine, print quality will vary considerably due to differences in the construction and quality of special paper. Thus, special paper is more likely than regular paper to cause printing problems. Before purchasing special paper in volume, try testing a sample to ensure the print quality is satisfactory. General precautions when printing onto special paper are given below. Note that we are not responsible for any harm to the user or damage to the machine caused by moisture or specifications of special paper.

Select a cassette or multi purpose tray for special paper.

Transparencies

Transparencies must be able to withstand the heat of printing. Transparencies must meet the following conditions.

Heat resistance	Must withstand at least 190°C
Thickness	0.100 to 0.110 mm
Material	Polyester
Dimensional accuracy	±0.7 mm
Squareness of corners	90° ±0.2°

To avoid problems, use the multi purpose tray for transparencies and load transparencies with the long side facing the machine.

If transparencies jam frequently at output, try pulling the leading edge of sheets gently as they are ejected.

11-17

Label

Be sure to feed labels from the multi purpose tray.

For selecting labels, use extreme care so that the adhesive may not come in direct contact with any part of the machine and that the labels are not easily peeled from the carrier sheet. Adhesives that stick to the drum or rollers and peeled labels remaining in the machine may cause a failure.

When printing onto labels, you must be liable for the print quality and possible trouble.

Top sheet

Adhesive layer
Carrier sheet
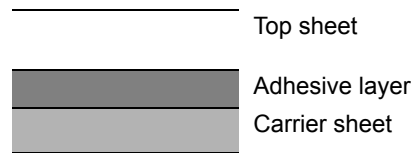
Labels consist of three layers as shown in the illustration. The adhesive layer contains materials that are easily affected by the force applied in the machine. The carrier sheet bears the top sheet until the label is used. This composition of labels may cause more problems.

The label surface must be covered completely with the top sheet. Gaps between labels may cause peeling of labels, resulting in a serious failure.

Some label paper has large margins on the top sheet. When using such paper, do not peel these margins from the carrier sheet before completing output.

Allowed   **Not allowed**

Top sheet

Carrier sheet
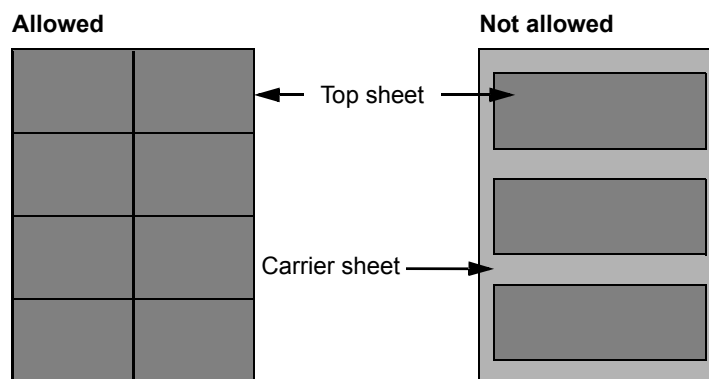
Use label paper that conforms to the following specifications.

Top sheet weight	44 to 74 g/m²
Basis weight (overall paper weight)	104 to 151 g/m²
Top sheet thickness	0.086 to 0.107 mm
Overall paper thickness	0.115 to 0.145 mm
Moisture content	4 to 6 % (composite)

Hagaki (Cardstock)
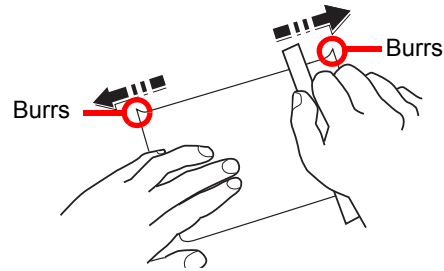
Before loading Hagaki (Cardstock) into the multi purpose tray, fan them and align the edges. If the Hagaki (Cardstock) paper is curled, straighten it before loading. Printing onto curled Hagaki (Cardstock) may cause jams.

Use unfolded Oufuku hagaki (Return postcard) (available at post offices). Some Hagaki (Cardstock) may still have rough edges developed by a paper cutter on the back side. Remove any such rough edges by placing the Hagaki (Cardstock) on a flat surface and rubbing the edges gently a few times with a ruler.

Envelopes

Envelopes should be fed from the MP tray with the print-side down or the cassette and the optional paper feeder with the print-side up.

> **NOTE**
>
> Do not load paper above the load limits located on the paper width guide of the cassette and the optional paper feeder.

Due to the structure of envelopes, printing evenly over the entire surface may not be possible in some cases. Thin envelopes in particular may be wrinkled by the machine in some cases as they pass through. Before purchasing envelopes in volume, try testing a sample to ensure the print quality.

Storing envelopes for a long period may cause them to become wrinkled. Thus, keep the package sealed until you are ready to use them.

Keep the following points in mind.

- Do not use envelopes with exposed adhesive. In addition, do not use the type of envelope in which the adhesive is exposed after the top layer is peeled off. Serious damage may be caused if the paper covering the adhesive comes off in the machine.

- Do not use envelopes with certain special features. For example, do not use envelopes with a grommet for winding a string to close the flap or envelopes with an open or film-covered window.

- If paper jams occur, load fewer envelopes at once.

Thick Paper

Before loading thick paper, fan it and align the edges. Some thick paper may still have rough edges developed by a paper cutter on the back side. Remove any such rough edges just as with Hagaki (Cardstock) by placing the paper on a flat surface and rubbing the edges gently a few times with a ruler. Printing onto paper with rough edges may cause jams.

> **NOTE**
>
> If the paper is not supplied correctly even after it is smoothed, load the paper with the leading edge raised a few millimeters.

Colored Paper

Colored paper must conform to the specifications.

➡

In addition, the pigments in the paper must be able to withstand the heat of printing (up to 200°C or 392°F).

Preprinted Paper

Preprinted paper must conform to the specifications.

➡

The colored ink must be able to withstand the heat of printing. It must be resistant to silicone oil as well. Do not use paper with a treated surface such as glossy paper used for calendars.

Recycled Paper

Recycled paper must conform to the specifications; however, its whiteness may be considered separately.

➡

> **NOTE**
> Before purchasing recycled paper in volume, try testing a sample to ensure satisfactory print quality.

Coated Paper

Coated paper is created by treating the surface of the base paper with a coating that provides higher printing quality than plain paper. Coated paper is used for particularly high quality printing.

The surface of high-quality or medium-quality paper is coated with special agents that improve ink adhesion by making the paper surface smoother. These agents are used either to coat both sides of the paper or just one side. The coated side appears slightly glossy.

> **IMPORTANT**
> **When printing on coated paper in very humid environments, ensure that the paper is kept dry as moisture may cause sheets to stick together when they are fed into the machine. If printing in very humid environments, set coated paper for one sheet each.**

Specifications

⊘ **IMPORTANT**

Specifications are subject to change without notice.

💭 **NOTE**

For more information on using the FAX, refer to the following:

➡ **FAX Operation Guide**

Machine

Item		Description
Type		Desktop
Printing Method		Electrophotography by semiconductor laser
Paper Weight	Cassette	60 to 220 g/m^2
	Multi Purpose Tray	60 to 220 g/m^2, 230 g/m^2 (Cardstock), 29 to 163 g/m^2 (Banner sheet)
Paper Type	Cassette	Plain, Rough, Recycled, Vellum, Preprinted, Bond, Color, Prepunched, Letterhead, Thick, High Quality, Envelope, Custom (Duplex: Same as Simplex)
	Multi Purpose Tray	Plain, Transparency (OHP film), Rough, Vellum, Labels, Recycled, Preprinted, Bond, Cardstock, Coated, Color, Prepunched, Letterhead, Envelope, Thick, High Quality, Custom 1 to 8
Paper Size	Cassette	A4, A5, A6, B5, B6, Letter, Legal, Statement, Executive, Oficio II, Folio, 216 × 340 mm, 16K, B5 (ISO), Envelope #10, Envelope #9, Envelope #6 3/4, Envelope Monarch, Envelope DL, Envelope C5, Youkei 4, Youkei 2, Custom (92 × 148 mm to 216 × 356 mm)
	Multi Purpose Tray	A4, A5, A6, B5, B6, Folio, 216 × 340 mm, Letter, Legal, Statement, Executive, Oficio II, 16K, B5 (ISO), Envelope #10, Envelope #9, Envelope #6 3/4, Envelope Monarch, Envelope DL, Envelope C5, Hagaki (Cardstock), Oufuku Hagaki (Return postcard), Youkei 4, Youkei 2, Custom (70 × 148 mm to 216 × 356 mm), Banner sheet (210 x 470.1 to 210 x 1220 mm)
Printable Area		Print margin for top, bottom and both sides is 4 mm
Warm-up Time (23°C/73.4°F, 60%)	Power on	350ci 24 seconds or less 400ci 24 seconds or less
	Low Power	350ci 10 seconds or less 400ci 10 seconds or less
	Sleep	350ci 19.7 seconds or less 400ci 21.8 seconds or less
Paper Capacity	Cassette	500 sheets (80 g/m^2)[*1]
	Multi Purpose Tray	100 sheets (A4/Letter or smaller) (80 g/m^2), 25 sheets (larger than A4/Letter) (80 g/m^2) 1 sheet (Banner sheet (210 x 470.1 to 210 x 1220 mm)) (129 to 163 g/m^2)

*1 Up to upper limit height line in the cassette.

Item		Description
Output Tray Capacity	**Inner tray**	500 sheets (80 g/m^2)^{*1}
Image Write System		Semiconductor laser and electrophotography
Memory		2.0 GB
Large Capacity Storage		350ci SSD 8GB 400ci Hard Disk 320GB
Interface	**Standard**	USB Interface Connector: 1 (Hi-Speed USB)^{*2} Network interface: 1 (10 BASE-T/100 BASE-TX/1000 BASE-T) USB Port: 3 (Hi-Speed USB)
	Option	eKUIO: 2^{*3} Fax: 2^{*4}
Operating Environment	**Temperature**	10 to 32.5°C/50 to 90.5°F
	Humidity	10 to 80 %
	Altitude	3,500 m/11,482 ft maximum
	Brightness	1,500 lux maximum
Dimension (W × D × H) **(without Document Processor)**		21.66" × 19.97" × 24.13" 550 × 507 × 612.8 mm
Weight		350ci: Approx. 105.9 lb/Approx. 48 kg (without toner container, Document Processor) 400ci: Approx. 105.9 lb/Approx. 48 kg (without toner container, Document Processor)
Space Required (W × D) **(Using multi purpose tray)**		31.82" × 19.97" 808 × 507 mm
Power Source		120 V Specification Model: 120 V ∿ 60 Hz 10.8 A 230 V Specification Model: 220 to 240 V ∿ 50/60 Hz 5.9 A
The power consumption of the product in networked standby (If all network ports are connected.)		1.6 W
Options		➜ Optional Equipment (page 11-2)

*1 Up to upper limit height line in the cassette.
*2 USB interface connector is an option for European models.
*3 When two optional interface are installed, a fax line can not be installed.
*4 When one network interface is installed, only one fax line can be installed.

Copy Functions

Item		Description		
Copy Speed	**350ci**		Black and White Copying	Full Color Copying
		A4	35 sheets/min	35 sheets/min
		Letter	37 sheets/min	37 sheets/min
		Legal	30 sheets/min	30 sheets/min
		B5	35 sheets/min	35 sheets/min
		A5	35 sheets/min	35 sheets/min
		A6	35 sheets/min	35 sheets/min
	400ci		Black and White Copying	Full Color Copying
		A4	40 sheets/min	40 sheets/min
		Letter	42 sheets/min	42 sheets/min
		Legal	34 sheets/min	34 sheets/min
		B5	40 sheets/min	40 sheets/min
		A5	40 sheets/min	40 sheets/min
		A6	40 sheets/min	40 sheets/min
First Copy Time (A4, place on the platen, feed from Cassette)	**Black and White**	350ci 5.9 seconds or less 400ci 5.8 seconds or less		
	Color	350ci 7.3 seconds or less 400ci 6.9 seconds or less		
Zoom Level		Manual mode: 25 to 400%, 1% increments Auto mode: Preset Zoom		
Continuous Copying		1 to 999 sheets		
Resolution		600 × 600 dpi		
Supported Original Types		Sheet, Book, 3-dimensional objects (maximum original size: Legal/Folio)		
Original Feed System		Fixed		

Printer Functions

Item		Description
Printing Speed		Same as Copying Speed.
First Print Time (A4, feed from Cassette)	**Black and White**	350ci 5.5 seconds or less 400ci 5.4 seconds or less
	Color	350ci 6.5 seconds or less 400ci 6.4 seconds or less
Resolution		1200 × 1200 dpi, 9600 dpi equivalent × 600 dpi
Operating System		Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows 8.1, Windows Server 2008/R2, Windows Server 2012/R2, Mac OS 10.5 or later
Interface		USB Interface Connector: 1 (Hi-Speed USB) Network interface: 1 (10 BASE-T/100 BASE-TX/1000 BASE-T) Optional Interface (Option): 2 (For IB-50/IB-51 mounting)
Page Description Language		PRESCRIBE
Emulations		PCL6 (PCL-XL, PCL5c), KPDL3 (PostScript3 compatible), PDF, XPS, OpenXPS

Scanner Functions

Item	Description
Resolution	600 dpi, 400 dpi, 300 dpi, 200×400 dpi, 200 dpi, 200×100 dpi
File Format	TIFF (MMR/JPEG compression), JPEG, PDF (MMR/JPEG compression), XPS, PDF/A, High compressive PDF, Encrypted PDF, Open XPS
Scanning Speed[*1]	1-sided B/W 60 Images/min Color 40 Images/min 2-sided B/W 120 Images/min Color 80 Images/min (A4 landscape, 300 dpi, Image quality: Text/Photo original)
Interface	Ethernet (10 BASE-T/100 BASE-TX/1000 BASE-T), USB
Transmission System	SMB, SMTP, FTP, FTP over SSL, USB, TWAIN[*2], WIA[*3], WSD

*1 When using the document processor (Dual Scan DP) (except TWAIN and WIA scanning)
*2 Available Operating System: Windows XP/Windows Vista/Windows Server 2003/Windows Server 2008/ Windows Server 2008 R2/Windows 7/Windows 8/Windows 8.1/Windows Server 2012/ Windows Server 2012 R2
*3 Available Operating System: Windows Vista/Windows Server 2008/Windows Server 2008 R2/Windows 7/ Windows 8/Windows 8.1/Windows Server 2012/Windows Server 2012 R2

Document Processor

Item	Description	
	Document Processor (Automatic 2-Sided)	Document Processor (Dual scan DP)
Original Feed Method	Automatic feed	
Supported Original Types	Sheet originals	
Paper Size	Maximum: 8.5" × 14.01" 216 × 356 mm (Long-sized 216 x 1900 mm)	Maximum: 8.5" × 14.01" 216 × 356 mm (Long-sized 216 x 1900 mm)
	Minimum: 4.13" × 5.82" 105 mm × 148 mm	Minimum: 4.13" × 5.82" 105 mm × 148 mm
Paper Weight	1-sided: 50 to 120 g/m² 2-sided: 50 to 120 g/m²	1-sided: 50 to 120 g/m² 2-sided: 50 to 120 g/m²
Loading Capacity	75 sheets (50 to 80 g/m²)[*1] maximum	75 sheets (50 to 80 g/m²)[*1] maximum
Dimensions (W) × (D) × (H)	21.58" × 13.65" × 5.16" 548 × 346.5 × 131 mm	21.58" × 13.65" × 5.16" 548 × 346.5 × 131 mm
Weight	8.9 lbs. or less /4 kg or less	10.0 lbs. or less/4.5 kg or less

*1 Up to upper limit height line in the document processor.

Paper Feeder (500-sheet)

Item	Description
Paper Supply Method	Friction roller feeder (No. Sheets: 550, 64 g/m^2, 1 cassette/ No. Sheets: 500, 80 g/m^2, 1 cassette)
Paper Size	A4, A5, B5, A6, Letter, Legal, B6, Folio, 216 × 340 mm, Statement, Executive, Oficio II, 16K, B5 (ISO), Envelope #10, Envelope #9, Envelope #6 3/4, Envelope Monarch, Envelope DL, Envelope C5, youkei 4, youkei 2, Custom (105 × 148 to 216 × 356 mm)
Supported Paper	Paper weight: 60 to 220 g/m^2 Media types: Plain, Recycled, Material
Dimensions **(W) × (D) × (H)**	21.66" × 19.97" × 6.19" 550 × 507 × 157 mm
Weight	21.0 lbs or less/ 9.5 kg or less

Paper Feeder (500-sheet x 2)

Item	Description
Paper Supply Method	Friction roller feeder (No. Sheets: 550, 64 g/m^2, 2 cassettes/ No. Sheets: 500, 80 g/m^2, 2 cassettes)
Paper Size	A4, A5, B5, A6, Letter, Legal, B6, Folio, 216×340 mm, Statement, Executive, Oficio II, 16K, B5 (ISO), Envelope #10, Envelope #9, Envelope #6 3/4, Envelope Monarch, Envelope DL, Envelope C5, youkei 4, youkei 2, Custom (105 x 148 to 216 x 356 mm)
Supported Paper	Paper weight: 60 to 220 g/m^2 Media types: Plain, Recycled, Material
Dimensions **(W) × (D) × (H)**	21.66" × 19.97" × 13.51" 550 × 507 × 343 mm
Weight	Approx. 39.7 lbs. / Approx. 18 kg

Paper Feeder (2,000-sheet)

Item	Description
Paper Supply Method	Friction roller feeder (No. Sheets: 2,200, 64 g/m^2/No. Sheets: 2,000, 80 g/m^2)
Paper Size	A4, Letter
Supported Paper	Paper weight: 60 to 220 g/m^2 Media types: Plain, Recycled, Material
Dimensions **(W) × (D) × (H)**	21.66" × 19.97" × 13.51" 550 × 507 × 343 mm
Weight	Approx. 44.1 lbs. / Approx. 20 kg

Inner Finisher

Item		Description
Number of Trays		1 tray
Paper Size (80 g/m^2) Finisher tray (no stapling)	**Tray A (Non-stapling)**	Legal, Folio, 216 x 340 mm, Custom (70 x 298 to 210 x 1020 mm): 250 sheets equivalent or 42 mm height (Thick: 20 sheets (129 to 220 g/m^2))
		A4, A5, B5, A6, Letter, B6, Statement, Executive, Oficio II, 16K, B5 (ISO), Hagaki (Cardstock), Oufukuhagaki (Return postcard), Envelope #10, Envelope #9, Envelope #6 3/4, Envelope Monarch, Envelope DL, Envelope C5, youkei 4, youkei 2, Custom (70 x 148 to 210 x 297 mm): 300 sheets equivalent or 42 mm height (Thick: 20 sheets (129 to 220 g/m^2))
Stapling	**Number of Sheets**	Legal, Oficio II, 216 x 340 mm: 30 sheets (60 to 90 g/m^2); 20 sheets (91 to 105 g/m^2); 2 cover sheet only (106 g/m^2 to 128 g/m^2)
		A4, B5, Letter, 16K: 50 sheets (60 to 90 g/m^2); 40 sheets (91 to 105 g/m^2); 2 cover sheet only (106 g/m^2 to 128 g/m^2)
	Media types	Plain, Recycled, Prepunched, Preprinted, Bond, Letterhead, Color, Coated, Thick, High Quality, Custom
Dimensions (W) × (D) × (H) (Using multi purpose tray)		25.08" × 15.60" × 6.23" / 637 × 396 × 158 mm
Weight		Approx. 26.5 lbs. or less / Approx. 12 kg or less

Mailbox

Item	Description
Number of Trays	6 trays
Paper Size (80 g/m^2)	**Tray 1 (to 5)**
	216 x 340mm, OficioII, Foolscap (8.5 x 13.5"), Legal, Folio: 50 sheets
	A4, B5, A5, Letter, Executive, 16K, Statement: 100 sheets
	Tray A
	216 x 340 mm, OficioII, Foolscap (8.5 x 13.5"), Legal, Folio, Custom (70 x 298 to 210 x 1220 mm): 250 sheets
	A4, B5, A5, B6, A6, Letter, Executive, 16K, Statement, B5 (ISO), Hagaki (Cardstock), Oufukuhagaki (Return postcard), Custom (70 x 148 to 210 x 297 mm): 500 sheets
Dimensions (W) × (D) × (H)	16.3" × 14.18" × 29.93" / 414 × 360 × 760 mm
Weight	Approx. 17.7 lbs. / Approx. 8 kg

Job separator

Item	Description
Number of Trays	1 tray
Maximum Sheets	100 Sheets (80 g/m^2)
Paper Size	A4, A5, B5, A6, Letter, Legal, B6, Folio, 216 x 340 mm, Statement, Executive, Oficio II, 16K, B5 (ISO), Envelope #10, Envelope #9, Envelope #6 3/4, Envelope Monarch, Envelope DL, Envelope C5, youkei 4, youkei 2, Hagaki (Cardstock), Oufukuhagaki (Return postcard), Custom (70 x 148 to 210 x 1220 mm)
Paper Type	Paper weight: 60 to 220 g/m^2 Media types: Plain, Recycled, Material
Dimensions (W) × (D) × (H)	14.18" × 12.56" × 6.07" 360 × 319 × 154 mm
Weight	Approx. 0.9 lbs. / Approx. 0.4 kg

1,000-Sheet Finisher

Item		Description	
Number of Trays		1 tray	
Paper Size (80 g/m^2)	Tray (Non-stapling)	Legal, Oficio II, Folio, 216 × 340 mm, Custom (cassette: 92 × 148 mm to 216 × 356 mm/Multi Purpose tray: 70 × 148 mm to 216 × 356 mm): 500 sheets equivalent or 91 mm height A4, B5, A5, Letter, Statement, Executive, 16K: 1,000 sheets equivalent or 162 mm height	
Stapling	Number of Sheets	Legal, Oficio II, 216 × 340mm	30 sheets (52 to 90 g/m^2) 20 sheets (91 to 105 g/m^2) 2 cover sheet only (106 g/m^2 to 128 g/m^2)
		A4, B5, Letter, 16K	50 sheets (52 to 90 g/m^2) 40 sheets (91 to 105 g/m^2) 2 cover sheet only (106 g/m^2 to 128 g/m^2)
	Media types	Plain, Recycled, Prepunched, Preprinted, Bond, Letterhead, Color, Coated, Thick, High Quality, Rough, Custom 1 to 8	
Dimensions (W) × (D) × (H)		23.27" × 20.36" × 39.58" 591 × 517 × 1,005.3 mm	
Weight		Approx. 50.8 lbs. or less / Approx. 23 kg or less	

Punch Unit (For 1,000-Sheet Finisher)

Item			Description
Paper Size	Inch	2 Hole	A4, B5, A5, Folio, 16K, Letter, Legal, Statement
		3 Hole	A4, 16k, Letter
	cm	2 Hole	A4, B5, A5, Folio, 16K, Letter, Legal, Statement
		4 Hole	A4
Paper Weight			60 - 220 g/m^2
Media types			Plain, Preprinted, Bond, Recycled, Letterhead, Color, Thick, Coated, High Quality, Custom 1 to 8

3,000-Sheet Finisher

Item				Description
Number of Trays				2 trays
Paper Size (80 g/m^2)	**Tray A (Non-Stapling)**			Legal, Oficio II, Folio, 216 × 340 mm, Custom (cassette: 92 × 148 mm to 216 × 356 mm/Multi Purpose tray: 70 × 148 mm to 216 × 356 mm): 1500 sheets equivalent or 227 mm height A4, B5, A5, Letter, Statement, Executive, 16K: 3,000 sheets equivalent or 412 mm height
	Tray B			Legal, Oficio II, Folio, 216 × 340 mm, Custom (cassette: 92 × 148 mm to 216 × 356 mm/Multi Purpose tray: 70 × 148mm to 216×356mm): 100 sheets equivalent or 14 mm height A4, B5, A5, B6, A6, B5(ISO), Cardstock, Oufuku hagaki (Return postcard), Letter, Statement, Executive, 16K: 200 sheets equivalent or 28 mm height
Stapling	**Maximum Number**		Legal, Oficio II, 216 × 340mm	30 sheets (52 to 90 g/m^2) 20 sheets (91 to 105 g/m^2) 2 cover sheet only (106 g/m^2 to 128 g/m^2)
			A4, B5, Letter, 16K	50 sheets (52 to 90 g/m^2) 40 sheets (91 to 105 g/m^2) 2 cover sheet only (106 g/m^2 to 128 g/m^2)
	Media types			Plain, Recycled, Prepunched, Preprinted, Bond, Letterhead, Color, Coated, Thick, High Quality, Custom 1 to 8
Hole Punch Unit	**Paper Size**	**Inch**	**2 Hole**	A4, B5, A5, Folio, 16K, Letter, Legal, Statement
			3 Hole	A4, 16k, Letter
		cm	**2 Hole**	A4, B5, A5, Folio, 16K, Letter, Legal, Statement
			4 Hole	A4
	Paper Weight			60 - 220 g/m^2
	Media types			Plain, Preprinted, Bond, Recycled, Letterhead, Color, Thick, Coated, High Quality, Custom 1 to 8
Dimensions (W) × (D) × (H)				25.6" × 20.95" × 42.36" 650 × 532 × 1,075.8 mm
Weight				Approx. 68.4 lbs or less / Approx. 31 kg or less

> **NOTE**
> Consult your dealer or service representative for recommended paper types.

Glossary

Accessibility

The machine is designed featuring good accessibility even for the elderly and those who are physically challenged or visually impaired. Touch panel is adjustable in two angles.

Apple Talk

AppleTalk offers file sharing and printer sharing and it also enables you to utilize application software that is on another computer on the same AppleTalk network.

Auto Form Feed Timeout

During data transmission, the machine may sometimes have to wait until receiving the next data. This is the auto form feed timeout. When the preset timeout passes, the machine automatically prints output. However, no output is performed if the last page has no data to be printed.

Auto-IP

Auto-IP is a module that enables dynamic IPv4 addresses to be assigned to a device on startup. However, DHCP requires a DHCP server. Auto-IP is a server-less method of choosing an IP address. IP addresses between 169.254.0.0 to 169.254.255.255 are reserved for Auto-IP and assigned automatically.

Auto Paper Selection

A function to automatically select paper in the same size as originals when printing.

Auto Sleep

A mode designed for electrical power saving, activated when the machine is left unused or there is no data transfer for a specific period. In Sleep mode, power consumption is kept to a minimum.

Bonjour

Bonjour, also known as zero-configuration networking, is a service that automatically detects computers, devices and services on an IP network. Bonjour, because an industry-standard IP protocol is used, allows devices to automatically recognize each other without an IP address being specified or DNS server being set. Bonjour also sends and receives network packets by UDP port 5353. If a firewall is enabled, the user must check that UDP port 5353 is left open so that Bonjour will run correctly. Some firewalls are set up so as to reject only certain Bonjour packets. If Bonjour does not run stably, check the firewall settings and ensure that Bonjour is registered on the exceptions list and that Bonjour packets are accepted. If you install Bonjour on Windows XP Service Pack 2 or later, the Windows firewall will be set up correctly for Bonjour.

Custom Box

The Custom Box function stores print data for each individual user on the printer and allows the user to print single or multiple copies of the stored data later using the printer's operation panel.

Default Gateway

This indicates the device, such as a computer or router, that serves as the entrance/exit (gateway) for accessing computers outside the network that you are on. When no specific gateway is designated for a destination IP address, data is sent to the host designated as the Default Gateway.

DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol)

Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) that automatically resolves IP addresses, subnet masks, and gateway addresses on a TCP/IP network. DHCP minimizes the load of network management employing a large number of client computers because it relieves individual clients including printers from the IP address being assigned.

DHCP (IPv6)

DHCP (IPv6) is the next-generation of the Internet's Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol and supports IPv6. It extends the BOOTP startup protocol that defines the protocols used for transferring configuration information to hosts on the network. DHCP (IPv6) permits the DHCP server to use its expanded functionality to send configuration parameters to an IPv6 node. Because the network addresses that can be used are allocated automatically, the IPv6 node management workload is reduced in systems where the administrator has to exercise close control over IP address allocation.

dpi (dots per inch)

A unit for resolution, representing the number of dots printed per inch (25.4 mm).

EcoPrint Mode

A printing mode that helps save toner. Copies made in this mode are thus lighter than normal.

Emulation

The function to interpret and execute other printers' page description languages. The machine emulates operation of PCL6, KPDL3 (PostScript 3 compatible).

Enhanced WSD

Proprietary web services.

FTP (File Transfer Protocol)

A protocol to transfer files on the TCP/IP network, whether the Internet or an intranet. Along with HTTP and SMTP/POP, FTP is now frequently used on the Internet.

Grayscale

A computer color expression. Displayed images of this sort are typically composed of shades of gray, varying from black at the weakest intensity to white at the strongest, without any other colors. Gray levels are displayed in numerical levels: that is, white and black only for 1 bit; 256 gray levels (including white and black) for 8 bits; and 65,536 gray levels for 16 bits.

Help

A ? (Help) key is provided on this machine's operation panel. If you are unsure of how to operate the machine, would like more information on its functions or are having problems getting the machine to work properly, press the ? (Help) key to view a detailed explanation on the touch panel.

IP Address

An Internet protocol address is a unique number that represents a specific computer or related device on the network. The format of an IP address is four sets of numbers separated by dots, e.g. 192.168.110.171. Each number should be between 0 and 255.

IPP

IPP (Internet Printing Protocol) is a standard that uses TCP/IP networks such as the Internet to enable print jobs to be sent between remote computers and printers. IPP is an extension of the HTTP protocol used to view websites and enables printing to be carried out via routers on printers in remote locations. It also supports the HTTP authentication mechanisms along with SSL server and client authentication as well as encryption.

Job Box

The Job Box function stores print data on the printer and allows users to print single or multiple copies of the stored data later using the printer's operation panel.

KPDL (Kyocera Page Description Language)

Kyocera's PostScript page description language compatible with Adobe PostScript Level 3.

Multi Purpose (MP) Tray

The paper supply tray on the front side of the machine. Use this tray instead of the cassettes when printing onto envelopes, Hagaki (Cardstock), transparencies, or labels.

NetBEUI (NetBIOS Extended User Interface)

An interface, developed by IBM in 1985, as an update from NetBIOS. It enables more advanced functions on smaller networks than other protocols such as TCP/IP, etc. It is not suitable for larger networks due to lack of routing capabilities to choose the most appropriate routes. NetBEUI has been adopted by IBM for its OS/2 and Microsoft for its Windows as a standard protocol for file sharing and printing services.

Outline font

With outline fonts, character outlines are represented with numerical expressions and fonts can be enlarged or reduced in different ways by changing the numeric values of those expressions. Printing remains clear even if you enlarge fonts, since the characters are defined with outlines represented with numerical expressions. You can specify the font size in steps of 0.25 points up to 999.75 points.

PDF/A

This is "ISO 19005-1. Document management - Electronic document file format for long-term preservation - Part 1: Use of PDF (PDF/A)", and is a file format based on PDF 1.4. It has been standardized as ISO 19005-1, and is a specialization of PDF, which has been mainly used for printing, for long-term storage. A new part, ISO 19005-2 (PDF/A-2), is currently being prepared.

POP3 (Post Office Protocol 3)

A standard protocol to receive E-mail from the server in which the mail is stored on the Internet or an intranet.

PostScript

A page description language developed by Adobe Systems. It enables flexible font functions and highly-functional graphics, allowing higher quality printing. The first version called Level 1 was launched in 1985, followed by Level 2 that enabled color printing and two-byte languages (e.g. Japanese) in 1990. In 1996, Level 3 was released as an update for the Internet access and PDF format as well as gradual improvements in implementation technologies.

PPM (prints per minute)

This indicates the number of A4 size printouts made in one minute.

Printer Driver

The software to enable you to print data created on any application software. The printer driver for the machine is contained in the DVD enclosed in the package. Install the printer driver on the computer connected to the machine.

RA(Stateless)

The IPv6 router communicates (transmits) information such as the global address prefix using ICMPv6. This information is the Router Advertisement (RA).

ICMPv6 stands for Internet Control Message Protocol, and is a IPv6 standard defined in the RFC 2463 "Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMPv6) for the Internet Protocol Version 6 (IPv6) Specification".

RAM Disk

Using part of the printer's memory as a virtual disk, you can set any amount of memory from overall printer memory as a RAM disk in order to use features such as electronic sorting (shortening print time).

Send as E-mail

A function to send the image data stored in the machine as an E-mail attachment. E-mail addresses can be selected from the list or entered at each time.

SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol)

A protocol for E-mail transmission over the Internet or an intranet. It is used for transferring mail between mail servers as well as for sending mail from clients to their servers.

Status Page

The page lists machine conditions, such as the memory capacity, total number of prints and scans, and paper source settings.

Subnet Mask

The subnet mask is a way of augmenting the network address section of an IP address.

A subnet mask represents all network address sections as 1 and all host address sections as 0. The number of bits in the prefix indicates the length of the network address. The term "prefix" refers to something added to the beginning and, in this context, indicates the first section of the IP address. When an IP address is written, the length of the network address is indicated by the prefix length after a forward slash (/). For example, "24" in the address "133.210.2.0/24". In this way, "133.210.2.0/24" denotes the IP address "133.210.2.0" with a 24-bit prefix (network section). This new network address section (originally part of the host address) made possible by the subnet mask is referred to as the subnet address. When you enter the subnet mask, be sure to set the "DHCP" setting to "Off".

TCP/IP (Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol)

TCP/IP is a suite of protocols designed to define the way computers and other devices communicate with each other over a network.

TCP/IP (IPv6)

TCP/IP (IPv6) is based on the current Internet protocol, TCP/IP (IPv4). IPv6 is the next-generation Internet protocol and expands the available address space, which resolves the problem of the lack of addresses under IPv4, while also introducing other improvements such as additional security functionality and the capacity to prioritize data transmission.

TWAIN (Technology Without An Interesting Name)

A technical specification for connecting scanners, digital cameras, and other image equipment to computers. The TWAIN compatible devices enable you to process image data on any relevant application software. TWAIN is adopted on a large amount of graphic software (e.g. Adobe Photoshop) and OCR software.

USB (Universal Serial Bus) 2.0

A USB interface standard for Hi-Speed USB 2.0. The maximum transfer rate is 480 Mbps. This machine is equipped with USB 2.0 for high-speed data transfer.

WIA (Windows Imaging Acquisition)

A function to import images supported after Windows Me/XP from digital cameras and other peripheral devices. This function replaces what TWAIN used to do. The feature is provided as a part of Windows functions and improves ease of operation, so that you import images directly to My Computer without using any application.

Index

Rev.1 2015.11

2R6GEEN001